English Grammar Series.

BOOK IV

IDIOM, GRAMMAR, AND SYNTHESIS

A MANUAL OF PRACTICAL AND THEORETICAL ENGLISH FOR HIGH SCHOOL AND UNIVERSITY STUDENTS

IN FIVE PARTS

PART I —ACCIDENCE, ANALYSIS, SYNTAX, AND PUNCTUATION
PART II —IDIOM IN WORDS, PHRASES, AND CONSTRUCTIONS
PART III —THE TRANSFORMATION AND SYNTHESIS OF SENTENCES
PART IV —WORD BUILDING AND DERIVATION
PART V —FIGURES OF SPEECH, POETIC DICTION, AND PROSODY

BY

J C NESFIELD, M A

MACMILLAN AND CO.
BEDFORD STREET, STRAND, LONDON
BOMBAY AND CALCUTTA
1895

CONTENTS

PART I.—ACCIDENCE, ANALYSIS, SYNTAX, AND PUNCTUATION

PART III —THE TRANSFORMATION AND SYNTHESIS OF SENTENCES

PART IV —WORD BUILDING AND DERIVATION

PART V —FIGURES OF SPEECH, POETIC DICTION, PROSODY

PART I—ACCIDENCE, ANALYSIS, SYNTAX, AND PUNCTUATION

CHAPTER I

ANALYTICAL OUTLINE GENERAL DEFINITIONS

1 **A Sentence**—A combination of words that makes a *complete* sense is called a **Sentence** The sense is not complete, unless something is *said* about something else

A ship went out to sea

2 There are five different kinds of sentences —

(1) Those which simply affirm or deny something are called **Assertive**

A man's success depends chiefly on himself (*Affirmative*)
He did not get much help from others (*Negative.*)

(2) Those which contain some command or prohibition are called **Imperative.**

Rely chiefly on your own efforts (*Command*)
Do not rely much on the help of others (*Prohibition.*)

(3) Those which inquire about something are called **Interrogative**

Have you finished that task ?

(4) Those which express some wish are called **Optative.**

God save the queen.

(5) Those which express some feeling of the mind in connection with the assertion made are called **Exclamatory.**

What a foolish fellow you have been !

3 **Subject and Predicate**—The word or words denoting the person or thing about which something is said are called the **Subject** of the sentence.

A *ship* went out to sea.

The word or words which say something about the person or thing denoted by the Subject, as "*went out*," are called the **Predicate**

Hence no sentence can be made without a Subject and a Predicate. These two things are necessary to make a *complete* sense

4 **A Phrase**—A combination of words that makes sense, but not a *complete* sense, is called a **Phrase**

On the river Through thick and thin A bird in the hand

5 **A Clause**—A sentence which is *part of a larger sentence* is called a **Clause**

This is the house | where we live

Here "where we live" is a sentence, because it has a subject "we" and a predicate "live" Similarly "this is the house" is a sentence, having "this" for its subject and "is" for its predicate But both are *parts of a larger sentence*, and hence each of them is called a clause

6 **Nouns**—A word used for *naming* anything is called a **Noun**, as "ship," "fox," "house," "man" Hence a noun is the *naming* word (The words "noun" and "name" are the same at bottom, but differently spelt)

7 **Pronouns**—A word used *instead of a noun* is called a **Pronoun**

A ship went out to sea, and *she* had all her sails up

Here the pronoun "she" is used instead of the noun "ship," and saves its being mentioned twice Hence a pronoun is a *substitute* word, and its chief use is *to save the repetition of a noun*

8 **Adjectives**—If I wish to *qualify* (that is, add something to the meaning of) a noun, the word used for such a purpose is called an **Adjective**

A *fine* ship went out to sea

The word *Adjective* means "adding," and is so called because it adds something to the meaning of a noun

9 **Verbs**—Words used for predicating (that is, saying something about some person or thing) are called **Verbs.**

A fine ship *went out* to sea

Here the word which predicates or says something about a ship is "went out" This is therefore a verb, and thus *the predicate of a sentence must be a verb*, or it must at least contain one.

10 **Preposition with its Object.**—In the phrase "to sea," the word "to" is called a **Preposition** This word

expresses the relation in which the thing denoted by "sea" stands to the event denoted by "went out."

The noun, pronoun, or other noun-equivalent that follows the preposition is called its **Object.**

The use of a preposition, then, is *to show the relation in which the person or thing denoted by its Object stands to something else.*

11 **Conjunctions.**—A Conjunction is a *joining* word. It joins words and phrases to one another, or one sentence to another sentence.

(*a*) He made himself mean *and* of no reputation.
(*b*) May he live long *and* (may he) die happily

In (*a*) the adjective "mean" is joined to the phrase "of no reputation" by the conjunction "and."

In (*b*) the sentence "may he live long" is joined by the same conjunction to the sentence "may he die happily"

12. **Adverbs**—These, like adjectives, are *qualifying* words An adjective, as we have shown, qualifies a *noun*, an adverb qualifies *anything except a noun or pronoun* [1]

That *very* fine ship has *already* sailed *half* through the Channel.

Here "very" is an adverb qualifying the adjective "fine", "already" is an adverb qualifying the verb "has sailed", and "half" is an adverb qualifying the preposition "through"

13 **Interjections**—These are not words connected, as other words are, with other parts of a sentence, but mere *sounds* standing by themselves and thrown into a sentence to express some feeling of the mind.

My son, *alas!* is not industrious.

Here "alas" is a sound thrown into the sentence to express regret.

14. **The Parts of Speech defined.**—Words are divided into different kinds or classes according to the purpose that they are used for The different kinds of words are called **Parts of Speech.** They are eight in number, and have been described already —

(1) A Noun is a word used for naming some person or thing

[1] In other Grammars an Adverb is defined to be "a word used to qualify verbs, adjectives, or other adverbs." The inadequacy of this definition, which excludes Prepositions and Conjunctions from the qualifying power of adverbs, is further shown in § 222.

(2) A Pronoun is a word used instead of a noun or noun-equivalent

(3) An Adjective is a word used to qualify a noun

(4) A Verb is a word used for saying something about some person or thing

(5) A Preposition is a word placed before a noun or noun equivalent to show in what relation the person or thing denoted by the noun stands to something else

(6) A Conjunction is a word used to join words or phrases together, or one clause to another clause

(7) An Adverb is a word used to qualify any part of speech except a noun or pronoun

(8) An Interjection is a word or sound thrown into a sentence to express some feeling of the mind

15 The Articles —The words "a" and "the" are called **Articles** "The" is called the *Definite* Article, because it particularises a noun "A" or "an" is called the *Indefinite*, because it does not particularise a noun, but generalises it

The articles are not a distinct part of speech but merely adjectives "A" or "an" is an abbreviated form of the adjective "one" while "the" is an abbreviated form of "this," "that," "these," "those"

16 Finite Verb Number and Person —Any part of a verb that can be used *as the Predicate of a sentence* is called **Finite**

The word "*finite*" means "limited" A finite verb is so called, because it is limited to the same **Person** (*First*, *Second*, or *Third*) and to the same **Number** (*Singular* or *Plural*) as its Subject

(a) I *see* him (b) They *see* him

In both sentences the form of the verb "see" is the same But in (a) the verb is in the First person, because its Subject "I" is in the First person, and in the Singular number, because its Subject is Singular Similarly in (b) the verb is in the Third person, because its Subject "they" is in the Third person, and Plural, because its Subject is Plural

17 Parts of a Verb not finite —There are some parts of a verb, which are not finite, that is, are not limited to any particular Number or Person, because they cannot be used with a Subject or be made the Predicates of a sentence.

Such parts are three in number —(1) the **Infinitive**

mood, as "I wish *to retire*", (2) a **Participle**, as "a *retired* officer", (3) a **Gerund**, as "I think of *retiring*"

18 **Double Parts of Speech**—Besides the eight parts of speech shown in § 14, there are three more which must be called double, or two parts of speech combined in one —

(1) A **Participle**—This is a verb and adjective combined

A *retired* officer lives next door

The word "retired" is a verb, because it is part of the verb "retire" It is also an adjective, because it qualifies the noun "officer" Hence a participle may be called a verbal adjective

(2) A **Gerund**—This is a verb and noun combined

I think of *retiring* soon from service

Here "retiring" is a verb, because it is part of the verb "retire" It is also a noun, because it is the object to the preposition "of" Hence a gerund has been called a verbal noun

(3) A **Relative Pronoun** or **Adverb**—A Relative pronoun such as *who*, *which*, etc, or a Relative adverb such as *where*, *when*, etc, is a pronoun or adverb combined with a conjunction

This is the house *where* we live

Here "where" is an adverb, because it qualifies the verb "lives" It is also a conjunction, because it joins the two sentences Hence, relative adverbs have been sometimes called conjunctive adverbs[1] Similarly, relative pronouns have been called conjunctive pronouns.

19 **Apposition of Noun with Noun**—A noun is said to be in apposition with another noun, or with a pronoun, when it refers to the same person or thing —

Noun—Philip, *king* of Macedon, was father to Alexander the Great.
Pronoun—I, the *man* you were looking for, am here

20 **Apposition of Sentence with Noun**—Whenever a sentence is in apposition with a noun, the sentence must be introduced by the conjunction "that"

The rumour *that you were coming* was generally believed

21 **Apposition of Noun with Sentence**—A noun can be in apposition with a sentence or with some implied

[1] "Conjunctive adverb" is the name given to these words by Mason in *English Grammar*, p 105, § 262 I have found it more convenient, however, to retain the name "relative adverb."

noun, which (if it were expressed) would denote the action of the verb.

He killed his prisoners,—*a barbarous act*. (Here "act" is in apposition with the implied noun, the *killing* of prisoners.)

22. Forms of Subject.—The Subject to a sentence must be either a noun or a noun-equivalent. The principal forms in which a Subject can be expressed are as follows:—

(*a*) Noun: A *ship* went out to sea.
(*b*) Pronoun: *He* (some one previously named) was convicted.
(*c*) Infinitive: *To err* (=error or proneness to error) is human.
(*d*) Gerund: *Sleeping* is necessary to health.
(*e*) Phrase: *How to do this* puzzles all of us.
(*f*) Clause: *Whoever was caught* was sent to jail.

23. Transitive Verbs: Verb and Object.—A verb is **Transitive**, if the action or feeling denoted by the verb does not stop with itself, but is directed towards some person or thing. The word or words denoting such person or thing are called the **Object** to the verb.

That snake bit *the man*.

24. Forms of Object.—The various forms in which the Object can be expressed are the same as those in which the Subject can be expressed. See § 22.

(*a*) Noun: That snake bit *the man*.
(*b*) Pronoun: That snake bit *him*.
(*c*) Infinitive: We desire *to succeed* (=success).
(*d*) Gerund: He loves *riding*.
(*e*) Phrase: We do not know *how to do this*.
(*f*) Clause: We do not know *what he wants*.

25. Factitive Verbs: Complement.—Those Transitive verbs which require not only an Object (as all Transitive verbs do), but also some other word or words to make the predication complete, are called **Factitive**.

Such word or words are called the **Complement**.

He put the school (object) *into good order* (complement).
That grief drove him (object) *mad* (complement).
They made him (object) *laugh* (complement).

There is no sense in saying "he put the school," "that grief drove him," "they made him"; hence each verb must have a Complement.

26. Intransitive Verbs.—A verb is **Intransitive**, if the action or feeling denoted by the verb stops with itself, and is not directed towards anything else.

Fish *swim*. Rivers *flow*. All animals *die*.

27 Intransitive Verbs with Complement—But Intransitive verbs, though they do not require an Object, may require a Complement, as some Transitive verbs also do

Such verbs are called **Intransitive Verbs of Incomplete Predication**

He became *a good scholar* Sleep is *necessary to health*

28 Absolute use of Verbs—A verb is said to be used absolutely, when it is not grammatically related to the rest of the sentence —

(*a*) **Participle** (further explained in § 285 and § 300) —

The sun having set, all went home (*With Noun*)
Supposing we are late, the door will be locked (*Without Noun*)

(*b*) **Infinitive Mood** (further explained in § 195 and § 196) —

To think that he should have told a lie ! (*Simple*)
I am,—*to speak* plainly,—much displeased with you (*Gerundial*)

(*c*) **Imperative Mood** (further explained in § 184) —

A few men,—*say* twelve, —may be expected shortly

29 Introductory Adverb—When the subject to an *Intransitive* verb is placed *after* its verb, the verb is usually introduced by the adverb "*there*" In this relation "*there*" does not signify "in that place," but merely serves *to introduce the verb* It has no signification whatever

There are *some men* (subject) who never drink wine
There came a *maiden* (subject) to my door

30 Kinds of Phrases—The following kinds of phrases should be distinguished from one another —

(*a*) **Adverbial** phrase, or one which does the work of an adverb —

I hope you will work better *in future*
Bind him *hand and foot*, and take him away

(*b*) **Prepositional** phrase, or one which does the work of a preposition (Such phrases end in a simple preposition)

In the event of our father's death, we shall be left poor
He worked hard *for the sake of* a prize

(*c*) **Conjunctional** phrase, or one which does the work

of a conjunction (Such phrases end in a simple conjunction)

I am tired *as well as* hungry
He took medicine *in order that* he might recover

(*d*) **Absolute Participial** phrase, see § 285

The sun having set, they all went home

(*e*) **Interjectional** or exclamatory phrase, see § 254 —
Well to be sure! *For shame!* *Good heavens!*

31 Accent, Emphasis —When we lay stress upon a *single syllable*, we call it **Accent**

Sup ply', sim' ply reb' el (noun), re bel' (verb)

When we lay stress upon an *entire word*, we call it **Emphasis**

Silver and gold have I none
I appeal from Philip *drunk* to Philip *sober*

CHAPTER II —NOUNS

§ 1 —The Kinds of Nouns

32 Noun defined —A Noun is a word used for naming some person or thing (§ 14)

33 Nouns are of five different kinds —

I Concrete	Proper	1
	Common	2
	Collective	3
	Material	4
II Abstract		5

Proper Nouns

34 A **Proper Noun** denotes *one particular* person or thing as distinct from every other, as *James* (a person), *Gulistán* (a book), *Lucknow* (a city), *India* (a country)

Note 1 —The writing of a Proper noun should always be commenced with a capital letter

Note 2 —A word or phrase is sometimes added to a proper noun to prevent ambiguity of reference Thus we say, "Alexander *the Great*," or "*St* Paul," or "Boston *in America*," to show which Alexander, or which Paul, or which Boston is meant for many different persons or places might be called by these names

Common Nouns

35 **A Common Noun** denotes no one person or thing in particular, but is *common to any and every person or thing of the same kind*, as "man," "book," "country"

Thus, *man* does not point out any particular man, such as James, but can be used for any and every man *Book* does not point out any particular book, such as *Gulistan*, but can be used for any and every book *Country* does not point out any particular country, such as India, but can be used for any country in any part of the world

36 **A Proper Noun** is said to be "*used as a Common Noun*," when it denotes (*a*) some rank or office, or (*b*) some class of persons or things

(*a*) Such words as *Cæsar*, *Caliph*, *Sultan*, *Khedive*, *Czar*, etc, are used as Common nouns, because they denote persons holding a certain rank or office thus we can speak of "the twelve Cæsars," "the first four Caliphs," "the Sultan of Turkey," "the Czar of Russia"

(*b*) A Proper noun becomes a Common noun, when it denotes a class of persons or things and is used in a descriptive sense "He is *the Newton* of the age,"—that is, the greatest astronomer of the age

Collective Nouns

37 **A Collective Noun** denotes a *group* or *collection* of *similar individuals*, considered as one complete whole

For instance, there may be *many sheep* in a field, but only *one flock* Here "sheep" is a Common noun, because it may stand for any and every sheep, but 'flock' is a Collective noun, because it stands for all the sheep at once, and not for any one sheep taken separately

38 Every Collective Noun is also a kind of Common Noun

Thus the term 'flock" may stand for many different flocks (or groups of sheep), "class' for many classes (or groups of students)

39 **Nouns of Multitude** —A distinction is made between a Collective Noun and a Noun of Multitude.—

(*a*) A Collective noun denotes *one undivided whole*, and hence the verb following is singular (§ 16)

The jury *consists* of twelve persons

(*b*) A noun of Multitude denotes the *individuals* of the group, and hence the verb is plural, although the noun is singular (§ 16).

The jury (the men on the jury) *were* divided in their opinions.

Nouns of Material

40 A Noun of **Material** denotes the *matter* or *substance* of which things are made

Thus "sheep" is a Common noun, but "mutton" (or the flesh of sheep) is a Material noun

41 The same word can be a Material noun or a Common noun according to the sense

Fish live in water *Fish* is good for food

In the first sentence the noun denotes individual fish or fishes and is therefore a Common noun In the second it denotes the matter of which the bodies of fish are made, and is therefore a Material noun

Abstract Nouns

42 An **Abstract Noun** denotes some *quality*, *state*, or *action*, apart from anything possessing the quality, etc

Quality —Cleverness, height, humility, roguery, colour
State —Poverty, manhood bondage, pleasure, youth
Action —Laughter, movement, flight, choice, revenge

The four kinds of nouns previously described all relate to objects *of sense*, that is, to things which can be seen, touched, heard, smelt, or tasted, and all such nouns are called **Concrete** nouns But an Abstract noun relates to *qualities*, *states*, etc, which cannot be seen or touched, etc, and which are thought of *apart from* any object of sense

For example We know that a stone is *hard* We also know that iron is *hard* We also know that a brick is *hard* We can therefore speak of *hardness* apart from stone or iron or brick or any other object having the same quality "Abstract" means "drawn off" (abstracted in thought) from the object Hence *hardness* is an abstract noun, while *stone* or *brick* or *iron* is a concrete noun

43 The same word may be an Abstract noun or a Common noun, according to the purpose for which it is used

When an Abstract noun is "*used as a Common or Concrete noun*," it may denote (*a*) the *person* possessing the quality, or (*b*) the *thing* to which the action, state, or quality belongs —

(a) Examples of Persons

Justice	1	The quality of being just	*Abstract*
	2	A judge, or one who administers justice	*Concrete*
Beauty	1	The quality or state of being beautiful	*Abstract*
	2	A person possessing beauty	*Concrete*

Authority	1	The power or right to command	*Abstract*
	2.	A person possessing authority	*Concrete*
Nobility	1	The quality of being noble	*Abstract*
	2	Those who are of the class of nobles	*Concrete*
Witness	1	Evidence or testimony	*Abstract*
	2	One who gives the evidence	*Concrete*

(*b*) *Examples of Things*

Judgment	1	The act or quality of judging	*Abstract*
	2	The verdict given by the judge	*Concrete*
Sight	1	The art or faculty of seeing	*Abstract*
	2	The thing seen "a fine sight"	*Concrete*
Speech	1	The faculty of speaking	*Abstract*
	2	The speech delivered the word spoken	*Concrete*
Wonder	1	The feeling of wonder or surprise	*Abstract*
	2	The wonderful event or object	*Concrete*
Kindness	1	The quality of being kind	*Abstract*
	2	The kind thing done	*Concrete*

44 The Gerunds and the Simple Infinitives of verbs (§ 195) are in fact, though not in form, kinds of Abstract nouns The following sentences all mean the same thing —

Service is better than idleness (*Abstract Noun*)
Serving is better than idleness (*Gerund*)
To serve is better than idleness (*Infinitive Mood*)

45 An Abstract noun is used as a Proper noun, when it is **personified,**—that is, when it is spoken of as an individual person It must then be commenced with a capital letter, as Proper nouns are

He is the favoured child of *Fortune*
Let not *Ambition* mock their useful toil

46 There are two ways in which a Proper, Material, or Abstract noun can be used as (or changed into) a Common noun —(*a*) by putting an article ("a" or "the") before it, (*b*) by putting it into the plural number

Proper Noun	*Common Nouns*
Daniel was a learned Jew	*A Daniel* come to judgment There are more *Daniels* than one.
Material Noun	
Mango is my favourite fruit	Give me *the mango* in your hand. Give me one of your *mangoes*
Abstract Noun.	
Justice is a noble quality	He is *a justice* of the peace There are four *justices* present

Point out the kind or use of each of the nouns occurring below —

Alexander the Great king of Macedon, was conqueror of Persia A man ignorant of the arts of reading, writing, and ciphering is, in point of knowledge, more like a child than a man The proper study of mankind is man Cows are as fond of grass as men are of milk, or bears of honey Health is one of the greatest blessings that a man or woman can hope to enjoy in this bodily existence The Czar of Russia, although he is lord of the eastern half of Europe and the northern half of Asia, besides being master of a huge army and a large fleet, cannot live in peace and safety with his own subjects, and cannot leave his own palace without fear Arjun was the bravest of the Pandavas Kalidas was the Homer of India, but his fame is not so widely known throughout the world as that of Homer is Almost every Hindu belongs to some caste, but the bondage of rules founded on caste is in a state of decline A shower of rain does not give so much trouble to a traveller as a fall of snow The eleven of our school defeated an eleven selected from among the best cricketers of the town Most kinds of food are not conducive to health, unless they are mixed with a certain amount of salt The love of money is the root of all evil, but by a proper use of money men can do much good He has done me so many kindnesses, that I shall always remember his name with gratitude Cleon is a justice by rank and office, but he is not a genius in the science of law Speech is one of the highest faculties with which man is endowed, but speech without goodness and purity may prove an evil rather than a blessing to its possessor Daniel was a Jewish prophet He is a Daniel in foresight By the waters of Babylon we sat down and wept There is no slate in the rocks of these hills Give him the slate Witchcraft is the art practised by a witch or wizard Fair Science frowned not on his humble birth, but Melancholy marked him for her own

§ 2 —Substitutes for a Noun

47 The following kinds of words or combinations of words can be used as substitutes for a Noun, see §§ 22, 24 —

(*a*) A Pronoun —

Your horse is white, mine is a black *one* (=horse)

(*b*) An Adjective used as a Noun or with some noun understood —

The blind (*men*) receive their sight.
The just (=justice) is higher than *the expedient* (=expediency)

(*c*) An Infinitive verb —

He desires *to succeed* (=success)

(*d*) A Gerund —

He was fond of *sleeping* (=sleep.)

(*e*) A Phrase —

No one knew *how to do this* (= the method of doing this)

(*f*) A Noun-clause, that is, a clause which does the work of a noun, (for the definition of "clause" see § 5)

Who steals my purse (= the stealer of my purse) steals trash

§ 3 —Gender

48 What in nature is called the difference of sex is in grammar called the difference of **Gender** The following are therefore the different kinds of genders —

(1)	Nouns denoting *male* animals	Masculine
(2)	Nouns denoting *female* animals	Feminine
(3)	Nouns denoting animals of *either* sex	Common
(4)	Nouns denoting things of *neither* sex, that is, things without life	Neuter

49 All Material and Abstract nouns must be of the Neuter Gender, since they denote things without life,—things of *neither* sex All Collective nouns must be Neuter, since they denote groups, and groups as such have no life

Nouns can therefore be classified according to gender in the following way —

Gender	*Nouns*
Masculine or Feminine	Proper and Common nouns
Common (or Either Gender)	Common nouns
Neuter (or Neither Gender)	Proper nouns Common „ Collective „ Material „ Abstract „

50 There are three different ways by which a Masculine noun is distinguished from a Feminine —

I By a change of word; as *bull, cow*

II By adding a word, as *he-goat, she-goat*

III By adding *ess* to the Masculine, as *priest, priestess.*

I *By a change of word*

Masculine	*Feminine*	*Masculine*	*Feminine*
Bachelor	maid (or spinster)	Horse (or stallion)	mare
Boar	sow	Husband	wife
Boy	girl	King	queen
Brother	sister	Lord	lady
Buck	doe	Man	woman
Bull (or ox)	cow	Milter (fish)	spawner
Bullock (or steer)	heifer	Nephew	niece
Cock	hen	Papa	mamma
Colt	filly	Ram (or wether)	ewe
Dog	bitch (or slut)	Sir	madam (or dame)
Drake	duck	Sire	dam
Drone	bee	(father of colt)	(mother of colt)
Earl	countess	Sloven	slut
Father	mother	Son	daughter
Friar (or monk)	nun	Stag	hind
Gander	goose	Swain	nymph
Gentleman	lady	Uncle	aunt
Hart	roe	Wizard	witch

II *By adding a word*

(a) *By adding a prefix* (b) *By a change of suffix*

Masculine	*Feminine*	*Masculine*	*Feminine*
Billy goat	nanny goat	Grand father	grand mother
Buck rabbit	doe rabbit	Great uncle	great aunt
Cock sparrow	hen sparrow	Land lord	land lady
He goat	she goat	Pea cock	pea hen
Jack ass	she ass	Servant man	servant maid
Man servant	maid servant	Washer man	washer woman

III *By adding* ess *to the Masculine*

(a) By adding *ess* to the Masculine without any change in the form of the Masculine —

Masculine	*Feminine*	*Masculine*	*Feminine*
Author	author ess	Patron	patron ess
Baron	baron ess	Peer	peer ess
Count	count ess	Poet	poet ess
Giant	giant ess	Priest	priest ess
God	godd ess	Prince	princ ess
Heir	heir ess	Prior	prior ess
Host	host ess	Prophet	prophet ess
Jew	Jew ess	Shepherd	shepherd ess
Lion	lion ess	Viscount	viscount ess

(*b*) By adding *ess*, and omitting the vowel of the last syllable of the Masculine —

Masculine	*Feminine*	*Masculine*	*Feminine*
Actor	actr-ess	Negro	negr-ess
Benefactor	benefactr-ess	Porter	portr-ess
Conductor	conductr-ess	Songster	songstr-ess
Director	directr-ess	Tempter	temptr-ess
Enchanter	enchantr-ess	Tiger	tigr-ess
Hunter	huntr-ess	Traitor	traitr-ess
Instructor	instructr-ess	Votary	votar-ess

(*c*) By adding *ess* to the Masculine in a less regular way —

Masculine	*Feminine*	*Masculine*	*Feminine*
Abbot	abbess	Master (boy)	miss (girl)
Duke	duchess	Mr	Mrs
Emperor	empress	Marquis / Marquess	marchioness
Governor	governess	Murderer	murderess
Lad	lass	Sorcerer	sorceress
Master (teacher, etc)	mistress		

51 The following modes of distinction between Masculine and Feminine are exceptional —

Masculine	*Feminine*	*Masculine*	*Feminine*
Bridegroom	bride	Fox	vixen
Widower	widow	("Vixen" as Fem of "fox" is now obsolete)	

52 Foreign Feminines —

Masculine	*Feminine*	*Masculine*	*Feminine*
Administrator	administratrix	Hero	heroine
Beau	belle	Prosecutor	prosecutrix
Czar	czarina	Signor	signora
Don	donna	Sultan	sultana
Executor	executrix	Testator	testatrix

53 Double Feminines —The two examples of this are *songstress* and *seamstress*

Originally *ster* was a Feminine suffix, as it still is in "spinster" But the Feminine force of *st r* in "songster" and "seamster" has been lost, and so the Feminine form is now shown by changing *er* into *ress*

54 The following are examples of Nouns in the **Common** gender —

Parent—father or mother
Relation—male or female relation
Friend—enemy—male or female friend or enemy
Cousin—male or female cousin
Bird—cock or hen
Peafowl—peacock or peahen

Fowl—cock or hen
Child—boy or girl, son or daughter
Deer—stag or hind.
Fallow deer—buck or doe
Baby (or infant)—male or female baby (or infant)
Servant—man servant or maid-servant
Monarch—king or queen, emperor or empress.
Person—man or woman
Pupil—boy student or girl student
Orphan—boy or girl without parents.
Pig—boar or sow
Sheep—ram or ewe
Elephant—male or female elephant
Cat—male or female cat.
Rat—male or female rat
Mouse—male or female mouse
Fox—male or female fox
Cattle—cows alone, or cows and bulls mixed
Swine—sows alone, or sows and boars mixed
Spouse—husband or wife
Foal—colt or filly
Calf—bullock or heifer

55 There are some Masculine and some Feminine nouns, which, though they have a distinct form for the Feminine and Masculine respectively, can be used as nouns of the Common gender, provided that no question arises as to whether the animal named is a male or a female —*dog*, *duck*, *horse*, *bee*, *goose*, *colt*

That is a fine little *colt*
That *horse* of yours is a splendid stepper
A *goose* is a much bigger bird than a *duck*

56 Personified Things—Inanimate objects or qualities are sometimes spoken of as if they were persons They are then said to be "personified" (see § 45) Such nouns are regarded as male or female, and admit therefore of being Masculine or Feminine

A noun, when it is thus personified, is commenced with a capital letter, and is used as a Proper noun

As a general rule things remarkable for strength, greatness, superiority, etc , are regarded as males , as the Sun, June, Summer, Winter, the Dawn, the Morn, Death, War, Majesty

On the other hand, states or qualities expressed by Abstract nouns, and whatever is supposed to possess beauty, fertility, grace, inferiority, etc., are regarded as females , as the Earth, Spring, Hope, Virtue, Truth, Justice, Mercy, Charity, Peace, Humility, Jealousy, Pride, Fame, Modesty, Liberty, Flattery etc The Moon is regarded

as Feminine, because she is an inferior luminary to her supposed brother, the Sun, from whom her rays are borrowed.

There is nothing in the *form* of these personifications which can show the genders. The gender is disclosed by the pronouns *he* or *she*, whenever such pronouns happen to be used instead of the nouns.

A ship, though it is not commenced with a capital letter, is always spoken of as *she*. The same is often said of a railway train.

§ 4.—Case.

57. **Case defined.**—The *relation* in which a noun stands to some other word, or the *change of form* by which this relation is indicated, is called its **Case**.

58. There are three Cases in English,—the *Nominative*, the *Possessive*, and the *Objective*.

But the Possessive is the only case that is *now* indicated by a case ending or *change of form*. The other cases have lost their case-endings, and are indicated only by grammatical relation.

59. When a noun is used as the *subject* to a verb or for the sake of *address*, it is said to be in the **Nominative** case.

Rain falls. (*Nominative of Subject.*)
Are you coming, my *friend?* (*Nominative of Address.*)

60. When a noun is the *object* to a verb or to a preposition, it is said to be in the **Objective** case.

The man killed a *rat*. (*Object to Verb.*)
The earth is moistened by *rain*. (*Obj. to Prep.*)

61. The **Possessive** case is so called, because it usually denotes the *possessor* or owner. It is formed by adding *'s* (which is called *apostrophe s*) to the noun; as—

Singular—man's | *Plural*—men's

N.B.—The old inflection for the Possessive case was *es*. When the *e* was omitted, as it now always is, the absence of the *e* was indicated by the comma or apostrophe; as *moon*, *moones*, *moon's*.

62. There are three kinds of instances in which the apostrophe *s* is omitted:—

(*a*) After all plural nouns ending in *s*; as—

Horses' tails; the *birds'* nests; the *dogs'* kennels.

(*b*) Whenever the last syllable of a Singular noun begins and ends with *s*; as—

Moses' laws. (But we must say *Venus's* beauty; *James's* hat, etc.)

(*c*) Whenever the last syllable of a Singular noun ends with *s* or *ce*, and the noun is followed by "sake", as—

Conscience' sake, for *goodness'* sake (But we must say—a *mouse's* skin, *James's* smile.)

63 Nouns denoting *inanimate* objects are seldom put in the Possessive case. Thus we cannot say, "the *house's* roof", "the *town's* street", "the *garden's* fruit", *Bengal's* seaport", "human *life's* brevity", "the *cottage's* door".

Possession in such cases is indicated by the preposition "of", or the noun can sometimes be used as if it were an adjective.

> The flowers *of* summer = the *summer* flowers
> The door *of* the cottage = the *cottage* door
> The light *of* a lamp = a *lamp* light

64 The Possessive case was once used with any kind of noun, but it is now restricted to those shown below:—

(1) Nouns denoting *persons*, as—

Gopal's book, a *man's* foot. (But we cannot say "a library's book," "the mountain's foot," since "library" and "mountain" are inanimate objects.)

(2) Nouns denoting any kind of *living* thing other than man, as—

A *cat's* tail, a *horse's* head, a *bird's* feathers.

(3) Nouns denoting *personified* things, as—

Fortune's favourite, *Sorrow's* tears, *England's* heroes.

(4) Nouns denoting time, space, or weight, as—

Time.—A *day's* journey, a *month's* holiday, three *weeks'* leave, a *year's* absence, at six *months'* sight, three *days'* grace.
Space.—A *boat's* length, a *hand's* breadth, a *hair's* breadth, a *razor's* edge, a *stone's* throw, a *needle's* point.
Weight.—A *pound's* weight, a *ton's* weight.

(5) Nouns signifying certain dignified objects, as—

The *court's* decree, the *sun's* rays, the *moon's* crescent, *nature's* works, the *earth's* creatures, the *soul's* delight, *heaven's* will, the *law's* delays, *truth's* triumph, the *mind's* eye, the *ocean's* roar, *duty's* call, the *river's* bank, the *country's* good.

Note.—The Possessive is also used in a few familiar phrases, in which it has been retained for the sake of shortness—

Out of *harm's* way, at his *wit's* end, for *mercy's* sake, he did it to his *heart's* content, the *ship's* passengers, at his *fingers'* ends, he got to his *journey's* end, the *boat's* crew.

65. Possessive Case in Apposition.—When one Possessive

case is in Apposition with another (§ 19), the apostrophe *s* is added only to that noun which is mentioned last.

Herod married his *brother* Philip's wife

66 Possessive Case in Phrases —The *'s* may be added to the last word of a phrase, when the phrase is regarded as a Compound noun and denotes some person or persons

The Government of India's order
My son in law's house
The Duke of Sutherland's death

67 "Of" before a Possessive —This occurs in such phrases as "that book of James's," "that handsome face of my father's"

Three explanations have been offered —(1) "Of my father's" is an ellipse for "of my father's faces" Here "faces" is the Object to "of" This is good grammar, but it makes nonsense (2) "Of my father's" is a Double Possessive This is possible (3) The "of" merely denotes apposition, as in "the continent *of* Asia," which means "the continent, *namely* Asia" Similarly the phrase "that face *of* my father's" can mean "that face, *namely* my father's (face)"

The ambiguity of the preposition "of" is sometimes removed by placing a Possessive noun after it Thus, "a picture of the Queen" means a picture containing a likeness of the Queen But "a picture of the *Queen's*" means a picture of which the Queen is owner

68 A noun denoting some kind of place or building is sometimes omitted after a noun in the Possessive case

I will see you at the barber's (shop)
We found him studying hard at his tutor's (house)

§ 5 —Number.

69 When *one* thing is spoken of, the noun is *Singular*, when *two* or *more* things are spoken of, the noun is *Plural*

The only kinds of nouns that (strictly speaking) admit of being pluralised are Common and Collective nouns

But Proper, Material, and Abstract nouns can also be put in the Plural number, when they are used as Common nouns (§ 46)

70 The general rule for forming the Plural number of a noun is by adding *s* to the Singular, as—

Singular	*Plural*	*Singular*	*Plural*
Hand	hands	House	houses

But if the noun ends in *s*, *x*, *sh*, or *ch*, the Plural is formed by adding *es* to the Singular, as—

Singular	*Plural*	*Singular*	*Plural*
Glass	glass-es	Brush	brush-es
Box	box-es	Bench	bench-es

71 If the noun ends in *y* and the *y* is preceded by a *consonant*, the Plural is formed by changing the *y* into *ies* —

Singular	*Plural*	*Singular*	*Plural*
Duty	duties	Army	armies
Fly	flies	Lady	ladies

But if the final *y* is preceded by a *vowel* (as in *ay*, *ey*, or *oy*), the Plural is formed by simply adding *s* to the Singular (in accordance with the general rule given in § 70) —

Singular	*Plural*	*Singular*	*Plural*
Day	days	Monkey	monkeys
Play	plays	Toy	toys
Key	keys	Boy	boys

Note Nouns ending in *quy* form the Plural in *ies*, because *qu* (=*kw*) is regarded as a double consonant, as, *colloquy*, *colloquies*

72 If the noun ends in *o*, and the *o* is preceded by a *consonant*, the Plural is generally formed by adding *es* to the Singular —

Singular	*Plural*	*Singular*	*Plural*
Cargo	cargoes	Mango	mangoes
Hero	heroes	Potato	potatoes
Buffalo	buffaloes	Echo	echoes
Motto	mottoes	Tornado	tornadoes
Negro	negroes	Volcano	volcanoes

But all words ending in *oo*, all words ending in *io*, *eo*, or *yo*, and some words ending in *o* preceded by a consonant, form the Plural in *s*, and not in *es* —

Singular	*Plural*	*Singular*	*Plural*
Bamboo	bamboos	Grotto	grottos
Cuckoo	cuckoos	Halo	halos
Portfolio	portfolios	Memento	mementos
Embryo	embryos	Proviso	provisos
Cameo	cameos	Tiro	tiros
Seraglio	seraglios	Piano	pianos
Hindoo	Hindoos	Canto	cantos
Curio	curios	Solo	solos

There are a few nouns ending in *o* which form the Plural both in *s* and *es* —

Singular	*Plural*
Calico	calicos or calicoes
Mosquito	mosquitos or mosquitoes
Portico	porticos or porticoes

73 If the noun ends in *f* or *fe*, the Plural is generally formed by changing *f* or *fe* into *ves* —

Singular	*Plural*	*Singular*	*Plural*
Wife	wives	Calf	calves
Knife	knives	Half	halves
Life	lives	Myself	ourselves
Sheaf	sheaves	Shelf	shelves
Leaf	leaves	Wolf	wolves
Thief	thieves	Elf	elves

But there are some nouns ending in *f* which form the Plural by simply adding *s* (in accordance with the general rule given in § 70) —

Singular	*Plural*	*Singular*	*Plural*
Reef	reefs	Wharf	wharfs
Chief	chiefs	Dwarf	dwarfs
Roof	roofs	Turf	turfs
Hoof	hoofs	Gulf	gulfs
Proof	proofs	Cliff	cliffs
Scarf	scarfs	Grief	griefs

There are at least three nouns ending in *fe* which form the Plural by simply adding *s* —

Safe—safes, strife—strifes, fife—fifes.

74 There are eight nouns which form the Plural by a change of the inside vowel —

Singular	*Plural*	*Singular*	*Plural*
Man	men	Tooth	teeth
Woman	women	Louse	lice
Foot	feet	Mouse	mice
Goose	geese	Dormouse	dormice

There are four nouns which form the Plural in *en* or *ne* —

Singular	*Plural*	*Singular*	*Plural*
Ox	oxen	Brother	brethren (or brothers)
Child	children	Cow	kine (or cows)

75. A compound noun generally forms the Plural by adding *s* to the principal word —

Singular	*Plural*	*Singular*	*Plural*
Father in law	fathers in law	Maid servant	maid servants
Son in law	sons in law	Foot man	foot men
Mother in law	mothers in law	Washer man	washer men
Daughter in law	daughters-in-law	Knight-errant	knights-errant
Step son	step sons	Coat of mail	coats of mail
Step-daughter	step-daughters	Court-martial	courts martial
Hanger-on	hangers on	Commander-in-chief	commanders in chief
Looker-on	lookers-on		
Passer-by	passers-by		

There are four compound nouns which take a double Plural —

Singular	*Plural*	*Singular*	*Plural*
Man-servant	men servants	Lord justice	lords-justices
Woman servant	women servants	Knight Templar	Knights-Templars

In a phrase like "Miss Brown" two different forms are used for the plural We may either say "the Miss Browns" or "the Misses Brown"

76 Foreign Plurals—These are some Plurals which have been borrowed direct from foreign nouns —

Singular	*Plural*	*Singular*	*Plural*
(Latin)		(Greek)	
Agendum	agenda	Analysis	analyses
Addendum	addenda	Basis	bases
Datum	data	Crisis	crises
Dictum	dicta	Hypothesis	hypotheses
Effluvium	effluvia	Oasis	oases
Ovum	ova	Parenthesis	parentheses
Erratum	errata	Thesis	theses
Memorandum	memoranda	Phenomenon	phenomena
Medium	media	Criterion	criteria
Stratum	strata (or stratums)	(Italian)	
Alumnus	alumni	Bandit	banditti (or bandits)
Focus	foci (or focuses)		
Fungus	fungi	(French)	
Genius	genii		
Radius	radii	Beau	beaux (or beaus)
Terminus	termini (or terminuses)		
		Bureau	bureaux
Formula	formulæ (or formulas)	Monsieur	messieurs
		Madam	mesdames
Genus	genera		
Stamen	stamina	(Hebrew)	
Axis	axes	Cherub	cherubim (or cherubs)
Index	indices		
Appendix	appendices	Seraph	seraphim (or seraphs)
Series	series		
Species	species		
Apparatus	apparatus		

77 There are some nouns, Singular in *form*, which are always used in a Plural *sense*

Cattle —These cattle are mine
Vermin —These vermin do much harm
Swine —These swine must be kept out of the garden.
People —These people have returned home

Note —When "people" is used in the sense of "nation," the Plural is "peoples"

78. There are some nouns which are either not used at all in the Plural, or are used in the Plural in some special sense.

> *Abuse.*—He gave me much abuse (reproach) for no fault.
> *Information*—He gave me all the information he had
> *Alphabet*—He learnt the alphabet before he could read
> *Furniture*—His house is full of good furniture
> *Offspring*—These four children are my offspring
> *Poetry*—He wrote very good poetry (poems)
> *Scenery*—These hills are lovely scenery
> *Issue.*—He had no issue (child or children)
> *Folk*—The old folk have gone

Note—When "abuse" is used in the sense of *wrong use*, the plural is "abuses" When more than one language is spoken of, the plural of "alphabet" is "alphabets" When "issue" means *result*, its plural is "issues."

79 There are some nouns which have the same form for the Plural as for the Singular

(a) *Names of animals*	(b) *Nouns of Number*	(c) *Weight and Money*
Deer	Yoke (of oxen)	Stone (weight)
Sheep	Brace (of birds)	Hundredweight
Fish, rarely fishes	Dozen	Pice
Heathen	Score	

> This deer, these *deer* That sheep, those *sheep* That fish, those *fish* (rarely *fishes*) Those *heathen* Nine *brace* of birds Four *yoke* of oxen Ten *dozen* books Three *score* men He weighs ten *stone* and a half That box weighs three *hundredweight* Three *pice* (Indian money)

80 Some nouns, which take the Plural form at ordinary times, retain the Singular form to express some specific quantity or number

> A ten-*rupee* note A twelve*month* A three-*foot* rule An eight-*day* clock A six *year* old horse A fort*night* (which is a contraction of "fourteen nights") Forty *head* of cattle Twelve *pound* weight.

81 There are some nouns which have two forms in the Plural,—each form with a separate meaning of its own.

Brother	Brothers,	*sons of the same mother*
	Brethren,	*members of the same society*
Cloth	Cloths,	*kinds or pieces of cloth*
	Clothes,	*articles of dress.*
Die	Dies,	*stamps for coining*
	Dice,	*small cubes used in games*
Genius	Geniuses,	*men of genius or talent*
	Genii,	*fabulous spirits of the air*
Index	Indexes,	*tables of contents.*
	Indices,	*signs used in algebra*

Staff	Staves,	*sticks or poles*
	Staffs,	*departments in the army*
Shot	Shot,	*little balls discharged from a gun*
	Shots,	*discharges, as, "he had two shots"*

82 Nouns which have one meaning in the Singular and another in the Plural —

Singular	*Plural*
Advice, counsel	*Advices*, information
Beef, flesh of ox	*Beeves*, cattle, bulls and cows
Compass, range or extent.	*Compasses*, an instrument.
Good, benefit.	*Goods*, movable property
Iron, a metal	*Irons*, fetters made of iron
Physic, medicine	*Physics*, natural science
Return, coming back	*Returns*, statistics
Vesper, evening	*Vespers*, evening prayers
Sand, a kind of matter	*Sands*, a tract of sandy land
Force, strength or energy	*Forces*, army
Air, atmosphere	*Airs*, demeanour

83 Nouns which have two meanings in the Plural against one in the Singular —

Singular		*Plural*	
Colour,	colour	*Colours*	1 Kinds of colour 2 Flag of regiment
Custom,	habit	*Customs*	1 Habits 2 *Toll* or *tax*
Letter	1 Of alphabet. 2 Epistle	*Letters*	1 Of alphabet. 2 Epistles 3 *Learning*
Pain,	suffering	*Pains*	1 Sufferings 2 *Trouble, care*
Effect,	result	*Effects*	1 Results 2 *Goods and chattels*
Manner,	mode or way	*Manners*	1 Modes, ways 2 *Behaviour*
Number,	as in counting	*Numbers*	1 As in counting 2 *Poetry*
Part,	portion	*Parts*	1 Portions. 2 *Abilities*
Spectacle,	anything seen	*Spectacles*	1 Things seen 2 *Glasses to help the sight.*
Premise,	a statement or proposition	*Premises*	1 Propositions 2 *Surroundings to a house*
Quarter,	a fourth part	*Quarters*	1 Fourth parts. 2 *Lodgings*

84 True Singulars used as Plurals

By a "True Singular" we mean that the final *s* is part of the original Singular noun, and not a sign of the Plural

Such nouns, though Singular by etymology, are liable to be considered Plural on account of the final *s*, and two of them are now always used as if they were Plural

Summons —This noun is still correctly used as a Singular, as, "I received *a* summons to attend", "*this* summons reached me to-day" The Plural form is *summonses*

Alms —"He asked *an alms*" (New Testament) But now the word is generally used as if it were Plural, as, "I gave alms to the beggar, and for *these* he thanked me"

Eaves —The edge or lower borders of the roof of a house The word is now always used as a Plural, as, "The eaves *are* not yet finished"

Riches —This too is really a Singular, as, "In one hour is so great riches come to naught" (New Testament), but now on account of the final *s*, this noun is always used as a Plural, as, "Riches *do* not last for ever"

85 True Plurals used as Singulars

By "True Plurals" are meant nouns in which the final *s* is really a sign of the Plural

Amends —This is sometimes used as a Singular and sometimes as a Plural, as, "He made *an* amends" "I accept *these* amends"

Means —This is now almost always used as a Singular, as, "By *this* means"

News —This is now almost always used as a Singular, as, "Ill news *runs* apace"

Innings —This is a word used in cricket to denote the turn for going in and using the bat It is *always* used as a Singular, as, "We have not yet had *an* innings", "our eleven beat the other by *an* innings and ten runs"

Gallows —The frame work from which criminals are hanged This noun is used as a Singular, as, "They fixed up *a* gallows"

Odds —A word used in betting, to denote the difference of one wager against another "We gave him *a* heavy odds against ourselves."

86 There are some nouns which are never used in the Singular These are for the most part names of things, which imply plurality or consist of more parts than one —

(*a*) Instruments or tools —*arms* (in the sense of weapons), *bellows*, *fetters*, *pincers*, *scissors*, *tongs*, *shears*, *snuffers*, *tweezers*

(*b*) Articles of dress —*breeches*, *drawers*, *pantaloons*, *trappings*, *trousers*, *hose*

(*c*) Kinds of disease —*measles*, *mumps*, *staggers*, *small pox* (originally spelt as *small-pocks*)

(*d*) Parts of the body —*bowels, entrails, intestines, giblets.*
(*e*) The names of sciences or subjects ending in *ics*, such as ***physics***, *politics, ethics, metaphysics,* etc

(These nouns are Plural, because the corresponding Greek words, from which they have been transliterated, are Plural)

(*f*) Miscellaneous words, such as *ashes, annals, assets, dregs, embers, chattels, lees, nuptials, obsequies, shambles, statistics, victuals, hustings, proceeds, thanks, tidings, downs, suds, wages, chaps, auspices, billiards, environs, thews, mews, contents, credentials,* etc

Parsing Model for Nouns

(a) *Boys learn grammar in the class*

Boys—Common noun, plural number, masculine gender, nominative case, subject to the verb "learn "

Learn—Verb

Grammar—Abstract noun, singular number, neuter gender, objective case, after the verb "learn "

In—Preposition, having "class ' for its object

The—Adjective qualifying "class "

Class—Collective noun, singular number, neuter gender, objective case, after the preposition "in "

(b) *Cow's milk is often drunk by young children*

Cow s—Common noun, singular number, feminine gender, possessive case

Milk—Material noun, singular number, neuter gender, nominative case, subject to the verb "is drunk "

Often—Adverb of time, qualifying the verb "is drunk "

Is drunk—Verb

By—Preposition, having "children ' for its object

Young—Adjective qualifying "children "

Children—Common noun, plural number, common gender, objective case, after the preposition " by "

(c) *The flock of sheep is eating grass in James's orchard*

The—Adjective qualifying "flock "

Flock—Collective noun, singular number, neuter gender, nominative case, subject to the verb "is eating '

Of—Preposition, having "sheep" for its object

Sheep—Common noun, plural number, common gender, objective case, after the preposition "of"

Is eating—Verb

Grass—Material noun, singular number, neuter gender, objective case, after the verb "is eating"

In—Preposition, having "orchard" for its object.

James s—Proper noun, singular number, masculine gender, possessive case

Orchard—Collective noun, singular number, neuter gender, objective case, after the preposition "in "

CHAPTER III —ADJECTIVES

§ 1 —The Kinds of Adjectives

87 Adjective defined.—An Adjective is a word used to qualify a noun (§ 14)

In parsing an adjective this is the definition invariably used, and it is therefore convenient to retain it But it needs explanation An adjective, as we know, denotes a property of some kind or other When we say that it qualifies or modifies a noun, we mean that it *restricts* the application of the noun to such persons or things as possess the property denoted by the adjective

Every adjective, therefore, has a *restrictive* force, and it might be defined as "*a word used to restrict the application of a noun.*"[1]

88 There are altogether six different kinds of Adjectives —

(1) **Proper** describing a thing by some *Proper noun*
(2) **Descriptive** showing *of what quality* or *in what state* a thing is
(3) **Quantitative** showing *how much of* a thing is meant
(4) **Numeral** showing *how many* things or *in what order*
(5) **Demonstrative** showing *which* or *what* thing is meant
(6) **Distributive** showing that things are taken *separately* or *in separate lots*

Proper Adjectives.

89 Proper Adjectives restrict the application of a noun to such persons or things as are included within the scope of some Proper name (A Proper adjective must begin with a capital letter)

The *Indian* plains = the plains of India
A *Chinese* pilgrim = a pilgrim from China.
The *Turkish* empire = the empire of the Turks
The *Gangetic* plain = the plain watered by the Ganges
The *English* language = the language of England

---

[1] This is an abridged form of the definition given by Mason, who, in *English Grammar*, p 87, § 88, defines an adjective thus :—"An adjective is a word which may limit (=restrict) the application of a noun to that which has the quality, the quantity, or the relation which the adjective denotes."

Descriptive Adjectives —Quality or State

90 Descriptive Adjectives restrict the application of a noun to such persons or things as possess the *quality* or *state* denoted by the adjective

A *brave* boy a *sick* lion, a *tame* cat, a *large* field, a *black* horse, an *industrious* student, a *careful* workman

Quantitative Adjectives —Quantity or Degree

91 Quantitative Adjectives restrict the application of a noun to such things as are of the *quantity* or *degree* denoted by the adjective

The chief adjectives of this class are—*Much*, *little*, *no* or *none*, *some*, *any*, *enough* or *sufficient*, *all* or *whole*, *half*

He ate *much* (a large quantity of) bread
He ate *little* (a small quantity of) bread
He ate *no* bread I had *none*
He ate *some* (a certain quantity of) bread
He did not eat *any* (any quantity of) bread
He ate *enough* or *sufficient* bread
He ate *all* the (the *whole* quantity of) bread
A *half* holiday is better than *none*

Note —"No" is used when the noun that it qualifies is expressed "None" is used when the noun is understood

92 Adjectives of Quantity are always followed by a *Singular* noun, and this noun must always be either a noun of *Material* or an *Abstract* noun, as "much bread" (noun of Material), "much pain" (a high degree of pain, Abstract noun)

Note —It is idiomatic to speak of a *quantity* of matter (Material noun), and a *degree* of some quality (Abstract noun) Hence adjectives of Quantity have also been called adjectives of Degree

Numeral Adjectives

93 Numeral Adjectives restrict the application of a noun to such persons or things as are of the *number* or *serial order* denoted by the adjective

Numeral Adjectives are subdivided into two main classes —

I Definite II Indefinite

94 **Definite** numerals denote some *exact* number

Those which show *how many* things there are (as one, two, three, four, etc) are called **Cardinals**

Those which show the *serial order* in which a thing stands (as first, second, third, etc) are called **Ordinals**.

Those which show *how often* a thing is *repeated* are called **Multiplicative**

Cardinals.	*Ordinals*	*Multiplicatives*
One	first	one only, single, simple
Two	second	twofold, double
Three	third	threefold, treble, triple
Four	fourth	fourfold, quadruple (four times one)
Six	sixth	sixfold (six times one)
Seven	seventh	sevenfold (seven times one)

95 Indefinite numerals denote number of some kind without saying precisely what the number is —

All, some, enough, no or *none*, *many, few*, *several, sundry.*

All men are mortal	*Some* men die young
No men were present	Ten men will be *enough*
Many men are poor	*Few* men are rich
Several men came	*Sundry* men went away

A Definite numeral can be made Indefinite by placing the word *some* or *about* before it —

Some twenty men (=*about* twenty men, twenty men *more or less*) were present

96 The words "some," "enough," "all," "no *or* none," are adjectives of *Number* or adjectives of *Quantity*, according to the sense

If the noun qualified by such words is a Material or Abstract noun, the adjective belongs to the class of Quantity, as has been explained in § 92 But if the noun is a Common noun (or one used as a Common noun), and capable therefore of being in the Plural number, the adjective belongs to the class of Numeral —

Quantitatives	*Numerals*
Much, he had much bread	*Many*, he had many loaves of bread,
Little, he had little bread	*Few*, he had few loaves of bread
Enough, he had enough bread	*Enough*, he had loaves enough
Some, he had some bread	*Some*, he had some loaves of bread
No, he had no bread	*No*, he had no loaves of bread
All, he had all the bread	*All*, he had all the loaves of bread
Any, have you had any bread ?	*Any*, did you bring any loaves ?

Demonstrative Adjectives

97 Demonstrative Adjectives restrict the application of a noun to those persons or things that are intended to be *pointed out* by the adjective.

The word *Demonstrative* means "pointing out."

98 Adjectives of this kind are subdivided (as Numeral adjectives are) into two main classes —

I. Definite. II Indefinite.

When a person or thing is pointed out *exactly*, as "this man," the adjective is called a **Definite** Demonstrative

When it is pointed out in a certain sense, but *not exactly*, it is called an **Indefinite** Demonstrative —

Definite		*Indefinite*	
Singular	*Plural*	*Singular*	*Plural*
The	the	A, an	*nil*
This	these	One, any	any
That, yon, yonder	those, yon, yonder	A certain	certain
Such	such	Such	such
The same, or self same	the same, or self same	Some	some
The other	the other	Another, any other	other, any other

Demonstrative adjectives are few in number, and all of them are given in the above list

99 The adjective "*the*" is sometimes called the **Definite Article**, and "*a*" or "*an*" is called the **Indefinite Article** (§ 15)

An is used before a vowel or silent *h*, as—

> *An* apple, *an* egg, *an* ink bottle, *an* heir, *an* hour, *an* honest man, *an* ox

A is used before a consonant, before *u* sounded as *yoo*, and before *o* sounded as *wu* —

A kite, *a* cart, *a* bottle, *a* useful thing, *a* unit, *a* one-eyed man

Even before an aspirated *h* we use *an*, provided the accent is on the *second* syllable —thus, we say "*a* his'to ry,' because here the accent is on the *first* syllable "*his*", but we say "*an* his tor'i cal account," because here the accent is on the *second* syllable "*tor*"

Distributive Adjectives

100 Distributive Adjectives restrict the application of a noun by showing that the persons or things denoted by the noun are taken *singly*, or *in separate lots*

101 There are four Adjectives of this class —*each, every, either, neither*.

(*a*) **Each** —This means one of *two* things or one of any number *exceeding two* —

The *two* men had *each* a gun
The *twenty* men had *each* a gun

(*b*) **Every.**—This is never used for one of two, but always for some number *exceeding two* —

Every man (out of the *twenty present*) had a gun

Note —"Every" is a stronger word than "each," and means "*each without exception*" —"*all* the individuals of a group, taken *singly*"

"**Every six hours**" and similar expressions —This means every *period or space of six hours*, six hours being taken collectively as *one* period of time —

He came *every five hours* (=at the close of every space of five hours)

"**Every other**"—This means *every second* or *each alternate*, as—

He was attacked with fever *every other day* (=on every second day)

(*c*) **Either** —This has two meanings—(1) *one of two*, or (2) *each of two*—that is, *both*

(1) You can take *either* side, that is, one side or the other
(2) The river overflowed on *either* side, that is, on both sides

(*d*) **Neither** —This is the negative of "either," and signifies "neither the one nor the other" —

"You should take *neither* side", that is, neither this side nor that, neither the one side nor the other

§ 2 —The Two Uses of Adjectives.

102 There are two different ways in which an Adjective can be used—(*a*) the Attributive, and (*b*) the Predicative

(*a*) *Attributive use* —An adjective is used attributively, when it qualifies its noun *directly*, so as to make a kind of compound noun —

A *lame* horse A *noble* character

All true adjectives can be used attributively But we cannot say "an asleep man," because "asleep" and similar words are not adjectives, but adverbs (§ 236, 2)

(*b*) *Predicative use.*—An adjective is used predicatively, when it qualifies its noun *indirectly*—through the verb or predicate going before

That horse went *lame* His character is *noble*

An adjective so used is a form of Complement to the verb going before (§ 25), because it completes what the verb left unsaid

§ 3.—SUBSTITUTES FOR ADJECTIVES

103 Words that restrict a noun in the same way as an adjective would restrict it, are substitutes for an adjective:—

(1) A Participle (or Verbal adjective, § 18):—

A *fading* flower. A *fallen* tree.

(2) An Adverb with some participle understood:—

The *then* (reigning) king. The *down* (going) train.

(3) A Noun or Gerund used as an Adjective:—

A *river* fish (= a fish living in rivers).
A *bathing* place (= a place used for bathing).

(4) A Noun or Pronoun in the Possessive case:—

My book. *Their* friendship. My *son's* teacher.

(5) A Verb in the Infinitive mood:—

A chair *to sit on*. Water *to drink*.

(6) A Preposition with its object:—

A man *of virtue* (= a *virtuous* man).

(7) An Adjective clause; (see clause defined in § 5):

The book *that you lent me* will not be lost.

§ 4.—COMPARISON OF ADJECTIVES

104 Most adjectives of Quality, two adjectives of Quantity, viz. *much* and *little*, and two adjectives of Number, viz. *many* and *few*, have degrees of comparison.

All other adjectives of Quantity and Number, all Proper, Demonstrative, and Distributive adjectives, and a few Descriptive adjectives of such kind as *blue, square, circular, solar, lunar, oblong, annual, monthly, vegetable, mineral, milky, golden,* etc., cannot from the kind of meaning contained in them, have degrees of comparison.

105 The degrees of comparison are three in number—the Positive, the Comparative, and the Superlative.

The **Positive** denotes the simple quality; as, "a *beautiful* horse."

The **Comparative** denotes a higher degree of the quality; as, "a *more beautiful* horse." This is used when *two* things of the same class are compared together. Comparatives are followed by "than."

The **Superlative** denotes the highest degree of the quality; as, "the *most beautiful* horse." This is used when *one* thing is compared with *all other* things of the same class.

106 In all adjectives of *more than two syllables*, and in most adjectives of two syllables, the Comparative is formed

by adding "*more*" and the Superlative by adding "*most*," as in the examples already given

107 But adjectives of one syllable and some adjectives of two syllables can also form the Comparative by adding *er* or *r*, and the Superlative by adding *est* or *st* —

(*a*) If the Positive ends in *two consonants*, or in *a single* consonant preceded by *two vowels*, *er* and *est* are added —

Small	smaller	smallest
Thick	thicker	thickest
Great	greater	greatest
Deep	deeper	deepest

(*b*) If the Positive ends in *one* consonant, and the consonant is preceded by a *short vowel*, the final consonant is doubled when *er* and *est* are added —

Thin	thinner	thinnest
Fat	fatter	fattest
Hot	hotter	hottest
Wet	wetter	wettest

(*c*) If the Positive ends in *e*, only *r* and *st* are added, and not *er* and *est* —

Brave	braver	bravest
Wise	wiser	wisest
True	truer	truest

(*d*) If the Positive ends in *y*, and the *y* is preceded by a *consonant*, the *y* is changed into *i*, when *er* and *est* are added —

Happy	happier	happiest
Dry	drier	driest

(*e*) If the *y* is preceded by a *vowel*, the *y* is not changed into *i* —

Gay	gayer	gayest
Grey	greyer	greyest

108 Some adjectives form their Comparatives and Superlatives in an irregular way —

Bad, ill, evil	worse	worst
Fore	former	foremost, first
Good	better	best
Hind	hinder	hindmost
Late	later, latter	latest, last
Little	less	least
Much (quantity)	more	most
Many (number)	more	most
Nigh	nigher	nighest, next
Old	older, elder	oldest, eldest

109 There are six words which are adverbs in the Positive degree, but adjectives in the Comparative and Superlative —

Forth	further	furthest
Far	farther	farthest
In	inner	innermost, inmost
Out	outer, utter	uttermost, utmost
Beneath	nether	nethermost
Up	upper	uppermost

The noun "top," used as an adjective, has the Superlative form "topmost" But it has no Comparative

110 Latin Comparatives —All of these end in *or*, and not in *er*, and all are followed by *to* instead of *than*

His strength	is	*superior to*	(greater than) mine
His strength	is	*inferior to*	(less than) mine
This event	is	*anterior to*	(earlier than) that
This event	is	*prior to*	(earlier than) that
This event	is	*posterior to*	(later than) that
This man	is	*senior to*	(older than) that
This man	is	*junior to*	(younger than) that

CHAPTER IV —PRONOUNS

111 Pronoun defined —A Pronoun is a word used instead of a noun or noun-equivalent (§ 7)

The usefulness of pronouns is best seen by trying to do without them —

John saw a snake in the garden, *this snake John* thought would hurt *John*, unless *John* killed *the snake* with a stick, *this stick John* had in *John's* hand

The nouns in italics can all be replaced by pronouns, and the sentence can be much better expressed as follows —

John saw a snake in the garden, *which he* thought would hurt *him*, unless *he* killed *it* with a stick *which he* had in *his* hand

The chief use, then, of Pronouns is to save the repetition of nouns

112 Three facts follow from the above definition —

(*a*) Since a pronoun is used instead of a noun, it must be itself a noun or something equivalent to a noun

(*b*) Since a pronoun is intended to stand for some

noun going before, the pronoun should not as a rule be mentioned, until the noun has been mentioned.

(c) Since a pronoun is used instead of a noun, it must be of the same number, gender, and person as the noun it stands for.

113 There are four different kinds of Pronouns.—

(1) **Personal**; as, *I*, *thou*, *he*, *she*, etc

(2) **Demonstrative**, as, *this*, *that*, *such*, *one*, etc

(3) **Relative**, as, *which*, *who*, *that*, *as*, etc

(4) **Interrogative**, as, *who?* *which?* *what?*

§ 1 —Personal Pronouns

114 The **Personal Pronouns** are so called, because they stand for the three persons, viz —

(a) The First, which denotes the person *speaking*, as, *I*, *we*, *myself* —

I (*the person now speaking*) will do all I can to win a prize at the end of the year

(b) The Second, which denotes the person *spoken to*, as, *thou*, *you*, *thyself* —

You (*the person now spoken to*) should leave off this habit of idleness

(c) The Third, which denotes the person or thing *spoken of*, as, *he*, *she*, *it*, *himself*, *herself*, *itself* —

He (*the person already mentioned*) did a good day's work with his tutor

115 Forms of Personal Pronouns —Personal Pronouns have the same differences of gender, number, and case that nouns have —

I *The First Person, Masculine or Feminine*

Case	Singular	Plural
Nominative	I	We
Possessive	My, mine	Our, ours
Objective	Me	Us

II. *The Second Person, Masculine or Feminine*

Case	Singular	Plural
Nominative	Thou	Ye or you
Possessive	Thy, thine	Your, yours
Objective	Thee	You

III *The Third Person, of all Genders*

Case	Singular			Plural
	Masculine	Feminine	Neuter	All Genders
Nominative	He	She	It	They
Possessive	His	Her or hers	Its	Their or theirs
Objective	Him	Her	It	Them

116 Two Forms of Possessive—Most of the Personal pronouns have two forms for the Possessive —

	Singular			Plural		
First Form	My	Thy	Her	Our	Your	Their
Second ,,	Mine	Thine	Hers	Ours	Yours	Theirs

The first is used, when the Possessive is placed *before* its noun It qualifies the noun like an adjective

This is *my* book   That is *their* house.

The second is used—(*a*) when the pronoun is separated from its noun by a verb coming between, (*b*) when the noun is understood, (*c*) when the pronoun is preceded by "of" —

(*a*) This book is *mine* That house is *theirs*
(*b*) My horse and *yours* (your horse) are both tired
(*c*) That horse *of yours* is tired.

Note 1 —"Hers," "ours," "yours," "theirs" are in fact **Double Possessives**, the "*r*" being one sign of the Possessive, and the "*s*" another In such phrases as "of yours," the "of" denotes apposition See § 67

Note 2 —In poetry "mine" and "thine" are sometimes placed *before* their nouns, when the noun following begins with a vowel. This is done to separate the sounds of the two vowels —

Look through *mine eyes* with thine —*Tennyson*.

Note 3 —In poetry "mine" can be placed after its noun, as "mother mine" instead of "my mother"

117 Reflexive Personal Pronouns.—These are formed by adding "self" or "own" to a Personal pronoun

I *The First Person*

Case	Singular	Plural
Nom or Obj	Myself	Ourselves
Possessive	My or mine own	Our own

II *The Second Person*

Case	Singular	Plural
Nom. or Obj	Thyself	Yourselves
Possessive	Thy or thine own	Your own

III *The Third Person*

Case	Singular			Plural
	Masculine	Feminine.	Neuter	All Genders.
Nom. or Obj	Himself	Herself	Itself	Themselves
Possessive	His own	Her own	Its own	Their own

118. Uses of Reflexive Forms—The Reflexive forms of Personal pronouns are used for two purposes—(*a*) to show that the person (or thing) does something to himself (or itself), (*b*) to make the pronouns more emphatic

Examples of (a)

Singular	*Plural*
I hid myself	We hid ourselves.
I hit my own head	We hit our own heads
Thou lovest thine own work.	You love your own work
The cat seated itself	The cats seated themselves.

Examples of (b)

Singular	*Plural*
I myself saw the horse	We ourselves saw it
Thou thyself sawest the horse	You yourselves saw it
He himself (or she herself) saw it	They themselves saw it
The wall itself fell	The walls themselves fell

§ 2 —Demonstrative Pronouns

119 A Demonstrative Pronoun is one that *points to* some noun going before, and is used instead of it This noun is called the Antecedent

120 Forms of Demonstrative Pronouns —The chief pronouns belonging to the class of Demonstratives are — *this, that, these, those, one, ones, none, such*

The student will have observed that these words have appeared already in the list of Demonstrative *Adjectives* Where, then, is the difference ?

When they are followed by a noun, or require some noun to be understood after them, they are Adjectives

When they are used as substitutes for some noun previously mentioned, and cannot have any noun either expressed or understood after them, they are **Pronouns**

(*a*) He came to my house *one* day

Here *one* is an adjective (Indefinite Demonstrative) qualifying its noun "day"

(*b*) Your coat is black, mine is a white *one*

Here *one* is a pronoun, which is used as a substitute for the previously mentioned noun "coat," and is qualified by the adjective "white"

121 He, she, it, they —The simplest forms of Demonstrative pronouns are *he, she, it, they*

These have been hitherto called "Personal pronouns," partly because they exemplify the Third person as distinct from the First and Second, and partly because "he" and "she" and sometimes "they" do actually relate to *persons*, and not to things

Yet it is equally correct to call them Demonstrative pronouns, since they *point to* some noun going before and are *substituted* for it

(1) My father has gone, we saw *him* start a short time ago (Here *him* is a Demonstrative pronoun used as a substitute for its Antecedent noun "father")
(2) My mother came yesterday, we were glad to see *her* (Here *her* is a Demonstrative pronoun used as a substitute for its Antecedent noun "mother")
(3) The sun has risen, *it* shines brightly (Here *it* is a Demonstrative pronoun used as a substitute for the noun "sun")
(4) The travellers fell asleep as soon as *they* arrived (Here *they* is a Demonstrative pronoun substituted for the noun "travellers.")

122 It —This pronoun has three distinct modes of reference —

(*a*) To a *noun* going before In this sense it is merely a Demonstrative pronoun used in the ordinary way —

The sun has risen *it* (= the sun) shines brightly

(*b*) To a *clause* going before —

I have treated him as he deserved, and he knows *it* (Here "it" points to the clause "I have treated him as he deserved")

(*c*) To a *phrase* or *clause* coming after —

It is sad *to hear such bad news* (*Phrase*)
It —viz "to hear such bad news"—is sad
It is probable *that it will rain to-day* (*Clause*)
It—viz "that it will rain to day"—is probable

123 This, that, these, those —The uses of these words as *pronouns*, and not as *adjectives*, are as follows —

(*a*) When two nouns have been mentioned in a previous sentence or clause, "**this**" has reference to the *latter* and "**that**" to the *former* —

(1) Work and play are both necessary to health, *this* (=play) gives us rest, and *that* (= work) gives us energy
(2) Dogs are more faithful animals than cats, *these* (=cats) attach themselves to places, and *those* (= dogs) to persons

Observe that in the first of these sentences "*this*" does not specify *which* or *what* play is meant, and therefore it is not a Demonstrative Adjective It is simply put as a *substitute* for the noun "play," and therefore it is a Demonstrative Pronoun
The same explanation holds good for the other examples

(*b*) The word "**that**," together with its plural form "**those**," is used as substitute for a single noun previously mentioned —

(1) The air of the hills is cooler than *that* (=the air) of the plains
(2) The houses of the rich are larger than *those* (= the houses) of the poor

Observe the word "that" in the first example does not qualify the noun "air" by saying *which* air or *what* air, and therefore it is not an Adjective It stands for "air" in general, and is a *substitute* for the noun "air", and therefore it is a Pronoun

(c) The words "**this**" or "**that**" can be used as substitutes for a *clause* or *sentence* previously mentioned —

(1) I studied Greek and Latin when I was young, and *that* (=I studied Greek and Latin) at Oxford

Here by using the pronoun "*that*" as a substitute for the sentence "I studied Greek and Latin," we not only avoid repeating this sentence a second time, but we give some emphasis to the words "at Oxford"

(2) Make the best use of your time at school, *that's* a wise boy

Here "*that*" = "one who makes the best use of his time at school." All this repetition is avoided by using the pronoun "*that*" as a substitute for the implied sentence

(3) You paid your debts, and *this* (=the payment of your debts) is quite sufficient to prove your honesty

124. One, ones —When the antecedent noun is in the Singular number, we use "*one*", but when the antecedent noun is Plural, we use "*ones*"

(1) He gained a prize last year, but he did not gain *one* (=a prize) this term (*Singular*)

(2) There were six lazy boys and four industrious *ones* (=boys) in our class (*Plural*)

125 Such, so —"Such" can be substituted for a noun in either number —

(1) He is the judge appointed to hear this case, and as *such* (=as the appointed judge) you must not speak to him before the trial (*Singular*)

(2) Kings are constituted *such* (=kings) by law, and should be obeyed (*Plural*)

"So" is sometimes used in places where we could also use "such", but "so" is a Demonstrative *Adverb*, and not a Demonstrative *Pronoun* —

My business is urgent, and I hope you will treat it *so* (=as urgent)
Is he an enemy? He is *so* (=an enemy)

Examples for Practice.

Show whether the words printed in italics are Demonstrative **Adjectives** *or Demonstrative* **Pronouns** —

This horse is stronger than *that*
Health is of more value than money, *this* cannot give such true happiness as *that*
I prefer a white horse to a black *one*

You will repent of this *one* day, when it is too late

You have kept your promise, *this* was all that I asked for

The faithfulness of a dog is greater than *that* of a cat.

One Mr B. helped his friend in need, *that* was a true friend

Return to your work, and *that* immediately

Bring me *that* book, and leave *this* where it is

The step you have taken is *one* of much risk

Such a book as yours deserves to be well read

Prosperous men are much exposed to flattery, for *such* alone can be made to pay for it.

Prosperous men are not always more happy than unlucky *ones*

A pale light, like *that* of the rising moon, begins to fringe the horizon

Will you ride *this* horse or *that*?

A stranger could not be received twice as *such* in the same house

The plan you have chosen does not seem to me to be a wise *one*

One man says *this*, another *that*, whom should I believe?

126 Indefinite Demonstrative Pronouns—Sometimes Demonstrative pronouns are used *indefinitely*, that is, they are not used as substitutes for some noun expressly mentioned, but for some noun understood or implied

(*a*) **They**—This pronoun is sometimes used for *men in general*, or some person whose name is purposely concealed —

(1) *They* say (=men in general say) that truth and honesty is the best policy

(2) *They* told me (=some person or persons, whom I do not wish to name, told me) that you were guilty of theft

(*b*) **One**—This pronoun is often used in the sense of *any person* or *every person* —

One should take care of *one's* health

=*A man* (any and every man) should take care of *his* health

Note 1—Whenever "one" is the subject to a verb, it must be followed by "one" and not by "he" Thus we cannot say, "*one* must take care of *his* health"

Note 2—"None" (=no one) should be followed by a Singular verb, when it is the Subject of the sentence —

None but the brave *deserves* the fair —*Dryden*

But when several persons or things are spoken of, the verb can be made Plural by attraction —

None of my lost books *were* found

(*c*) **It**—The indefinite use of this pronoun is against all rules of number, person, and gender.

Who is *it*? *It* is I. Is *it* you? No, *it* is he.

In such phrases as those shown below, "*it*" gives emphasis to the noun or pronoun following —

It was I who told you that *It* is the men who work hardest, not the women *It* was the queen who died yesterday *It* is little things that chiefly disturb the mind

Sometimes the noun, for which the word "*it*" is used, can be understood from the context —

It is raining = rain is raining or falling
It is blowing hard = the wind is blowing hard
It is fine to day = the weather is fine to day
It is hot = the air is hot *It* is cold = the air is cold
It is still early = the hour is still early
It is two miles from here = the distance is two miles
It was autumn = the season of the year was autumn

Sometimes the word "*it*" is used instead of some Personal pronoun to express endearment or contempt —

What a pretty little girl *it* is (= she is)! (*Endearment*)
What an ass *it* is (= that man is)! (*Contempt*)

§ 3 —Relative or Conjunctive Pronouns

127 A **Relative Pronoun** not only refers to some noun going before (as a Demonstrative pronoun does), but it also *joins two sentences together* (which a Demonstrative pronoun does not do) It is therefore a Conjunctive pronoun (§ 18)

This is a good house, I live in *it* (*Demonstrative Pronoun*)
This house, in *which* I live, is a good one (*Relative Pronoun*)

128 Who, which —The Relative pronoun is most commonly expressed by *who* or *which*

Case	Singular and Plural	Singular and Plural.
	Masculine and Feminine	Neuter
Nominative	Who	Which
Possessive	Whose	Whose or of which
Objective	Whom	Which

The most common form of the Possessive Neuter is "of which," but "whose" is often used in poetry, and sometimes in prose

Note —The Masculine and Feminine forms are used for *persons* only The Neuter forms are used for inanimate things and for all kinds of animals except persons (men and women)

129. Forms of Antecedent —The antecedent may take the form of a noun, a pronoun, or a clause —

You have paid your debts, which (=the fact that you have paid your debts) is a clear proof of your honesty (*Clause.*)

130 Antecedent understood.—When the antecedent is understood, the neuter Relative takes the form of "**what**," while the Masculine and Feminine retain the form of "who"

(*a*) *Who* = *he who*, or *she who*, or *they who*

Who (=he who) steals my purse, steals trash —*Shakspeare*
Whom (=those persons whom) the gods love, die young —*Proverb*

(*b*) *What* = *the thing which*, or *the things which*

I cannot tell you now *what* (=the things which) then happened
The laws are *what* (=the things which) you say they are

(*c*) *So*, *ever*, or *soever* added to the Relative pronoun or to Relative adverbs (§ 18, 3) gives the meaning of totality —

Whosoever (=any and every person who) breaks this law will be punished, *wherever* (in any and every place where) he may live

Note 1 —"**What**" has been called a "Compound Relative," because the antecedent is said to be contained in it. But this is not correct, for the antecedent is sometimes expressed, either (*a*) in a subsequent clause, or (*b*) immediately after the Relative itself —

(*a*) *What* I tell you in darkness, *that* speak ye in the light.
(*b*) Take *what* (or *whatever*) *help* you can get

Note 2 —Whenever the antecedent is placed after the Relative, as in example (*b*), the relative is not a *substitute* word, and therefore not a true pronoun, but an adjective

Take *whichever book* (=that book of all others which) you prefer

131 That.—The word "*that*" is often used for "who," "whom," or "which," but never for "whose" —

This is the house *that* (=which) Jack built.
The man *that* (=whom) we were looking for has come

132 As —The word "as" can be used for a Relative pronoun, provided it is preceded by "such," or "as," or "the same" It may be in the Nominative or the Objective case, but not in the Possessive.

This is not *such* a good book *as* I expected
As many men *as* came were caught.
Yours is not *the same* book *as* mine (is)

After "such" and "as" the word "*as*" is always used But after "the same" it is not less common to use "*that*"

This is *the same* story *that* (=which) I heard ten years ago.
This is *the same* man *that* (=whom) I saw yesterday

Note —The use of "*that*" or "*as*" after "the same" is guided by the following rules —(1) When a verb is *expressed* after it, we generally use "*that*", (2) When the verb is *understood*, we always use "*as*" —

(1) This is the same man *that* came yesterday (*Verb expressed*)
(2) This is not the same book *as* mine (is) (*Verb understood*)

133 But —The conjunction "but," *when some Demonstrative pronoun is understood after it*, is used in the sense of "who not" or "which not" (See p 249 (*b*) on this point.)

There was no one present, *but* saw (= but *he* saw = *who* did *not* see) the deed

There is no vice so simple, *but* may (= but *it* may = *which* may *not*) become serious in time

The two uses of Who and Which

134 Restrictive, Continuative —These words denote two distinct uses of "who" or "which" —

(*a*) *Restrict* —The man *who lived there* died yesterday
(*b*) *Contin* —I have seen my friend, *who recognised* me at once

In (*a*) the Relative clause does the work of an *adjective* to the noun "man," because it *restricts* the application of this noun to that particular man who is said to have "lived there"

In (*b*) the Relative clause "who recognised me at once" has no restrictive force on the noun "friend" It simply *continues* what was said in the previous clause —"I found my friend, *and he* (= who) recognised me at once"

Note —Besides the Restrictive and the Continuative, there are two more senses of "who" and "which,"—one implying a **Cause**, and the other a **Purpose** —

(*c*) *Cause* { Balbus, *who* had been found guilty, was hanged
= Balbus, *because he* had been found guilty, was hanged }

(*d*) *Purpose* { Envoys were sent, *who* should sue for peace
= Envoys were sent, *that they* might sue for peace }

In (*c*) and (*d*) the Relative clause is neither Restrictive nor Continuative, since (*c*) implies the *cause* of something already done, and (*d*) the *purpose* for which something is going to be done

135 Who, that.—"Who" and "which" are the only Relatives that are ever used in the sense of Continuation, Cause, or Purpose The other, viz "that," is invariably used in a Restrictive sense, and much more commonly so than "who" or "which."

§ 4.—Interrogative Pronouns

136. An Interrogative Pronoun is one which asks a question.

137. Forms of Interrogatives.—The Interrogative pronoun has five different forms:

Who spoke? (Nominative to the verb.)
Of *whom* did he speak? (Objective after preposition.)
What did he say? (Objective after verb "say.")
Whose book is that? (Possessive Case.)
Which of these boys will win the prize?

138. Which, what, who.—(*a*) "Which" is used in a *selective* sense; (*b*) "who" or "what" is used in a *general* sense:—

(*a*) *Which* of these books do you prefer?
(*b*) *What* is the name of that book? *Who* wrote it?
(*c*) *What* book is that? *Which* book do you like best?

In the examples in (*c*) "*what*" and "*which*," since they are followed by nouns, are Interrogative adjectives, in the same way as a Demonstrative can be either an adjective or a pronoun (see § 120) according to the context.

139. The student should observe the different meanings of the Interrogatives used in the following sentences:—

(*a*) *Who* is he?
(*b*) *What* is he?
(*c*) *Which* is he?

In (*a*) the "who" inquires about the name or parentage of some person that has been named.

In (*b*) the "what" inquires about his calling or social status. "What is he?" A pleader.

In (*c*) the "which" inquires about some particular person out of a definite group of persons. "The man who stole my purse is among the prisoners here present: which is he? Point him out."

140. Whether.—The word "*whether*," when it signifies one of two persons or things, is now almost obsolete.

Whether of them twain (=*which* of these two men) did the will of his father?—*New Testament*.

141. Exclamatory Pronoun.—The Interrogative "*what*" may be used in an exclamatory sense.

What folly! *What* a foolish man he is!

Parsing Model for Nouns, Adjectives, and Pronouns.

The man, that shot four tigers from an elephant's back on his first day of sport, received much praise, which gave him the greatest delight

The—Definite demonstrative adjective, qualifying the noun "man"

Man—Common noun, masculine gender, singular number, nominative case, subject to the verb "received"

That—Relative pronoun, masculine gender, singular number, third person, agreeing in gender, number, and person with its antecedent "man," nominative case, subject to the verb "shot"

Shot—Verb

Four—Numeral adjective, cardinal, qualifying the noun "tigers"

Tigers—Common noun, masculine gender, plural number, objective case after the verb "shot."

From—Preposition, having "back" for its object

An—Indefinite demonstrative adjective, qualifying the noun "elephant's"

Elephant's—Common noun, common gender, singular number, possessive case, qualifying the noun "back" (§ 103, 4)

Back—Common noun, neuter gender, singular number, objective case after the preposition "from"

On—Preposition, having "day" for its object

His—Personal pronoun, masculine gender, singular number, third person, possessive case, agreeing in gender, number, and person with its antecedent "man" Qualifies the noun "day" (§ 116)

First—Numeral adjective, ordinal, qualifying the noun "day"

Day—Common noun, neuter gender, singular number, objective case after the preposition "on"

Of—Preposition, having "sport" for its object

Sport—Abstract noun, neuter gender, singular number, objective case after the preposition "of"

Received—Verb

Much—Adjective of quantity, positive degree, qualifying the noun "praise"

Praise—Abstract noun, neuter gender, singular number, objective case after the verb "received"

Which—Relative pronoun, neuter gender, singular number, third person, having the clause "received much praise" as its antecedent (§ 129), nominative case, subject to the verb "gave." Used in a Continuative sense (§ 134)

Gave—Verb

Him—Personal pronoun, masculine gender, singular number, third person, agreeing with its antecedent "man," objective case after the verb "gave" (Indirect object, see § 148)

Greatest—Adjective of quality, superlative degree, qualifying the noun "delight."

Delight—Abstract noun, neuter gender, singular number, objective case, second objective to the verb "gave." (Direct object, see § 148)

CHAPTER V.—VERBS

§ 1.—The Kinds of Verbs.

142. Verb defined.—A Verb is a word used for saying something about some person or thing (§ 14).

Verbs are subdivided into three main classes:—

I. Transitive. II. Intransitive. III. Auxiliary.

Verbs which are not used in all the moods and tenses are called "Defective."

143. *A verb is* **Transitive,** *if the action does not stop with the agent, but passes from the agent to something else:*

(1) The man killed *a snake*.
(2) I do not know *whether he has come*.

The word or words denoting that person or thing, to which the action of the verb is directed, are called the **Object** to the verb. The various grammatical forms in which the Object can be expressed have been shown in § 24, and will be shown again in § 146.

144. *A verb is* **Intransitive,** *when the action stops with the agent, and does not pass from the agent to anything else:*

Men sleep to preserve life.

Sleep what? This is nonsense. No word or words can be placed as object to such a verb as "sleep."

145. An **Auxiliary** verb is one which helps to form the tenses or modify the sense of some other verb:

I *may* sleep. I *will* work. You *can* swim. *Did* you speak?
He *should* learn. He *would* learn if he *could*.

Note.—The verb that is helped or modified by the Auxiliary is called the **Principal** verb. Thus "sleep" (in the first of the above examples) is the Principal verb, and "may" is the Auxiliary.

§ 2.—Transitive Verbs.

146. Forms of the Object.—Most Transitive verbs take a *single* object. The object to a verb may be expressed in various different forms, the chief of which are the following (§ 24):—

(*a*) **Noun**.—The man killed a *snake* with his stick.
(*b*) **Pronoun**.—The man lifted *me* up out of the water.

(c) **Infinitive** —He desires *to leave* us to-morrow
(d) **Gerund** —He disliked *sleeping* in the daytime
(e) **Phrase** —No one knew *how to make a beginning*
(f) **Clause** —We do not know *who has come*

147 Position of the Object—A noun denoting the object to a verb is usually placed *after* the verb to which it belongs But when the object is a Relative or Interrogative pronoun, or when emphasis is thrown on the noun used as object, the object is placed not after, but before the verb

Relative—The man *whom* I saw yesterday has come back to day
Interrogative —*What* did you say ? *Whom* were you looking for ?
Emphasis —*Silver and gold* have I none, but *what* I have give I unto thee —*New Testament*

148 The **Double Object**—Some Transitive verbs take two objects after them, one of which is usually the name of some *thing*, and the other of some *person or other animal*

The *thing* named is called the **Direct** object, the *person or other animal* named is called the **Indirect**

Note —Another way of distinguishing the two objects is by observing that the Indirect object always stands first If the Indirect is placed after the Direct, it must be preceded by the preposition "*for*" or "*to*" —

He taught Euclid (*Direct*) *to* his sons (*Indirect*)

Point out the Direct and Indirect objects in the following —

Bring me that book I *forgave* him his faults We *allowed* him two rupees We *envy* him his good luck He *taught* me English He *refused* me the loan of a book I *have asked* you a question You *answered* me nothing They *gave* the boy a prize They *sent* the boy a book They *lent* me ten rupees They *fined* him ten rupees He *owed* me twelve rupees The man *told* me the story He *showed* me the way He *left* them all his wealth They *played* him a trick He *promised* me his help He *saved* me much grief They *sold* him two horses He *did* me a great kindness He *made* me a handsome present This man *bears* me a grudge. This affair *caused* him much trouble, and *raised* him up enemies

149 Factitive Verbs—Those Transitive verbs which take *one* object only, but still require some word or words to make the predication *complete*, are called **Factitive** (§ 25)

The additional word or words by which the predication is made complete are called the **Complement**.

The Complement may be in seven different forms —a noun, an adjective, a participle, a preposition with its object, an Infinitive verb, an adverb, or a noun-clause —

	Subject	*Verb*	*Object*	*Complement*
Noun —	They	made	him	king
Adjective —	The judge	set	the prisoner	free
Participle —	They	found	her	still weeping
Prep with Object	This plot	filled	us all	with terror
Infinitive —	I	like	a rascal	to be punished
Adverb —	They	found	the man	asleep
Clause —	We	have made	him	what he is

Note —The necessity of adding a Complement to certain verbs, in order to make the predication complete, can be seen at once from the example, "I like a rascal to be punished" If you merely say, "I like a rascal,' you are saying the opposite to what you intended for you do not like a rascal, but a rascal *to be punished*, or the *punishment* of a rascal

150 Omission of the Relative as Object —This occurs in two kinds of sentences—(*a*) When the verb is Transitive, (*b*) when the verb is Intransitive, but followed by a preposition.

This never occurs, however, when the Relative is used in a Continuative sense (see § 134)

(*a*) The books I bought cost three rupees
The house we occupied has fallen down.
The man I engaged has now come
He was not careful about the air he breathed

(*b*) The house we lived in has fallen down
The chairs we sat on are ten in number
We have at last got the thing we fought for
I have brought the book you spoke about

Supply the Relative pronoun that is understood in each of the above sentences.

151 Transitive Verbs used Intransitively —There are two ways in which Transitives can become Intransitive —

(*a*) When the verb is used in such a general sense that no object or objects are thought of in using it —

Men *eat* to preserve life
A new born child *sees*, but a kitten is born blind

(*b*) When the Reflexive pronoun is omitted —

He *drew* (himself) near me. *Move* (yourself) forward

§ 3.—Intransitive Verbs

152. Intransitive Verbs of Complete Predication.—This is the name given to any Intransitive verb, which makes a complete sense by itself, and does not require any word or words to be added to it for this purpose:—

Rivers *flow*. Winds *blow*. Horses *run*, or *walk*, or *graze*, or *lie down*. Birds *fly*. All animals *sleep*. All animals *die*.

153. Intransitive Verbs of Incomplete Predication.—This is the name given to those Intransitive verbs, which do not make a complete sense by themselves, but require a **Complement** to supply what the verb left unsaid (§ 27).

The Complement to Intransitive verbs may be in the same kinds of form as the Complement to Factitive verbs:—

	Subject	*Verb*	*Complement*
Noun	A horse	is	a four-legged animal
	That beggar	turned out	a thief
Adjective	The man	has fallen	sick
	The dog	went	mad
Participle	The man	appears	pleased.
	The stag	continued	running and jumping
Prep. with Object	Your coat	is	of many colours
	That book	proved	of no use
Infinitive	The flower	seems	to be fading
	You	appear	to have forgotten me
Adverb	The man	has fallen	asleep
Clause	The results	are	what we expected

Note 1.—When the Complement comes after an Intransitive verb, it is called a **Subjective Complement**, because it relates to the Subject.

But when it comes after a Factitive verb in the *Active* voice, it is called an **Objective Complement**, because it relates to the Object.

Note 2.—The Complement usually stands *after* its verb, but for the sake of emphasis it may be placed *before* it:—

Strait is the gate, and *narrow* is the way that leadeth unto life, and *few* there be that find it.—*New Testament.*

154. The Cognate Object.—An Intransitive verb, though it is never followed by a noun denoting an *outside* or foreign object, may sometimes be followed by a noun *already implied more or less in the verb itself*.

Thus we can say "he has lived a sad *life*," where the noun *life* is implied already in the verb "lived," and is in fact part of its meaning. Such objects are called **cognate** or "kindred," because the noun denoting them is of kindred meaning to that of the verb itself.

There are five different forms of Cognate object —

(a) Cognate noun formed directly from the verb

He laughed a hearty *laugh*.	He slept a sound *sleep*
He died a sad *death*.	He prayed an earnest *prayer*
He lived a long *life*	He sighed a deep *sigh*
He fought a good *fight*	He sang a fine *song*

(b) Cognate noun of similar meaning

He went a long *way*	He ran his own *course*.
He fought a good *battle*	It blows a brisk *gale*.
He struck a deadly *blow*	The bells ring a merry *peal*

(c) A noun descriptive of the Cognate noun understood

They shouted *applause* = they shouted a *shout* of applause
He served his *apprenticeship* = he served his *service* as an apprentice
He ran a great *risk* = he ran a *course* of great risk
He played *the fool* = he played the *part* of a fool

(d) An adjective qualifying the Cognate noun understood

He shouted his loudest (shout) He ran his fastest (run or pace) He fought his best (fight) She sang her sweetest (song) He breathed his last (breath) He tried his hardest (trial or attempt)

(e) Cognate noun expressed by "it"

We must fight *it* (= the fight) out to the end
We have no horse, so we must foot *it* (that is, go the distance on foot)
Lord Angelo dukes *it* (= acts the part of a duke) well —*Shakspeare*

155 The Reflexive or Personal Object. — In older English, Intransitive verbs were often followed by a Personal pronoun, either reflexive or used reflexively

A few of such verbs have survived to the present day —

He *thee* home Fare *thee* well Haste *thee* away They sat *them* down He over-ate *himself* To over sleep *oneself* Vaulting ambition which o'erleaps *itself* —*Shakspeare*

156 Intransitive Verbs in a causal sense —If an Intransitive verb is used in the sense of causing a thing to be done, it becomes Transitive. Of these there are only a few examples in English —

Intransitive	*Causal*
The horse trotted out.	They trotted out the horse (= caused it to trot out)
Water boils	He boils the water (= causes it to boil)
The prisoners walk out.	He walks out the prisoners (= causes them to walk out)
A thorn ran into his hand	He ran a thorn (= caused it to run) into his hand.

Intransitive	*Causal.*
The kite flew into the air	He flew the kite (=caused it to fly)
The soldiers march out.	He marches out the soldiers
Wheat grows in the field	He grows wheat in the field
The boat floated	He floated the boat
He talks hoarsely	He talks himself hoarse, (=he makes himself hoarse by talking)

157 There are a few Intransitive verbs, in which the causal sense is indicated by *some change of vowel*

Intransitive	*Transitive or Causal*
The tree *falls*	He *fells* the tree with an axe
The sun will *rise* at six	I cannot *raise* or *rouse* this boy
The cow *lies* on the grass	The man *lays* down his coat
We must not *sit* here	He *set* the books in order
He *dives* into the water	He *dips* the sponge into the water
The enemy *quails*	He *quells* the enemy
Water *drips* from the jug	He *drops* water from the jug

In the same way *drench*=causes to drink, *soak*=causes to suck

158 **Prepositional Verbs**—An Intransitive verb can be made Transitive by having a preposition added to it

Such verbs may be considered to be real Transitives, provided they can be used in the Passive voice

We *act on* this rule (*Active*)
This rule is *acted on* by us (*Passive*)

Note 1—When the verb is in the Passive voice, the *on* cannot be parsed as a preposition, since there is no object to it It must therefore be parsed as part of the verb itself

Note 2—In prepositional verbs, the preposition is almost always placed after the verb, but "*with*" and "*over*" are often placed before it —

He *withstood* (stood against, endured) the attack
He was *overcome* (defeated) by the enemy
The banks were *overflowed* (inundated) with water
The field is *overgrown* (covered) with weeds
The boundary has been *overstepped* (transgressed)

All these verbs, when they are used apart from the preposition, are Intransitive. It is the *preposition which makes them Transitive*

159 **Summary**—There are thus two ways in which an Intransitive verb can become Transitive—(1) when it is used in a causal sense (§ 156), (2) when it is connected with a preposition so closely that the verb, compounded with the preposition, can be made Passive (§ 158)

Similarly, there are two kinds of objects which can come after an Intransitive verb, although the verb itself continues to be Intransitive—(1) the Cognate object (§ 154), (2) the Reflexive or Personal object (§ 155)

§ 4.—Active and Passive Voices

160 A *Transitive* verb has two voices, the **Active** and the **Passive**

161 *Active voice*.—Here the person or thing denoted by the Subject is said to *do something to* something else —

Rám *kills* a snake (Here the person denoted by the Subject, namely Ram, *does something to* a snake)

Passive voice.—Here the person or thing is said to *suffer something from* something else —

A snake *is killed* by Ram (Here the thing denoted by the Subject, namely a snake, *suffers something from* Ram)

162 An *Intransitive* verb is not used in the Passive voice, unless it takes a Cognate object in the Active .—

I have fought the good fight (*Active*)
The good fight has been fought by me (*Passive*)

163 When a sentence is changed from the Active form to the Passive, the object to the Active verb becomes the subject to the Passive verb

Object to Active Verb	*Subject to Passive Verb*
Brutes cannot make *tools*	*Tools* cannot be made by brutes
Brutes do not possess *hands*	*Hands* are not possessed by brutes

164 Retained Object.—Verbs which take *two* objects after them in the Active voice (§ 148) can still retain *one* in the Passive This object may be either—

(*a*) The Indirect object of the Active verb, as—

Active Verb	*Passive Verb*
I forgave *him* his fault	The fault was forgiven *him* by me
We allowed *him* two rupees	Two rupees were allowed *him* by us

or (*b*) the Direct object of the Active verb, as—

Active Verb	*Passive Verb*
I forgave him his *fault*	He was forgiven *his fault* by me
We allowed him *two rupees*	He was allowed *two rupees* by us

Note.—It has now been shown that there are five different kinds of objects which can be used with verbs —

(1) **Direct** (with Trans verbs).—He taught *Euclid* (§ 143)
(2) **Indirect** (with Trans. verbs) —He taught *his sons* Euclid (§ 148)
(3) **Retained** (with Pass. verbs) —His sons were taught *Euclid* (§ 164)
(4) **Cognate** (with Intrans. verbs) —The fever must run its *course* (§ 154)
(5) **Reflexive** (with Intrans. verbs) —He sat *himself* down (§ 155)

165 Whenever a Factitive verb is changed from the Active voice to the Passive, the Objective Complement becomes a Subjective one.

Active voice	*Complement to Object*	*Passive voice*	*Complement to Subject*
They proclaimed him	*king*	He was proclaimed	*king* by them
They did not crown him	*king*	He was not crowned	*king* by them

166 Verbs Active in form, but Passive in sense — Transitive verbs are sometimes used in a Passive sense without being put into the Passive voice —

(*a*) Verbs with a Complement —

The stone *feels* rough (is rough when it is felt)
Honey *tastes* sweet (is sweet when it is tasted)
The milk *smells* sour (is sour when it is smelt)
Your blame *counts* for nothing (is worth nothing when it is counted)
Your composition *reads* well (sounds well when it is read)
The house *does* not *let* (is not taken when it is meant to be let)
The horse *does* not *sell* (is not taken when it is meant to be sold)
That cloth will *wear* thin (will become thin when it is worn)

(*b*) Verbs without a Complement —

The house *is building* (=is in a state of being built)
The trumpets *are sounding* (=are being sounded)
The cannons *are firing* (=are being fired)
The drums *are beating* (=are being beaten)
The house *is finishing* (=is being finished)
The book *is printing* (=is being printed)
The cows *are milking* (=are being milked)

Note —A Gerund in the Active form can be similarly used in a Passive sense —

This house was three years in *building* (=being built)

§ 5 —Mood, Tense, Number, and Person

167 Mood defined —A Mood denotes the *mode* or *manner* in which a statement is made by the verb —

168 Names of the Moods —There are four Moods, three Finite and one Infinitive —

(*a*) Three Finite moods —

1 Indicative 2 Imperative 3 Subjunctive

(*b*) The Infinitive mood

169 Characters of the Moods —In the Indicative mood we *assert* or *indicate* an action as a *fact* as, "he comes," "he came," "he will come"

In the Imperative mood we *command* or *advise* an action, as, "come thou," "come you," or "come"

In the Subjunctive mood we *suppose* an action, as, "if he come or should come"

The Infinitive mood is usually formed by putting "*to*" before the verb, as, "to come"

170 Number and Person—The number and person of a Finite verb depend upon the nature of its Subject

Number	If the subject is Singular, the verb must be Singular, as, Rain *is* falling If the subject is Plural, the verb must be Plural, as, Raindrops *are* falling
Person	If the subject is in the First person, the verb must be in the First person, as, I love We come If the subject is in the Second person, the verb must be in the Second person, as, Thou lovest You come If the subject is in the Third person, the verb must be in the Third person, as, He loves The teacher *has* come

Hence arises the following rule—*A Finite verb must be in the same number and person as its Subject*

Note—All nouns and noun equivalents take verbs in the Third person All pronouns excepting the First Personal and the Second Personal take verbs in the Third person

Point out the number and person of every verb in the following sentences—

The cow *is* a quiet and useful animal Oxen *draw* the plough. I *see* four men coming They *see* the sun rising We *see* the hills in the distance Thou *art* the wisest man in the room. The horse *carries* its rider Four men *carry* the palanquin That the horse is lame *is seen* by all of us How to do this *was* not *understood*

171 Tense defined—Tense denotes the *time* of an action

The verb may tell you—

(1) That an action *is done* at the **Present** time, as, "he sees a star"

(2) That an action *was done* in the **Past** time, as, "he saw a star"

(3) That an action *will be done* in the **Future** time, as, "he will see a star"

A verb, then, has three main times or tenses, viz. the Present, the Past, and the Future.

172 To each tense there are four different forms —

I **Indefinite**, which denotes Present, Past, or Future time in its simplest form, as, "I love," "I loved," "I shall love"

II **Continuous**, which denotes that the event (in Present, Past, or Future time) is still *continuing* or not yet completed, as, "I am loving," "I was loving," "I shall be loving"

Note — This tense is sometimes called the **Imperfect**, because it denotes an event which is imperfect or not completed

III **Perfect**, which denotes that the event (in Present, Past, or Future time) is in a completed or *perfect* state, as, "I have loved," "I had loved," "I shall have loved"

IV **Perfect Continuous**, which combines the meanings of the two preceding forms, as, "I have been loving," "I had been loving," "I shall have been loving"

§ 6 —Indicative Mood

Forms of the Tenses, Indicative Mood

173 The three Tenses and twelve forms of a verb in the Indicative Mood are shown in the following table —

I —*Active Voice*

	Form	*Present Tense*	*Past Tense*	*Future Tense*
1	*Indefinite*	I love	I loved	I shall love
2	*Continuous*	I am loving	I was loving	I shall be loving
3	*Perfect*	I have loved	I had loved	I shall have loved
4	*Perfect Continuous*	I have been loving	I had been loving	I shall have been loving

II —*Passive Voice*

	Form	*Present Tense.*	*Past Tense*	*Future Tense*
1	*Indefinite*	I am loved	I was loved	I shall be loved
2	*Continuous*	I am being loved	I was being loved	(*Wanting*)
3	*Perfect*	I have been loved	I had been loved	I shall have been loved
4	*Perfect Continuous*	(*Wanting*)	(*Wanting*)	(*Wanting*)

174 The Present, Past, and Future tenses (Indefinite) are declined in the following form, for all numbers and persons —

I.—*Active Voice*

Present Tense

	Singular	*Plural*
1st Person	I love	We loved
2nd ,,	Thou lovest	Ye or you loved
3rd ,,	He loves or loveth	They loved

Past Tense

	Singular	*Plural*
1st Person	I loved	We loved
2nd ,,	Thou lovedst	Ye or you loved
3rd ,,	He loved	They loved

Future Tense

	Singular	*Plural*
1st Person	I shall love	We shall love
2nd ,,	Thou wilt love	Ye or you will love
3rd ,,	He will love	They will love

N.B.—(1) The Singular forms of the Second person (thou lovest, thou lovedst, thou wilt love) are now seldom used except in poetry. They have been superseded by the Plural forms (you love, you loved, and you will love), which, though Plural in fact, are used in a Singular sense as well as in a Plural sense, as, "Have you come, my son?" "Have you," being addressed to "son," is used in a Singular sense, and may be parsed as Singular.

(2) The form "he loveth" is now seldom used except in poetry.

II.—*Passive Voice*

Present Tense

	Singular	*Plural*
1st Person	I am loved	We are loved
2nd ,,	Thou art loved	Ye or you are loved
3rd ,,	He is loved	They are loved

Past Tense

	Singular	*Plural*
1st Person	I was loved	We were loved
2nd ,,	Thou wast loved	Ye or you were loved
3rd ,,	He was loved	They were loved

Future Tense.

	Singular	*Plural*
1st Person	I shall be loved	We shall be loved
2nd ,,	Thou wilt be loved	Ye or you will be loved
3rd ,,	He will be loved	They will be loved

175. Do and Did.—The Present Indefinite in the Active voice can also be formed by "*do*," and the Past by "*did*."

Present Tense

	Singular	*Plural*
1st Person	I do love	We do love
2nd ,,	Thou dost love	Ye or you do love
3rd ,,	He does love	They do love

Past Tense

	Singular	*Plural*
1st Person	I did love	We did love
2nd ,,	Thou didst love	Ye or you did love
3rd ,,	He did love	They did love

This form is used for three different purposes —

(*a*) For the sake of emphasis, as, "I *do* love," "I *did* love"

(*b*) For the sake of bringing in the word "not", as, "I *do not* love" (which is better than saying "I love not"), "I *did not* love" (which is better than saying "I loved not")

(*c*) For the sake of asking a question, as, "*Does* he love?" "Why *did* he love?" "*Did* he not love?"

176 Whenever *do* or *did* is used for asking a question, the noun or pronoun used as subject to the verb is placed after the *do* or *did*, and not before it, as—

Do I love? Did he not love? (*Question*)

But whenever *do* or *did* is used for the sake of emphasis or with "not," the noun or pronoun stands before the verb, and not after it, as—

I *do not* love (*Negative*) I *do* love (*Emphasis*)

Correct the following —

Loved he not? Came he? He not saw this book He reads not his book with care They not slept long last night. They broke not the slate, but he broke it You not read your book well This letter came for me to day or yesterday? It came not to day, but yesterday You not yet finished reading the letter?

177 Has come, is come —These two forms have not the same meaning, and do not belong to the same tense

(*a*) In the form "I *have* come," the *time of the action* is prominent Since this is the Present Perfect tense, it denotes *present time* By what time was the coming completed? By the present time. The word "come" is here *part of a tense*

(*b*) In the form "I *am* come," the *state of the agent* is

prominent, and not the time of the action In what state is the agent? The state of having come. In the form "I am come" the word "come" is *not* part of a tense, but is the *Past Participle* used as Subjective Complement to the verb "am"

"The flower *is* faded" In what state is the flower? Faded. No prominence is given to *the time of the fading*

"The flower *has* faded" By what time was the fading of the flower completed? By the present time [1]

178 Shall and will—These (as the student has learnt already) are the two Auxiliary verbs by means of which the Future tense is formed in both voices

One of the puzzles in English is to know when to use "*shall*" and when to use "*will*"

With a view to clearing up this matter it should be understood that there are *three* senses in which the future tense can be used —

(*a*) To express *merely future time*, and nothing more
(*b*) To combine future time with an implied *command*
(*c*) To combine future time with an implied *intention*

(*a*) *Merely future time*

When nothing but future time is intended—*mere futurity*, without any idea of command or intention being mixed up with it—*shall* must be used for the *First* person, and *will* for the *Second* and *Third* persons, as below —

	Singular	*Plural*
1*st Person*	I *shall* go	We *shall* go
2*nd* ,,	Thou *wilt* go	You *will* go
3*rd* ,,	He *will* go	They *will* go

(*b*) *An Implied Command, Promise, or Threat*

Whenever we desire to express, not merely future time, but some *command*, or *promise*, or *threat* in addition, *shall* is put for *will* in the Second and Third persons, as—

You *shall* be hanged (by some one's command)
You *shall* receive your prize to-morrow (promise)
If you do this, you *shall* be hanged (threat)

(*c*) *An Implied Intention*

When the speaker wishes to express some intention of his own, then *will* is put for *shall* in the First person —

I *will* call on you to day, and I *shall* then say good-bye

Here the first verb denotes the *intention* of calling, while the second one denotes *merely future time*

---

[1] It is therefore incorrect to say (as is commonly done) that "has come" and "is come" are equivalent, and that the use of "is" and "was" for "has" and "had" is limited to verbs of motion

§ 7.—Imperative Mood

179 The **Imperative** mood is used only in the Present tense, and only in the Second person —

Singular	*Plural*
Speak, or speak thou	Speak, or speak you, or speak ye

180 To express the *First* and *Third* persons of this mood, we use the Auxiliary verb *let*, which is itself the Second person (Singular or Plural) of the Imperative mood of the verb "to let", as—

	Singular	*Plural*
1st *Person*	Let me speak	Let us speak
3rd ,,	Let him speak	Let them speak

N B —Here *speak* is in the Infinitive mood with the "*to*" left out

In older English, however, and sometimes even to this day in poetry, but very rarely in prose, the First and Third persons of the Imperative can be expressed without the help of "let", as—

Every soldier *kill* (= is ordered to kill) his prisoners —*Shakspeare*
Thither our path lies, *wind we* (= let us wind) up the height —*R Browning*

The Third person of the Imperative has survived in the common phrase *suffice it*, which means "let it suffice" —

Suffice it to say that all the prisoners were acquitted

181 The chief uses of the Imperative mood are to express (*a*) *command*, (*b*) *precept*, or (*c*) *entreaty* —

(*a*) *Command* —

Speak, —or I fire
Awake, arise, or *be* for ever fallen —*Milton*

(*b*) *Precept* or *Invitation* —

Go to the ant, thou sluggard, *consider* her ways and *be* wise —*Old Testament*

(*c*) *Entreaty* or *Prayer* —

Give us this day our daily bread, and *forgive* us our trespasses, as we forgive them that trespass against us —*Lord's Prayer*

182 When the verb is negative, that is, prohibitive, the Imperative is now formed by the Auxiliary "*do*"

Older Form	*Present Form*
Fear not	*Do* not fear
Taste not that food.	*Do* not taste that food

Sometimes, even when the verb is affirmative, the Imperative is formed by "do," in order to give more emphasis to an entreaty This, however, occurs only in colloquial English

Do leave off making that noise
Do help me to lift this box

183 The Imperative mood is sometimes used to express a **Supposition** —

Take care of the pence, and the pounds will take care of themselves (=If you take care of the pence, the pounds will, etc)
Resist the devil, and he will flee from you (=If you resist the devil, he will flee, etc)

184 Sometimes, but very rarely, the Imperative mood is used **absolutely**, see § 28 (*c*)

A large number of men, *say* a hundred, are working on the railroad
Behold, this dreamer cometh —*Old Testament*

§ 8 —The Subjunctive Mood

185 The **Subjunctive** mood is so called, because it is generally *subjoined* to some other sentence, and seldom stands alone

186 The Present, Past, and Future tenses (Indefinite) are declined as follows in the Active voice —

Present Tense

	Singular	*Plural*
1st Person	If I love	If we love
2nd ,,	If thou love (*not lovest*)	If you love
3rd ,,	If he love (*not loves*)	If they love

Past Tense

	Singular	*Plural*
1st Person	If I loved	If we loved
2nd ,,	If thou lovedst	If you loved
3rd ,,	If he loved	If they loved

Future Tense

	Singular	*Plural*
1st Person	If I should love	If we should love
2nd ,,	If thou shouldst love	If ye or you should love
3rd ,,	If he should love	If they should love

But the forms *thou love*, *he love* are getting more and more out of use, and the forms of the Indicative mood are now generally used in their place, as, "if thou lovest" (instead of "*if thou love*"), "if he loves" (instead of "*if he love*")

187 The verb "*to be*" has retained the Subjunctive forms more completely than any other verb —

Present Tense.

	Singular.	*Plural*
1st Person	If I be	If we be
2nd ,,	If thou be	If ye or you be
3rd ,,	If he be	If they be

Past Tense

	Singular	*Plural*
1st Person	If I were	If we were
2nd ,,	If thou wert	If ye or you were
3rd ,,	If he were	If they were

Future Tense

	Singular	*Plural*
1st Person	If I should be	If we should be
2nd ,,	If thou shouldst be	If ye or you should be
3rd ,,	If he should be	If they should be

The forms of the Past and Future tenses are still in common use The forms of the Present tense are not so common, and those of the Indicative mood are sometimes used instead of them

188 The forms for the Continuous and Perfect tenses in the Active voice are shown below —

	Continuous	*Perfect*
Present	If I be loving	If I have loved
Past	If I were loving	If I had loved
Future	If I should be loving	If I should have loved

189 In the Passive voice the Indefinite and the Perfect are the only tenses of the Subjunctive mood which are in ordinary use —

	Indefinite	*Perfect*
Present	If I be loved	If I have been loved
Past	If I were loved	If I had been loved
Future	If I should be loved	If I should have been loved

The Uses of the Subjunctive Mood

190 The Indicative mood expresses *a fact*, the Imperative mood expresses *an order*, the Subjunctive mood expresses *a purpose*, *a wish*, *a condition*, or *a doubt*

(1) *A Purpose*

In this case the verb in the Subjunctive mood is preceded by the conjunction *that* or *lest* (lest = that not) The Auxiliary verbs "*may*" and "*might*" are used after "*that*," and "*should*" after "*lest*"

	Indicative	*Subjunctive*, *Purpose*
Present or *Future*	I give you a prize,	that you *may work* well again
	I shall keep your book,	lest you *should lose* it that you *may* not *lose* it
Past	I gave you a prize,	that you *might work* well again.
	I kept your book,	lest you *should lose* it. that you *might* not *lose* it.

(2) *A Wish or Order*

Thy kingdom *come* = *may* thy kingdom *come*.
I wish that he *were* as clever as his sister
God *save* the queen Long *live* the king
Far *be* it from me to say anything false
My sentence is that the prisoner *be* hanged.

(3) *Condition and its Consequence*

When the verb expresses a *condition*, it is generally preceded by the conjunction "*if*" The verb expressing the *consequence* is expressed by the auxiliary "*would*"

	First Sentence Condition	*Second Sentence Consequence*
Present or *Future*	If he *should meet* me,	he *would know* me at once
	If I *were* in his place,	I *would pay* the rupee
Past	If he *had met* me,	he *would have known* me
	If I *had been* in his place,	I *would have paid* the rupee

Sometimes the *if* is left out In this case the *should*, or the *had*, or the *were* must be placed before its subject —

Present or *Future*	*Should* he *meet* me,	he *would know* me at once.
	Were I in his place,	I *would pay* the rupee
Past	*Had* he *met* me,	he *would have known* me
	Had I *been* in his place,	I *would have paid* the rupee

Sometimes the Conditional sentence is left out or understood, and only the Consequent sentence is expressed —

He *would* never agree to that ("if you asked him," understood)
He *would* be very thankful to you for this kindness ("if you were to do him the kindness," understood)

(4) *A Doubt or Supposition*

A verb in the Subjunctive mood, preceded by some conjunction, implies some *doubt* or *supposition*, whereas the Indicative mood expresses a *fact*

Murder, *though* it *have* no tongue, will speak
If he but *speak*, I will shoot him
Whether he *allow* me or not, I will go to him
Provided he *confess* his fault, I will pardon him
Unless he *consent*, we can do nothing

Note —There is, however, a growing tendency in English to substitute the Indicative mood for the Subjunctive, even when the sentence is intended to convey a doubt or supposition

§ 9 —Infinitive Mood

191 The Infinitive mood is not combined with any Subject, and therefore it has *no number* and *no person*.

This mood names the action, without naming the doer

The student will remember that verbs in the Indicative, Subjunctive, and Imperative moods are called *Finite*, because they are limited by the number and person of their subject (§ 16 and § 170)

What we have now to consider are those parts of a verb which are not Finite, viz the Infinitive, the Participle, and the Gerund (§ 17)

192 The forms of the Infinitive mood are four in number, and all are in the Present tense —

Form.	*Active Voice*	*Passive Voice*
Indefinite	To send	To be sent
Continuous	To be sending	(*Wanting*)
Perfect	To have sent	To have been sent
Perfect Continuous	To have been sending	(*Wanting*)

There is no Past and no Future tense to the Infinitive mood

The Future tense of the Infinitive can be expressed only by some phrase, as, "to be about to send", "to be on the point of sending", "to be going to send"

193 Omission of "to" The word "*to*" is usually the sign of the Infinitive mood But it is sometimes omitted

(*a*) The "*to*" is left out after the following Principal verbs —

> *Please* do this = please to do this
> I *hear* thee speak (to speak) of a better land
> I *saw* him take (to take) aim with his bow
> You *need* not send (to send) those books to me
> I *feel* the cold air strike (to strike) against my face
> He *dared* not say (to say) this in open day
> He *made* me come (to come) and sit (to sit) beside him
> I *let* him go (to go) back to his own house
> They *bade* me tell (to tell) them the right road
> We *watched* him go (to go) and come (to come)
> We *beheld* the fish rise (to rise)
> I have *known* him laugh (to laugh) for nothing

Note —The "*to*" is not always omitted after "dare," when this verb is Affirmative as, "he dares *to go*"

(*b*) The "*to*" is also left out after all the Auxiliary verbs —

I shall *go*	*equals*	I intend *to go*
I should *go*	,,	I ought *to go*
I can or could *go*	,,	I am or was able *to go*
I must *go*	,,	I am compelled *to go*
I may or might *go*	,,	I am or was permitted *to go*
I will or would *go*	,,	I am or was willing *to go*
I do or did *go*	,,	I go or I went

(*c*) The "to" can be left out after the adjective "better" —

> Better *be* with the dead —*Shakspeare*,
> (= *To be* with the dead (would be) better)
> Better *dwell* in the midst of alarms —*Cowper*.

(*d*) The "*to*" is also left out after the verb "had," in such phrases as "had better," "had rather," "had sooner," "had as soon as"

You had better not *remain* here
I had rather *take* this than that
I had sooner *run* than *walk*
I had as soon *run* as *walk*

Note —"Had" is here used in a Subjunctive sense = would have "I had better not remain here," means "I would have (it) better not to remain here", that is, "It would be better for me not to remain"

(*e*) The "*to*" is left out after the conjunction "than" —

He is better able *to walk* than *run* = (than he is able *to run*)

(*f*) The "*to*" is left out after the preposition "but," provided it is preceded by the verb "*do*" —

He *did* nothing but *laugh* (= to laugh)

The two kinds of Infinitive

194 There are two kinds of Infinitives, the forms of which are identical, though their uses are so different as to represent different parts of speech —

I The Noun-Infinitive, sometimes called the Simple
II The Gerundial or Qualifying Infinitive

Note --In Old English the Simple Infinitive was a *Noun* and had no such word as "to" before it, while a *Gerund* in the sense of purpose was expressed by the preposition "to," followed by an inflected case of the Noun Infinitive This accounts for the names "Noun Infinitive" and "Gerundial Infinitive" But the "to" is now usually given to the Noun Infinitive also

195 The Noun-Infinitive may be used—(*a*) as Subject to a verb, (*b*) as Object to a verb, (*c*) as Complement to a verb, (*d*) as Object to certain prepositions, or (*e*) as a form of exclamation —

(*a*) Subject to a verb —

To err (= error) is human, *to forgive* (= forgiveness) is divine

(*b*) Object to a verb —

They expect *to succeed* (= success)
A good man does not fear *to die* (= death)

(*c*) Complement to a verb —

He appears *to be* a wise man (*Intransitive*)
They ordered him *to be punished* (*Factitive.*)
I can *go*, I should *go*, I may *go*, I might *go*, etc (*Auxiliary*)

(*d*) Object to the prepositions named below —

He was *about* (= near) *to die* (= death)
They came *for to see* (= for seeing) the sport.
They desired nothing *except* or *but to succeed* (= success)
He did nothing else *than laugh*.

Note —Such a phrase as "for to see" is now obsolete, though it occurs in the New Testament The "for" is now always omitted, and the Noun-Infinitive then becomes the Gerundial

(*e*) As a form of exclamation —

Foolish fellow! *to suppose* that he could be pardoned!

Note —In this construction the Infinitive is absolute (§ 28, *b*)

196 The Gerundial or Qualifying Infinitive can be used (*a*) to qualify a verb, (*b*) to qualify a noun, (*c*) to qualify an adjective, (*d*) to introduce a parenthesis —

(*a*) To qualify a verb, in the sense of *purpose*, *cause*, or *result* —

He came *to see* (for the purpose of seeing) the sport (*Purpose*)
He wept *to see* (because of seeing) that sight (*Cause*)
He worked hard only *to be* (with the result of being) defeated at last (*Result*)

(*b*) To qualify a noun, in the sense of *purpose* The Infinitive may be either attributive or predicative (§ 102)

{A house *to let* (*Attributive use*)
{This house is *to let* (*Predicative use* *Complement to Verb*)
{Give him a chair *to sit on* (*Attributive use*)
{Your condition is *to be pitied* (*Predicative use*)

Note —Whenever the verb is Intransitive, as "*sit*," it must always be followed by a preposition We cannot say "a chair *to sit*"

(*c*) To qualify an adjective, in the sense of *respect* or *purpose* —

Quick *to hear* and slow *to speak*

"Quick" in what respect or for what purpose? To hear "Slow" in what respect or for what purpose? To speak

(*d*) To introduce a **Parenthesis**, that is, a phrase thrust into the middle of a sentence by way of comment on something said —

I am,—*to tell* you the truth,—quite tired of this work
They were thunderstruck,—so *to speak*,—on hearing this news

Note —In (*a*) and (*c*) the Gerundial Infinitive does the work of an adverb In (*b*) it does the work of an adjective In (*d*) it is absolute; see § 28 (*b*).

§ 10.—PARTICIPLES.

197 The forms of the different Participles are as shown below —

Transitive Verbs

	Active Voice	*Passive Voice*
Present or Continuous	Loving	Being loved
Past	(*Wanting*)	Loved
Perfect	Having loved	Having been loved

Intransitive Verbs

Present or Continuous	Fading
Past	Faded
Perfect	Having faded

198 Double Character of Participles.—It was shown in § 18 that a Participle is a double part of speech—a verb and an adjective combined We have now, therefore, to describe it in each of these characters —

(1) As part of a Finite verb

(2) As an Adjective qualifying some noun

I *As part of a Finite verb*

199 The student will have seen already that many of the tenses of English verbs are formed with the help of the Past or Present Participle

Thus all the tenses of the Passive voice are formed out of the verb "to be" followed by the Past Participle, as, "I am loved," "I was loved," "I shall be loved"

Again, all the Continuous tenses in the Active voice are formed out of the verb "to be," followed by the Present Participle, as, "I am loving," "I was loving," "I shall be loving"

Again, the Perfect tenses in the Active voice are formed out of the verb "to have," followed by the Past Participle, as, "I have loved," "I had loved," "I shall have loved"

II *As an Adjective*

200 A Participle, when it is an adjective, belongs to the class of Descriptive (§ 90) Like other such adjectives, it can (*a*) qualify a noun, (*b*) be qualified by an adverb, (*c*) admit of degrees of comparison, (*d*) be used as a noun —

(*a*) ***Being tired*** of work, ***the men*** went home

(*b*) The man was picked up in an ***almost dying*** state

(*c*) This flower ***is more faded*** than that

(*d*) I am much pleased with my ***surroundings***
None are so soon forgotten as ***the dead***

201 Since a Participle is a verb as well as an adjective, it can take an Object, which may be of five kinds (§ 164) —

Having shot *the tiger*, he returned home (*Direct Obj*)
He is here, teaching *his sons* Greek (*Indirect Obj*)
Having been taught *Greek*, he was a good scholar (*Retained Obj*)
He was fighting a hard *battle* (*Cognate Obj*)
Having sat *himself* down, he began to eat (*Reflexive Obj*)

202 Past Participle —The use of such participles depends upon whether the verb is Transitive or Intransitive —

(*a*) If the verb is *Transitive*, the Past Participle is never used in the Active voice, but only in the Passive —

This much *praised* man proved to be a rogue
Gold is a metal *dug* out of the earth

(*b*) If the verb is *Intransitive*, the Past Participle is not used at all in most verbs But whenever it is used—(a matter depending entirely on custom), it must *precede* its noun, and not follow it —

The *faded* rose A *failed* candidate A *retired* officer The *returned* soldier The *dead* horse The *fallen* city The *risen* sun A *withered* flower A *departed* guest

If the speaker or writer desires to place the Past Participle of an Intransitive verb *after* its noun, he must insert the Relative pronoun and change the participle into a Finite verb, as—

The horse of Mr A, *proceeded* to England, is for sale (This is wrong The sentence should be—"The horse of Mr A, *who has proceeded* to England, is for sale ")

Correct the following —

There is now no scent in the rose *faded* this morning
Lamps are lighted from oil *risen* out of the earth
This was the sword of the soldier *returned* to his country
I am sorry for the candidate *failed* in the last examination

But the Past Participle of an Intransitive verb is sometimes put *after* its noun *in poetry*

A Daniel *come* to judgment.—*Shakspeare*
Mourn for the brave—the brave that are no more,
All *sunk* beneath the wave, hard by their native shore —*Cowper*

Even in prose the Past Participle of an Intransitive verb is sometimes, *but very rarely*, placed after its noun —

In times *past* = in times which have passed
He is a man *descended* from a high family
These are very exceptional cases and should not be imitated

203 The Past Participle of verbs is sometimes used to express some *permanent habit, state,* or *character* —

A well *read* man = a man who has read much and read well
A well *behaved* man = a man whose habitual behaviour is good
An out *spoken* man = a man who habitually speaks out his mind
A *retired* man = a man who makes a habit of retiring from public notice, a man of a retiring disposition

From this use of the Past Participle has arisen a large class of Adjectives, which are formed from nouns by adding "*ed*" to the end of the noun

An evil-*heart* ed man A hot *head* ed man A *land* ed proprietor A long *tail* ed ape A smooth-*skin* ned cat His *saint* ed mother A red-*colour* ed rose A rough *face* d youth A *hood* ed snake A long *leg*-ged spider A purple *crest* ed helmet A many *page* d book A long *arm* ed monkey A thickly-*wood* ed hill A noble *mind* ed man A warm-*blood* ed animal

204 Meanings implied in Participles —Participles must be parsed as Verbal Adjectives qualifying their nouns But sometimes there is a further *meaning* implied in them, which can be more fully expressed by changing the participial phrase into a clause

The implied meanings are (*a*) Time, (*b*) Cause or Reason, (*c*) Condition, (*d*) Concession or Contrast

(*a*) *Time*

Walking along the street (= *while* I was walking) I met a friend
Having met my friend (= *after* I had met my friend), I went back with him to his house

(*b*) *Cause or Reason*

Being tired with the toil (= *because* he was tired), he sat down to rest
The letter, *having been addressed* (= *because* it was addressed) to the wrong house, never reached me

(*c*) *Condition*

Turning to the left (= *if* you turn to the left), you will find the place you want

(*d*) *Concession or Contrast*

Admitting (= though I admit) what you say, I still think that you made a mistake
He *being* dead (= although he is dead), yet speaketh —*New Testament*

§ 11 —Gerunds and Verbal Nouns

205 A Gerund has four forms—two for the Active voice and two for the Passive

	Active	*Passive*
Present or Continuous	Loving	Being loved
Perfect	Having loved	Having been loved

206 The *forms* of a Gerund, then, are the same as those of a Participle, and both are parts of a verb What, then, is the difference? A Gerund is a kind of *Noun*, but a Participle is a kind of *Adjective* So in spite of the resemblance in *form*, they are quite distinct in *nature*[1]

The reason of the resemblance in form is a matter of history In Old English the *forms* of the Verbal Adjective and Verbal Noun were quite distinct

Participle	*Writende*
Gerund	*Writung*

In later English the two suffixes, *ende* and *ung*, both gradually took the form of *ing*, and hence we have now only one form instead of two for the two parts of speech

Participle	*Writing*
Gerund	*Writing*

207 Double character of Gerunds—It was shown in § 18 that a Gerund is a double part of speech—a noun and verb combined We have now therefore to describe it in each of these characters —

(1) As a kind of Noun
(2) As part of a Verb

Since a Gerund is a *kind of noun*, it must be the subject to some verb (Transitive or Intransitive), or the object to some verb (Transitive), or the complement to some verb (Intransitive or Factitive), or the object to some preposition, as—

Subject to a verb—*Sleeping* is necessary to life
Object to a verb—He enjoyed *sleeping* in the open air
Complement to a verb—His almost constant habit was *sleeping*
Object to a preposition—He was fond of *sleeping*

In the following sentences say whether the words noted below are Gerunds or Participles —

[1] In some grammars the Gerund is called a Participial noun This name should be avoided, since a Noun is one part of speech and a Participle is another

The rice will grow well in the *coming* rains. We heard of his *coming* back to-day Did you hear of his *having won* a prize? The boy *having won* a prize was much praised. She was fond of *being admired* *Being admired* by all she was much pleased. The cow *having been killed* by a tiger yesterday could not be found The boy was ashamed of *having been beaten* in class by his sister I am tired of *doing* this work *Doing* this work every day you will soon improve *Spelling* is more difficult than *writing* He was in the habit of *boasting* of his cleverness. A *boasting* man is much despised

208 A Gerund an Abstract Noun—It has been explained already in § 44, that a Gerund is a kind of Abstract noun, and has the same meaning as an Abstract noun proper or as a Noun-Infinitive —

Gerund —*Sleeping* is necessary to health
Noun Infin - *To sleep* is necessary to health
Abstract Noun —*Sleep* is necessary to health

209 Gerund with an Object—Since a Gerund is *a part of some verb*, it can take an object after it, which may be of any of the five kinds shown in § 164, *Note*.

Direct (with Trans) —He is clever at teaching *Euclid*
Indirect (with Trans) — He is clever at teaching *his sons* Euclid
Retained (with Passive) —He is pleased at being taught *Euclid*
Cognate (with Intrans) —He is proud of having fought a good *fight*
Reflexive (with Intrans) —He is in the habit of oversleeping *himself*

210 Gerund with Possessives—A noun or pronoun, provided it denotes a person or other animal, must be in the Possessive case, when it is placed before a Gerund —

I was pleased at *his* coming to day (It would be wrong to say, "I was pleased at *him* coming to day)

He was displeased at the *barber's* not coming (It would be wrong to say, "He was displeased at the *barber* not coming ")

It is a common mistake of Indian students to say —"I ask *your favour* of doing this " This is not in correct idiom The sentence should be—"I ask the favour of *your doing* this "

Note 1 —The following use of a Gerund preceded by a Possessive noun or pronoun sometimes occurs —

This was a work *of my doing* (=done by me)

Note 2 —Sometimes the letter "*a*" (an abbreviation of "*on*") is placed before a Gerund in a prepositional sense —

This set him *a* (=on) *thinking*

Note 3 —The Possessive "*its*," even though its antecedent denotes an *inanimate* object, should always be used with a Gerund The use of "*it*" would be wrong

The *wall* fell, I am vexed at *its* having fallen.

211 Gerundive use of Participles.—Such participles are not Gerunds, but participles used in a Gerundive sense:—

I depend on the wall *being built* immediately.

Now if "wall" could be put into the Possessive case, we should say, "I depend on the *wall's* being built immediately." But as this cannot be done (see § 64), we are compelled to say—

I depend on the *wall* being built immediately.

How are we to parse "being built" in such a connection? It is not enough to say that it is an ordinary participle; for it does more than qualify the noun "wall." The sentence does not mean "I depend on the wall," but "I depend on the *wall being built* immediately," that is, "on the immediate *building of* the wall." There is therefore a gerund or gerundial noun implied in the participle "being built," and hence such participles can be called Gerundive Participles.

Note 1.—A Gerundive Participle denotes *future* time,—something still to be done. It does not denote either present time or past time:—

I depend on the fact or promise that the wall *will be built* immediately.

Note 2.—The Gerundive Participle can also be used with Intransitive verbs, and with these too it denotes *future* time.

(*a*) What do you think of my *horse running* to-day?

That is, "What do you think of the plan or proposal that my horse *shall run* to-day?"

(*b*) What do you think of my *horse's running* to-day?

That is, "What do you think of the style or pace at which my horse *ran* to-day?" Here "running" is not a participle used gerundively, but a real gerund preceded by a Possessive noun. Observe too that this gerund denotes *past* time ("ran"), while the gerundive participle in (*a*) denotes *future* time ("shall or will run").

212 A Verbal noun proper is not the same thing as a Gerund proper.

A Verbal noun is preceded by the Definite article and followed by the preposition "*of*," whereas a Gerund has no article preceding it and no preposition following it:—

(*a*) I am engaged in *the* reading *of* a book. (*Verbal Noun.*)
(*b*) I am engaged in reading a book. (*Gerund.*)

In (*a*) the word "reading" is a *single* part of speech,—a noun and nothing more. In (*b*) "reading" is a *double* part of speech,—a noun and verb combined.

Parsing Models for Verbs.

(1) *The horse was taken to the stable*

Was taken—Verb transitive, third person, singular number, past tense (indefinite), indicative mood, passive voice of the verb "to take," agreeing with its nominative case or subject "horse"

(2) *The man and his friend walked into the field*

Walked—Verb intransitive, third person, plural number, past tense (indefinite), indicative mood of the verb "to walk," agreeing with its two subjects "man" and "friend"

(3) *I have long been absent from home*

Have been—Verb intransitive, first person, singular number, present perfect tense, indicative mood of the verb "to be," agreeing with its subject "I"

(4) *I shall go home, but you will stop here*

Shall go—Verb intransitive, first person, singular number, future tense, indicative mood of the verb "to go," agreeing with its subject "I"

Will stop—Verb intransitive, second person, singular number, future tense, indicative mood of the verb "to stop," agreeing with its subject "you"

(5) *Take a seat on this bench*

Take—Verb transitive, second person, singular number, imperative mood of the verb "to take," agreeing with its subject "thou" or "you" understood

(6) *Were I in his place, I would pay the rupee*

Were—Verb intransitive, first person, singular number, past tense, subjunctive mood of the verb "to be," agreeing with its subject "I"

Would pay—Verb transitive, first person, singular number, past tense, subjunctive mood of the verb "to pay," agreeing with its subject "I"

(7) *You need not send those books to me*

Send—Verb transitive, infinitive mood

(8) *Having found his friend he was much pleased*

Having found—Verb transitive, perfect participle of the verb "to find," qualifying the pronoun "he"

(9) *He was much pleased at having found his friend*

Having found—Verb transitive, perfect form of gerund of the verb "to find," object to the preposition "at."

§ 12.—THE CONJUGATION OF VERBS.

213 To "conjugate" a verb is to show its chief parts.

Note.—The term "conjugation" is sometimes used in a wider sense to denote the formation of *all* the inflections and combinations that are employed to indicate Voice, Mood, Tense, Number, and Person.

The chief parts of a verb in English are the Present tense, the Past tense, and the Past Participle; all the other parts, Active and Passive, can be easily formed from these three.

214 There are two main kinds of Conjugation:—

I. The *Strong* or older kind (now much less numerous than it once was), which forms the past tense by changing *the inside vowel* of the present; as, *rise, rose*.

II. The *Weak* or new kind (now much more numerous than the Strong), which forms the past tense by adding *ed* or *t* to the present without any change of the inside vowel; as, *love, loved*.

Besides these there is a third kind, which may be called *Mixed*, being partly Weak and partly Strong.[1]

1. *The Strong or Older Conjugation.*

215 The Strong verbs are conjugated by internal changes, the nature of which is too various to be reduced to a single rule.

The most general process consists in (1) changing the inside vowel for the Past tense, and (2) adding *en*, *n*, or *ne* for the Past Participle.

216 Formerly *all* verbs of the Strong Conjugation formed the Past Participle by adding *en*, *n*, *ne*; but many of them have now laid aside this suffix.

Hence the Strong verbs, as they now exist, fall into two main groups:—

(1) Those which have retained } the *en*, *n*, or *ne* in the
(2) Those which have lost } Past Participle.

---

[1] Some grammarians distinguish verbs into Regular and Irregular. The Regular answer to the Weak, and the Irregular to the Strong. But these names are misleading; for in point of fact the Strong conjugation is the older of the two, and therefore it cannot be an "irregular" deviation from the Weak.

The Strong conjugation contains no verbs but such as are of the primary Anglo-Saxon stock. All the verbs belonging to this conjugation (except a few that have had a prefix added to them) are monosyllabic.

Group I

Present Tense.	*Past Tense*	*Past Participle*
Arise	arose	arisen
Bear (produce)	bore	born
Bear (carry)	bore	borne
Beget	begot, begat	begotten, begot
Bid	bade, bid	bidden, bid
Bite	bit	bitten, bit
Bind	bound	*bounden, bound
Blow	blew	blown
Break	broke	broken
Chide	chid	chidden, chid
Choose	chose	chosen
Cleave (split)	clove, cleft	*cloven, cleft
Crow	crew, crowed	crowed, rarely crown
Draw	drew	drawn
Drink	drank	*drunken, drunk
Drive	drove, drave	driven
Eat	ate	eaten
Fall	fell	fallen
Fly	flew	flown
Forbear	forbore	forborne
Forget	forgot	forgotten
Forsake	forsook	forsaken
Freeze	froze	frozen
Get	got	*gotten, got
Give	gave	given
Go, wend	went	gone
Grow	grew	grown
Hide	hid	hidden, hid
Know	knew	known
Lie	lay	lain
Ride	rode	ridden
Rise	rose	risen
See	saw	seen
Shake	shook	shaken
Shrink	shrank	*shrunken, shrunk
Sink	sank	*sunken, sunk
Slay	slew	slain
Slide	slid	slidden, slid
Smite	smote	smitten, smit
Speak	spoke	spoken
Steal	stole	stolen
Stride	strode	stridden
Strike	struck	*stricken, struck
Strive	strove	striven
Swear	swore	sworn
Take	took	taken
Tear	tore	torn
Thrive	throve, thrived	thriven, thrived

Present Tense	*Past Tense*	*Past Participle*
Throw	threw	thrown
Tread	trod	trodden, trod
Wear	wore	worn
Weave	wove	woven
Write	wrote	written

Note.—The seven participles marked (*) are now chiefly used as verbal adjectives only, and not as parts of some tense:—

Verbal Adjective	*Part of some Tense*
Our *bounden* duty	He was *bound* by his promise
A *drunken* man	He had *drunk* much wine
A *sunken* ship	The ship had *sunk* under the water
A *stricken* deer	The deer was *struck* with an arrow
The *shrunken* stream	The stream has *shrunk* in its bed
Ill *gotten* wealth	He has *got* wealth by ill means
A *cloven* hoof	The tree was *cleft* by lightning

Group II

Present Tense	*Past Tense*	*Past Participle*
Abide	abode	abode
Awake	awoke	awoke
Become	became	become
Begin	began	begun
Behold	beheld	beheld, beholden[1]
Cling	clung	clung
Come	came	come
Dig	dug	dug
Fight	fought	fought
Find	found	found
Fling	flung	flung
Grind	ground	ground
Hang[2]	hung, hanged	hung, hanged
Hold	held	held
Ring	rang	rung
Run	ran	run
Shine	shone	shone
Sing	sang	sung
Sit	sat	sat
Sling	slung	slung
Slink	slunk	slunk
Spin	spun	spun
Spring	sprang, sprung	sprung
Stand	stood	stood
Stave	stove, staved	stove, staved

[1] "Beholden" means "indebted."

[2] The *Intransitive* verb is conjugated in the Strong form only. The *Transitive* verb is conjugated both in the Weak and in the Strong form. "Hanged" (Weak form) means "killed by hanging"; as, "The dog was *hanged*." "Hung" (Strong form) is used in a general sense; as, "He *hung* up his coat."

Present Tense.	*Past Tense*	*Past Participle*
Stick	stuck	stuck
Sting	stung	stung
Stink	stank	stunk
String	strung	strung
Swim	swam	swum
Swing	swung	swung
Win	won	won
Wind	wound	wound
Wring	wrung	wrung

The Mixed Conjugation

217 Verbs of *Mixed* Conjugation fall into two main groups —

(1) Those which (like Weak verbs) form the Past tense and the Past Participle by adding *d* or *t* to the Present, but (like Strong verbs) change the inside vowel, as, "seek, s*ou*ght, s*ou*ght."

(2) Those which (like Weak verbs) form the Past tense in *d* or *t* without changing the inside vowel, but (like Strong verbs) form the Past Participle by adding *en* or *n*, as, "show, show*ed*, show*n*."

Group I

Present Tense	*Past Tense*	*Past Participle*
Beseech	besought	besought
Bring	brought	brought
Buy	bought	bought
Catch	caught	caught
Seek	sought	sought
Sell	sold	sold
Teach	taught	taught
Tell	told	told
Think	thought	thought
Work	worked	*wrought, worked
Owe	ought, owed	owed
Dare	durst or dared	dared
Can	could	(*Wanting*)
Shall	should	(*Wanting*)
Will	would	(*Wanting*)
May	might	(*Wanting*)

Group II

Beat	beat	beaten
Do	did (*irregular*)	done
Grave	graved	*graven, graved
Hew	hewed	hewn
Lade	laded	laden
Melt	melted	*molten, melted
Mow	mowed	mown
Rive	rived	riven

Present Tense	*Past Tense*	*Past Participle*
Seethe	seethed	*sodden, seethed
Shave	shaved	shaven
Shear	sheared	*shorn, sheared
Sow	sowed	sown
Swell	swelled	swollen
Show	showed	shown
Sew	sewed	sewn
Rot	rotted	*rotten, rotted
Strew	strewed	strewn or strown
Prove	proved	† proven, proved
Saw	sawed	sawn
Shape	shaped	† shapen, shaped
Writhe	writhed	† writhen, writhed

Note 1 —The participles marked * are now chiefly used as Verbal adjectives, and not as parts of some Tense —

Verbal Adjective	*Part of some Tense*
Wrought iron.	The horse is *worked* too hard
A *graven* image	The image was *engraved* with letters
A *molten* image	The image was *melted* with heat
A *rotten* plank	The plank was *rotted* by water
The *sodden* flesh	The flesh was *seethed* in hot water
A *shorn* lamb	The lamb was *sheared* to day

Note 2 —The participles marked † are now seldom seen except in poetry

The Weak Conjugation

218 All verbs, except those shown in the preceding lists, belong to the Weak or new Conjugation, in which the process of forming the Past tense and Past Participle consists in adding *ed* or *t* to the Present

219 The mode of adding the suffix "*ed*" is not uniform, and the two rules given below should be observed —

(1) If the verb ends in *e*, then *d* only is added, and not *ed*, as—

Love, loved (not *loveed*)
Clothe, clothed (not *clotheed*)

To this rule there is no exception

(2) The final consonant is doubled before *ed*, provided (*a*) that the final consonant is *single*, (*b*) that it is *accented*, (*c*) that it is preceded by a *single vowel*, as—

Fan, fanned (not *faned*), *drop, dropped* (not *droped*)
Compel, compelled, *control, controlled*

But in a verb like *lengthen*, where the accent is not on the last syllable, the Past tense is *lengthened*, in a verb like *boil*, where the vowel is not single, the Past tense is *boiled*, and in a verb like *fold*, where the last consonant is not single, the Past tense is *folded*

To this rule there are very few exceptions One exception occurs in the final *l* The final *l* is doubled, even when it is not accented, as, travel, trav*elled* (not trav*eled*) But the final *l* is not doubled, if it has two vowels going before it, as, *travail*, *travailed* (not *travailled*)

220 Some verbs of the Weak Conjugation form the Past tense in "*t*," and if the vowel of the Present is a long one, they shorten it —

Present Tense	*Past Tense.*	*Past Participle*
Creep	crept	crept
Sleep	slept	slept
Sweep	swept	swept
Keep	kept	kept
Weep	wept	wept
Burn	burnt	burnt
Deal (dēl)	dĕalt	dealt
Dream (drēm)	drĕamt or dreamed	drĕamt or dreamed
Dwell	dwelt	dwelt
Feel	felt	felt
Kneel	knelt	knelt
Smell	smelt	smelt
Spell	spelt	spelt
Lean (lēn)	lĕant or leaned	lĕant or leaned
Mean (mēn)	mĕant	mĕant
Spill	spilt	spilt
Spoil	spoilt or spoiled	spoilt or spoiled

Exceptional Verbs —Make, made, made Have, had, had Hear, heard, heard Leave, left, left Cleave, cleft, cleft Lose, lost, lost Die, died, dead Shoe, shod, shod Flee, fled, fled Say, said, said Lay, laid, laid Pay, paid, paid

221 Verbs ending in *d* or *t* in the Present tense have discarded the *ed* in the Past

(*a*) Some verbs in this group have the three forms (Present tense, Past tense, and Past Participle) all exactly alike —

Present Tense	*Past Tense*	*Past Participle*
Burst	burst	burst
Cast	cast	cast
Cost	cost	cost
Cut	cut	cut
Hit	hit	hit
Hurt	hurt	hurt
Let	let	let
Put	put	put
Rid	rid	rid
Set	set	set
Shed	shed	shed
Shred	shred	shred
Shut	shut	shut
Slit	slit	slit

	Present Tense	*Past Tense*	*Past Participle*
	Spit	spit or spat	spit
	Split	split	split
	Spread	spread	spread
	Sweat	sweat	sweat
	Thrust	thrust	thrust
	Bet	bet	bet
Two forms	Quit	quit or quitted	quit or quitted
	Knit	knit or knitted	knit or knitted

(*b*) Other verbs in this group end in *d* in the Present tense, but form the Past tense and Past Participle by changing *d* into *t* (There are at least nine such verbs in English.)

Present Tense	*Past Tense*	*Past Participle*
Bend	bent	bent
Build	built	built
Gild	gilt, gilded	gilt
Gird	girt, girded	girt
Lend	lent	lent
Rend	rent	rent
Send	sent	sent
Spend	spent	spent
Wend	went	(*Wanting*)

(*c*) Other verbs of this group have the three forms all alike except that they shorten the vowel in the Past tense and Past Participle —

Present Tense	*Past Tense*	*Past Participle*
Bleed	bled	bled
Breed	bred	bred
Feed	fed	fed
Speed	sped	sped
Meet	met	met
Lead	led	led
Read	re*a*d	re*a*d
Light	lit, lighted	lit, lighted
Shoot	shot	shot

Note —The following differences in the use of participles as adjectives or as parts of a tense should be noted, in addition to the two lists already given in pages 80 and 82 respectively —

Verbal Adjective	*Part of Some Tense*
A *hewn* log	The log is *hewed* or *hewn*
A *hidden* meaning	The meaning is *hid* or *hidden*
A *lighted* candle	The candle is *lit* or *lighted*
Roast meat.	The meat is *roasted*
A well *sewn* cloth	I have *sewed* or *sewn* it

§ 13 —Conjugation of Auxiliary, Defective, and Anomalous Verbs

(1) Be

		Singular			Plural
		1	2	3	1 2 3
Present	*Indicative*	am	art	is	are
	Subjunctive	be	be	be	be
Past	*Indicative*	was	wast	was	were
	Subjunctive	were	wert	were	were

Infinitive	Imperative	Present Participle	Perfect Participle
To be	be	being	having been

This verb is used in three different ways —

(*a*) As an Intransitive verb of *Complete* Predication, in the sense of mere existence —

God *is* = God exists
There *are* many men, who, etc = Many men exist, who, etc

(*b*) As an Intransitive verb of *Incomplete* Predication —

A horse *is* a four legged animal
This coat *was* of many colours

(*c*) As an Auxiliary verb —

All the tenses in Passive verbs and all the Continuous tenses in Active ones are formed by the help of the verb *to be*

(2) Have

		Singular			Plural
		1	2	3	1 2 3
Present	*Indicative*	have	hast	has	have
	Subjunctive	have	have	have	have
Past	*Indicative*	had	hadst	had	had
	Subjunctive	had	hadst	had	had

Infinitive.	Imperative	Present Participle	Perfect Participle.
To have	have	having	having had

This verb is used in two different senses —

(a) As a Transitive verb, denoting possession In this sense it is declined regularly in all its moods and tenses —

We have (= we possess) four cows and twenty sheep

(b) As an Auxiliary verb —

All the Perfect tenses, in all the Moods, Active and Passive, are formed by the help of this verb

(3) Shall

	Singular			Plural
	1	2	3	1 2 3
Present	shall	shalt	shall	shall
Past	should	shouldst	should	should

There are no other tenses, and there is no Infinitive mood to this verb It is used in three different senses —

(a) As an Auxiliary verb, in a merely *Future* sense —

The *first* person of the Future Indicative is formed by *shall*, and any person of the Subjunctive can be formed by *should*, as, "I shall go," "if he should go" (see § 178, *a*, and § 186)

(b) As an Auxiliary verb, in the sense of *command* —

In the *second* and *third* persons of the Future Indicative *shall* implies a command, as, "thou *shalt* not steal" (see § 178, *b*)

(c) As an Auxiliary verb, in the sense of *duty* —

"Should," and not "shall," is used in the sense of duty (Here the force of the verb is not Subjunctive, but Indicative)

Present —I *should* do (= it is my duty to do) this
Past —I *should have done* this, (it was my duty to do this, but I neglected to do it)

In the following sentence "*should*" is used in the sense of inference, rather than in that of duty —

He *should* have arrived by this time

That is, "It may be inferred, according to the ordinary course of events, that he has arrived by this time"

(*d*) As an Auxiliary verb, in the sense of purpose, but only after the conjunction "*lest*," and only in the form of "*should*" (see § 396, *Note*) —

He worked hard *lest* he *should* fail

(4) Will

	Singular			Plural
	1	2	3	1 2 3
Present	will	wilt	will	will
Past	{would {willed	wouldst willedst	would willed	would willed

Infinitive	Imperative	Present Participle	Perfect Participle
To will		willing	having willed

This verb is used in several different senses —

(*a*) As an Auxiliary verb, in a merely *Future* sense —

The *second* and *third* persons of the Future Indicative are formed by *will*, and any person of the Subjunctive can be formed by *would* (see § 178, *a*, and § 190, *3*)

(*b*) As an Auxiliary verb, in the sense of *intend* (see § 178, *c*) —

I *will* not steal = I do not intend to steal

To will is present with me, but what I *will* (= wish or intend to do) I do not, and what I *will not*, that I do —*New Testament*

Note —The phrase "*would be*" is elliptical, and is used as an adjective —

A would be murderer (a man who wished or intended to be a murderer, but was prevented)

(*c*) As an Auxiliary verb, in the sense of *habit* or *disposition* In this sense "*will*" has the force of a Present Indicative, and "*would*" of a Past Indicative

When frightened, an elephant *will* burst (= is in the habit of bursting) away with a rush

He *would* come (= was in the habit of coming) every day

(*d*) As a Principal verb (Transitive), in the sense of leaving property by a written document or "will" In this sense the Past tense is *willed*, and not *would* —

He *willed* (= decided by his written will or testament) that all his property should go to his daughter

(5) Do

	Singular			Plural
	1	2	3	1 2 3
Present	do	dost	does	do
Past	did	didst	did	did

Infinitive	Imperative	Present Participle	Perfect Participle
To do	do	doing	having done

This verb is used in three different senses —

(*a*) As a Principal verb (Transitive) in the sense of "perform" In this sense it is declined regularly in all its moods and tenses —

I am now *doing* what you *have done* already

(*b*) As an Auxiliary verb, declined only in the Present and Past tenses —

Do and *did* are used as auxiliaries to the Present and Past tenses, Indicative, of other verbs for the sake of *emphasis*, for the sake of using a *negative*, and for the sake of *asking a question* (see examples given in § 175)

On the uses of *do* in the Imperative, see § 182

(*c*) As a Pro verb or Substitute-verb, to avoid the repetition of a previous verb In this sense it can be used in any mood or tense —

You need not work so hard as you *did* (=worked) yesterday

(6) May

	Singular			Plural
	1	2	3	1 2 3
Present	may	mayest	may	may
Past	might	mightest	might	might

This verb is used in four different senses —

(*a*) In the sense of permission —

You *may* leave (=are permitted to leave) the room.

(b) In the sense of possibility —

I *might* (= I could perhaps) do it, if I tried
The rains *may* yet come (= perhaps the rains will yet come)
Maybe (= it may be, or perhaps) you will succeed after all

(c) In the sense of a wish —

May heaven (= I pray or wish that heaven will) protect thee

(d) In the sense of purpose —

I worked hard that I *might* win

(7) Can

	Singular			Plural
	1	2	3	1 2 3
Present	Can	canst	can	can
Past	Could	couldst	could	could

This verb is used in two different senses —

(a) In the sense of permission —

You *can* (= are permitted to) go or not, as you like

(b) In the sense of power or ability —

He *cannot* (= is unable to) run as fast as you
He *could* (= is able to) do this, if he tried

Note —The verbs *may* and *can* are always Auxiliary,—that is, they never stand alone as Principal or independent verbs. Hence in some grammars they are said to constitute a separate mood, which is called the *Potential*

(8) Ought

	Singular			Plural
	1	2	3	1 2 3
Present or *Past*	Ought	oughtest	ought	ought

This verb is, in its origin, the Past tense of the verb *owe*, as, "you *ought* (= *owed*) him a thousand pounds." In modern English the form "ought" is used only in the sense of *duty*

Present —You ought *to do* this, (and you are expected to do it)
Past.—You ought *to have done* this, (but you did not do it).

(9) Must

This verb has now no varieties of form

It is, in its origin, the Past tense of an old verb *motan*, "to be obliged," which is now obsolete.

"Must" now relates, not to Past, but to Present or Future time, and is used in four different senses —

(*a*) In the sense of necessity or *compulsion* —

What *must* come, *must*

(*b*) In the sense of a very strong *intention* —

I *must* finish this, before I go

(*c*) In the sense of *certainty* or a very strong *inference* —

He *must* be dead by this time

(*d*) In the sense of *duty* or a very strong *obligation* —

We *must* pay our debts

(10) Dare

	Singular			Plural
	1	2	3	1 2 3
Present	dare	darest	dares / dare	dare
Past	durst / dared	durst / dared	durst / dared	durst / dared

Infinitive	Imperative	Present Participle	Perfect Participle
To dare	dare	daring	having dared

This verb is used in two senses —

(*a*) As a verb of Incomplete Predication in the sense of *having courage* In this sense the Third present Singular is "dare," and not "dares," provided it is followed by a Negative —

He *dare* not (=has not the courage to) leave the room (*Negative*)
He *dares* to leave the room (*Affirmative*)

In the Past tense, provided it is followed by a Negative, "durst" is used, and sometimes "dared" —

He *durst* not (or dared not) leave the room

But if the verb is affirmative, we use "dared" and not "durst." The idiom "I dare say" simply means "perhaps"

(*b*) As a Transitive verb in the sense of *challenging* When the verb is used in this sense, it is declined regularly in all the moods and tenses —

He *dares* me (=challenges me) to fight
He *dared* me (=challenged me) to my face

(11) Quoth.

This verb is the Past tense of an old verb, which is now obsolete except in the compound form of *be-queath*

It means "says," or "said," and therefore stands equally for Past and Present time It is used only in the Third person and only in the Singular number It always stands *before* its subject —

"Let me not live," *quoth* he —*Shakspeare*

(12) Need

This is a Principal or independent verb, signifying "require," "want" As such it is declined regularly in all its moods and tenses

The Third person Singular is *need*, and not *needs*, just as *dare* is used for *dares*, provided it is followed by a Negative —

He *need* not (=is under no necessity to) do any more work

In such a phrase as "he must *needs* do this," *needs* is really a Possessive case, with the apostrophe before the s omitted So *needs* =need's=of need=of necessity=necessarily *Needs* has therefore become an Adverb (see § 235)

(13) Worth

This verb occurs in such a phrase as "woe *worth* the day," which means "woe be to the day" The noun "day" is in the Objective case.

Worth is here the Subjunctive mood (in the sense of wish, see § 190, 2) of an old verb signifying "to become"

(14) Wit.

This verb signifies "to know" Only a few of its forms have survived, the rest have become obsolete

(*a*) The Infinitive form *to wit*, in the sense of "namely" This is much used in legal documents at the present day —

He left me by will all his land, *to wit*, the three farms

(*b*) The Present Participle has survived in the negative adverbial form of *unwittingly*, which means "unknowingly"

You cannot blame him for this, since he did it *unwittingly*

(*c*) Two forms of the Indicative have survived —

Present —He *wot* neither what he babbles nor what he means —*Tyndall*

Past —They *wist* not what had become of him —*New Testament*

(15) Beware

This is compounded of *be* + *ware* "Ware" is an old form of the adjective "wary," and is complement to the verb "be."

The form "*beware*" is the only one used It can be preceded by auxiliary verbs, or by "to," as "to beware"

(16) Wont

This is the Past Participle of an obsolete verb, which signified "to continue" Hence "wont" means "accustomed"

(17) Hight

The Past Participle of an obsolete verb, which signified "to call or name"

(18) Yclept

The Past Participle of the obsolete verb "clepe," to call or name The *y* is a prefix without meaning

(19) Impersonal Verbs

Verbs are said to be **Impersonal**, or to be used impersonally, when they take "it" for their subject, and are followed by some Personal pronoun in the Objective case —

It shames *me* to hear this = I am ashamed to hear this
It repents *me* of my folly = I repent of my folly
It behoves *me* to do this = I ought to do this

There are three instances in which the *it* is omitted, and the pronoun in the Objective case is placed *before* the verb instead of after it —

Methinks = it thinks me = I think
Meseems = it seems to me
Melists = it seems to me, or it pleases me

The following phrase is elliptical —

So *please* your Majesty —*Shakspeare*

This means, "If *it* so please your Majesty", that is, "if your Majesty so please or so desire"

CHAPTER VI —ADVERBS

§ 1 —The Kinds of Adverbs

222 Adverb defined —An Adverb is a word used to qualify any part of speech except a noun or pronoun (§ 12)

Note —The definition given in other grammars is —"An adverb is a word used to qualify a verb, adjective, or other adverb "[1]
But this is evidently wrong, since an adverb may, and very often does, qualify Prepositions and Conjunctions —

(*a*) **Prepositions** —

The bird flew *exactly over* the sleeper's head
He paid the money *quite up* to date
This mistake was made *entirely through* your fault
He was sitting *almost outside* the door
He arrived *long before* the time
He wept *partly through* sorrow and *partly through* anger

(*b*) **Conjunctions** —

A man is truly happy *only when* he is in sound health
I dislike this place *simply because* the air is too hot
I wish to know *precisely how* it happened
They locked the door *shortly before* the thieves came
The watch was found *long after* the thieves had been caught
He has been ill *ever since* he left us

It is immaterial whether we say that the adverb qualifies the *Preposition only* or *the entire phrase* introduced by the preposition Similarly, we could say with equal truth that the adverb qualifies the *Conjunction only* or *the entire clause* that follows it

Note —If for an adverb proper we substitute an adverbial phrase, we find that such a phrase can qualify a preposition or a conjunction in the same way as an adverb proper does —

Preposition —He arrived *a few hours after* midnight
Conjunction.—He recovered *ten days after* he had been taken ill.

223 An Adverb can qualify not merely individual words, but an entire Assertive sentence (§ 2, 1) *In this case it must stand first in the sentence*

---

[1] Angus and Bain both admit that the qualifying power of adverbs is not limited to adjectives, verbs, and other adverbs, but both have none the less adhered to the old definition. The same admission, but without any departure from the old definition, is made by Mason, who in a footnote to page 105 of *English Grammar*, ed 1891, points out that "an adverb sometimes modifies a preposition." Since the old definition is admittedly wrong, it is better to put a more accurate one in its place

Unfortunately the thief was not caught
Evidently you were much distressed at the news

We could rewrite these sentences in the following form —

It is unfortunate that the thief was not caught
It was evident that you were much distressed

224 *Adverbs do not qualify Nouns or Pronouns* This is the work of adjectives

The apparent exceptions to the above rule can all be explained —

(*a*) I am *sincerely yours* That book is *certainly mine*

Here the words "yours" and "mine" are the Possessive forms of "you" and "I," and are, therefore, equivalent to *adjectives* (§ 116)

(*b*) A by path, a fore taste, an out house

Here the adverbs do not qualify the several nouns, but are *compounded* with them, so that each compound makes a *single* word

(*c*) In the following examples the adverb that precedes the noun does not qualify the noun, but some participle or adjective understood —

The then king = the king then *reigning*
The late king = the king lately *reigning*
The above account = the account *given* above
A far country = a country far *distant*
An up mail = an up *going* mail

(*d*) In the following example the adverb "almost" does not qualify the noun "drunkard," but the verb "is" —

He is *almost* a drunkard

To say, "He is an almost drunkard," would be incorrect

225 Adverbs are subdivided into three distinct classes

I Simple II Interrogative III Relative

226 Simple Adverbs — These can be distinguished from one another according to their meaning —

(*a*) **Time** —

He did this *before*, and you have done it *since* He will *soon* arrive He was taken ill *yesterday*

The chief adverbs of this class are —*Now, then, before, since, ago, already, soon, presently, immediately, instantly, early, late, afterwards, yesterday, to day, to morrow*

(*b*) **Place** —

We must rest *here*, and not *there*

The chief adverbs of this class are —*Here, there, hence, thence, hither, thither, in, out, within, without, above, below, inside, outside, far, near*, etc

(c) **Number** —

He did this *once*, but he will not do it *again*

The chief adverbs of this class are —*Once*, *twice*, *thrice*, *again*, *seldom*, *never*, *sometimes*, *always*, *often*, *firstly*, *secondly*, *thirdly*, etc

(d) **Manner, Quality, or State** —

He did his work *slowly*, but *surely*

To this class of adverb belong —*Thus*, *so*, *well*, *ill*, *amiss*, *badly*, *probably*, *certainly*, *conveniently*, etc

(e) **Quantity, Extent, or Degree** —

He is *almost*, but not *quite*, the cleverest boy in the class

To this class of adverb belong —*Very*, *much*, *too*, *quite*, *almost*, *little*, *a little*, *rather*, *somewhat*, *half*, *partly*, *wholly*, *so*, etc

Note 1 —**Thus, so the** —These have been distinctively called *Demonstrative* adverbs, because they are akin to Demonstrative adjectives, —"*thus*" and "*the*" being akin to "this" or "that," and "*so*" to "such" They all denote either *manner* or *extent*

Thus —He did it *thus* (in this or that manner)

So —He loved her *so* (in such a manner or to such an extent)

The —He worked *the* (to that extent) harder, because he had been encouraged

Note 2 —The adverb 'the' is quite distinct from the Definite Article It represents an old inflection of the Demonstrative, and is never used except before an adjective or adverb in the *Comparative* degree

(f) **Affirming or Denying** —

He did *not* come after all

Examples —*Yes*, *no*, *not*, *yea*, *nay*, *not at all*, *by all means*, etc

227 **Interrogative Adverbs** —This is the name given to those adverbs that are used for asking questions —

(a) **Time** —

When did he come? *How long* will he remain here?

(b) **Place** —

Where did he stop? *Whence* has he come? *Whither* is he going?

(c) **Number** —

How often did the dog bark?

(d) **Manner, Quality, or State** —

How did he do this? *How* (in what state of health) is he to day?

(e) **Quantity or Degree** —

How far (to what extent) was that report true?

(f) **Cause or Reason** —

Why (for what reason) did he do this? *Wherefore* did she weep?

228. The adverb "*how*" is sometimes used in an exclamatory sense —

How kind of you to do that!
How often have you been cautioned!

"*What*" in the sense of quantity or degree is similarly used in an exclamatory sense —

What a foolish fellow you are!
What clever sons you have!

229 Relative Adverbs —These are the same in *form* as Interrogative adverbs, but instead of asking questions, they join two sentences together Hence a Relative adverb is a double part of speech,—an adverb and conjunction combined, as was pointed out in § 18 (3)

These adverbs are called *Relative* for two reasons—(1) Because they relate to some antecedent, expressed or understood, as Relative pronouns do, (2) because they are formed from Relative pronouns —

(*a*) *The antecedent understood*

This is *where* (=the place in which) we dwell
Let me know *when* (=the time by which) you will come

(*b*) *The antecedent expressed*

This is the place *where* we dwell
Let me know the time *when* you will come

230 "The" as a Relative Adverb —The word "the" is a *Relative* adverb of Quantity, and is always followed by its antecedent "*the*," which is a *Demonstrative* adverb of Quantity.

The more (wealth) men have, *the* more they desire
The sooner he comes, *the* better for him

Note 1 —The *first* "the" is the Relative adverb, and the *second* one is the Demonstrative adverb —"*To what extent* men have more wealth, *to that extent* they desire more"

Note 2 —This pair of adverbs is never used except in combination with some adjective or other adverb in the *Comparative* degree

Note 3 —The Relative "the" is never used unless it is followed by its antecedent, the Demonstrative "the" But the Demonstrative "the" can be used alone —

He worked *the* (to that extent) harder, because he had been encouraged by his teacher

§ 2 —Degrees of Comparison in Adverbs

231 Some Adverbs have degrees of comparison like adjectives, and these are formed in the same kind of way —

(*a*) If the Adverb is a word of *one* syllable, the Com-

parative is formed by adding *er* and the Superlative by adding *est* —

Positive	*Comparative*	*Superlative*
Soon	sooner	soonest
Long	longer	longest
Loud	louder	loudest
Late	later	latest or last
Near	nearer	nearest

(*b*) Some Adverbs form the degrees of comparison in an irregular way —

Well	better	best
Ill or badly	worse	worst
Much	more	most
Little	less	least
Forth	further	furthest
Far	farther	farthest

(*c*) Adverbs ending in *ly* form the Comparative by adding *more* and the Superlative by adding *most* —

Wisely	more wisely	most wisely
Beautifully	more beautifully	most beautifully

Note —The adverb "*early*," however, has "*earlier*" for its Comparative

§ 3 —The Forms of Adverbs

232 Some Adverbs have the same form as the corresponding Adjectives, as—

Adverb	*Adjective*
He was *much* pleased	There is *much* sickness here
He stayed *long*	He went on a *long* journey
He spoke *loud*	There is a sound of *loud* voices
He came *early*	He woke up at an *early* hour
Stand *near* while I speak	He is my *near* relation
He was *a little* tired	There is *a little* hope now
He came *only* once	This is my *only* son
He has slept *enough*	He has eaten *enough* bread

233. Adverbs in "ly"—Most Adverbs are formed from adjectives by adding *ly* (a corruption of *like*), and there is generally an Abstract noun which can be placed between the adjective and the adverb —

Adjective	*Abstract Noun*	*Adverb*
Wise	wisdom	wisely
Poor	poverty	poorly
High	height	highly
Short	shortness	shortly

Note —Adverbs can also be formed from Participles, as, *devotedly*, *knowingly*, *surprisingly*, etc.

234 Adverbs formed from "the," "he," "who" These are sometimes called Pronominal adverbs —

		ADVERBS				
		Rest	Motion to	Motion from	Time	Manner
Dem	The	there	thither	thence	then	thus
	He	here	hither	hence		
Rel	Who	where	whither	whence	when	how
Inter	Who?	where?	whither?	whence?	when?	how?

Many of the above adverbs can be compounded with prepositions or other adverbs —

From "there" we get *therein, thereto, thereat, therefore, therefrom, therewith, thereout, thereon* or *thereupon, thereof, thereby*

From "here" we get *herein, hereto heretofore, hereat, herewith, hereon* or *hereupon, hereof, hereby, hereafter*

From "where" we get *wherein, whereto, wherefore, whereon*

From "hither" we get *hitherto* (=up to this place or time)

From "thence" we get *thenceforth, thenceforward*

From "hence" we get *henceforth, henceforward*

235 Adverbs formed from Possessive nouns —These are sometimes called Genitival adverbs —

Needs (=of need, necessarily) *Once* (=of one, or of one time) *Twice* (=of two times) *Sometimes* (=of some time) *Always* (=of all way) *Sideways* (=of a side way) *Length ways* (=of a length-way) *Else* (=of other, from an old form, "elles," of another)

236 Adverbial Phrases —There is a large number of phrases in English, which do the work of Adverbs and are therefore called Adverbial phrases (see § 30, *a*)

(1) A preposition followed by a noun —*At random* (aimlessly), *of course* (necessarily), *at length* (finally), *in fact* (actually), *to boot* (moreover), *of a truth* (truly)

(2) A preposition amalgamated with a noun —*Indeed* (actually), *betimes* (punctually), *besides* (in addition), *between* (in the middle of two or twain), *to-day* (on this day), *to morrow*, *asleep* (in a state of sleep), *abed* (in bed), *away* (on the way)

Note —The "*be*" is an old form of the preposition "by" The "*a*" is a contracted form of the preposition "on."

(3) A preposition followed by an adjective Some noun is understood after the adjective —*In general, in particular, in short, at large, in vain, on high, of old, after all, at first, at last, at least, at all, at most, at best, in future, at present*

(4) A preposition amalgamated with an adjective Here, as before, some noun is understood after the adjective —*Below, beyond, behind, abroad, anew, awry, across, along, aloud*, etc

(5) A noun qualified by an adjective —*Meantime, meanwhile, midway, yesterday*, etc (On the Adverbial objective, see § 287, 5)

(6) An Adverb compounded with a preposition —*Forthwith, within, without, forever, at once, before, beneath*

(7) Miscellaneous phrases —*By all means, by no means, by the by* (something said in passing), *by the way* (the same meaning as *by the by*), *once on a time, inside out, upside down, to be sure* (certainly), *head foremost* (with the head in front), *head downwards, topsy turvy, head over heels* (the head being thrown over the heels)

237 Adverbs sometimes go together *in pairs*, the one being connected with the other by the conjunction "and" —

He is walking *up and down, to and fro*
He is walking *here and there, hither and thither*
The mice run *in and out, backwards and forwards*
He comes here *now and then* (occasionally)
He works *off and on* (irregularly)
You will see him *by and by* (in a short time)

§ 4 —Verbs Compounded with Adverbs

238 A Verb is said to be compounded with an Adverb, when the two words are so habitually used together, that one is considered to be a part of the other

Such Adverbs are almost always (except in poetry) placed *after* the verb, as "speak out," "rise up" Here the *out* should be parsed as part of the verb "speak", and *up* as part of the verb "rise"

But in forming the corresponding noun, the adverb is put first —

Verb	*Noun*
The crops will *come out* well	The *outcome* was a good crop
No profits will *come in*	His *income* is small
Cholera did not *break out*	There was no *outbreak* of cholera
He *set out* on his journey	He had no trouble at the *outset*

Similar instances are —*Set off* (verb), *offset* (noun), *put out* (verb), *output* (noun), *fit out* (verb), *outfit* (noun), *shoot off* (verb), *offshoot* (noun), *spring off* (verb), *offspring* (noun), *shoot up* (verb), *upshot* (noun), *turn out* (verb), *outturn* (noun), *cast out* (verb), *outcast* (noun), *set on* (verb), *onset* (noun), *lay out* (verb), *outlay* (noun), *look out* (verb), *outlook* (noun), *draw in* (verb), *indraught* (noun), *let out* (verb), *outlet* (noun), *let in* (verb), *inlet* (noun).

Note —"Set off," "turn out," and a few more are also used as nouns.

§ 5.—The Two Uses of Adverbs

239 As in the case of Adjectives (see § 102), there are two different ways in which Adverbs can be used, viz (*a*) the Attributive, (*b*) the Predicative

(*a*) *Attributive use*.—An Adverb is used attributively, when it qualifies its word in the ordinary way,—that is, when it is placed as close as possible before it or after it —

He is *entirely wrong* He *shouted loudly* He *did* his work *very badly* *Half through* the door I dislike him *only because* he is lazy

(*b*) *Predicative use*.—An Adverb is used predicatively, when it is made part of the Predicate of a sentence, or in other words, when it is used as the Complement of the verb going before it —

Subject	*Verb*	*Complement*, etc
My son	is	*well* (in good health) to day
He	will be	*better* (in better health) soon.
He	was turned	*adrift* (to go where he could)
The two boys	are	much *alike* (like to each other)
The bear	was caught	*alive* (in a living state)
Those men	are	*aware* (conscious) of their faults
The game	is	*over* (finished)
Some money	was	still *over* (remaining)
The results	are	*out* (published)
The stars	are	*out* (visible)
He	was heard	*out* (to the very end)
The bargain	is	*off* (cancelled)
The train	is	*off* (started)
He	is	*well off* (in good circumstances)
Our side	is	*in* (having their innings)
The late minister	is	*in* (holding office) again

CHAPTER VII.—PREPOSITIONS

240 Preposition defined.—A Preposition is a word placed before a noun or noun equivalent to show in what relation the person or thing denoted thereby stands to something else (§ 14) The noun or noun-equivalent is called the Object

I place my hand *on* the table.

Here if the word "on" is omitted, there is no sense The hand might be placed *on* the table, or *under* the table, or *above* the table Until some preposition has been inserted, the relation between the hand and the table is not known

241 (*a*) **Adverbs as Objects**.—Some adverbs of Time

or Place can be used as objects to prepositions denoting relations of Time or Place —

We must be ready by *then* (=that time) By *far* the best.
He has worked hard from *then* to *now*
He walks about from *here* to *there*
I have heard of worse things being done before *now*
Until *now* it has not ceased raining
Many strange things may happen between *now* and *then*
You must go at *once* This will last for *ever*

(*b*) **Phrases as Objects** —Certain adverbial phrases (that is, phrases which do not end in a preposition or a conjunction, see § 30 and § 236) can, like Simple Adverbs, be used as objects to a preposition —

The day spring from *on high* hath visited us
He has come from *beyond the seas*
He did not return till *about ten days afterwards*
He did not see her till *within a few weeks of his death*
These books are sold at *over one rupee* each
I bought this for *under half its value*

(*c*) **Noun-clause as Object** —A noun-clause (see § 47, *f*) can be the object to a preposition in the same way as a noun or pronoun can be

This depends upon | whether he will consent or not
He told every one of | what he had heard
Go whenever you like except | that you must not go in the rain

242 Omission of Object.—There are two cases of this —

Relative Pronoun —The man (*whom* or *that*) we were looking for
Demons Pronoun.—A chair to sit on (*it*) (See § 196, *b*)

243 Forms of Prepositions —Prepositions have six different forms —(1) Simple, (2) Double, (3) Compound, (4) Participial, (5) Phrase prepositions, (6) Disguised prepositions

(1) The **Simple** prepositions are —*At, by, with, on, in, to, for, of* or *off, from, through, up, till, over, under, after*

(2) **Double** prepositions (that is, any two of the Simple prepositions written either separately or in combination) are used when a Simple preposition is not sufficient to express the sense —

The dog ran *into* the house The lamp fell *onto* the table One man was chosen *from among* the rest The seed has sprouted *from under* the ground. The cart stands *over against* the bank A live coal was taken *from off* the fireplace He came *from within* the house

(3) **Compound** prepositions.—These are formed from some noun, adjective, or adverb compounded with the preposition "*be*" (= by) or "*a*" (= on) —

Across (=on cross), *along*, *amidst* (=on middle), *behind* (=by+hind), *about* (=on+by+out), *above* (=on+by+up), *before* (=by+fore), *within*, *without*, *below*, *beneath* (=by+neath), *beside*, *between* (=by+twain), *beyond* (=by+yonder), *amongst* (=on+gemang, in a multitude)

(4) **Participial** prepositions.—These were originally Present or Past Participles used absolutely, sometimes (*a*) with the noun expressed, and sometimes (*b*) with some noun understood —

(*a*) **The noun expressed** (see § 285, 5)

Pending fresh orders = fresh orders *pending* or not yet being given
During the summer = the summer *during* or enduring or still lasting
Notwithstanding his anger = his anger not *withstanding* or not preventing it
All *except* one = all, one *being excepted*
All *save* one = all, one being *saved* or reserved
The hour *past* sunset = the hour, sunset *having passed*

(*b*) **Some noun understood** Impersonal absolute (see § 300, *Note* 2)

Considering your age you have done very well
Owing to the long drought the crops have failed
Inform me *concerning*, *touching*, or *regarding* this matter

(5) **Phrase** prepositions.—Two or more words habitually thrown together and ending with a Simple preposition may be called *Phrase prepositions* or *Prepositional phrases* (see § 30, *b*) —

By means of, *because of*, *in front of*, *in opposition to*, *in spite of*, *on account of*, *with reference to*, *with regard to*, *for the sake of*, *on behalf of*, *instead of*, *in lieu of*, *in the place of*, *in prospect of*, *with a view to*, *in the event of*, etc

Note.—The phrases "*on this side*" and "*on board*" do not take a Simple preposition after them, as—

On this side the river *On board* the ship

Similarly the noun "*despite*" can be used as a preposition for the prepositional phrase "*in spite of*" —

Despite his riches, power, and pelf —*Scott*

(6) **Disguised** prepositions.—It has been shown already how "*by*" can be changed into "be" and "*on*" into "a," as a prefix to certain nouns or adjectives.

Similarly "*of*" can be changed into "o," as in "four o'clock," "Jack o' lantern," etc

To the same class belong such phrases as the following —

Wheat sells at sixteen seers *a rupee*
He called to see me once *a week*
He gave the coolies four annas *a piece*

The "a" *looks* so much like the Indefinite Article, that by a false analogy "the" is sometimes used in its place, as—

Wheat sells at sixteen seers *the* rupee

244 Than —This word has been used as a Preposition by the best English writers —

No mightier than thyself or *me*	*Shakspeare*
A stone is heavy, and the sand weighty, but a fool's wrath is heavier than *them* both	*Old Testament*
She suffers hourly more than *me*	*Swift*
Lined with giants deadlier than *them* all	*Pope*
For thou art a girl as much brighter than *her*	
As he was a poet sublimer than *me*	*Prior*

These are not schoolboy errors, and "than" is still used as a Preposition in conversation But in recent books on Grammar its prepositional character has been either overlooked or denied The best course to take is to parse it as a Conjunction, whenever it is possible to do so by adding a clause after it —

No animal is larger than a whale
No animal is larger than a whale (is large)

But in such examples as the following "than" must still be parsed as a Preposition, because there is no omitted clause which could make it a Conjunction —

	Kind of Object
I will not take less than *ten rupees*	*Noun.*
No one other than a *graduate* need apply	*Noun.*
Here is my son, than *whom* a better does not exist	*Rel Pron*
He did nothing else than *laugh*	*Noun Infin*
I will suffer myself rather *than* (that) he should suffer	*Noun clause*
He got more *than* (what) he asked for	*Noun clause*

245 But —In such examples as the following "but" must be parsed as a Preposition Otherwise it is a Conjunction (On its uses as a Conjunction see p 249)

All *but* (except) one fulfilled their promises

He was all *but* (=everything except) ruined (Here "ruined" is an elliptical form of the Gerund "being ruined", and this Gerund is the object of the preposition "but"

But for your help (=except on account of your help, =if you had not helped me) I should have been ruined (Here the phrase "for your help" is object to the preposition)

I cannot *but* fear (=I cannot do anything except fear) that you are ill. (Here the Noun Infinitive "fear" is the object.)

CHAPTER VIII.—CONJUNCTIONS

246. A Conjunction is a word for *joining*, and for no other purpose.

A Conjunction is never connected with an *object*, as a preposition is.

A Conjunction never *qualifies* a word, as an adverb does. It simply *joins* words or sentences.

Hence the same word can be an adverb in one place, a preposition in another, or a conjunction in another:—

I have seen this man *before*. (*Adverb*.)
He stood *before* the door. (*Preposition*.)
The rain fell *before* we reached home. (*Conjunction*.)

247. Conjunctions are sub-divided into two main classes:—

I. **Co-ordinative,** so called because they join sentences of co-ordinate (that is, of *equal*) rank.

II. **Subordinative,** so called because they join a *subordinate* or dependent sentence to a *principal* sentence (that is, to a sentence of *higher* rank).

§ 1.—Co-ordinative Conjunctions.

248. *Sentences are said to be of* **Co-ordinate** *or* **equal** *rank when they assert facts which are independent of each other.*

249. Sentences of equal rank can be combined together in four different ways, and this gives rise to four different kinds of Co-ordinative Conjunctions:—

(*a*) **Cumulative.**—By these one statement or fact is simply *added* to another.

(*b*) **Alternative.**—By these an alternative or *choice* is offered between one statement and another.

(*c*) **Adversative.**—By these conjunctions one statement or fact is *contrasted* with or set against another.

(*d*) **Illative.**—By these conjunctions one statement or fact is *inferred* or proved from another.

(*a*) Cumulative (addition).

And.—The one received a prize, *and* the other was promoted.
Both . . . and.—He was *both* degraded *and* expelled.
Also.—He is guilty, and you *also*.
Too.—He is an idler, and a gambler *too*.

As well as —He *as well as* you is guilty
No less than.—He *no less than* you is guilty
Not only but also —He was *not only* accused, *but also* convicted
Now —They preferred Barabbas to Jesus, *now*, Barabbas was a robber
Well —You have done the work very skilfully, *well*, I did not expect it of you

(*b*) Alternative (choice)

Either or —*Either* this man sinned *or* his parents
Neither nor —He was *neither* an idler *nor* a gambler
Otherwise, else, or —Leave the room, *or* you will be caught.

(*c*) Adversative (contrast)

But —He is sad, *but* hopeful
Still, yet —He is very rich, *still* or *yet* he is not contented
Nevertheless —All men were against him, *nevertheless* he persevered
However —All men were against him, he stuck, *however*, to his point
Whereas, while - Wise men love truth, *whereas* or *while* fools shun it.
Only —Go where you like, *only* do not stay here

(*d*) Illative (inference)

Therefore —He was found guilty, and *therefore* he was hanged
Then, so, so then.—It is time to go so or *so then* let us start, or let us start *then*
For —He will die some day, *for* all men are mortal

§ 2 —Subordinative Conjunctions

250 One sentence is said to be *subordinate* to another, when it depends upon the other for its meaning, and does not convey a complete meaning by itself

The **Dependent** *sentence is that to which some* **Subordinative** *Conjunction is prefixed*

The **Principal** *sentence is that on which the subordinate or inferior sentence depends*

Principal	*Conjunction*	*Dependent*
I will read that book,	if	you advise me

251. What are the different modes in which one sentence can be made to depend on another?

The chief modes of dependence are nine in number —

(*a*) Apposition, (*b*) Causation, (*c*) Effect, (*d*) Purpose, (*e*) Condition, (*f*) Concession or Contrast, (*g*) Comparison, (*h*) Extent or manner, (*i*) Time

(*a*) **Apposition**[1] (this is the simplest mode of dependence) —

Principal	*Dependent*
He told us (the fact),	*that* rain had fallen
He wrote to us (to the effect),	*that* he had arrived safely
He made a promise,	*that* he would return soon.

The Dependent sentence in the above examples is in apposition with the noun in brackets, which may be either omitted or expressed

(*b*) **Cause or Reason** —

Principal	*Dependent*
He will succeed,	*because* he has worked hard
I will do this,	*since* you desire it
Let us go to bed,	*as* it is now late

(*c*) **Effect** —

Principal	*Dependent*
He talked so much,	*that* he made himself hoarse

(*d*) **Purpose** —

Principal	*Dependent*
Men work,	*that* they may earn a living
He took medicine,	*in order that* he might recover
He took medicine,	*so that* he might recover
He walked with a cane,	*lest* he should stumble

(*e*) **Condition** —

Principal	*Dependent*
I will do this,	*if* I am allowed
They threatened to beat him,	*unless* he confessed (=if he did not confess)
I agree to these terms,	*provided* or *provided that* you will sign your name
He gave a sudden start,	*as if* he had been shot (=as he would have done, if he had been shot)
You must leave the room,	*whether* you wish it *or no* (=you must leave the room under any condition whatever)

[1] The word '*that*,' if we look to its origin, is simply the neuter Demonstrative pronoun How it became a Conjunction is thus explained by Mr Mason in *English Grammar*, p 122

"*That*" was originally the neuter pronoun used to point to the fact stated in some previous clause or sentence "It was good, he saw *that*" By inverting the order of the clauses, we get "He saw *that* (namely) it was good" The primary clause has thus become a secondary or subordinate one, and "*that*" has become a subordinative conjunction

Mr Mason calls it "the Simple Conjunction of Subordination,"—a long and awkward name, less convenient than "Apposition" This term is meant to describe the word "namely," which is used by Mr Mason himself to denote the force of the conjunction "*that*"

Dr Abbott in p 257 of *How to Parse* calls it the conjunction of "Apposition"

(f) Concession or Contrast —

Principal	*Dependent*
He is an honest man,	*though* or *although* he is poor
He will never succeed,	*however* much he may try
He was not contented,	*however* rich he became
He was not refreshed,	*notwithstanding that* he slept long

Note —The conjunction "however," when it is *co-ordinative*, stands alone, and is generally placed somewhere in the middle of its sentence But when it is *subordinative*, it must be attached to some adverb as "much," or to some adjective as "rich," and is always placed at the beginning of its sentence —

Dependent	*Principal*
1 *Though* he punish me,	*yet* will I trust in him
2 Hot *as* the sun is,	we must go out

Observe that whenever "*as*" is used in a Concessive or Contrasting sense, it is invariably *preceded* by some adjective, adverb, or participle, which stands as Complement to the verb following —

Hot as the sun is = however hot the sun is

(g) Comparison—(i) of equal degrees —

The same Quality Compared

He is *as* clever *as* I (am)
He likes you *as much as* I (like you)
He likes you *no less than* me (he likes me)

Different Qualities Compared

The sea is *as* deep *as* the mountains are high
He is *as* good *as* he is wise (=He is no less good than he is wise)

(ii) Of unequal degrees

The same Quality Compared

He is more (or less) clever *than* I (am)
He likes you more (or less) *than* I (like you)
He likes you more (or less) *than* me (he likes me)

Different Qualities Compared

The sea is deeper *than* the mountains are high.
He is more wise *than* (he is) good
He is less good *than* (he is) wise

(h) Extent or Manner —

Principal	*Dependent*
Men will reap	*as* (=to what extent or in what manner) they sow
This is not true,	*so far as* I can find out.
He chose the men,	*according as* they were fit
Dependent	*Principal*
As men sow,	*so* will they also reap

(*i*) **Time** —

Time simultaneous

Principal	*Dependent*
He called at the house,	*as* the clock struck four
I will leave the room,	*as soon as* you open the door
You can hold the horse,	*while* I bring the saddle

Time before

Principal	*Dependent*
He worked very hard,	*before* he succeeded
You have much to do,	*ere* you can gain your end
He remained a minor,	*until* he was seventeen years old

Time after

Principal	*Dependent*
He returned home,	*after* he had done the work
He has been very weak,	*since* he was taken sick

Time how long

Principal	*Dependent*
The sun will rise,	*while* the world lasts
No one can harm us,	*so long as* we remain friends

Relative and Interrogative Adverbs

252 It was explained in § 18 that a Relative adverb is a *double* part of speech,—a conjunction and adverb combined in one.

The same is true of Interrogative adverbs, when they are used as conjunctions —

Let me ask you *how* you did this

There is no difference in *form* between a Relative and an Interrogative adverb The former qualifies some noun expressed or understood in the Principal sentence The latter is preceded by some verb that signifies *asking* or *inquiring*

Relative and Interrogative adverbs, so far as they join sentences, constitute a special class of Subordinative conjunctions

Time

Principal		*Dependent*
He remained silent,	*when*	(=as soon as) he heard that
He feels sad,	*whenever*	(=at any time in which) he thinks of his lost friend
My friends inquired	*when*	I should return

Concession or Contrast

Principal		*Dependent*
He sold that house,	*when*	(=although) it was the best he had

Purpose, Cause, or Reason.

Principal		*Dependent*
We never understood	*why*	(=the reason for which) he acted so

Place.

Principal		*Dependent*
We find flowers,	*where*	(=in a place in which) we expected only weeds
We find flowers,	*wherever*	(=in any places in which) we wander
He did not tell us	*whence*	(=the place from which) he had come

Respect.

Principal		*Dependent*
He did not tell us	*where*	(=in what point) we were wrong
We cannot perceive	*where*	(=in what respect) the difference lies

Manner or Means

Principal		*Dependent*
Let me ask you,	*how*	(=by what means or in what manner) you did this

State or Condition

Principal		*Dependent*
Let me ask you,	*how*	(=in what state of health) you are to day

Doubt

Principal		*Dependent*
He wished to know	*whether*	(or if) he was ready to start

Note —A Relative adverb can often be substituted for a Relative pronoun, as in the following examples —

{Ten o'clock is the hour *when* we must start
{Ten o clock is the hour *at which* we must start

{Tell me the reason *why* you left us
{Tell me the reason *for which* you left us

{This is the house *where* we once lived
{This is the house *in which* we once lived

CHAPTER IX —INTERJECTIONS

253 An Interjection, properly speaking, is not a Part of Speech, since it has no grammatical connection with any other word or words in the sentence

It is merely an *exclamatory sound*, thrown into a sentence to denote some strong feeling or emotion (see §§ 13 and 14).—

Joy —Hurrah! huzza!	*Reproof* —Fie! fie!
Grief —Oh! ah! alas! alack!	*Contempt or ridicule* { Stuff! bosh! tut tut! pooh! pish! pshaw! tush!
Amusement —Ha! ha!	
Approval —Bravo!	
Weariness —Heigh ho!	*To call some one* —Ho! holloa!
Attention —Lo! hark! hush! hist!	

254 There are certain phrases which are used like Interjections to express some strong feeling or emotion —

Ah me, or *ay me!* *Woe is me!*
For shame (=alas on account of shame!)
Alack a day (=ah, lack or loss on the day!)
Hail, all hail (=be hale or healthy!) *Welcome!* *Well done!*
Good-bye (=*God be with ye!*) *Adieu!* *Farewell!*
Bad luck to it! *O dear me* (=O dear or costly for me!)
Good gracious! *Good heavens!* *Well to be sure!* (Surprise.)

255 There are certain moods of verbs and parts of speech which can be used in an exclamatory or Interjectional sense —

(*a*) *Noun Infinitive* —*To think* that he should have died! (§ 195, *e*)
(*b*) *Subjunctive* —*Would* that I had gained that prize! (*Wish*)
(*c*) *Imperative* —*Hear! hear!* (*Applause*)
(*d*) *Noun* —Dreadful *sight!* Foolish *fellow!* *Fool!* *Dunce!*
(*e*) *Adjective* (with some noun understood) —*Strange!* *Shocking!*
(*f*) *Adverb* —*How* very kind of you! *How* wonderful!
(*g*) *Pronoun* —*What* a sad thing it is!
(*h*) *Conjunction* —*If* I could only see him once more!

256 Sometimes in a rapid or exclamatory sentence an Auxiliary verb with its subject is left out, and only the main verb is expressed —

Why dream and wait for him longer?—*Longfellow*
(=Why *dost thou* or why *do we* wait for him longer?)

CHAPTER X —ANALYSIS OF SENTENCES

§ 1 —Analysis of Simple Sentences

257 A SENTENCE which has only *one* Finite verb (expressed or understood) is called a Simple sentence, as—

Subject	*Finite Verb*
Rain	falls

The word "Simple" means *single* The sentence is called *single* (or simple), because it has only *one* Finite verb in it.

258 A sentence that has *more than one* Finite verb expressed or understood is either Compound or Complex.

Thus —"If I see him to day, I will invite him to my house." This is not a Simple sentence, because it has *two* Finite verbs, viz "see" and "will invite"

Again —"He was well received and (was) listened to with respect, whenever he spoke" This is not a Simple sentence, because it has *three* Finite verbs, viz "*was*" expressed, "*was*" understood, and "*spoke*"

259 There are four distinct parts or elements of which a Simple sentence can be composed, and the analysis of a sentence consists in *decomposing* it (that is, in analysing or breaking it up) into these several parts —

§ 1 —The Subject
§ 2 —Adjuncts to the Subject, *if any*
§ 3 —The Predicate
§ 4 —Adjuncts to the Predicate-verb, *if any*

Of these four elements the first and third (viz the Subject and the Predicate) are essential to the sentence,—that is, the sentence could not exist without them (see § 3) But the second and fourth (viz the Adjuncts to the Subject or to the Predicate verb) are not essential They are mere additions, which may or may not be present, and could be removed without destroying the sentence

260 I The Subject must be either a *Noun* or something that has the force of a Noun

II The additions or Adjuncts to the Subject (if there are any) must be either *Adjectives* or words that have the force of an Adjective They have hence been called Attributive Adjuncts (They are sometimes also called the Enlargement of the Subject)

III The Predicate must either be *a Finite verb* or it must contain one

IV The additions or Adjuncts to the Predicate-verb (if there are any) must be either *Adverbs* or words that have the force of an Adverb They have hence been called Adverbial Adjuncts. (Sometimes also they have been called the Extension of the Predicate)

I Subject	II Attributive Adjuncts (to Subject).	III Predicate verb	IV Adverbial Adjuncts (to Predicate)
A tiger The horse	fierce tired	was shot will sleep	to day soundly.

The Subject

261 The Subject can be expressed in several different forms, all of which (as you have already learnt) are either Nouns or words that have the force of a Noun —

		Subject	*Predicate*
(a)	*A Noun*	Rain	is falling
	A Noun understood	The virtuous (men)	will prosper
(b)	*A Pronoun*	We	must go
(c)	*A Noun-Infinitive*	To work	is healthy
(d)	*A Gerund*	Working	is healthy
(e)	*A Phrase*	How to do this	is doubtful.

Note 1 —The student should observe that the above list of forms in which the Subject can be expressed tallies with that given in § 22, except that (*f*) *a Clause* has been omitted A clause, as will be afterwards shown, belongs to Complex and Compound sentences

Note 2 —When a Noun Infinitive is used as Subject, it is sometimes placed after the Predicate, and is in apposition to the pronoun "it"

It is sad to see this = It—viz to see this—is sad

Attributive Adjuncts (to the Subject)

262 It has been explained already that all such additions *qualify the Subject*, and hence they are either adjectives or words having the force of an adjective

Note —The Definite and Indefinite articles, although properly speaking they belong to the class of Demonstrative adjectives, are not counted as Adjuncts in the analysis of sentences

263 The principal kinds of Attributive Adjuncts are —

(*a*) An Adjective, as—

A *heavy* shower fell to day

Here *heavy* is something added to the meaning of the Subject "shower," because it shows what kind of shower is meant

(*b*) A Participle or Verbal Adjective, see § 103 (1) —

A *fertilising* shower fell to day

Here *fertilising* is something added to the meaning of the Subject, because it shows what kind of work the shower is expected to do

(*c*) A Gerundial Infinitive, see § 103 (5) and § 196 (*b*) —

Water *to drink* is scarce in this place

Here *to drink* shows the purpose for which the water will be used, and like an adjective it qualifies the noun "water"

(*d*) A Noun or Pronoun in the Possessive case, § 103 (4)

My son's teacher called here to-day

Here *my son's* is something added to the subject, and has the same force as an adjective would have in qualifying the noun "teacher."

(*e*) A Noun or Gerund used as an Adjective, § 103 (3)

The *village* watchman fell asleep in the night
Drinking water is scarce in this place

(*f*) A Noun in Apposition, see § 19 —

Alexander, *the King* of Macedon, conquered Persia.

(*g*) A Preposition with its Object, see § 103 (6) —

A man *of virtue* (=a virtuous man) will not tell a lie

(*h*) An Adverb with some Participle omitted, § 103 (2)

The *then* king=the then (reigning) king

The Predicate

264 The Predicate must be either a Finite verb or it must contain one If the verb is of such a nature, that it cannot by itself make a *complete* sense (as required by the definition given in § 1), but must have some word or words placed after it for this purpose, any such word or words must be considered parts of the predicate All possible forms of a Predicate are shown in the following scheme —

Subject	Predicate		
	Finite Verb	Object with qualifying words	Complement with qualifying words
1 {A hog The snake	grunts was killed		
2 {My son The thief	became was ordered		a good scholar to be severely punished
3 {The gardener The teacher	killed can teach	that poisonous snake (*a*) my sons (*b*) Euclid	
4 They	found	the weary man	sound asleep

In (1) we have first an Intransitive verb of Complete Predication (see § 152), and then a Transitive verb in the Passive voice Neither of these requires either an Object or a Complement So the verb alone makes up the Predicate

In (2) we have first an Intransitive verb of Incomplete Predication (see § 153), and then a Factitive verb in the Passive voice (see § 165) Each of these requires a Complement to make the predication complete

In (3) we have first a Transitive verb with a single Object (see § 146), and then a Transitive verb with a double Object (see § 148)

Each of these requires the Object (single or double) to be expressed, before the predication can be complete

In (4) we have a Factitive verb in the Active voice, which therefore requires both an Object and a Complement (see § 149)

Note 1 —If the Object or Complement has any qualifying words attached to it, these can be mentioned with it in the same column.

Thus in the complement "a good scholar," there is no need to make a separate column for the qualifying adjective "good"

Again, in the complement "to be severely punished," there is no need of a separate column for the qualifying adverb "severely"

Again, in stating the object "that poisonous snake," there is no need of a separate column for the qualifying adjectives "that" and "poisonous"

Note 2 —An Auxiliary verb may be put in the same column with the Principal verb Thus in stating "can teach," we need not give one column for "can" and another for "teach"

Adverbial Adjuncts (to Verb of Predicate)

265 Anything *which qualifies the action of the verb* (by saying something about the time, manner, place, cause, means, instrument, purpose, or any other circumstance) is called an Adjunct or addition to the Predicate

All such additions, *since they qualify the verb*, must be either *adverbs* or words having the force of an adverb

266 The principal kinds of Adverbial adjuncts are —

(*a*) *Adverb* —He sleeps *soundly*
(*b*) *Adverbial Phrase* —They walked *side by side*
(*c*) *Adjective* —He went away *sad* He stood *alone*
(*d*) *Participle* —He went away *vexed* and *disappointed*
(*e*) *Gerundial Infinitive* — He came *to see* the horse
(*f*) *Adverbial Objective* —He walked *all day* He walked *ten miles*
(*g*) *Preposition with Object* —He fell *into a deep well*
(*h*) *Absolute Phrase* —We all started, *he remaining behind*

Examples of Analysis

1 A darwesh, travelling through Tartary, having arrived at the town of Balkh, entered the king's palace by mistake, thinking it to be a public inn or serai

2 My father taught all his sons Euclid with much success

3 Alexander, the King of Macedon, was surnamed the Great after his conquest of the Persian Empire

4 The man employed for this purpose caught the thief stealing a watch

5 The merchant, having much property to sell, caused all his goods to be conveyed on camels, there being no railway in that particular part of the country

6, A gentleman of wealth and position, living in London, some sixty years ago, had a country seat in Kent, some forty miles from the metropolis

I Subject.	II Attributive Adjuncts (to Subject)	III Predicate.			IV Adverbial Adjuncts (to Verb of Predicate).
		Finite Verb	Object with qualifying words	Complement with qualifying words	
1 A Darwesh	(*a*) travelling through Tartary (*b*) having arrived at the town of Balkh	entered	the king's palace		(*a*) by mistake (*b*) thinking it to be a public inn or serai
2 Father	my	taught	(*a*) all his sons (*b*) Euclid		with much success.
3 Alexander	the King of Macedon	was surnamed		the Great	after his conquest of the Persian Empire
4 The man	employed for the purpose	caught	the thief	stealing a watch	
5 The merchant	having much property to sell	caused	all his goods	to be conveyed on camels	there being no railway in that particular part of the country
6 A gentleman	(*a*) of wealth and position (*b*) living in London (*c*) some sixty years ago	had	a country seat		(*a*) in Kent (*b*) some forty miles from the metropolis.

Analyse the following Simple sentences according to the model —

1 A certain fowler, having fixed his net, withdrew to a little distance for the sake of allowing the birds to come

2 The king of the pigeons was by chance passing through the sky at this time with a troop of followers

3 He and they caught sight of the rice grains scattered by the fowler near the net

4 The king of the pigeons then asked his rice loving followers this question—

5 Why are rice grains lying here in this lonely place?

6 We will see into this thing

7 We must be cautious in our movements

8 One conceited pigeon among the rest gave them bad advice

9 He told them to fly down to the rice grains for the sake of satisfying their hunger

10 Having flown down and listened to this bad advice, they began to peck up and swallow the grains against the advice of their king

11 On their beginning to peck they were all caught in the net

12 Then they blamed their rash and imprudent friend for having given them such bad advice

13 They ought rather to have blamed themselves for having listened to him

14 The king now told them what to do

15 At one moment and with one united movement springing suddenly up fly off with the net

16 Small things become strong by being united among themselves

17 Even mad elephants can be held fast by a rope made of thin blades of grass

18 The pigeons acted on this advice

19 Making a sudden spring together, they flew up into the air, carrying the net with them

20 At first the fowler hoped to see them come down again to the earth

21 But they passed out of sight with the net about them

22 In this way the fowler lost both his net and the pigeons

23 The pigeons then said to their king —"O king, what is the next thing to be done?"

24 The king directed them to a certain place

25 There his friend, the king of the mice, received them kindly

26 The king of the mice set them all free by nibbling through the net

27 Thus the whole troop of pigeons escaped by means of union

28 All men should profit by this lesson.

29 A chariot will not go on a single wheel

30 A creeper, having nothing to support it, must fall to the earth

§ 2 —ANALYSIS OF COMPOUND SENTENCES

267 A **Compound** *sentence is one made up of two or more* **Co-ordinate** (*that is, equal or independent*) *clauses*

The clauses of which a Compound sentence is made up are joined together by any of the *Co-ordinative Conjunctions* described in § 249 (See "clause" defined in § 5)

(1) The sun rose with power, *and* the fog dispersed (*Cumulative*)
(2) Either he must leave the house *or* I (must leave the house) (*Alternative*)
(3) He called at my house, *but* I did not see him (*Adversative*)
(4) He came back tired, *for* he had walked all day (*Illative*)

268. Co-ordinate clauses can also be joined together by a Relative pronoun or adverb, provided it is used in a **Continuative,** and not in a Restrictive sense (see § 134)

He slew all the prisoners, *which* (=and this) was a very barbarous act
He is clever at planting young trees, for *which* purpose (=and for this purpose) every one is glad to employ him
He went to London, *where* (=and there) he stayed ten days
Immense saw mills have been erected near Rangoon and Moulmein, *which* (=and these towns) are situated at the mouths of the two great rivers of Burma

269 Contracted Sentences — Compound sentences often appear in a contracted or shortened form, so as to avoid the needless repetition of the same word —

(*a*) When there are *two Predicates to the same Subject,* there is no need to mention the Subject more than once —

(1) The sun *rose* and (the sun) *filled* the sky with light
(2) He *called* at my house, but (he) *left* soon after

(*b*) When there are *two Subjects to the same Predicate,* we need not mention the Predicate more than once —

(1) *He* as well as *you* is guilty (=He is guilty as well as you are guilty) (*Cumulative*)
(2) Either *this man* sinned or his *parents* (sinned) (*Alternative*)
(3) He is poor, but (he is) honest (*Adversative*)
(4) He is diligent, and therefore (he is) prosperous (*Illative*)

Note 1 —When two nouns are joined by "*and,*" they are not two separate subjects to the same verb, but *one* compound subject to the Plural verb following (see § 295) —

The dog and its master ran out of the house

In some instances, such as the following, the two Subjects united by "*and*" are inseparable —

He and I are great friends
Youth and experience seldom exist together

Here we cannot split up either of the above sentences into two separate clauses Thus we cannot say, "He is a great friend, and I am a great friend", nor can we say, "Youth seldom exists together, and experience seldom exists together"

Note 2 —When two nouns are so united by the conjunction "*and*" as to denote a single fact, or what is considered to be a single fact, the nouns cannot be separated so to become the Subjects of separate clauses See § 395, (*a*), (*b*)

The great *poet-and scholar* is dead
Curry and rice was his favourite dish

Note 3 —When two nouns or phrases are connected by the conjunction "*or*," and the "*or*" is *not used in an alternative sense*, they should be considered as constituting a single Subject —

A tribe or caste is part of a nation
How to sing or how to spell was never taught at that school.

270 Omission of the Conjunction "and"—Alternative conjunctions, Adversative conjunctions, and Illative conjunctions are never omitted But the Cumulative conjunction "*and*" can be left out, when the aim of the writer is to give a string of sentences, all bearing upon one central fact Only the last sentence or the last verb should have "*and*" prefixed to it in such a case

The uses and power of steam have been thus described, one single word standing as subject to no less than twenty-six Finite verbs or predicates —

What will not the steam engine do? It propels, elevates, lowers, pumps, drains, pulls, drives, blasts, digs, cuts, saws, planes, bores, blows, forges, hammers, files, polishes, rivets, cards, spins, winds, weaves, coins, prints, *and* does more things than I can think of or enumerate

Rules and Model

271 The process of analysing Compound sentences can be described under the following rules —

(*a*) Pick out the Finite verb of each clause

(*b*) If the Finite verb is understood, but not expressed, supply it.

(*c*) Pick out the Subject to each Finite verb in succession

(*d*) If the Subject to any Finite verb is understood, but not expressed, supply it.

(*e*) Then write out each clause with its Subject, Predicate, and Adjuncts (if there are any Adjuncts) in full

(*f*) Pick out the Connective word, by which any one clause is joined to any other clause

(1) His greatest enemy, as well as his best friends, repeatedly declared him to be innocent of the fault laid to his charge

A His greatest enemy repeatedly declared him to be innocent of the fault laid to his charge
B His best friends repeatedly declared him to be innocent of the fault laid to his charge

Connective —As well as

(2) Either you or your son must sign his name

A You must sign your name
B Your son must sign his name

Connectives —Either or

(3) He, not I, is certainly the author of that plan

A He is certainly the author of that plan
B I am certainly not the author of that plan

Connective —(*nil*) Here no connective is required

Compound Sentences to be Analysed

1 He as well as you is tired of all this work (*Two clauses*)

2 Either he or his friend must have opened the door, for no other person had the key (*Three clauses*)

3 The Lord knoweth the way of the righteous, but the way of the ungodly shall perish (*Two clauses*)

4 He either does not or will not understand the orders given to him (*Two clauses*)

5 How to do this or how to do that was never explained to us, and so we did neither (*Two clauses*)

6 He acts like a child, for now he laughs, and then he cries, he goes first here, and then there, and no one knows what to do with him (*Six clauses*)

7 They found the horse indeed, but it distressed them to see it, for it was lame (*Three clauses*)

8 The spaniel frisked and gambolled about the lion, barked at him, would now scrape and tear at his head with his claws, then seize him by the ear and bite and pull, but nothing could aggravate the noble beast (*Nine clauses*)

9 The life of a mosquito is brief, but very active, the female lives for two or three weeks, lays its eggs and dies (*Five clauses*)

	The Clauses	Connective	I Subject	II Attributive Adjuncts (to Subject)	III Predicate			IV Adverbial Adjuncts (to Verb of Predicate)
					Finite Verb	Object with qualifying words	Complement with qualifying words	
Example (1)	A His greatest enemy repeatedly declared him to be innocent of the fault, etc		enemy	his greatest	declared	him	to be innocent of the fault laid to his charge	repeatedly
	B His best friends declared him to be innocent of the fault, etc	as well as	friends	his best	declared	him	to be innocent of the fault, etc	repeatedly
Example (2)	A You must sign your name at once on that paper	either	you	*nil*	must sign	your name	*nil*	(*a*) at once (*b*) on that paper
	B Your son must sign his name at once on that paper	or	your son	*nil*	must sign	his name	*nil*	(*a*) at once (*b*) on that paper
Example (3)	A He is certainly the author of that plan		He	*nil*	is	*nil*	the author of that plan	certainly
	B I am not the author of that plan	*nil*	I	*nil*	am not	*nil*	the author of that plan	certainly

10 At length I to the boy called out,
He stopped his horses at the word,
But neither cry, nor voice, nor shout,
Nor aught else like it could be heard (*Six clauses*)

11 Sir Ralph the Rover tore his hair,
And beat his breast in his despair,
The waves rush in on every side,
And the ship sinks down beneath the tide (*Four clauses*)

12 The Brahmans or astrologers promise success to the divers, for they expect a liberal gift of pearls as a reward for the happy sense of confidence imparted by them to those men (*Two clauses*)

§ 3 —Analysis of Complex Sentences

272 A **Complex** *sentence consists of a Principal clause with one or more Subordinate clauses depending on it*

The clause which contains *the main verb* of the entire complex sentence is called the **Principal** clause

Note —It has been said that the Principal clause is that which contains "the principal *subject* and predicate" But this is not true, for sometimes there is no principal subject, the subject itself being a Subordinate clause —

Subject (Subord clause)	*Predicate (Prin clause)*
Who steals my purse	steals trash

273 Subordinate and Co-ordinate Clauses —A Subordinate clause is a *component part* of some other clause, in which it does the work (without possessing the form) of a Noun, Adjective, or Adverb

A Co-ordinate clause is not a component part of any other clause, but forms a *complete grammatical whole* by itself

274 There are three kinds of Subordinate clauses,—the **Noun**-Clause, the **Adjective**-Clause, and the **Adverb**-Clause and these are defined as follows —

I *A Noun-Clause is one which does the work of a Noun in relation to some other clause*

II *An Adjective-Clause is one which does the work of an Adjective in relation to some other clause*

III *An Adverb-Clause is one which does the work of an Adverb in relation to some other clause*

I *The Noun-Clause*

275 There are three kinds of connectives, by which a Noun Clause can be introduced —

(1) The Conjunction "*that*" in the sense of Apposition (see § 251, *a*) —

We did not know *that* he would leave us so soon

(2) A Relative or Interrogative adverb, provided that no Antecedent is expressed —

Where he is going is not known to any one (*Relat*)
Let us inquire *whether* he will go to day (*Interrog*)

Note —The conjunction "*if*" can be used for "*whether*" as an Interrogative adverb —

Let us inquire *if* (=*whether*) he will go to day

(3) A Relative or Interrogative pronoun, provided that no Antecedent is expressed —

Who steals my purse steals trash (*Relat*)
I beg to inquire *who* came here to day (*Interrog*)

276 The Noun-Clause, since it does the work of a Noun, can be—

(*a*) The Subject to a Verb
(*b*) The Object to a Verb
(*c*) The Object to a Preposition
(*d*) The Complement to a Verb
(*e*) In Apposition to a Noun

(*a*) **Subject to a Verb**, see § 22 (*f*) —

Where he is going is not known to any one
That he will come back soon is certain
Whom the gods love die young —*Proverb*

(*b*) **Object to a Verb**, see § 24 (*f*) —

He promised *that he would soon pay back the debt.*
I shall be glad to know *when he will pay it*
Perceiving *what a mistake he had made*, he yielded

(*c*) **Object to a Preposition**, see § 241 (*c*) —

My success in future depends upon *who is placed over me*
This book will sell for *what it is worth*
Except *that he speaks too fast* he is an excellent teacher

(*d*) **Complement to a Verb**, see § 149 and § 153 —

This is exactly *what I expected*
My question was *whether there was any hope of his recovery.*
This is *what no one can understand*

(*e*) **In Apposition to a Noun**, see § 20 —

The news *that he intended to come* gave us much pleasure
The reason *why he was so sad* is unknown to me

Here the clause "that he intended to come" is in apposition to the noun "news" This is the reason why the conjunction "*that*" is said to signify apposition (§ 251, *a*)

277 The conjunction "*that*" (in the sense of apposition) is often left out after a *verb*, provided that the noun with which the clause is in apposition is not expressed —

It seems (that) *he is not clever*

N B—The conjunction "*that*" is never left out *when the noun is expressed* —

The *fact he is not clever* gives us much pain

This is quite inadmissible Since the noun "fact" is expressed, the appositional clause "he is not clever" must be introduced by the conjunction "*that*"

278 A sentence consisting of the very words spoken by any one may be the Subject or Object to a verb, and must therefore be considered as an example of a Noun-Clause —

"I have seen this man before," was the only thing that he said
The sleeper started up from his bed, shouting, 'I am bitten'

Examples of the Noun-Clause

Pick out the Noun-Clause and say whether it is the Subject to some Verb, or the Object to some Verb, or the Object to some Preposition, or the Complement to some Verb, or in Apposition to some noun expressed Supply the Conjunction "that" *wherever it has been left out* —

1 No one knows when he will come, or whether he will come at all, or whether he is even alive
2 How this came to pass is not known to any one
3 What is sauce for the goose is sauce for the gander
4 It is quite evident rain will fall to day
5 The Equator shows where days and nights are of equal length
6 What is one man's meat is another man's poison
7 You must know that the air is never quite at rest.
8. I think I shall never clearly understand this
9 We heard the school would open in ten days' time
10 The name "Volcano" indicates the belief of the Ancient Greeks, that the burning hills of the Mediterranean were the workshops of the divine blacksmith, Vulcan

11 Even a feather shows which way the wind is blowing
12 Whatever faculty man has is improved by use
13 The fool hath said in his heart, "There is no God"
14 "Know thyself," was the advice given us by a Greek sage
15 He did not know that his father had been shot
16 The fact that you have not signed your name to a letter shows that you lack moral courage
17 It will be easily understood how useful even the simplest weapons were to the first dwellers on the earth
18 The question first occurring to the mind of a savage is how is fire to be made
19 Common sense soon taught him that fire could be produced by rubbing two sticks together
20 In chipping their flint weapons men must have seen that fire occasionally flashed out
21 We learn from travellers that savages can produce fire in a few seconds
22 He shouted out to the thief, "Leave this house
23 We cannot rely on what he says
24 It is quite evident you have made a mistake
25 It was very unfortunate that you were taken ill
26 He was a man of fine character except that he was rather timid

II *The Adjective-Clause*

279 An Adjective-Clause does the work of an Adjective to some noun or pronoun in some other clause

The only kind of connective word by which an Adjective-Clause can be introduced is a Relative pronoun or Relative adverb, and then only when the Relative is used in a **Restrictive** sense (see § 134)

If the Relative is used in a **Continuative** sense, the sentence is Compound, and not Complex (see § 268)

1 Among the men, *who came here to day*, not one turned out to be honest

Here the italicised clause qualifies or restricts "*men*"

2 We found the wolf lying dead in the very place *where* (= *in which*) *it was shot*

Here the italicised clause qualifies or restricts "*place*"

280 The Relative pronoun, provided it would be in the Objective case, and provided its sense is Restrictive, and not Continuative (§ 134), is often left out (see § 150)

The food he needed (= *which* or *that* he needed) was not procured without a great deal of trouble

Pick out the Adjective-Clause or Clauses in each of the following examples, and point out the noun or pronoun qualified by it in some other clause If the Relative pronoun has been omitted anywhere, supply it —

1 Man has the power of making instruments, which bring into view stars, whose light has taken a thousand years to reach the earth

2 The first thing that man needed was some sharp edged tool

3 The exact time when the theft was committed was never found out

4 The man by whom the theft was committed has been caught

5 The house we lived in has fallen down

6 This is the same story that I heard ten years ago

7 It's an ill wind that blows no one any good

8 This is not such a book as I should have chosen

9 He made his living by the presents he received from the men he served

10 All that glitters is not gold

11 In ponds from which but a week before the wind blew clouds of dust, men now catch the re animated fish

12 A river is joined at places by tributaries that swell its waters

13 Of what use is a knowledge of books to him who fails to practise virtue?

14 Fortune selects him for her lord, who reflects before acting

15 Springs are fed by rain, which has percolated through the rocks or soil

16 Nuncoomar prepared to die with that quiet fortitude with which the Bengalee, so backward, as a rule, in personal conflict, often encounters calamities for which there is no remedy

17 I have seen the house where Shakspeare was born

18 The plan you acted on has answered well

19 They accepted every plan we proposed

20 Surely the story you are telling me is not true

21 Thrice is he armed that hath his quarrel just

22 The night is long that never finds the day

23 He travelled home by the way his father showed him

24 There are times when every one feels a little sad

25 Such men as are false to their friends should always be avoided

26 I forgot to tell you the time when I shall return

III *The Adverb-Clause.*

281 An Adverb-Clause does the work of an Adverb to some verb, adjective, or adverb in some other clause

An Adverb-Clause can be introduced by any of the *Subordinative* conjunctions, excepting the conjunction "*that,*" when it is used in the sense of Apposition (See § 275)

Principal Clause	*Adverb-Clause*	*Subord Conjunc*
He will succeed,	*because* he works hard	*Cause*
He worked *so* hard,	*that* he was quite tired	*Effect*
He took medicine,	*that* he might get well	*Purpose*
I will do this,	*if* I am allowed	*Condition*
He is honest,	*although* he is poor	*Contrast*
He likes you *more*	*than* (he likes) me	*Comparison*
Men will reap	*as* they sow	*Extent or Manner*
The sun will rise,	*so long as* the world lasts	*Time*

Note —The Subordinative conjunctions have been described and enumerated in § 251 Besides these there is the class of Subordinative connectives, which in § 252 are enumerated under the name of Relative and Interrogative adverbs These can be used for Noun-clauses and Adjective clauses as well as for Adverb clauses

282 After the conjunctions *though*, *when*, *unless*, *till*, *if*, *whether—or*, and *while*, the Predicate-verb "**to be**" is often understood —

{Though much alarmed at the news, he did not lose all hope
{Though *he was* much alarmed, etc , he did not lose all hope

{He sprained his foot, while walking in the dark
{He sprained his foot, while *he was* walking in the dark

{His opinion, whether right or wrong, does not concern me
{His opinion, whether *it is* right or wrong does not concern me

This must be kept, till (*it is*) called for

283 When an Adverb-Clause is introduced by "**than,**" its Predicate verb is not always expressed, but can be understood or borrowed from the clause on which it depends —

He loves you better than (he loves) me
He loves you better than I (love you)

284 The Relative "**who**" or "**which**" makes an Adverb-Clause, whenever it is substituted for a Subordinative conjunction signifying Cause or Purpose (See § 134, *Note*)

Cause —They should pardon my son, *who* (=*because he*) has never committed such a fault before

Purpose —A man was sent, *who* should deliver (=*that he* might deliver) the message

Note —The student can now therefore take the note that four different kinds of clauses can be introduced by the Relative "who" or "which" —(1) A *Co ordinate* Clause, where the Relative is used in a **Continuative** sense, see § 134 and § 268 This belongs to Compound sentences (2) A *Noun*-Clause, where no Antecedent to the Relative is expressed, see § 275 This belongs to Complex sentences. (3) An *Adjective* Clause, where the Relative is used in a **Restrictive** sense, see § 134 and § 279 This belongs to Complex sentences (4) An *Adverb* Clause, where the Relative is used in the sense of **Cause or Purpose** This also belongs to Complex sentences.

Pick out the Adverb-Clause or Clauses in the following Show what word or phrase is qualified by every such clause, and what Adverbial relation is denoted thereby —

1 He will succeed, because he has worked hard
2 Men engage in some work, that they may earn a living
3 He threatened to beat him, unless he confessed
4 He was always honest, though he was poor
5 This is not true, so far as I can tell
6 He likes you as much as I do
7 He tried for a long time before he succeeded
8 Let us go to bed, as it is now late
9 He walked with care, lest he should stumble
10 I agree to this, provided you sign your name
11 Though he punish me, yet will I trust in him
12 He returned home, after he had finished the work
13 Prove a friend, before you trust him
14 When the cat's away, the mice will play
15 He persevered so steadily, that he succeeded at last
16 I will let off this man, who has been well punished already
17 He sees very well, considering that he is sixty years of age
18 I gave him a prize, that he might work harder next year
19 They deserted their former associate, who had become poor and unfortunate
20 As the tree falls, so will it lie
21 Ever since we left the house, it has not ceased raining
22 I would be glad to lend you that money, if I had as much in my own pocket
23 Murder, though it have no tongue, will yet speak
24 Unless you leave the house at once, I will send for a policeman
25 A jackal, while prowling about the suburbs of a town, slipped into an indigo tank, and not being able to get out he laid himself down, so that he might be taken for dead
26 The owner of the tank, when he beheld what seemed to be a dead jackal, carried the body into the jungle and there flung it down
27 This one fact, if closely examined, proves the man to be guilty
28 He is an honest man, though poor, and industrious, though old and rather infirm
29 Better to reign in hell than serve in heaven —*Milton.*
30 If the trunk of a tree, when young and pliable, is not made to grow straight, it cannot be straightened afterwards, when old and stiff
31 A rabbit cannot run so swiftly as a hare, but it is more skilful than a hare in digging the ground and boring holes under the earth
32 The wild grey rabbit is not so large as the tame rabbit kept in a cage

Example of a mixed sentence analysed

The governor of the town, who was present, called out with a loud voice and ordered Androcles to explain how a savage beast could have so forgotten its innate disposition all of a sudden, that it became converted into a harmless animal, which preferred rather to spare its victim than to devour him.

The Clause	Kind of Clause	Connective	I Subject.	II Attributive Adjuncts (to Subject)	III Predicate: Finite Verb	III Predicate: Object with qualifying words	III Predicate: Complement with qualifying words	IV Adverbial Adjuncts (to Verb of Predicate).
A. The governor of the town cried out with a loud voice,	Principal Clause		the governor	of the town	cried out	*nil*	*nil*	with a loud voice,
B Who was present,	Co ordinate to A (§ 30*b*)	who	who	*nil*	was	*nil*	present	*nil*
C And ordered Androcles to explain	Co ordinate to A	and	(the governor)	*nil*	ordered	Androcles	to explain, etc	*nil*
D How a savage beast could have so forgotten its innate disposition all of a sudden,	Noun Clause object to *explain* in C	how	a beast	savage	could have forgotten	its innate disposition	*nil*	(*a*) so that etc (*b*) all of a sudden
E That it became converted into a harmless animal,	Adverb Clause in continuation of *so* in D	that	it	*nil*	became	*nil*	converted into a harmless animal, which etc	*nil*
F Which preferred rather to spare its victim	Adject Clause to *animal* in E	which	which	*nil*	preferred	to spare its victim	*nil*	rather than, etc
G Than devour him.	Adverb Clause in continuation of *rather* in F	than	(it)	*nil*	(preferred)	to devour him	*nil*	*nil*

Miscellaneous Examples for Analysis

1 Blessed is the man that walketh not in the counsel of the wicked, nor standeth in the way of sinners, nor sitteth in the seat of the scornful (*Four clauses*)

2 Nothing can describe the confusion of thought which I felt when I sank into the water (*Three clauses*)

3 A blind man, carrying a lantern in his hand and a pitcher on his shoulder, was walking along one night, when he was met by a thoughtless young fellow, who laughed at him and said, "O fool! day and night must be alike to you of what use can this lamp be to you?" (*Six clauses*)

4 If man had had a skin thickly covered with hair or wool, as an ape or sheep has, he could not have moved from one climate to another with comfort, and so he is made naked, but not without the power of improving his condition, wherever he may be (*Seven clauses*)

5 Even as the driver checks a restive steed, so do thou, if thou art wise, restrain thy passion, which, if it runs wild, will hurry thee away (*Five clauses*)

6 Sometimes you may trace a river to a definite spring, but you very soon assure yourself that such springs are fed by rain, which has percolated through the rocks or soil, and which through some orifice, that it has found or formed, comes to the light of day (*Seven clauses*)

7 If you put the end of an iron rod in the fire and hold it there, you do something more than heat that end, for you heat the whole of it up to the end that you hold in your hand (*Five clauses*) (On the prepositional use of "*than*," see § 244)

8 In his seventieth year Louis Carnaro had a fall by which he broke an arm and a leg (*Two clauses*)

With some men at that time of life so great a hurt would have been difficult to cure or might even have occasioned death, but with Carnaro, whose body was in the soundest condition, it was cured in a very short time (*Four clauses*)

9 Whoso keepeth the law is a wise son, but he that is a companion of riotous men shameth his father (*Four clauses*)

10 They expected that the king would either treat the matter as a pleasant jest or threaten the insolent darwesh with punishment, but to their surprise he was neither amused nor angry, but seriously attentive to the words of the darwesh (*Six clauses*)

11 Sir Isaac Newton, after deep meditation, discovered that there was a law in nature called attraction, by virtue of which every particle of matter that the world is composed of draws towards itself every other particle of matter with a force which is proportionate to its mass and distance (*Five clauses*)

12 After his schooling was finished his father, desiring him to be a merchant like himself, gave him a ship freighted with various sorts of merchandise, so that he might go and trade about the world and grow rich, and become a help to his parents, who were now advanced in age (*Seven clauses*)

13 The rootlets at the ends of these fibres strike into the ground,

and when they have become well fixed in the earth, the sap which previously was flowing downwards changes its direction and flows upwards (*Five clauses*)

14. Stern Daughter of the voice of God,
O Duty, if that name thou love,
Who art a light to guide, a rod
To check the erring, and reprove,—
Thou who art victory and law,
When empty terrors overawe,—
From vain temptations dost set free
And calm'st the weary strife of frail humanity!
There are who ask not if thine eye
Be on them, who in love and truth,
Where no misgiving is, rely
Upon the genial sense of youth (*Twelve clauses*)

CHAPTER XI

The Same Word used as Different Parts of Speech

A. *Indef Article* The sportsman shot *a* tiger
Prep He has gone *a* hunting

All *Adj of Quantity* He ate *all* the bread
Indef Num Adj We must *all* die some day
Adj used as Noun We lost our *all* on that day
Adv *All* bloodless lay the untrodden snow

Any *Adj of Quantity* Have you *any* bread?
Adv of Qu We must stop and rest before going *any* farther
Num Adjective Did you bring *any* loaves?
Dem Adjective Take *any* book that you like best

As (a) *Relative pronoun* —
He is not such a fool *as* he looks
As many men *as* came were caught
Yours is not the same book *as* mine

(b) *Relative adverb* (or subordinative conjunction) —
Time He trembled *as* (at what time) he spoke
Manner Do not act *as* (in what manner) he did
State He took it just *as* (in what state) it was
Extent { He is not as (to that extent) clever *as* (to what extent) you are
Hot *as* (to whatever extent) the sun is (=however hot the sun is), we must go out in it }
Reason The air is now cool, *as* (for what reason or for the reason that) the rain has fallen

(c) *In Elliptical Phrases* —all of these imply "extent."
I condemn you *as* a judge (to what extent or so far as I am a judge), but *as* a man (to what extent I am a man), I pity you

I will inquire again *as* to (to what extent the question relates to) that matter.
As regards this journey (to what extent the question regards this journey), we can now decide nothing.

Better *Comp. Adj.* My book is a *better* one than yours.
Comp. Adv. You are working *better* to-day.
Adj. used as Noun. Do not despise your *betters*.

Both *Def. Num. Adj.* *Both* the men have arrived.
Conj. Co-ord. He is *both* a fool and a knave.

But *Adv.* There is *but* (only) one man present.
Prep. Who could have done this *but* (except) him?
I cannot *but* believe that you are lost. (I cannot believe anything *except* that, etc.)
Conj. Co-ord. He is a man of common sense, *but* not learned in books.
Conj. Subord. There was no one present *but* (he) pitied (= who did not pity) the lame horse. (Here the "but" has the force of a Relative + Negative, § 133.)
Perdition catch my soul, *but* I love thee.—*Shakspeare.* (May perdition catch my soul, *if* I do *not* love thee.)

Either *Distrib. Adj.* He is ruined in *either* case.
Conj. Co-ord. He is *either* a fool or a knave.

Else *Adv.* We could not catch any one *else*.
Conj. Co-ord. He has some real sorrow, *else* he would not weep as he does.

Enough *Adj. of Quantity.* He has eaten *enough* bread.
Adj. of Number. We have *enough* loaves.
Adj. used as Noun. He had *enough* to do.

Half *Adj. of Quantity.* *Half* measures do not succeed.
Adj. used as Noun. One *half* of his task is now done.
Adv. of Quantity. He was *half* dead with fear.

Little *Adj. of Quality.* A *little* blow may give much pain.
Adj. of Quantity. He has eaten a *little* bread.
Adv. of Quantity. Let us wait here *a little*.
Adj. used as Noun. Man wants but *little* here below.

More *Adj. of Quantity.* He eats *more* bread than you.
Adj. used as Noun. *More* is done than was expected.
Adv. of Quantity. I like him *more* than (I like) you.
Adj. of Number. *More* men came to-day than yesterday.
Adv. of Number. I saw him once *more*.

Much *Adj. of Quantity.* He has wasted *much* time.
Adv. of Quantity. I am *much* pleased with your son.
Adj. used as Noun. You will not get *much* from me.

Neither *Adj. Distrib.* I agree with *neither* side.
Conj. Co-ord. *Neither* you nor I can do that.

Near *Adv.* Stand *near*, while I speak to you.
Prep. There is a fine tree *near* our house.
Adj. He is a *near* relative of mine.

Needs *Verb* The earth is very dry and *needs* rain
Adv He must *needs* know the reason of this, § 235
Noun Our *needs* or wants are few

One *Def Num. Adj* There is but *one* rupee left
Indef Dem Pron *One* is apt to waste *one's* time
Def Dem Pron Your horse is white, mine is a black *one*

Only *Adj* The *only* dog I had was stolen.
Adv I heard of this *only* yesterday
Conj Co ord Do what you like, *only* (=but whatever you do) keep silence

Round *Adj* A square thing does not fit into a *round* hole
Prep Draw a circle *round* a given centre
Adv The flies are flying *round* and *round*
Verb Gama was the first to *round* the Cape of Good Hope
Noun Men must go their daily *round* of duty

Since *Prep* I have not seen him *since* Monday last
Adv I took this house four weeks *since*
Conj Subord We must trust you, *since* you are speaking in earnest

Such *Def Dem Adj* He is not *such* a man *as* I expected
Indef Dem Adj He came to me on *such* a day
Def Dem Pron You are a coward, I am not *such*

That *Def Dem Adj* I am no admirer of *that* book
Def Dem Pron The light of the sun is brighter than *that* of the moon
Relat Pron The book *that* you gave me is lost
Conj { *Effect* He aimed so well *that* he hit the mark
Apposit He heard *that* you had come
Purpose We must eat *that* we may live }

Than. *Conj Subord* I like this more *than* (I like) that
Prep { These workmen, *than* whom I have never seen men more industrious, have left me
He was fond of any drink other *than* wine }

Then. *Adv of Time* He was better *then* than he is now
Conj Co ord I see, *then*, we ought to start at once

The *Def Article* *The* ass is a dull animal
Rel Adv of Quantity *The* more, the merrier
Simple Adv of Quantity He worked *the* harder, because he had hopes of success

Too *Adv of Quantity* He is *too* fond of play
Conj Co ord We *too* must expect to die some day

Well. *Adv of Quality* He has done the work very *well*
Adv used as Noun Leave *well* alone
Conj Co ord He has finished his work in time, *well*, I did not expect it of such a lazy man

What *Inter Pron* *What* did you say? *What* house is that?
Compound Rel Pron I do not know *what* you mean, § 130
Adverb *What* with illness and *what* with losses, the poor man is almost ruined (see page 272)

Yet *Conj Co ord* I have called, *yet* no one answers
Adv of Time You may *yet* (= even now, still) find him.

CHAPTER XII —SYNTAX

§ 1 —RELATIONS OF WORDS TO ONE ANOTHER

PARSING CHART

I *Nouns*

Kind of Noun	Gender	Number	Case
Proper	Masculine	Singular	Nominative
Common	Feminine	Plural	Possessive
Collective	Common		Objective
Material	Neuter		
Abstract			

II *Pronouns*

Kind of Pronoun		Gender	Number	Person	Case
Pers	Simple	Masculine	Singular	1st	Nominative
	Reflexive	Feminine	Plural	2nd	Possessive
Demons	Definite	Common		3rd	Objective
	Indefinite	Neuter			
Relative		Agreeing in Gender, Number, and Person with its antecedent			
Interrogative					

III *The Cases of Nouns or Pronouns*

Nom to Verb	*Obj* to Verb Direct	*Obj* in Apposition
,, as Compl to Verb	,, ,, Indirect	,, to Preposition
,, in Apposition	,, ,, Retained	,, Adverbial
,, of Address	,, ,, Cognate	,, after certain Adjectives
,, Absolute	,, ,, Reflexive	,, Interjectional
Possessive	,, as Compl to Verb	

IV *Adjectives*

The Kind of Adjective			Degree	Use
Proper			Positive	Attributive
Of Quality	Numeral	Def	Comparative	Predicative
Of Quantity		Indef	Superlative	
Distributive	Demons	Def		
		Indef		

V *Adverbs*

Kind	Degree	Use	Attributive Uses
Simple	Positive	Attributive	To qualify Verb
Relative	Comparative	Predicative	,, ,, Adjective
Interrogative	Superlative		,, ,, Adverb
			,, ,, Preposition
			,, ,, Conjunction
			,, ,, Sentence

VI *Finite Verbs*

Kind of Verb	Person	Number	Tense	Form
Transitive	1st	Singular	Present	Indefinite
Intransitive	2nd	Plural	Past	Continuous
Auxiliary	3rd		Future	Perfect
Defective				Perf Contin

Mood	Voice	
Indicative	Active	Agreeing with its subject or subjects, expressed or understood
Imperative	Passive	Governing its object or objects, expressed or understood
Subjunctive		

VII *Infinitive*

Form	(a) Use as Noun Inf	(b) Use as Gerundial Inf
Indefinite	Subject to Verb	To qualify—
Continuous	Object to Verb	,, a Verb
Perfect	Complement to Verb	,, a Noun { Attributively / Predicatively
Perf Contin	Object to Preposition	,, an Adjective
	Exclamatory	To introduce a Parenthesis

VIII *Participle or Verbal Adjective*

Form	Voice	Kind of Verb	Use.
Present Past Perfect	Active Passive	Transitive Intransitive	Attributive Predicative { Complement Absolute Gerundive

IX *Gerund*

Form	Voice	Kind of Verb
Present Perfect	Active Passive	Transitive Intransitive

X *Conjunctions*

Co ordinative	Subordinative

285 Nominative case —See No III of Parsing Chart

(1) As Subject to a verb (see § 59) —

I did this *Rain* is falling *You* are tired

(2) As *Subjective* Complement to a verb (see § 153) —

I am *the man* Cæsar was declared *emperor*

Note —An Infinitive can come between the verb and the noun —

He appeared *to be* a wise man

(3) In Apposition with a noun or pronoun in the Nominative case (see § 19) —

John, *the carpenter*, has succeeded well in business

(4) For purposes of Address (see § 59) —

How art thou fallen, O *Cæsar* !

(5) In the Absolute construction (see § 28, *a*) —

Off we started, *he remaining behind*

Note.—Without altering the sense, we could substitute the clause "while he remained behind" for the phrase "he remaining behind" In the absolute construction the noun or pronoun is in the Nominative case, because (as we see from this) it is *the Subject to the Finite verb that is implied in the Participle.*

286 Possessive case.—See No. III. of Parsing Chart. (*a*) A noun or pronoun in the Possessive case qualifies Nouns and Gerunds as an adjective would do (§ 103, 4):—

My son. The *barber's* shop. The *tiger's* claw.—*Noun*.
I was displeased at *his* going away without leave. } *Gerund*
This was a plan of *your* contriving. } (§ 210).

(*b*) When two Possessive nouns are in apposition with each other, or are connected by "*and*," the apostrophe *s* is not added to the noun that stands *first* (see § 65):—

Herod married his *brother* Philip's wife.
Maple and Company's firm.

(*c*) A noun or pronoun in the Possessive case can be the Complement to a verb, (for Pronouns, see § 116):—

That book is *mine*, not *yours*.
This shop seems to be *a barber's*.

287 Objective case.—See No. III. of Parsing Chart.

(1) As Object to a verb (§ 164, *Note*):—

(*a*) The master teaches *Euclid*. (*Direct*.)
(*b*) He teaches *his sons* Euclid. (*Indirect*.)
(*c*) His sons were taught *Euclid*. (*Retained*.)
(*d*) The river will run its *course*. (*Cognate*.)
(*e*) He sat *himself* down. (*Reflexive*.)

(2) As Objective Complement to a verb (§ 153):—

The citizens made him their *king*.

Note.—An Infinitive can come between the verb and the noun:—

The people considered him *to be* a wise man.

(3) In Apposition with a noun or pronoun in the Objective case (§ 19):—

The people of England beheaded Charles I., their *king*.

(4) As Object to a preposition (§ 60):—

He fought against *me*. A house built on *sand*.

(5) Adverbial Objective,—so called, because such phrases qualify words as an adverb would do (§ 236, 5):—

He lived ten *years* (Time). He walked ten *miles* (Space). This cost ten *rupees* (Price). That box weighs ten *seers* (Weight). The air is a *trifle* hotter to-day (Degree). Bind him *hand* and *foot* (Attendant circumstance).

(6) Objective after the adjectives "like" or "unlike,"

"near," "next" (This has probably arisen from the omission of the preposition "*to*," which is still sometimes used after these adjectives) —

> No man could bend the bow *like him*
> The house *nearest the grove* is the one that I prefer

(7) Objective after Interjections or in exclamatory phrases —

> Unhappy *me!* Oh unhappy *man!* Oh dear *me!*
> Foolish *fellow!* to have wasted his time as he has done!

288 The two uses of Adjectives—See No IV of Parsing Chart

(*a*) Attributive use (§ 102) —

> An *industrious* student will generally succeed

(*b*) Predicative use (§ 102) —

> He was *industrious*, and therefore he succeeded

289 Noun or Gerund used as an Adjective (§ 103, 3) A noun or gerund can be used attributively for an adjective, but not predicatively —

> A *village* watchman *Drinking* water
> A *sea* captain *Marble* halls A *bathing* place

290 Adjective substituted for Adverb—An adverb qualifying a *verb* can be changed into an adjective qualifying the *subject* to the verb The adjective in this case is an "adverbial adjunct" (§ 266, *c*) —

> He went away *sad* The stars are shining *bright*
> And *furious* every charger neighed —*Campbell*
> *Dark* lowers the tempest overhead —*Longfellow*
> And *fearless* there the lowly sleep —*Mrs Hemans*
> They neither toil nor spin, but *careless* grow —*Thompson*
> *Slow* rises worth, by poverty depressed —*Johnson*

Note 1 —When the adverb qualifies *any part of speech except a verb*, we cannot substitute an adjective for it. Thus we cannot say "He is *immense* clever" for "He is *immensely* clever"

Note 2 —In poetry an adjective and adverb are sometimes coupled together by "*and*," when the adjective qualifies the subject to the verb, and the adverb qualifies the verb itself —

> When *faint* and *wearily* he drags
> Along his noontide way —*Southey*
> Trip it *deft* and *merrily* —*Scott*
> But Sir Richard bore in hand
> All the sick men from the land
> Very *carefully* and *slow* —*Tennyson.*

291 Pronoun and Antecedent—See Nos. II. and III of Parsing Chart

(*a*) A Pronoun must be in the same case, number, and gender as its Antecedent, but in case it depends upon its own sentence (This is called a Concord or Agreement.)

After Cæsar was declared *emperor* (Nominative), they slew *him* (Objective)

You must return the *book* (Objective) *which* (Nominative) was lent

(*b*) A Relative pronoun, if it has two Antecedents, and these are not of the same person, agrees in person with the Antecedent *nearest to it* —

You are the man who is chosen

Correct the mistakes in the following sentences —

I am the man who seek to help thee in distress Thou art the man who fleest away in the time of danger Art thou the chief who brokest the power of the enemy?

292 The two uses of Adverbs—See No V of Parsing Chart

(*a*) Attributive use (§ 239) An adverb, when it is used attributively, may qualify anything except a noun or pronoun —

(1) *Adjective* —He is *remarkably clever*
(2) *Verb* —*Act decisively*, if you act at all
(3) *Other Adverb* —He explained his views *remarkably well*
(4) *Preposition* —The sun stood *exactly over* our heads.
(5) *Conjunction* —You may go *only if* you promise to return
(6) *Sentence* —*Fortunately*, all the thieves were caught

(*b*) Predicative use (§ 239) Here the adverb is Complement (Subjective or Objective) to the verb going before —

(1) *Subjective* —The results will soon be *out* (=published)
(2) *Objective* —We found him quite *well* (=in perfect health)

293 Verb and Subject—See No VI of Parsing Chart as to Number and Person

A Finite verb must be in the same number and person as its Subject (§ 170) (This is another Concord or Agreement.)

Make the verbs agree properly with their subjects in the following examples —

When you was here last, you was very fond of reading The pleasures of life vanishes, when we becomes old and infirm. Thou would have seen the horse, if it had come towards us. School is

broken up and the boys is playing at cricket The Taj Mahal at Agra have stood a great many years You is not the man that I want. I am still as fond of books as when you was here before The movement of most quadrupeds are very swift You wilt be rewarded with a prize for your industry The following plans has been settled The origin of Hindu manners and customs are unknown

294. The Third Person of Verbs —A verb is invariably in the Third person, except when the Subject is a Personal pronoun in the First or Second person (§ 22) —

(a) *Noun* —A *snake* is crawling through the grass
(b) *Pronoun.*—*He* returns to us to morrow
(c) *Infinitive* —*To err* is human
(d) *Gerund* —*Sleeping* gives rest to the body
(e) *Phrase* —*How to do this* was unknown to every one
(f) *Clause* —*That we must all die* is certain

295 Subjects not of the same Person —(a) When two or more Subjects, not of the same Person, are joined by "*and*," the verb is in the First person rather than the Second, and in the Second rather than the Third, and *the First person should be mentioned last* —

James and I *are* (=we are) great friends

(b) When two Subjects are joined by "*or*" or "*nor*," the verb agrees in person with the Subject nearest to it —

Either James or I *am* at the top of the class
Either you or James *has* done it
Neither James nor you *were* present

It would be better, however, to repeat the verb for each Subject The sentences would then be re written as follows —

Either James *is* at the top of the class, or I *am*
Either you *have* done it, or James *has*
Neither James *was* present, nor *were* you

(c) When two Subjects are joined by "as well as," the verb agrees in number and person with the *first* one —

My comrades as well as I myself *were* caught

The reason of this rule is that "My comrades were caught" is the Principal clause, to which the other clause introduced by "as well as" is Subordinate

296 Two Singular Nouns with Plural Verb —Two or more Singular nouns, when they are joined by "*and*," require a verb in the Plural.

A man and his wife *have* come here asking for work
Your horse and mine (=my horse) *are* both at the door

To this rule there are two exceptions —

(*a*) If the two nouns joined by "*and*" refer to the same person or thing, the verb is Singular, and not Plural, as—

The great scholar and poet *is* dead.

Here "scholar" and "poet" refer to the same man, and the sentence might have been written —

The man, who was a great scholar and a great poet, is dead

Note—When the article is mentioned *only once*, as in the sentence "*the* great scholar and poet," it stands for both the nouns This shows that *only one* person (and not two) is intended, and that hence the verb must be singular

But if the article is mentioned twice, as in the sentence "*the* scholar and *the* poet," then two distinct persons are intended, and the verb following must be in the plural number, as—

The scholar and the poet *are* dead

(*b*) If the two nouns joined by "*and*" are regarded as denoting *a single object or notion*, the verb is Singular, as—

Truth and honesty *is* the best policy Curry and rice *was* his favourite food Slow and steady *wins* the race

Here "truth and honesty" = the practice of truth and honesty, and hence the verb following is singular Similarly, "curry and rice" = the food consisting of curry and rice, or the mixture of curry and rice "Slow and steady" = the plan of being slow and steady

297 One Singular Noun with Plural Verb—A noun of *Multitude* (as distinct from a *Collective* noun, see § 39), is followed by a Plural verb —

The jury (*i e* the individual jurors, or men of the jury), *were* divided in *their* opinions, and could not agree as to the verdict

The jury (as one body) selected *its* speaker

The multitude (individual men and women) *rise* from *their* seats and shout applause

This multitude (as one body) *is* too large to be contained in so small a building

298 The Simple or Noun-Infinitive—See No VII of the Parsing Chart

The Simple or Noun-Infinitive may be (*a*) the Subject to a verb, (*b*) the Object to a verb, (*c*) the Complement to a verb, (*d*) the Object to a preposition (although this is very uncommon), (*e*) a form of exclamation (see § 195) —

(*a*) *Subj to Verb*—*To sleep* is necessary to health
(*b*) *Obj to Verb*—We desire *to improve*
(*c*) *Comp to Verb*—He appears *to be clever*
(*d*) *Obj to Prepos*—Your cow is about (= near) *to die* (= death)
(*e*) *Form of Exclam*—*To think* that he should have deceived me!

299 The Gerundial or Qualifying Infinitive —See No. VII of the Parsing Chart

The Gerundial or Qualifying Infinitive may be used—(*a*) to qualify a verb, in which case it does the work of an adverb, (*b*) to qualify a noun, in which case it does the work of an adjective, (*c*) to qualify an adjective, in which case it does the work of an adverb, (*d*) to introduce a parenthesis, in which case it is absolute (see § 196) —

(*a*) *Verb* —They went out *to see* the sport
(*b*) *Noun* { A house *to let* (*Attributive*)
This house is *to let* (*Predicative*) }
(*c*) *Adjective* —Be quick *to hear* and slow *to speak*
(*d*) *Parenthesis* —He is,—*to speak* plainly,—a thief

Note —In qualifying a *noun*, the Infinitive is sometimes used in the Passive voice No rule, however, can be given as to when the Active voice is the more idiomatic and when the Passive —

A man *to be admired* (*Attributive*)
That man is *to be admired* (*Predicative*)

300 The three uses of Participles —See No VIII of the Parsing Chart

(*a*) Attributive use (see § 102 for Adjectives) —

A *willing* horse A *fallen* tree A *withered* flower

(*b*) Predicative use —This may occur either (1) when the Participle is Complement to some verb (see § 102 again), or (2) when the Participle is used absolutely with some noun going before (see §§ 28 (*a*) and 285, 5) —

(1) { We found him *sleeping* (*Object Complem*)
He became *alarmed* (*Subject Complem*) }
(2) Our pace was slow, the horse *being tired* (*Absolute*)

Note 1 —That the Participle is predicative in the Absolute construction is clear from the fact that an absolute *phrase* can be easily rewritten in the form of a subordinate *clause*, in which a Finite verb or predicate is substituted for the Participle —

{ Our pace was slow, the horse *being tired*
Our pace was slow, *because* the horse *was tired* }

Note 2 —When no noun or pronoun is expressed, the Participle is called an **Impersonal Absolute** (see § 28, *a*, and § 243, 4)

Supposing this to be true, you are certainly guilty

(*c*) Gerundive use (§ 211) —Here the Participle denotes that something is to be done, and implies a Verbal noun .—

{ This prevented the letter *being sent*, =
This prevented *the sending of* the letter. }

Parsed Sentence

Brahmadatta, king of Benares, took a journey through the length and breadth of his kingdom to see if his subjects were happy

Brahmadatta—Proper noun, masculine gender, singular number, nominative case, subject to the verb "took

King—Common noun, masculine gender, singular number, nominative case, in apposition to "Brahmadatta.

Of—Preposition having "Benares" as its object

Benares—Proper noun, neuter gender, singular number, objective case after the preposition 'of '

Took—Verb transitive, third person, singular number, past indefinite tense, indicative mood, active voice, agreeing with its subject "Brahmadatta,' and having "journey" for its object

Journey—Common noun, neuter gender, singular number, objective case after the verb "took '

Through—Preposition having "length' and "breadth" for its objects

Length—Abstract noun, neuter gender, singular number, objective case to the preposition ' through '

And—Co ordinative conjunction, joining the two nouns "length" and "breadth "

Breadth—Abstract noun, neuter gender, singular number, objective case to the preposition "through "

Of—Preposition having "kingdom" for its object

His—Personal (or demonstrative) pronoun, masculine gender, singular number, possessive case, third person, agreeing in gender, number, and person with its antecedent "Brahmadatta " Qualifies the noun "kingdom

Kingdom—Common noun, singular number, neuter gender, objective case after the preposition "of "

To see—Verb transitive, infinitive mood, present indefinite form, gerundial in use, qualifying the verb "took , transitive verb having for its object the clause "if happy "

If—Subordinative conjunction

His—(To be parsed as above)

Subjects—Common noun, common gender, plural number, nominative case, subject to the verb "were '

Were—Verb intransitive, third person, plural number, past indefinite tense, indicative mood, agreeing with its subject "subjects "

Happy—Adjective of quality, positive degree, predicative in use, subjective complement to the verb "were '

§ 2 —Position of Words

Adjective and Noun

301 The position of an Adjective in relation to its noun generally depends upon whether the adjective is used *attributively* or *predicatively* (see § 102)

Adjectives used Attributively.

302 When an adjective is used attributively, the invariable rule is to keep it *as close as possible* to the noun which it qualifies

303 In *prose* the adjective almost always precedes its noun In *poetry*, for the sake of rhyme or metre, it may be placed after its noun —

Prose

A *just* man *Bright* prospects *This* rose *Other* roses.
Much pain *Ten* men *The fifth* class *Double* promotion

Poetry

He sang to lords and ladies *gay*
The unpremeditated lay —*Scott*
The old man *eloquent* —*Byron*

304 When an adjective is enlarged by some qualifying phrase, it must always be placed *after* its noun —

A man *dear* to all A matter too *urgent* to be put off any longer A doctor well *practised* in all the arts of medicine and *worthy* of public confidence Bread *enough* and to spare

Note —In such examples as the above the adjective must be placed after its noun, in consequence of the "invariable rule" given in § 302, for if we said "a dear to all man," the words "*to all*" would separate the qualifying adjective from its noun

305 When several adjectives qualify the same noun at once, they can be placed either before or after their noun —

A horse strong, swift, and young, *or* a strong, swift, and young horse

Note 1 —If one of the adjectives is much longer than the other, it sounds better to put the shorter one first —

An *old* and *conscientious* servant
The *shorter* and *less laborious* of the two methods

Note 2 —If the adjectives consist of *long* words, it sounds better to place them after the noun —

God is the maker of all things *visible* and *invisible*, *animate* and *inanimate*

306. Sometimes an adjective is placed after its noun for the sake of point or emphasis

How does this position give point or emphasis to the adjective? Because the natural position of the adjective is to stand *before* its

noun By putting it out of its natural place, greater attention is drawn to it

> Things *temporal* are less precious than things *eternal*
> No man *living* could have done so well
> I appeal from Philip *drunk* to Philip *sober*
> The body *natural* and the body *politic*

307 For the sake of emphasis or distinction (as explained in the previous paragraph) an adjective used as a *qualifying title* is placed after its noun —

> Alfred the *Great* Alexander the *Great* Yudisthir the *Just*
> Ethelred the *Unready* Albert the *Good* Louis the *Pious*
> Charles the *Fat* Philip the *Fair* Richard the *Lion hearted*
> Charles the *Bold*

To the same principle must be ascribed the position of the titles "Elder" and "Younger", as—

> Cato the *Elder*, Cato the *Younger*
> Pliny the *Elder*, Pliny the *Younger*

Kings of the same name have been distinguished into first, second, third, etc, to indicate their historical order These titles of order are usually shown by means of Roman figures, I, II, III, and they always stand last —

> Edward I (=Edward the First), Edward II (=Edward the Second)

308 There are certain stock phrases, in which it has become idiomatic to place the adjective after its noun

This is chiefly due to what has been borrowed from the French language or French idiom, but it has sometimes been done for the sake of emphasis or antithesis —

- *The body politic* = the state or community (This is due to the old antithesis between the body *natural*, that is, the body of the individual man as made by nature, and the body *politic* or the collective body as made by society)
- *Malice prepense* some evil purpose previously devised or meditated
- *Heir apparent* one who by right of birth, and hence "to all appearances," will succeed to the throne or to some estate
- *Lords Temporal and Spiritual* this is the distinction between those who are peers or lords by temporal or worldly rank, and those who are lords by spiritual or ecclesiastical rank
- *Notary public* one who registers deeds, wills, and other legal documents for the public
- *Knight errant* a knight who makes it his business to move from place to place in search of wrongs to be righted
- *Governor-General*, Inspector *General*, Viceroy *elect*, bishop *elect*, etc (The adjective "elect" denotes an officer who has been

nominated or selected for the post, but has not yet been formally appointed)

The sum *total*, price *current*, a fiend *incarnate*, a god *incarnate*, point *blank* (the white or blank spot in the centre of a target), letters *patent*, lord *paramount*, things *temporal*, things *eternal*

Adjectives used Predicatively

309 When an adjective is used predicatively, it is placed after its noun —

(a) *When the verb is Intransitive or in the Passive voice* —

All men are *mortal* He lay *dead* on the ground He became *very rich* He was left *rich* by his father He was considered *wise* (*Subjective Complement*.)

(b) *When the verb is Transitive and in the Active voice* —

My father left me *poor*, but *well educated* The judge declared him *guilty* (*Objective Complement*.)

310 But for the sake of emphasis, we may place the Predicative adjective (or participle) first, so as to draw more attention to it (§ 153, *Note* 2) —

Great is Diana of the Ephesians
Disgraced you are, and will remain
Sweet are the uses of adversity

Adverbs

311 If the word to be qualified is an Adjective, or an Adverb, or a Preposition, or a Conjunction, the qualifying Adverb is placed immediately *before it*

Adjective or *Participle*	We are *half* pleased and *half* sorry The mango you brought was *quite* ripe Your pay is *too* high for your work
Adverb	A snake creeps *very* silently He stood *far* apart from me He seized my hand *rather* eagerly
Preposition	He arrived *long* before the time We sat *almost* in the shade He stood *exactly* behind me
Conjunction	Tell me *precisely* how it happened I like a mango *only* when it is ripe He did this *merely* because he was ordered

Note.—There is one exception to the above rule The word "enough" (when it is an Adverb and not an Adjective) is placed *after* the word it qualifies —

Your pay is good *enough* for your work.
He spoke highly *enough* of what you had done

312 If the verb to be qualified is *Intransitive*, the qualifying Adverb is placed immediately *after* it.—

He lived *well* and died *happily*
He laughed *heartily* at that joke
He spoke *foolishly* about his own merits

Note.—To this rule there are seven exceptions.—

The Adverbs *always*, *never*, *often*, *sometimes*, *generally*, *rarely*, and *seldom* are usually placed *before*, and not *after*, the verb they qualify

He *always* laughed at a good joke
He *never* spoke about his own merits
He *often* came here to see me
He *sometimes* slept in my house
He *seldom* stayed with me for long

But they can be placed after as well as before the verb "to be".—

He is *seldom* absent He *seldom* is absent

313 If the verb to be qualified is *Transitive*, the qualifying adverb must not be allowed to separate the verb and its object

The Adverb must therefore be placed either *before the verb* or *after the Object*, but it is more commonly placed after the object.—

He bore his losses *cheerfully*
He did his work *patiently* till sunset
He *briefly* explained his meaning

Sometimes, however, if the object is qualified by a clause, or consists of a good many words, the adverb may come between the verb and its object.—

He rewarded *liberally* all those who had served him well

But this is scarcely as idiomatic as, "He liberally rewarded," etc

314 If the tense of the verb is formed by an Auxiliary verb, the adverb is generally placed *between* the Auxiliary verb and the Principal verb.—

The wind has *suddenly* risen Your son will *soon* return
I have *quite* understood you He is *almost* dying, I fear

Similarly the Negative adverb "*not*" is always placed between the Auxiliary verb and the Principal verb.—

We have *not* seen him since Monday last
I did *not* know how ill he was
We shall *not* punish him severely

Correct the position of the adverb in the following sentences.—

He *exactly* stood in front of me He explained *clearly* his words I have read *often* that book He struck *severely* the ox with his whip He *soon* will return home He *almost* has finished his task The rain began to fall *suddenly* Your teacher is *enough* pleased with your industry He went out *seldom* before sunset.

315 An Adverb is placed first in a sentence—(*a*) when it is intended to qualify *the whole sentence*, (*b*) when it is used *very emphatically*

(*a*) *Luckily* no one was inside, when the roof fell in
(*b*) *Down* went the Royal George with all her crew complete
—*Cowper*

The meaning of the two sentences given below depends entirely on the position of the adverb —

(1) *Happily* he did not die
(2) He did not die *happily*

In (1) the adverb qualifies the entire sentence, because it stands first (as just explained) In (2) it qualifies the Intransitive verb "die," because it is placed immediately after it, see § 312 So (1) means, "It was a happy result that he did not die", and (2) means, "He did not die a happy death"

316 Only —The meaning of a sentence depends upon the position of this word —

(*a*) *Only* he promised to read the first chapter of that book

Here "only" is an Adjective, and not an Adverb As an adjective it qualifies the pronoun "he"

He alone, and no one else, promised to read the first chapter, etc

(*b*) He *only* promised to read the first chapter of that book

Here "only" is an Adverb qualifying the verb "promised", and the meaning is that he merely or only promised, but did not perform the promise

(*c*) He promised *only* to read the first chapter of that book

That is, he did not promise to study, analyse, or remember, but *only to read* Here "only" is an Adverb qualifying the verb "read"

(*d*) He promised to read *only* the first chapter of that book

That is, he promised to read nothing more than the *first* chapter Here "only" is an Adverb qualifying the adjective "the first"

(*e*) He promised to read the first chapter of that book *only* (or, *only* of that book)

That is, he promised to read the first chapter of no other book but that. Here "only" is an Adverb qualifying the phrase "of that book"

Subject and Object

317 As a general rule, in ordinary English prose, the Subject precedes its verb, but the following exceptions should be noted —

(*a*) When the verb is Intransitive, and the verb is preceded by the introductory adverb "there" (see § 29) —

On the whole *there* is nothing to prove his guilt
There came a messenger from the king's court.

(*b*) When the verb is used for asking a question —

At what hour in the morning does *he* get up?
How came *you* to catch such a bad cold?
What are *you* carrying in that bag?

(*c*) When the verb is in the Imperative mood —

Go *ye* into all the world and preach the gospel to every creature —*New Testament*

Thither our path lies wind *we* up the height —*Browning*

N B —Usually, however, no subject is expressed when the verb is in the Second person, and the Imperative is very rarely used in the First or Third person (see § 180)

(*d*) When the verb is used in the Subjunctive mood to express a wish, or when a wish is expressed by the auxiliary "may" (see § 190, 2) —

Long live *the king*
May *he* never again come inside this house

(*e*) When the verb is used in the Subjunctive mood to express a condition, and the "if" is omitted (see § 190, 3) —

Should *he* meet me, he would know me at once
Had *he* met me, he would have known me
Were *I* certain of his motives, I could trust him

(*f*) When the verb is used to report a speech in the Direct Narration, and is thrust into the middle of the reported speech (§ 124) —

"Agreed," said *the prince*, "we will go there to night"
"Let me not live,' quoth *he*

(*g*) When a *predicative* Adjective or Participle is placed at the beginning of a sentence for the sake of emphasis, (see § 153, *Note* 2, and § 310) —

Great was *the delight* of the citizens
Blessed are the *merciful*, for they shall obtain mercy

(*h*) When an adverb is placed at the beginning of a sentence for the sake of emphasis (see § 315) —

Up rose *the men* at the word of command
There goes *the thief*, catch him, if you can

(*i*) When two simple sentences are joined together by a pair of correlative words, the subject in one of the clauses is often put after its verb or after the auxiliary verb —

As men sow, so will *they* also reap
The more I saw of him, the less did *I* like him
So rotten was *the boat*, that it very soon sank
No sooner did *he* begin to speak, than every one was silent.
Scarcely had *we* reached home, before it began raining.

(*j*) When the object is placed before its verb, the subject must be placed after it —

Silver and gold have *I* none

318 The object to a verb is placed immediately after the verb, except when the object is a Relative or Interrogative pronoun, or unless it is placed at the beginning of a sentence for the sake of emphasis (see § 147)

The house *that* we occupy suits us well (*Relative*)
What kind of book do you like best? (*Interrogative*)
Silver and gold have I none (*Emphasis*)

319 No other words except (1) an adjective or participle, or (2) a noun or pronoun in the Possessive case, or (3) a noun or gerund used as an adjective, should as a general rule be allowed to come between a verb and its object

Thus it is against idiom to say, "I have finished *thoroughly* this work" We should say, "I have thoroughly finished this work", or "I have finished this work thoroughly"

But such sentences as the following are correct —

I have selected *the best* book (*Adjective*)
I found my *friend's* house (*Possessive*)
Call for the *village* watchman (*Noun used as Adjective*)

Relative and Antecedent

320 A Relative pronoun or Relative adverb must always be placed as close as possible to its antecedent

I have read a translation of Plato's writings, who succeeded Socrates

Here it would have been better to say "the writings *of Plato, who* succeeded," etc, because by this change the Relative and its Antecedent are not separated by the word "writings"

Preposition and Object

321 In prose (not always in poetry) the preposition is placed immediately before its object But the following exceptions should be noted —

(*a*) When the object is "whom," "which," or "what," the preposition *may be* placed last in the sentence and its object first.

That is the man *whom* we were looking *for* (*Relative.*)
Which of these chairs did you sit *on*? (*Interrogative*)

(*b*) When the object is the Relative pronoun "that," the preposition is *invariably* put last.

This is the man *that* we were looking *for*

(*c*) When the object is a Relative pronoun understood, the preposition is invariably put last —

This is the man (whom) we were looking for

(*d*) A noun or pronoun in the Possessive case or any other qualifying words may come between a preposition and its object —

He came to the *barber's* shop

(*e*) In poetry the preposition is sometimes placed after its noun —

They dashed that rapid torrent *through*

Note on Concord and Government

The plan adopted in some books on English Grammar is to subdivide the subject of Syntax under two main headings —

I Concord or Agreement II Government

In a highly inflected language, such as Latin, Sanskrit, or the Old English, a subdivision of that kind is useful, since the inflections of words depend chiefly on their mutual concord or agreement and on the extent to which they govern or are governed by one another

In modern English, however, in which very few of the old inflections have been retained, the subdivision of Syntax into rules of Concord and rules of Government is of scarcely any use, for it leaves the greater part of the ground untouched The only points on which these principles are seen at work are the following —

Concord or Agreement

(1) The verb must agree with its subject in Number and Person (This, together with the apparent exceptions thereto, has been set forth in § 293)

(2) The Demonstrative adjective "this' or "that" must be of the same number as the noun it qualifies (These are the only two adjectives which have retained one form for the Singular and another for the Plural)

(3) A pronoun must be of the same Number, Gender, and Person as its antecedent (So far as inflection is concerned, this applies only to the Demonstrative pronouns and to the Relative pronoun "who" or "which" The other Relatives have no change of form)

(4) A noun in apposition with a pronoun or other noun must be in the same case (This is shown in § 285 (3) and § 287 (3) The only case that is now indicated by an inflection is the Possessive, and even this case drops its inflection when it is in apposition with another Possessive See § 286)

Government

All that we can say on this point is that certain Verbs, two or three Adjectives, and all Prepositions govern a noun or pronoun in the Objective case

CHAPTER XIII

PUNCTUATION, OR THE RIGHT USE OF STOPS

322 Punctuation divides one sentence from another sentence, or one part of a sentence from another part, by means of points, stops, or marks

323 The names of the different points, stops, or marks used for this purpose are —

Comma, indicated by	,	Note of exclamation, indicated by	!
Semicolon, indicated by	;	Brackets, indicated by	() or []
Colon, indicated by	:	Dash, indicated by	—
Full stop or period, indicated by	.	Hyphen, indicated by	-
Note of interrogation, indicated by	?	Inverted commas, indicated by	" "
Apostrophe, indicated by	'		

The Comma

324 The comma represents the shortest pause Its chief uses in a **simple** sentence are the following —

(*a*) Between nouns or pronouns in apposition, as—

Alexander, the *son* of Philip, *king* of Macedon

(*b*) Between three or more words of the same Part of Speech, when only the last two are connected by "*and*"

Greece, Italy, and Spain are the peninsulas of Southern Europe (*Nouns*)

We should live soberly, prudently, and industriously at all times. (*Adverbs*)

Early to bed and early to rise
Makes a man healthy, wealthy, and wise (*Adjectives*)

(*c*) After the Nominative of address —

Friends, Romans, countrymen, lend me your ears.

(*d*) After an absolute construction —

The sun having set, we all went home

(*e*) When words of the same class or rank go together in pairs, each pair is separated by a comma —

By night or by day, at home or abroad, asleep or awake, he is a constant source of anxiety to his father

(*f*) After an adverbial phrase at the commencement of a sentence (Here, however, the comma can be put in or not, at the option of the writer)

In fact, his poetry is no better than prose. At last, he has gained his point

(*g*) Before and after a participial phrase, provided that the participle might be expanded into a sentence, and is not used in a merely qualifying sense (see § 204) —

Cæsar, having defeated the Gauls, led his army into Britain (Here "having defeated" means "after he had defeated")
Convinced of the accuracy of his facts, he stuck to his opinion (Here "convinced" means "because he was convinced")

But when the participle qualifies the noun so as merely to *restrict* its meaning, as an adjective would do, the comma should not be used —

A dog lying asleep on a public road is likely to be run over
A man convinced against his will is of the same opinion still

(*h*) Before certain co ordinative conjunctions —

He is not a madman, *but* a knave
He is not only accused, *but also* convicted
He hoped, *then*, that he would be pardoned

(*i*) Explanatory phrases are separated by commas —

The field was oblong, 60 yards in length, 40 in breadth

(*j*) Before and after gerundial Infinitives used in an explanatory or parenthetical sense —

I am, to tell you the truth, thoroughly sick of work
To sum up, the man was convicted of three charges

(*k*) A comma is sometimes used to introduce a sentence quoted in Direct Narration The sentence so quoted must be commenced with a capital letter —

What I say unto you I say unto all, Watch —*New Testament*

(*l*) A comma is sometimes inserted to mark the omission and save the repetition of a verb —

My regiment is bound for India , yours, for Gibraltar

325 (*a*) In a **compound** sentence the co-ordinate clauses, when they are expressed at full length, are generally separated by a comma —

His vanity is greater than his ignorance, and what he lacks in knowledge is supplied by impudence

But when the two sentences are not expressed at full length or are very closely allied, the comma is omitted —

I made haste and caught him
I took up a stone and threw it at the mad dog

(*b*) When the conjunction is omitted between co-ordinate clauses, these must be separated by a comma or by a semicolon :—

(1) When they are short, they are separated by a comma —

Steam propels, elevates, lowers, pumps, drains, pulls, drives, etc

(2) When they are long, they are separated by a semicolon —

Between fame and true honour there is much difference , the former is blind applause , the latter is an internal and more silent homage

326 In **complex** sentences the following rules regarding the use of commas should be noted —

(*a*) A Noun-clause is not usually separated by a comma from the Principal clause —

It is generally allowed that the art of teaching is difficult
No one knows when he will come
His being pardoned depends upon whether he will confess his fault or not

But Noun-clauses must be separated from each other by commas, when they are objects or subjects to the same verb —

No one knows when he will come, or whether he will come at all, or whether he is even alive
Who he was, or why he came, or what he intends to do, will all be found out in time

(*b*) An Adjective-clause is not separated from the Principal clause by a comma, unless it (the Adjective-clause) is rather lengthy —

The man *we saw* yesterday has come again to day
Fortune selects him for her lord, *who reflects before acting*

(*c*) An Adverb - clause is always or almost always separated by a comma from the Principal clause —

He will succeed, because he works hard
I will gladly do this, if I am allowed

The comma is never omitted, unless the Adverb-clause is either very short or very closely connected with the Principal clause —

He likes you better than me.
Send me word before you start

Insert commas, where necessary, in the following sentences —

The triple alliance consists of Germany Austria and Italy My son so far from being blamed for his conduct was commended and even rewarded The roof of the house having caught fire the inmates fled and remained outside the house until the fire was put out Towns villages and hamlets were all alike attacked with the epidemic of cholera I shall be happy to make the attempt that you speak of if I am permitted From morning till noon from noon to evening from evening to midnight this same grief never leaves him Early this morning when we had just left the house we met the man that we had been looking for He found as I expected he would that the house he had lately purchased was a bad one What was the cause of so much grief to him was never known to any of us I hope my friend that you will come and spend at least a week with us He has now grown so old that he spends most of his time in sleeping taking his food or sitting in an easy chair I remain my dear sir yours faithfully William Matthews I shall not leave home for business unless you set the example Example as the proverb says is the sincerest form of precept To tell you the plain truth I should be glad to retire from business altogether considering that I am now past sixty years of age and have a son to succeed me The boatman shouted to a man on shore throw out the rope A snake sleeping in the grass will bite if any one treads upon it The prisoner having been convicted of the crime of which he was accused must make up his mind to suffer the penalty The building is a noble structure of red brick and comprises a reading room a library a room for writing letters and a room for refreshments It is quite true that this fine building was erected by private subscriptions In fact of all that was subscribed L gave the largest amount in cash but M was not less liberal because he gave the land on which the building was erected A dog barking at nothing is a nuisance

The Semicolon

327 The **Semicolon** is used, when a greater pause is required than is indicated by the comma

Its chief uses are as follows —

(*a*) To separate *longer* clauses from one another Here a greater pause is necessary to prevent the sentences from being confused together —

> Honesty of purpose in worldly affairs has many advantages over deceit ; it is a safer way of dealing with men ; it is an easier mode of despatching business ; it inspires men with greater confidence ; it acquires more and more confidence in itself, while deceit becomes more and more diffident.

(*b*) To give greater emphasis to different clauses, so

that the mind may dwell longer on each of them in succession —

> As Cæsar loved me, I weep for him, as he was fortunate, I rejoice at it, as he was valiant, I honour him, but as he was ambitious, I slew him So there is tears for his love, joy for his fortune, honour for his valour, and death for his ambition —*Shakspeare*

(*c*) To divide clauses, which are connected by some Alternative or Illative conjunction (Here a greater pause is required, because the mind requires a little more time to perceive the alternative or the inference) —

> I met him as he was leaving his house, *otherwise* I should not have known where he lived
>
> I refused to do what he asked me to do, *for* I was convinced that he had been misinformed of the facts

The Colon

328 The **Colon** may be used at the writer's discretion, if he thinks that the pause is not sufficiently marked by a semicolon On this point no fixed rules can be given

The main uses of the colon are the following --

(*a*) To introduce an additional remark in explanation or in confirmation of a previous one

> Strive above all things, in whatever station of life you may be, to preserve health there is no happiness in life without it

(*b*) To introduce a quotation In this case it is usually followed by a dash —

> Then Peter stood forth and said —"Of a truth I perceive that God is no respecter of persons, etc

(*c*) To recapitulate a series of previous clauses Here, too, the colon must be followed by a dash —

> The storm had passed, the sun was shining on the green leaves of the trees, the streams were dancing around the rocks, the birds hopped about him, as they chirped their cheerful notes —such were the pleasant scenes and sounds that welcomed the wanderer back to his home

(*d*) To introduce a series of clauses Here, again, the colon is followed by a dash —

> You must now hear what I have to say about the uses of iron —we sleep on iron, we travel on iron, we float on iron, we plough the fields with iron, we shoot with iron, we chop down trees with iron,—in fact, there is scarcely anything that we can do without the help of this wonderful metal

(e) To introduce an example of some rule Here, again, the colon is followed by a dash —

The Indefinite article has sometimes the force of a Numeral adjective, signifying *one* —as, "A stitch in time saves nine"

Insert commas, colons, or semicolons, where necessary, in the following sentences —

1 According to Hindu notions if a sick man sneezes it is a sure sign of recovery but when one is going out on a journey or about to commence some business should any one about him sneeze the sneeze indicates that the object in which he is interested will not be accomplished

2 In Rome the army was the nation no citizen could take office unless he had served in ten campaigns

3 The drill was unremitting at all times so long as a man continued to be a soldier when the troops were in winter quarters sheds were erected in which the soldiers fenced with swords buttoned at the points or hurled javelins also buttoned at the points at one another

4 The Carthaginian army was composed entirely of mercenary troops Africa Spain and Gaul were then recruiting grounds and these countries were an inexhaustible treasury of warriors as long as the money lasted which the recruits received as pay

5 While I was still wondering at my sudden deliverance a man came suddenly forward and said my good sir there is nothing to be surprised at I was sent here to find you and rescue you from these robbers well I have succeeded in finding you and so I have accomplished what I was sent for as you now see

6 Whenever you hesitate about beginning to do something which must be eventually done remember the maxim a thing begun is half done

The Full Stop or Period

329 The **Full Stop** or **Period** indicates the close of a complete sentence The sentence following must invariably be commenced with a capital letter

The full stop is also used after abbreviations, as, A D (for Anno Domini), B L (for Bachelor of Law), Bart (for Baronet), the Hon (for the Honourable)

Inverted Commas

330 Inverted Commas are used for indicating the beginning and end of a quotation, or of the actual words used by a speaker

The councillors stood up, and with one voice exclaimed —"Death before dishonour"

"Wine is a mocker," said the wise king

Campbell was the author of the following stanza —

"The more we live, more brief appear
Our life's succeeding stages
A week to childhood seems a year,
A year like passing ages "

Note of Exclamation

331 A **Note of Exclamation** is used after words or sentences which express emotion

How are the mighty fallen in the midst of the battle! I am distressed for thee, my brother Jonathan!
Nonsense! How can you talk such rubbish?
What a conceited fellow you are! Be silent
"Land ahead!" shouted the delighted crew

The Apostrophe

332 The **Apostrophe** (') is inserted to show that some letter or letters have been omitted

The Hon'ble (for *Honourable*), e'en (for *even*), 'tis (for *it is*), ta'en (for *taken*), don't (for *do not*), shan't (for *shall not*), won't (for *will not*), tho' (for *though*), an ox's head (for *oxes head*), and all other instances of the Possessive case

Note of Interrogation

333 A **Note of Interrogation** is used after sentences which ask questions The sentence following must be commenced with a capital

Where was he born? When did he die?

Insert the proper stops and capitals, where necessary, in the following sentences —

1 Whats the matter Thomas ist that old pain of yours again no its not that at all said he but something a good deal better would you believe it my poor old uncle is dead and he has left me five thousand pounds that was very good of him she replied but its come too late why he inquired because she answered you are now old and broken in health what a pity it is that he did not die twenty years ago or give you the money while he was still alive

2 I have always considered you a very sensible man said the pleader I shall take one of your oxen in return for the one that has been killed and I believe you will consider that to be just it is no more than what is right replied the farmer but what was I saying dear me I have made a blunder it was not my bull that gored your ox but your bull that gored mine so you must give me an ox in return for the one that has been killed oh thats another matter said the pleader I will inquire about the matter and if I find that what you say is correct then we must come to some equitable settlement.

Dashes

334 The **Dash** has four main uses —

(*a*) To mark a break or abrupt turn in a sentence —

> Here lies the great—false marble where?
> Nothing but sordid dust lies here

(*b*) To mark words in apposition or in explanation —

> They plucked the seated hills with all their loads—
> Rocks, waters, woods—and by the shaggy tops
> Uplifting bore them in their hands

(*c*) To introduce a quotation, a first clause, or a final clause, but in this case it must be preceded by a colon (For examples, see § 328)

(*d*) To insert a parenthetical phrase or sentence in the middle of a main sentence Here *two* dashes are required

> At the age of ten—such is the power of genius—he could read Greek with facility

Brackets

335 Brackets are used, like a couple of dashes in (*d*), as just explained, for inserting a parenthetical sentence in the middle of a main sentence

> At the age of ten (such is the power of genius) he could read Greek with facility

The Hyphen

336 A **Hyphen** is used for joining the parts of a compound word, as "bathing-place"

Note —A hyphen, like the dash, is formed by a horizontal line But the line is shorter

Insert a dash, hyphen, or brackets, wherever necessary, in the following sentences, and add any other appropriate stops —

England and Russia the two greatest empires on the face of the earth have no real cause of enmity I could tell you all about my but perhaps you have heard enough by this time My dog such is the power of jealousy attacked its rival whenever they met. This is very uphill work. If you read without spectacles and I believe you can be so good as to read out the contents of this letter When I took my degree it was twelve years ago I had good prospects before me. I will never but I need not finish my sentence for you know already what I was going to say.

PART II—IDIOM IN WORDS, PHRASES, AND CONSTRUCTIONS

CHAPTER XIV—NOUNS AND PRONOUNS

337 Abstract nouns in a Concrete sense.—Abstract nouns are often used in places where a concrete sense is intended —

He had no respect for *age* (=old or aged persons)

Substitute Concrete nouns or phrases for the Abstract ones occurring in the following sentences, rewriting any sentence in which a change of form may be required —

1 *Truth* is braver than *Falsehood* 2 *Modest worth* often goes unnoticed and unrewarded 3 "Take the reward," said he, "that merit would undoubtedly have earned for you, had the basest *malice* and *envy* not defrauded you of it" 4 *Industry* pays debts, while *despair* increases them 5 *Envy* hates what *emulation* strives to equal or surpass 6 *Idleness* squanders what *industry* in a previous generation has won 7 As a medical man he was less honoured by the *profession* than by the public 8 *Authority* seldom listens patiently to those who question it 9 Avoid bad *company* 10 *Youth* should make provision for the wants of *age* 11 *Compassion* is victorious in attack and brave in defence 12 In that mansion used to be free hearted *Hospitality* (Longfellow) 13 *Sedition's* voice was silenced by his look 14 *Perseverance* is sometimes more effective than *genius* 15 Men were sent out for the conversion of *heathendom* 16 *Youth* and *experience* seldom exist together

17 O place me in some heaven protected isle,
Where *peace* and *equity* and *freedom* smile,
Where power secures what *industry* has won,
Where *to succeed* is not *to be undone* —*Cowper*

18 All the *rank* and *fashion* were present on that occasion

19 Let *observation* with extensive view
Survey mankind from China to Peru,
Remark each anxious *toil*, each eager *strife*,
And watch the busy scenes of crowded *life* —*Johnson.*

338. Meanings denoted by the Possessive.—The meanings denoted by the Possessive case of nouns or pro-

nouns have been distinguished into (*a*) the Attributive, (*b*) the Objective —

(*a*) *Attributive* —

His income (the income owned by him) was great. (*Possession.*)
His descendants (the men descended from him) were famous. (*Origin.*)
His work (the work done by him) was excellent. (*Agency.*)
His friendship (the friendship felt by him) is sincere. (*Subject.*)

(*b*) *Objective* —

His friendship (the friendship for him) must be given up. (*Object.*)

Rewrite the following sentences, so as to show more distinctly the drift of the Possessive noun or pronoun —

1. *Shakspeare's* plays will always be admired.
2. *Vasco da Gama's* voyage round the Cape proved the ruin of Venice.
3. *Baber's* dynasty continued to reign for a long time in Hindustan.
4. *The king's* murderers were caught and punished.
5. He checked the spread of *Pompey's* revolt.
6. *Solomon's* temple was situated in Jerusalem.
7. My *friend's* praises are heard on all sides.
8. No one will listen to *that man's* excuses.
9. A *sinner's* recompense is sorrow.
10. *Plato's* philosophy has had less influence in the world than *Aristotle's*.
11. *Nana Sahib's* treachery was soon brought to light.
12. A *miser's* promises cannot be trusted.
13. *Nelson's* victories at sea destroyed the French navy.
14. *Jack Cade's* rebellion led to no result.
15. I beg of you to pardon my *son's* faults.
16. *England's* power is very extensive.
17. The *court's* decree is that he shall be hanged.
18. The *king's* messenger will soon arrive.
19. *Homer's* poems will always be admired.
20. The young scamp soon squandered away his *uncle's* legacy.
21. He has no regret for his *father's* sorrows.
22. A good son will seek to repay his *father's* benefits.
23. Lord Elgin was *Lord Canning's* successor.
24. The guns were fired at the *general's* word.
25. The *speaker's* remarks were not just.
26. The *enemy's* ravages will soon be replaced.
27. My *son's* letters do him much credit.
28. A *philosopher's* knowledge is not always of a useful nature.
29. A *mother's* blessing be on thee!
30. Boadicea, the British warrior queen, sought counsel of her *country's* gods.
31. He was the *people's* favourite.
32. *Cæsar's* descendants were more famous than *his* ancestors.
33. *Cæsar's* information was not so accurate as *mine*.

339. Possessive of Interest.—The Possessive case of Personal pronouns is sometimes used familiarly in the sense of interest.

When he entered the room, on seeing a servant coming towards him to order him out, up goes *my* grave impudence (=the grave-faced impudent fellow whom I was watching) to the maid, etc.—*Tatler*

My Athenians (=the Athenians of whom I have made a special study) were certainly not bigoted —*Grote*

Our hero (=the man in whom my readers and myself have taken so much interest) now decided on returning home —*Marryat*

"You must understand," says the knight, "there is nothing that pleases a man in love so much as *your* nightingale" (=the nightingale that you and I are so fond of listening to) —*Spectator*

Note —We do not find that the Possessive of Interest is used with pronouns of the Third person, "he," "she," or "it," but only with pronouns of the First and Second persons

340. Dative or Objective of Interest.—A Personal pronoun can be put in the Objective case after a Transitive verb, to denote the interest taken by the speaker or spectator in the action expressed by the verb —

(*a*) Convey *me* Salisbury into his tent —*Shakspeare*
(*b*) Solomon built *him* a house —*New Testament*
(*c*) The Jew ate *me* a whole ham of bacon —*Addison.*
(*d*) "Archers," he called to the warders in the outward battlements, "send *me* an arrow through yon monk's frock "—*Scott's Ivanhoe*

These sentences could all be rewritten as follows —

(*a*) I request or order you to convey Salisbury into his tent.
(*b*) Solomon built a house for himself
(*c*) To my astonishment the Jew ate a whole ham of bacon
(*d*) Archers, I order you to send an arrow through yon monk's frock

Note 1 —This use of Personal pronouns is generally called the **Dative of Interest**, because in Old English the pronoun was in the (now obsolete) Dative case Since modern English has no such case, but recognises only three cases,—the Nominative, the Possessive, and the Objective,—it is equally or more appropriate to call this the Objective of Interest

Note 2.—What in § 155 is called "the Reflexive object" to Intransitive verbs, as in "fare *thee* well," is in fact another example of the so-called Dative of Interest. It has been termed the Reflexive object, because the agent is himself the object affected by the action of the verb "Fare *thee* well" means "fare well *for thyself.*" The pronoun "thee" is thus a kind of *Indirect* object to the verb "fare." It is only Transitive verbs that are followed by a *Direct* object.

341 Substitution of Pronouns for Nouns.—One of the chief uses of pronouns is that they save the repetition of nouns (see § 7 and § 111)

(*a*) *Put Pronouns in the place of the Nouns noted below* —

(*a*) I told Rám that the snake seen by *Rám* in the garden would do *Rám* no harm, if *Rám* left *the snake* alone, to go *the snake's* own way

(*b*) The girl went into the green field, and there *the girl* saw the sheep and lambs, as *the sheep and lambs* played about in the field

(*c*) A man brought round some wild beasts for a show Among *the beasts* there was an elephant *The man* threw cakes at the elephant, and *the elephant* caught *the cakes* in *the elephant's* trunk

(*d*) A dog was carrying an umbrella for *the dog's* master Some boys tried to take away *the umbrella* from *the dog* But *the dog* was too quick for *the boys* *The dog* ran past *the boys* at full speed, and carried the umbrella safely out of *the boys'* reach

(*e*) When the camel is being loaded, *the camel* kneels down, so that the load may be put on *the camel's* back *The camel* loves men, if *men* treat *the camel* well

(*f*) The bees are flying towards the flowers *The bees* suck *the flowers*, and fill *the bees* bags with honey

(*g*) Wolves hunt in large packs, and when *wolves* are pressed by hunger, *wolves* become very fierce, and will attack men and eat *men* up greedily

(*h*) A horse cannot defend *a horse* against wolves, but *a horse* can run from *wolves*, and *wolves* are not always able to catch *a horse*

(*b*) *Put suitable Pronouns in the places left blank, and insert Pronouns for the Nouns italicised* —

1 Health is of more value than money, —— cannot give such true happiness as ——

2 I prefer a white horse to a black — —

3 You have kept your promise, —— was all that I asked for or expected.

4 The man —— came here to day will remain with us as coachman, if *the man* suits us

5 A stranger could not be received twice as —— in the same house

6 Prosperous men are much exposed to flattery, for —— alone can be made to pay for it

7 The ox —— draws the plough well deserves such fodder —— can be given to *the ox*

8 The faithfulness of a dog is greater than —— of a cat, —— is most attached to places, —— to persons.

9 Prosperous men are not always more happy than poor ——

10 Return to your work, and —— immediately

11 The step —— you have taken is —— of much risk.

12 A pale light, like —— of the rising moon, begins to fringe the horizon, such a light —— that is very welcome to travellers

13 Your plan does not seem to be a wise *plan*, I wish you would give *the plan* up

14 A child —— parents are dead is an orphan

15 The ground —— we are digging will bear a fine crop, if *the ground* is watered

16 I have lost the box of clothes —— I brought, so now I must buy some new *clothes*

17 We love those persons —— are kind to us, if the love *of those persons* is sincere

18 We left the house —— we had lived in so long, because the air surrounding *the house* had become less healthy than —— of the neighbouring hill

19 My pen is not such a good —— as yours, but yours will not be so good as —— will be, when I have had —— mended

20 One should be careful of —— health in the plains of India, for the air of the plains is not so cool as —— of the hills

21 Here are four books before you, take —— of them you prefer I have chosen the *book* —— I like best, but tell me —— is the name of the author

CHAPTER XV —ADJECTIVES

§ 1 —Uses of the Various Kinds of Adjectives

Quantitative

342 Some, any —There is much difference in the way in which these two adjectives are used —

(*a*) **Some** is used in *affirmative* sentences, as—

"He has procured *some* bread" We cannot say, "He has procured *any* bread"

(*b*) **Any** is used in *negative* sentences, as—

"He has *not* procured *any* bread" We cannot say, "He has not procured *some* bread"

But although "any" is used in negative sentences like the above, we must never say "no any," as is occasionally done by some students Thus we must not say, "He has procured *no any* bread", but we must say, "He has *not* procured *any* bread," or "He has procured *no* bread"

(*c*) **Any** and **some** can both be used in *interrogative* sentences —

Has he procured *any* bread?
Has he procured *some* bread?

But in such sentences "any" is more commonly used than "some," and is to be preferred to it

343 Little, a little, the little —Each of these expressions has a distinct meaning of its own :—

(*a*) **Little** is a *negative* adjective, and means "not much"

He had *little* money = (not much money)

(*b*) **A little** is an *affirmative* adjective, and means "some at least"—a certain quantity, however little

He had *a little* money = (some money at least, although the amount was small)

(*c*) **The little** implies two statements—one *negative*, and the other *affirmative*

He spent the *little* money he had

That is—(1) The money he had was not much (*Negative*)
(2) He spent all the money that he had (*Affirmative*)

Numeral Adjectives

344 Few, a few, the few—Each of these expressions has a distinct meaning of its own—

(*a*) **Few** is a *Negative* adjective, and signifies "not many"

He read *few* books (he did *not* read *many* books)

(*b*) **A few** is an *Affirmative* adjective, and signifies "some at least"—a certain number, however few

He read *a few* books (that is, he read *some* books *at least*, though the number was small)

(*c*) **The few** implies two statements, *one Negative* and *the other Affirmative*

He read the few books he had

That is—(1) The books he had were not many (*Negative*)
(2) He read all the books he had (*Affirmative*)

345 Many a, a many—The former phrase is followed by *Singular* nouns, and the latter by *Plural* ones—

(*a*) **Many a**—Here "a" = "one", "many a man" means "many times one man," or "many men" Hence "many" has here the force of a Multiplicative numeral—

Many a youth and *many a* maid
Dancing 'neath the greenwood shade—*Milton*

(*b*) **A many**—Here "many" has the force of a *Collective noun*, and *of* is understood after it—

They have not shed *a many tears*,
Dear eyes, since first I knew them well.—*Tennyson*
This many summers on a sea of glory—*Shakspeare*

In prose it is more common to put in the word "great" between *a* and *many*. "A great many men" means "a large number *of* men," the *of* being understood, and *many* having the force of a Collective noun. Similarly in such a phrase as "a few books," we might regard *a few* as a Collective noun, the "of" being understood after it.

N.B.—In Old English "menigu" was a Collective *Noun*, signifying "a multitude or large number," and "manig" was an Indefinite Numerical *Adjective*, signifying "many." In modern English the same word "many" stands for both; for it is equivalent to "menigu" in the phrase *a many*, and to "manig" in the phrase *many a* or simply *many*. Shakspeare has "a *many of* our bodies."

346 Definite Numeral Quantities are sometimes Collective nouns; and, as in the case of "many," the *of* is understood after them.

> *A dozen* (of) sheep; *a million* (of) apples.
> *A hundred* (of) years; *a thousand* (of) years.
> *A hundred thousand* (of) rupees. (But we must say "a lac *of* rupees," and not "a lac rupees.")

Demonstrative Adjectives

347 Definite Demonstratives.—The uses of these adjectives are shown below:—

(*a*) **This, these**.—Something *near at hand* is pointed to by these adjectives; as—

> *This* tree; *these* trees.

They are sometimes used in the sense of possession by way of emphasis; as—

> These eyes (= my own eyes) saw the deed.

(*b*) **That, those, yon, yonder**.—These adjectives point to something *farther off*; as—

> *That* tree; *those* trees; *yon* or *yonder* tree (or trees).

Note.—"Yon or yonder" is seldom seen except in poetry. They can be used with nouns of either number.

(*c*) **Such**.—This adjective means *of this or that kind*, and refers either (1) to something just mentioned, or (2) to something just going to be mentioned:—

> (1) His praise of me was not sincere. I do not like *such* a man (or *such* men).
> (2) *Such* food as we get here does not suit me.

"Such" is also used as an *Indefinite* Demonstrative. In this case it does not refer to anything previously mentioned.

> He called at my house on *such a* day (= some day or other), and I gave *such and such* an answer (some answer or other) to his questions.

Note.—"So," the adverbial form of "such," is similarly used in an Indefinite sense

A week or *so* (that is, a week more or less)

(*d*) **The same, self-same, very same**.—These adjectives all refer to something previously mentioned "Self-same" and "very same" are more emphatic than "same"

You told him to come here to-morrow, and I gave him *the same* (or *the self same*, or *the very same*) answer

(*e*) **The other**.—This denotes the *second* of two things previously mentioned, while "*the one*" denotes the first —

Two women shall be grinding at the mill, *the one* shall be taken, and *the other* left —*New Testament*

"**The other day**"—This peculiar phrase has an *Indefinite* sense, and means *any* day (*some* day or *other*) recently preceding and therefore distinct from the present —

He came to see me *the other day* (=a few days ago, some day or other which I cannot exactly remember)

348 The Definite Demonstratives are very frequently used to point out the noun, which stands as antecedent to some relative pronoun following —

This man whom you now see came here to-day
That book which you are reading is mine
He is not *such* a clever student *as* you are
You are reading *the same book that* I read many years ago

349 The **Indefinite Demonstratives** are used as follows —

(*a*) **A, an, a certain**.—These are used with singular nouns, to show that no person or thing in particular is intended or specified, as, "a man," "a certain man," "an apple" *Certain* is used with Plural nouns in the same sense, as, "certain men"

(*b*) **One**.—This word is generally a Numeral adjective, but it may also be used as an Indefinite Demonstrative in such sentences as the following —

He came *one* day (on a certain day which I cannot remember) to see me

One Mr James (a certain man whom I do not know, but who is called Mr James) came to see me

(*c*) **Any**.—This is more emphatic than "a" or "an", it can be used with Plural as well as Singular nouns :—

Any man (that is, any and every man) could do that.
You may take *any* books (no books in particular, but any books) that you like best.

(*d*) **Some** —This is used in two senses—(1) as showing that no person or thing in particular is specified, (2) for making a Definite number Indefinite (see § 95)

(1) *Some* man (I do not know who he was) called here to day
(2) He owes me *some* 20 rupees (*about* 20 rupees, *more or less*)

(*e*) **Another, any other, other** —"Another" (with Singular nouns) and "other" (with Plural ones) are used in *affirmative* sentences, but "any other" (with nouns in either number) is used in *negative* ones, as—

We have seen *another* man (or *other* men) to day
We have *not* seen *any other* man or men to day

"Other" is sometimes followed by "than," and in this case it should be placed immediately before it, or as close to it as possible —

He has no books *other than* Sanskrit.

This is better than saying, "he has no other books than Sanskrit" Here "other than" means "different from" or "except" "He has no books except Sanskrit" "Than" is here a preposition

350 Some, any —It depends upon the sense whether these are *Demonstrative* Adjectives, or Adjectives of *Quantity*, or Adjectives of *Number*

Some	(1) *Some* man called here to-day	*Indef*	*Demons*
	(2) Give me *some* bread	,,	*Quant*
	(3) Give me *some* loaves of bread	,,	*Number*
Any	(1) Take *any* book that you like best	,,	*Demons*
	(2) He has not had *any* bread	,,	*Quant*
	(3) Did you bring *any* loaves?	,,	*Number*

Both of these adjectives are Indefinite, but, as may be seen from the following examples, "some" is the least Indefinite of the two —

Did *any* man call here to day? Yes, *some* man did call
Take *any* books that you like, but you must take *some*
Can you come at *some* hour to-day? Yes, at *any* hour you like

Distributive Adjectives and Phrases

351 Each other, one another —In these phrases we have a Distributive adjective (*each = one*) combined with an Indefinite Demonstrative adjective (*other* or *another*) —

(*a*) "**Each other**" is used when *two* persons or things are concerned, as—

The two men struck *each other* (that is, *each* man struck the *other* man).

(*b*) "**One another**" is used when *more than two* persons or things are concerned, as—

They all loved *one another* (that is, each man loved every other man).

352 The drift of a Distributive adjective can also be expressed in the following ways:—

(*a*) By the preposition "*by*":—

They went out two *by* two, or *by twos* (in separate pairs).

(*b*) By "*and*," in such phrases as "two and two," "three and three":—

They went out *two and two* (in separate pairs).

(*c*) By the phrase "*at a time*":—

They went out *two at a time* (in separate pairs).

(*d*) By the phrase "*a piece*":—

The twenty men had a gun *a piece* (had each a gun).

(*e*) By the adjective "*respective*":—

They went to their *respective* homes (each to his own).

Correct any errors that you may find in any of the Adjectives occurring below:—

1. I have not had some breakfast this morning. 2. Little money is better than none. 3. The three partners in that firm disliked each other. 4. Bring me any water to drink. 5. I have no any books to read. Can you bring me few? 6. He was sorry to find that he had a little leisure left. 7. Few remarks from you on that subject will not be out of place. 8. I wish you would stay here a few days longer. 9. Did any man call here to-day? Yes, any man called at four o'clock. 10. The mother and son were deeply attached to one another. 11. Of the two prisoners that were detained in jail every one has escaped. 12. He has finished reading a few books that he had. 13. Budapest is a Hungarian city. 14. A clock is an useful piece of furniture. 15. It is a common, but unjust, belief that an one-eyed man must be cunning. 16. The old man, addressing his four sons for the last time, said he hoped they would always stand by each other and abstain from quarrelling.

§ 2.—On the Idiomatic Uses of Articles

353 As a general rule, a *Common* noun in the *Singular* number should have an article placed before it. Thus we should not say, "I saw *dog*," but "I saw *a* dog or *the* dog."

(*a*) If we wish to *particularise* the noun, we use the *Definite* article.—

Let us go and bathe in *the* river (that is, the river near our house, or the river where we usually bathe)
This settles *the* matter (that is, the matter in which we are engaged)
They struck him in *the* face (that is, in his own face)

(*b*) If we wish to *generalise* the noun, we use the *Indefinite* article —

A tiger is a fierce animal (that is, any tiger, or tigers generally)
A cat is not so faithful as *a* dog

Note —Since "*a*" is a contraction of "*one*" (§ 15), it is sometimes used in the sense of "one"

A stitch (=one stitch) in time saves nine
Two of *a* trade (=of the same trade) should live apart

354. When a *Common* noun is used in the *Plural* number, the Definite article should not be placed before it, unless we wish to particularise the noun

Storks gobble up *frogs*

But if we are talking about some particular storks and some particular frogs, that might be in some pool of water close at hand, we should say—

Look! *the* storks are gobbling up *the* frogs

355 An article is not placed before a Proper, Material, or Abstract noun, except when any of these is used as a Common noun (§ 46)

He is *the Nestor* (=the oldest man) of the service
Sugar cane is one of *the grasses* (=kinds of grass)
He is *a justice* of the peace

356 "*The*" is sometimes used to indicate a *class* or *kind* of anything One individual is thus made to represent the entire class The following all mean the same thing —

The lion is a noble beast
A lion is a noble beast
Lions are noble beasts

357 When "*the*" is placed before a *Common* noun, it sometimes gives it the meaning of an *Abstract* noun

He felt *the patriot* (the patriotic spirit or feeling) rise within his breast
He acted *the lord* (the lordly or overbearing character) wherever he went.
He allowed *the father* (his fatherly feelings) to be overruled by *the judge* (his sense of duty as a judge), and declared his own son to be guilty

358 As a general rule a Proper noun should not have "*the*" placed before it But the following are exceptions —

(*a*) Names of rivers, as, *the* Ganges, *the* Indus, *the* Nerbudda, *the* Rhine, *the* Danube

(*b*) Names of *groups* of islands, as, *the* Andaman Islands, *the* East Indies, *the* Hebrides (But *individual* islands do not have "*the*" placed before them, as, Ceylon, Ireland, Sicily)

(*c*) Names of *ranges* of mountains, as, *the* Himalayas, *the* Vindhyas, *the* Alps (But *individual* mountains do not have "*the*" placed before them, as, Mount Abu, Mount Everest, Parasnath)

(*d*) Names of straits, gulfs, seas, and oceans, as, *the* Palk Straits, *the* Straits of Babelmandeb, *the* Gulf of Cambay, *the* Persian Gulf, *the* Bay of Bengal, *the* Arabian Sea, *the* Mediterranean Sea, *the* Indian Ocean, *the* Atlantic Ocean

(*e*) The name of a province is very seldom preceded by "*the*", as, Bengal, Behar, Orissa, Assam, Oudh, etc In India the only exception is "*the* Punjab"

(*f*) The article is usually placed before the proper names of books, as, *the* Bible, *the* Ramayan

But if a book is called after its author, the article is not used, as, "I have read *Shakspeare*"

Note —"*The*" is not placed before the names of towns (as London, Calcutta), nor before the names of capes (as Cape Comorin, Cape Horn), nor before the names of countries (as England, India), nor before the names of continents (as Asia, Europe), nor before the names of *single* islands (as Ceylon, Sicily), nor before the names of *single* mountains (as Mount Abu, Parasnath, Everest), nor before the names of lakes (as Lake Sambhar, Lake Chilka, Lake Huron)

359 Omission of Article —As a general rule a Common noun in the Singular number should have some article placed before it (see § 353)

But the following exceptions should be noted —

(*a*) Names of titles or professions, when they precede a Proper noun —

Queen Victoria, *King* George I, *Lord* Ashley, *Saint* Paul, *Judge* Anson *General* Roberts *Father* Ignatius, Victoria, *Queen* of England, George I, *King* of England

(*b*) In certain well-established phrases, consisting of a Transitive verb followed by its Object, the Common noun which follows the verb is used without any distinction of article or number —

The trees struck *root* (not *the* roots) into the ground
The boys leave *school* (not *the* school) at four o'clock
Students must give *ear* (not *the* ears) to what the teacher tells them
He sent *word* that he would come soon
You cannot set *foot* in this house

He shook *hands* with his old friends.
We will keep *house* in this village
The king resolved to give *battle* to his enemies
The sailors cast *anchor* for the night, and set *sail* again next day
The pile of logs has taken *fire*, or caught *fire*
He took *breath*, when he rose up out of the water
To keep *house* To follow *suit* To do *penance*

(c) In phrases consisting of a Preposition followed by its Object, the article is omitted before the Common noun, when such phrases are intended to be used *for all persons and on all occasions* alike —

Some came *by land*, and some *by water*
It would be better to go *on foot* than *on horseback*
He is out *at sea*, *on board ship*
A rat is quite *at home*, when it is *under ground*
Men who are *in jail* are sometimes made to work *out of doors*
He is a scholar *by name*, but not *in fact*
He fell sick *at school*, and is now *in bed*
Those who work hard *by day* must not work *by night* also
He is *over head and ears in debt*, or *in trouble*, etc
He begins work *at daybreak* and leaves off *at sunset*
Such food is not fit *for man or beast*
Speak the truth *in court*, whether you have been *at fault* or not
We shall never get this *for love*, but you might *for money*
The ship is riding *at anchor*, and the sailors are now *at ease*
This will be paid *at sight* or *on demand*
I met your old friend *at dinner* to day
He lends out money *at interest*, for he has much cash *in hand*
There is nothing *on earth* so pure as sea air

Note —On the use of "*the*" before adjectives in the Positive degree, see § 360, before adjectives in the Comparative degree, see § 370, *Note* 2, and before adjectives in the Superlative degree, see § 371, *Note* 1

Rewrite the following sentences, inserting any Articles that may be required, or removing any that are not required —

1 I saw dog coming toward me 2 The men are rational beings 3 You should use a well seasoned timber in building a house 4 I am fond of strolling in wood in cool of the evening 5 The envy is an evil passion 6 He gave very wise judgment 7 He is Daniel in wisdom 8 He ordered servant to leave room 9 We cannot easily live without the houses 10 The honey is made by bees, and they extract it from the flowers 11 Fire broke out in our village 12 He always practised the justice 13 He was justice of the peace in Calcutta 14 He understands grammar taught in this book 15 Your son, I fear, is not genius 16 Ganges has overflowed its banks. 17 The Mount Everest is highest in the world 18 He wrote very good letter 19 Language consists of the words. 20 Some men never eat a flesh. 21 India is large peninsula. 22 Andamans are

a group of islands 23 Height of a man seldom exceeds six feet 24 Oil is produced from the olives 25 Dead man tells no tales. 26 Your daughter is quite beauty 27 The speech is one of our greatest faculties. 28 Bay of Bengal separates India from the Burma 29 The Ceylon is beautiful island, and it is largest of all the islands near India 30 He was found asleep in thick of forest. 31 He acted lord in that play 32 He received a serious blow in small of his back 33 The Mount Abu is in Rajputana 34 He was very fond of roaming in wilds of Scotland 35 He restored sight to blind 36 Live ass is better than dead lion 37 You will never be Newton in astronomy

§ 3.—Adjectives used as Nouns

360 An adjective can be used for a noun for the sake of shortness The noun in this case is sometimes understood, and sometimes altogether cancelled

361 The Noun is cancelled, and the change from Adjective to Noun is complete, when the word can be used in the Plural number or in the Possessive case Such a change is complete, because no Adjectives take the Possessive case-ending, and none but "*this*" and "*that*" have a distinct form for the Plural number

Nobles—noble men or noblemen
A *noble's* house—a nobleman's house
I have told you many *secrets*=secret things

362 In using a Proper adjective to denote some language, no article is placed before it, and no noun is expressed

He speaks *English*, but not *Hindi*
The grammar of *English* is simpler than that of *Persian*

363 Some adjectives are used as nouns in the Singular only, some in the Plural only, and some in both —

(*a*) *Singular only* —

Our all The whole Our best Our worst Much (as, Much has been done) More (as, More has been done) Little (as, Little has been done) Less (as, Less has been done)

(*b*) *Plural only* —

Opposites Morals Contraries Particulars (=details) Movables Eatables Drinkables Valuables Greens (=green vegetables) Sweets and bitters (=the sweet and bitter contingencies of life) Our betters (=men better than ourselves) Our equals The ancients The moderns The Commons The actuals.

(c) *Singular and Plural* —

A secret, secrets A liquid, liquids A solid, solids A total, totals A capital, capitals An elder, elders A senior, seniors A junior, juniors A native, natives. A mortal, mortals An inferior, inferiors A superior, superiors A criminal, criminals

364 Participles (which, in fact, are Verbal adjectives, see § 18) are sometimes used as Nouns in the Plural number, in the same way as ordinary adjectives are

He came here with all his *belongings*
I am much pleased with my *surroundings*
Let *bygones* be *bygones* (=let past offences be forgotten)

365 There are certain colloquial or idiomatic phrases in which adjectives go in pairs, some noun being understood after them —

From bad to worse "He is going from bad to worse" (from a bad state to a worse one)
The long and short "The long and short (the sum and substance) of the matter is," etc
In black and white "Let me see it in black and white' (written with black ink on white paper)
Through thick and thin "He makes his way through thick and thin" (through thick or difficult obstacles and through thin or easy ones)
From first to last = from the beginning to the end
At sixes and sevens = in a state of disorder "The men of the house were all at sixes and sevens' (in a state of discord) "Everything in the city is at sixes and sevens (in a state of confusion)
High and low "He searched for his property high and low" (in high places and low ones, everywhere, up and down)
Right or wrong "I intend to do this, right or wrong (whether the act is right or not)
For better, for worse "She married you for better, for worse" (for any good or evil that may fall to your lot hereafter)
Fast and loose "He plays fast and loose" (with a tight or loose hold, as he may prefer, that is, at random, recklessly)
Black and blue "He beat them black and blue" (so as to bring out black and blue marks on the skin)
Right and left "He struck out right and left" (to this side and that side)
Slow and steady "Slow and steady (patient and steady progress) wins the race"
For good, for good and all (= finally, permanently, for all future consequences, good or evil)

366 Adjectives preceded by "the"—When an adjective is preceded by the Definite article, it can be used as a Noun in the three senses shown below —

(1) As a Common noun denoting *Persons* only, and usually in a *Plural* sense —

None but *the brave* (=those men who are brave) deserves the fair
To *the pure* (=those persons who are pure) all things are pure
The blind receive their sight, *the lame* walk, *the dumb* speak, *the dead* are raised up, to *the poor* the gospel is preached —*New Testament*

(2) As an Abstract noun (*Singular*) —

The good=that quality which is good,=goodness in general.
The beautiful=that quality which is beautiful,=beauty in general
All the motions of his nature were towards *the true, the natural, the sweet, the gentle* —*De Quincey*

(3) As a name for some particular part of a thing —

The white (=the white part) of the eye
The vitals (=the most vital parts) of the body
The thick (=the thickest parts) of the forest
The wilds (=the wild parts) of a country
The interior (=the inside part) of a house
The exteriors (=the outside parts) of a house
The middle (=the middle part) of a river
The small (=the smallest part) of the back

367 In poetry, adjectives are sometimes used as nouns, without having an article placed before them —

Fair is foul, and *foul* is fair — *Shakspeare*
O'er *rough* and *smooth* she trips along —*Wordsworth*
From *grave* to *gay*, from *lively* to *severe* —*Pope*

368 There are several adverbial phrases, made up of a preposition and an adjective, in which some noun is understood after the adjective —

Extent —On the whole in the main, in general, in particular, at the full or in full at all, not at all, at most, at large, in short, a little

Time —At last, at the latest, at first, at the first, to the last, at present, for the present, in the past, in future, for the future, once for all, before long, for long

Place —On the right (hand), on the left (hand), on high, in the open (air)

Manner —In the right (on the true or right side of the question), in the wrong (on the wrong side of the question), in the dark, in common, on the loose

State —At best, for the best, at worst, on the alert

§ 4 —Uses of Degrees of Comparison

369 Positive Degree —When two persons or things are said to be *equal* in respect of some quality, we use

the *Positive* degree with *as* ... *as*, or we can use the Comparative degree with "not" —

This boy is *as* clever *as* that
This boy is *no less* clever *than* that
That boy is *not more* clever *than* this.

370 Comparative Degree —When two persons or things are said to be *unequal* in respect of some quality, we use the *Comparative* degree —

(*a*) This boy is more clever or cleverer *than* that
(*b*) This boy is *the* cleverer *of the two*

Note 1 —Forms (*a*) and (*b*) do not mean entirely the same thing Form (*a*) merely denotes *superiority* Form (*b*) denotes the *selection* of the one in preference to the other

Note 2 —Observe that whenever the Comparative degree is used in the (*b*) or *selective* sense, it must be preceded by the Definite article, as might be expected for the proper function of this article is to particularise or select, see § 353 (*a*)

371 Superlative Degree —When one person or thing is said to surpass all other persons or things of the same kind, we use the *Superlative* degree with *the* ... *of*

This boy is *the* cleverest *of* all

Note 1 —Observe that the Superlative degree must always (except in the instances shown in *Note* 2) be preceded by the Definite article

Note 2 —When the Superlative is (*a*) preceded by a Possessive pronoun, or (*b*) is used to qualify some noun in the Nominative of address, it is not preceded by the Definite article —

(*a*) He is *my greatest* friend, or at least one of *my greatest* friends
(*b*) O *dearest* one, when shall we see you again?

Note 3 —The Superlative degree must not be used as if it were equivalent to the Positive degree preceded by "very" —

Erroneous	*Corrected*
He wrote *a best* book	He wrote *a very good* book
He is *a worst* scholar	He is *a very bad* scholar

The only kind of exception to this rule is that given under (*b*) in *Note* 2 Here "O dearest one" is equivalent to "O very dear one"

Note 4 —But the Superlative degree may itself be preceded by "very," where "very" is not an adverb, but an adjective signifying "real" or "actual" —

He is *the very best* (=the actual best) student in this class

372 Comparatives which have lost their force — (*a*) Latin Comparatives.—*interior*, *exterior*, *ulterior*, *major*,

minor These are now never followed by *to*, but are used as if they were adjectives in the Positive degree —

A fact of *minor* (secondary) importance
He had an *ulterior* (further) purpose in doing this
The *interior* (inside) parts of a building

Some can be used as nouns —

He is a *minor* (a person under age)
He is a *major* (in the military rank)
The *interior* of the room was well furnished

(*b*) English Comparatives —*former*, *latter*, *elder*, *hinder*, *inner*, *outer*, *upper*, *nether* These are now never followed by *than* —

The *former* and the *latter* rain —*Old Testament*
The *inner* meaning, the *outer* surface
The *upper* and the *nether* mill stones

The words *elder* and *elders* can also be used as nouns, to denote some person or persons of dignified rank or age, as, "the village elders"

373 Distinctions of Meaning —The student should note the differences between (a) *eldest* and *oldest*, (b) *farther* and *further*, (c) *later* and *latter*, (d) *nearest* and *next*

(*a*) { My *eldest* son died at the age of twelve
{ He is the *oldest* of my surviving sons

Here "eldest" means first-born, and is applied only to *persons* "Oldest" is applied to things as well as to persons, and denotes the greatest age "That is the *oldest* tree in the grove"

(*b*) { Benares is *farther* from Calcutta than Patna is
{ The *further* end of the room A *further* reason exists

The word "farther" (comparative of "far") denotes a greater distance between two points The word "further" (comparative of "forth") denotes something additional or something more in advance

(*c*) { This is the *latest* news
{ This is the *last* boy in the class

The words "later" and "latest" denote time, the words "latter" and "last" denote position

(*d*) { This street is the *nearest* to my house
{ This house is *next* to mine

The word "nearest" denotes space or distance, ("this street is at a less distance from my house than any other street") But "next" denotes order or position, ("no other house stands between this house and mine")

CHAPTER XVI —VERBS

§ 1 —USES OF TENSES

374 The Present Indefinite can be used to denote the following —

(*a*) What is always and necessarily true —

The sun *shines* by day and the moon by night
Things equal to the same thing *are* equal to one another

(*b*) What is permanent or habitual in life or character —

He *keeps* his promises He *has* good health

(*c*) What is present, provided that present time is implied by the context —

I *understand* what you *say*
The door *is* open no one had shut it

(*d*) What is future, provided that future time is implied by the context —

He *comes* (=will come) in a few days' time
When *do* you (=will you) start for Madras ?

(*e*) What is past, provided that the event expressed by the verb is known to be past (This is called the Historic or Graphic present)

Baber *now leads* (=then led) his men through the Kyber pass, and *enters* (=entered) the plains of India

375 The Past Indefinite —The special use of this tense is to state something *that was true once*, but is now past and gone *It excludes absolutely all reference to* **present** *time*

Baber *founded* the Mogul Empire in India
Vasco da Gama *was* the first man from Europe who *rounded* the Cape of Good Hope

376 The Present Perfect —The peculiar purport of this tense is that it invariably connects a *completed* event in some sense or other with *the present time*

I *have lived* twenty years in Lucknow (that is, *I am living there still*, and I began to live there twenty years ago)
The lamp *has gone out* (that is, it has just gone out, and we are *now* left in darkness)

(*a*) The Present Perfect can be used in reference to

a past event, provided the state of things arising out of that event is *still present*

The British Empire *has succeeded* to the Mogul

The series of events by which the British Empire superseded the Mogul took place more than a century ago The events are therefore long past Yet it is quite correct to use the Present Perfect tense "*has* succeeded," because the state of things arising out of these past events is *still present* the British Empire *still exists*, and pertains to *present time* no less than to past time

But such a sentence as the following is wrong —

Baber *has founded* the Mogul Empire

This is wrong, because the state of things arising out of the foundation of the empire by Baber has entirely passed away

(*b*) The Present Perfect, since it denotes *present* time, cannot be qualified by any adverb or phrase denoting *past* time This would be a contradiction in terms

Incorrect	*Correct*
The rain *has ceased* yesterday	The rain *ceased* yesterday
I *have finished* my letter last evening	I *finished* my letter last evening
The parrot *has died* of cold last night	The parrot *died* of cold last night

But such sentences as the following are correct, because the adverb or phrase used in each of them is of such a kind as to *connect past time with the present*, hence no contradiction occurs

The English Empire *has been flourishing* for the past 150 years (that is, it began to flourish 150 years ago, and is still flourishing)

Fever *has raged* in the town since Monday last (that is, fever began to rage on Monday last, and is raging still)

377 **The Past Perfect** (also called the Pluperfect) — This is used whenever we wish to say that *some action had been completed before another was commenced*

The verb expressing the *previous* action is put into the Past Perfect or Pluperfect tense The verb expressing the *subsequent* action is put into the Past Indefinite

(*a*) *Previous Action* *Past Perfect*	*Subsequent Action.* *Past Indefinite*
He *had been* ill two days,	when the doctor *was sent for*
He *had seen* many foreign cities,	before he *returned* home

(*b*) *Subsequent Action* *Past Indefinite*	*Previous Action.* *Past Perfect*
The boat *was sunk* by a hurricane,	which *had* suddenly sprung up
The sheep *fled* in great haste,	for a wolf *had entered* the fold

The Past Perfect ought never to be used at all *except to show the priority of one past event to another*

Yet Indian students and clerks are apt to use the Past Perfect when

no priority of any kind is implied, and when they ought to use the Past Indefinite Here is a specimen of an official letter —

"I beg to inform you that the trustees to the ———— endowment, at the meeting convened on 19th July 1891, *had* unanimously resolved to reserve the option of appointing or dismissing the men employed "

Here the event referred to should have been expressed in the *Past Indefinite.* The use of the Past Perfect is wrong in this place, because there is no priority of one event to another

378 The Future Perfect.—This tense is used in two different senses —(*a*) To denote the completion of some event in *future* time, (*b*) to denote the completion of some event in *past* time [1]

(*a*) He *will have* reached home before the rain sets in (The reaching of home will be completed before the setting in of rain commences)

(*b*) You *will have* heard (must have heard in some past time) this news already, so I need not repeat it

379 Shall and will in Interrogative sentences —

In Assertive sentences, *merely future time* is denoted by "shall" in the First person, and by "will" in the Second and Third, a *command* is denoted by "shall" in the Second and Third persons, an *intention* is denoted by "will" in the First person (see § 178)

In Interrogative sentences, however, the change of situation from asserting a fact to asking a question modifies to some extent the uses of "shall" and "will" All possible meanings of "shall" and "will," when they are used interrogatively, are shown in the following examples —

Shall I
(*a*) *Shall I* be sixteen years old to morrow? (Here the "shall merely inquires after something future)
(*b*) *Shall I* post that letter for you? (Here the "shall" inquires about a command Do you command or desire me to post that letter for you?)

Will I.
(This is not used at all, because "will in the First person would imply intention, and it would be foolish to ask another person about one's own intentions)

---

[1] This use of the Future Perfect tense to denote the completion of some event in *past* time has been overlooked in previous grammars. It was suggested to me by Pt. Math Prasad Misra, a late head master of the Benares school It seems like a contradiction to make a *future* tense have reference to *past* time But the future here implies an inference regarding something which is believed to have passed rather than past time itself You will have heard' = I infer or believe that you have heard

Shall you.	*Shall you* return home to day? (This merely inquires about something future Here the "shall" cannot imply command, because it would be foolish to inquire of any one whether he commands himself to do so and so)
Will you.	*Will you* do me this favour? (Here the "will" denotes willingness or intention Are you *willing* or do you *intend* to do me this favour? Hence "will you" is the form used for asking a favour)
Shall he	*Shall he* call for the doctor? (Here the "shall" implies a command Do you desire or command him to call for the doctor?)
Will he	*Will he* be fourteen years old to morrow? (Here the "will" merely inquires about something future)

Note 1 —"Will I" might be used for the moment as an answer to "will you"

> Will you lend me your umbrella for a few minutes?
> *Answer* — *Will I?* Of course I will

Note 2 —It might be questioned whether "shall" or "will" is the more correct in the following sentences —

> (*a*) James and I *shall* be very happy to see you
> (*b*) James and I *will* be very happy to see you

The "shall" is demanded by "I," and the "will" by "James," according to the rule given in § 178 Both therefore might be used, but (*b*) is the more common of the two

All doubt could be removed by rewriting the sentences as follows —

> James *will* be very happy to see you, and so *shall* I
> I *shall* be very happy to see you, and so *will* James

(a) In each of the following sentences supply the proper tense of the verb enclosed in brackets —

1 I (be) ill for the last two days 2 I not yet (finish) the work that you gave me 3 Clive (found) the British Empire in India 4 The rain (cease) yesterday 5 He (be) ill for two days, when the doctor was sent for 6 Since the beginning of this week there (be) no break in the rains 7 I not (see) him for several days 8 Aurangzebe (do) much to make himself unpopular 9 The parrot (die) a few days ago 10 He scarcely (taste) that water, when he began to feel sick 11 The lamp suddenly went out, as if some one (turn) down the wick 12 We found the hare lying dead in the very spot where it (be) shot 13 I (live) here for the last ten years 14 The rain (begin) to fall as soon as the wind went down 15 He told me that he just (return) home for the holidays. 16 Though he was defeated at last, he (win) many victories in former days 17 He not (come) by the time when he was expected I (come) here yesterday, and (go) away to morrow 18 My son (be) ill the whole of this week 19 The doctor visited the patient, who long (be) ill 20 She no sooner (hear) the news, than she fainted 21 He would not leave the room till he (be) promised some assistance 22 I (send) notice in

December last 23 The famine of 1877 (be) very severe 24 He did not subscribe to that fund because he not (be) asked to do so 25 He still thought he would recover, though the doctors (give up) his case as hopeless 26 He (become) so proud that no one dares speak to him 27 The grass (begin) to sprout, as the rains have now set in 28 I (be) here for the last two weeks 29 He not (go) far when he began to feel faint.

(b) *Rewrite the following sentences, so as to bring out the full force of "shall" and "will"* —

1 You shall not go home until you have finished your lesson. 2 Shall I send the horse at four o'clock? 3 I will give you your pay in due course 4 Will you assist me in this matter? 5 Shall he carry your box for you? 6 An idle man shall not enter my service 7 I will not grant you a certificate 8 Will you punish me, if I leave the room without your consent? 9 By what time of the day shall I have your dinner ready? 10 He shall not ride that horse, till he has acquired a better seat

§ 2 —Further Uses of the Infinitive

380 The two main forms of the Infinitive are—(*a*) the Indefinite, "to love," and (*b*) the Perfect, "to have loved" (see § 192)

When should the one be used, and when the other?

381 The Indefinite form can be used after *any and every tense* of the preceding Finite verb In fact, the tense of the preceding verb has no effect whatever on the tense of the Infinitive following it —

	Finite verb in all tenses	*Infinitive (Indefinite)*
Present	I expect I am expecting I have expected I have been expecting	to meet you
Past	I expected I was expecting I had expected I had been expecting	to meet you
Future	I shall expect I shall be expecting I shall have expected I shall have been expecting	to meet you

382 The Perfect form is used in the following ways —

(*a*) After the *Past* tenses of verbs expressing wish, intention, hope, etc, it shows that the wish, intention, or hope *was not realised* —

He wished *to have come*, He intended *to have come*, He hoped *to have come*, He expected *to have come*,	but something prevented him from coming

Note.—If we substitute the Indefinite form of the Infinitive for the Perfect form, nothing is implied as to whether the desire, etc., was fulfilled or not:—

He wished *to come*, He intended *to come*, He hoped *to come*, He expected *to come*,	but whether he came or not is an open question

(*b*) After verbs of seeming, appearing, etc., the Perfect form shows that the event denoted by the Infinitive took place at some time previous to that denoted by the Finite verb:—

Present	He seems	to have worked hard (that is, at some previous time)
Past	He seemed	
Future	He will seem	

Note 1.—If we substitute the Indefinite form of the Infinitive for the Perfect, the tense denoted by the Infinitive verb is the same as that denoted by the Finite verb:

Present	He seems	to work hard
Past	He seemed	
Future	He will seem	

Note 2.—The Perfect form of the Infinitive is frequently used in a *past* sense after verbs of saying in the Passive voice:—

He is said *to have done* this = It is said that he *did* this.

(*c*) After Auxiliary verbs the Perfect form is used in the senses shown below:—

I (or you, or he) may have seen it	= Perhaps I saw it. I am not sure whether I did so or not.
I (or you, or he) might have seen it	= I did not see it, although I was permitted to do so.
I (or you, or he) can have seen it	(This is never used.)
I (or you, or he) could have seen it	= I did not see it, although it was possible for me to do so. (This is very nearly equivalent to "I might have seen it.")
I shall have seen it	(This is the ordinary Future Perfect tense, which, as explained in § 378, may mean either *future time* regarding some completed action, or an *inference* regarding some completed action.)
I should have seen it, if, etc.	= I did not see it, because the condition indicated by "if" was not realised.

You (or he) shall have seen it.	(This is never used.)
You (or he) should have seen it, if, etc.	(This is never used)
I will have seen it	(This is never used)
I would have seen it, if, etc	= I did not see it, but it was my *intention* to have done so, had the condition indicated by "if" been realised (This is the same as "I should have seen it, if," etc, except that the latter refers merely to future action, and does not imply any *intention* as to future action)
You (or he) will have seen it	(This is the ordinary Future Perfect tense, and is identical with "I shall have seen it," except that in the Second and Third Persons it is necessary to substitute "will" for "shall")
You (or he) would have seen it, if, etc	= You or he did not see it, because the condition indicated by "if" was not realised (This is the same as "I should have seen it, if," etc, except that in the Second and Third persons it is necessary to substitute "would" for "should")

Note —The Auxiliary "should" sometimes implies duty It makes a great difference in the sense, whether the Indefinite or the Perfect form of the Infinitive is used after it —

I should *do* this = I ought to do it (*Indef form*)
I should *have done* this = I did not do it, but I ought to have done it (*Perfect form*)

383 The Infinitive in either form is used in the following ways after the Present and Past tenses of the verbs "to have" and "to be" —

I have to go = it is necessary for me to go } *Indef form*
I had to go = it was necessary for me to go }
I had to have gone (This is never used) (*Perfect form*)

I am to go = it is settled that I shall go } *Indef form*
I was to go = it was settled that I should go }
I was to have gone = I did not go, although it was settled that I should do so (*Perfect form*)

384 The Indefinite form is used after the Subjunctive mood of the verb "to be," to denote a condition —

Conditional clause	*Consequence*
(a) If he *were to see* me	he would know me at once.
(b) If he *should see* me	
(c) If he *saw* me	

The clauses marked (a), (b), and (c) all mean the same thing, except that a greater degree of doubt is implied in (a)

385 Infinitive after Relative Adverbs—The Infinitive is placed after Relative adverbs in such phrases as "*how to write*," "*when to come*," "*where to begin*," etc

He did not know *how to write* (=the way to write)
He was not told *when to come* (=the time for coming)
I wish I knew *where to begin* (=the place for beginning)

Here the Relative adverb stands for the corresponding noun denoting manner, time, place, etc

386 Infinitive after Relative Pronouns—This occurs in such sentences as—

(a) He had no money *with which to buy* food

This is equivalent to "He had no money to buy food *with it*", or "He had no money to buy food *with*" (§ 242)

(b) He is not such a fool *as to say* that

Here the construction is elliptical "He is not such a fool as *he would be* a fool to say (=for saying, or if he said) that"

387 For to—In older English the preposition "for" was often used before the Noun Infinitive (see § 195, *d*) Hence has arisen the common idiom of inserting a noun or pronoun between the preposition and the Infinitive

There was too much noise *for any one to hear*
The railway is the quickest way *for men or goods to be conveyed* from place to place

§ 3—Reflexive Use of Transitive Verbs

388 A Transitive verb is said to be used reflexively, when the agent does something to himself In that case the object is expressed by some Reflexive pronoun, "himself," "herself," etc

He interested *himself* in my welfare

389 Omission of the Reflexive Pronoun—(*a*) Some Transitive verbs acquire an Intransitive counterpart by the omission of the Reflexive pronoun (see § 151, *b*), (*b*) others take no object other than a Reflexive pronoun, and therefore they never omit it, (*c*) others may retain or omit the Reflexive pronoun without change of meaning

(*a*) Transitive verbs which acquire an Intransitive counterpart by omitting the Reflexive pronoun —

Transitive Verb	*Intransitive Counterpart*
The fire *burnt* his finger	He *burnt* with rage
Do not *stop* me	Let us *stop* here a little
They *open* the doors at nine	School *opens* at ten o'clock
A man *breaks* stones with a hammer	The day *breaks* at six
The ox *drew* this cart	He *drew* near to me
Move away this stone	*Move* on a little faster
He *broke up* the meeting	School *broke up* at three
The mouse *steals* food	The mouse *steals* into its hole
They *bathed* the child	Let us *bathe* here
He *rolls* a ball down the hill	The ball *rolls* down the hill
He *burst* the door open	The monsoon has *burst*
Bad men *hide* their faults	Bats *hide* during the day
He *turned* me out of the room	He *turned* to me and spoke
They *drop* the boat into the water	Rain *drops* from the sky
They *keep* the boat on the left bank	The boat *keeps* on the left bank
He *sets* the school in order	The sun *sets* at six P M
He must *refrain* his tongue	He must *refrain* from tears
He *feeds* the horse on grain	Many men *feed* on rice
He *rested* his horse	The horse *rested* in the stable
He *lengthened* his journey	The days begin to *lengthen*
He *spread* his garment	The mist *spreads* over the earth
The shepherd *gathered* the sheep	The sheep *gathered* round their shepherd
The wind *dispersed* the clouds	The clouds *have dispersed* from the sky
He *closed* the business	The day *closed* at six P M
The sun *melts* the snow	The snow *melts* in the sun
He *dashed* down the cup	He *dashed* out of the room

(*b*) Transitive verbs, which never omit the Reflexive pronoun —

Avail —He availed *himself* of the offer
Betake —He betook *himself* back to his old quarters
Plume —You plume *yourself* on your handsome dress
Absent —They absented *themselves* for that day
Bethink —He bethought *himself* of an excellent plan
Pride —He prided *himself* on his success.

Note —The verb "plume," when it signifies to adjust plumes or feathers, may have some word of similar meaning as its object —

Pluming *her wings* among the breezy bowers —*Irving*

(*c*) Transitive verbs which can omit or retain the Reflexive pronoun without change of meaning —

Hide.—He hid, or hid *himself*, behind a tree
Disperse —The clouds have dispersed, or dispersed *themselves*
Dress —He dressed, or dressed *himself*, as fast as he could
Spread —The fog spread, or spread *itself*, over the field

390 Transitive Verbs compounded with Adverbs — The Reflexive pronoun is frequently omitted after Transitive verbs compounded with an adverb The verbs then become Intransitive, as in examples (*a*) of § 389

He *made off* (ran away) with the money
The horse *broke out* (rushed violently out) of the stable
He *pushed on* (hurried forward) as fast as he could.
He *held forth* (spoke in public) on the subject of reform
He *got on* (progressed) very well
He *got off* (escaped) unharmed
He had to *knock under* (submit) after all
The plan *broke down* (collapsed, failed)
Cholera has *broken out* (suddenly appeared)
He *gave in* (yielded succumbed) after a short struggle
He *turned out* (became) a prosperous merchant
He *set out* (started) at four A M
He *put up* (took up his quarters) with me
He *withdrew* (withdrew himself, retired from the meeting

391 Some verbs, when a Reflexive pronoun is added to them, acquire some distinct or special meaning which they did not possess without it The difference of meaning thus produced can be seen from the following examples —

{ He *addressed* (wrote a letter to) his friend on the subject
{ He *addressed himself* (made a formal reference) to the proper authority

{ He *associated* (kept company) with pleasant companions
{ He *associated himself* (entered into partnership) with that firm

{ He *avenged* his father's wrongs (took vengeance for his father's wrongs)
{ He *avenged himself* on his enemies (took vengeance for his own wrongs)

{ He *broke off* (discontinued) the habit, etc (*general*)
{ He *broke himself off* the habit, etc (*emphatic*)

{ An avaricious man *delights in* riches (*general*)
{ An avaricious man *delights himself with* his riches (*emphatic*)

{ A cow *feeds* on grass (*general*)
{ A cow *feeds itself* on grass (*emphatic*)

{ *Guard* against (beware of) that vice
{ *Guard yourself* (take special precautions) against that vice

{ He *indulged* too freely *in* wine (drank it too freely)
{ He *indulged himself* (gratified his appetite) too freely *with* wine

{ Do not *intrude* thus on my company (*general*)
{ Do not *intrude yourself* thus on my company (*emphatic*)

{ He *joined* (became a member of) our company
{ He *joined himself* to (associated himself with) our company
{ He *kept* (adhered) to his work (*general*)
{ He *kept himself* closely to his work (*emphatic*)
{ He *possessed* (owned) that fine estate
{ He *possessed himself* (made himself owner) of that fine estate
{ You should *provide* (be prepared) against the evil day
{ You should *provide yourself* with everything needful against the evil day
{ He *set* to work (began work) without further delay
{ He *set himself* (made a determined effort) to win a prize
{ He *settled* (made his home) in the south of England
{ He *settled himself* (placed himself) in a posture of repose
{ He *stripped off* (took off) his coat (*general*)
{ He *stripped himself of* his coat (*emphatic*)
{ I *trust in* you (believe in your integrity)
{ I *trust myself to* you (commit myself to your care)
{ He *worked* hard at that business
{ He *worked himself* up into a bad temper
{ He *rested* (took rest, or reclined) on the couch
{ He *rested himself* (recruited his limbs by reclining) on the couch
{ He *prepared* (made preparations) for the journey
{ He *prepared himself* (made himself qualified to appear) for the examination
{ He *set up* (started or made a commencement) in business
{ He *set himself up* in business (provided himself with all requisites)
{ He *engaged* in commerce (made commerce his calling)
{ He *engaged himself* to a merchant (took service with a merchant)
{ He *applied* (made an application) to his superior officer
{ He *applied himself* (gave great attention) to his studies

§ 4 —Ellipsis of Verbs or Clauses

392 It is idiomatic to omit a verb, or a clause containing the verb, when such verb or clause can be easily understood from the context

But for a complete understanding of the grammatical construction, or for analysing a sentence, it is necessary to supply the omissions

(*a*) After Auxiliary verbs —

Son, go and work in my vineyard I will not (go)

(*b*) After conjunctions expressing some standard of comparison —

He is not so industrious *as* his brother (is industrious)
His delight can be more easily conceived *than* (it can be easily) described

(*c*) After the conjunctions "though," etc, named in § 282 —

Though (he was) very tired, he did not give up.

(*d*) In answer to a question —

Can you read? Not well (=I cannot read well), but I will try (to read)

Have you seen this before? No (I have not seen it before)

(*e*) In the middle of the conditional phrases "*as if*," "*as though*," "*as when*," etc —

He laughed *as* (he would laugh) *if* he was much amused

He is not in such good health *as* (he was in good health) *when* you saw him last

(*f*) Omission of entire conditional clause —

He would never consent to that (*if you* asked him)

Supply the Ellipses in the following sentences —

1 You do not seem to have worked as hard as you might (*Two clauses*)

2 You knew this fact quite as well as I (*Two clauses*)

3 Oranges are now almost as cheap in London as in Spain or Italy (*Three clauses*)

4 I am getting on quite as fast as you (*Two clauses*)

5 He behaved with the same courtesy to the poor as to the rich, and with the same boldness to the rich as to the poor (*Four clauses*)

6 The boat sank to the bottom as if filled with stones (*Three clauses*)

7 He is more industrious than ever (*Two clauses*)

8 Whatever you do, do it as one in earnest and not as if you were trifling (*Six clauses*)

9 At what time did you get back? Ten minutes later than we ought (*Three clauses*)

10 He shed tears as if to display his grief, but they were not a genuine expression of sorrow (*Four clauses*)

11 He never looked so sad as when he had made a blunder (*Three clauses*)

12 You know no more than an untaught child how to spell (*Two clauses*)

13 Sooner than sign that contract, I am ready to give up the job altogether (*Two clauses*)

14 Nothing will do him so much good as a change of air he will get more benefit from it than he supposes (*Four clauses*)

15 I would as soon be ruined altogether as endure such treatment as this from you (*Three clauses*)

16 When he became rich, he spurned his old friends as though he had never known them (*Four clauses*)

17 It is easier for a camel to go through the eye of a needle, than for a rich man to enter into the kingdom of God (*Two clauses*)

18 Why should I do this? To make amends for past injuries (*Two clauses*)

19 I'll meet the raging of the skies, but not an angry father (*Two clauses*)

20 God made the country, man the town (*Two clauses*)

21 He warned me that peace and honesty is the best policy, as if I had never heard it before, or never acted on it (*Five clauses*)

22 What sought they thus afar? Bright jewels of the mine? The wealth of seas? The spoils of war? They sought a faith's pure shrine (*Five clauses*)

23 He shouted at the top of his voice, as if to bring some one to his assistance (*Three clauses*)

24 The transport with which he was received by his parents may be more easily understood than described (*Three clauses*)

25 I will not keep you longer than necessary (*Two clauses*)

26 He did me more harm than good (*Two clauses*)

27 Are they in as good health as when they were last here? No not quite so good, but nearly (*Five clauses*)

28 You wish for many books, but not to read them, I for few books, and to master them (*Four clauses*)

§ 5 —Sequence of Tenses

393 When two sentences are joined together by some Subordinative conjunction, or by some Relative (or Interrogative) pronoun or adverb, one of them is called the **Principal** and the other the **Dependent** sentence —

Principal	*Dependent*
I will let you know	*when* I shall start

394. There are two main rules about the Sequence of Tenses, and all special rules centre round these two

Rule I —*If there is a* **Past** *tense in the principal sentence, it must be followed by a* **Past** *tense in the dependent sentence* —

Principal Sentence (*Past Tense*)	*Dependent Sentence* (*Past Tense*)
It *was* settled,	that I *should* do this
He *would* come,	if you *wished* it
He *was* honest,	although he *was* poor
He *asked me*,	whether I *had seen* his dog
He *was* informed,	that I *had been helping* him
We never *understood*,	how or why he *did* that.
He *did* not leave off,	till he *had succeeded*
I *was inquiring*,	what you *had heard*
He *succeeded*,	because he *worked* hard
He *remained* silent,	as soon as he *heard* that
I *would* do this,	if I *were* allowed
He *walked* so far,	that he *tired* himself

Rule II —*If there is a* **Present** *or* **Future** *tense in the principal sentence, it can be followed by* **any tense whatever** *in the dependent sentence*

Examples of Rule II

Present or *Future*	that he reads a book	*Any tense whatever*
	that he is reading	The four forms of the Present tense
	that he has read	
	that he has been reading	
I know or I shall know	that he will read	The four forms of the Future tense
	that he will be reading	
	that he will have read	
	that he will have been reading	
	that he read	The four forms of the Past tense
	that he was reading	
	that he had read	
	that he had been reading	

395 Exception to Rule I.—There is one exception to Rule I. The **Past** tense in the principal sentence can be followed by a **Present Indefinite** in the dependent sentence, to express some *universal* or *habitual* fact:—

Principal Sentence (*Past Tense*.)	*Dependent Sentence* (*Present Tense*.)
They *learnt* at school,	that honesty *is* the best policy
The students *were* taught,	that the earth *moves* round the sun
His illness *showed* him,	that all men *are* mortal
He *was* glad to hear,	that his brother *is* industrious
They *were* sorry to hear,	that he *has* a bad temper

396 Conjunctions of Purpose.—When the dependent sentence is introduced by a Conjunction of *purpose* (§ 251, *d*), the two following rules must be observed:—

(*a*) If the verb in the principal sentence is in the **Present** or **Future** tense, the verb in the dependent sentence must be expressed by "may" (**Present** tense).

(*b*) If the verb in the principal sentence is in the **Past** tense, the verb in the dependent sentence must (in accordance with Rule I.) be expressed by "might" (**Past** tense).

		Principal Sentence	*Dependent Sentence*
Present	*Indef.*	He comes,	*Present tense* that he *may* see me
	Contin.	He is coming,	
	Perfect	He has come,	
	Perf. Cont.	He has been coming,	
Future	*Indef.*	He will come,	that he *may* see me
	Contin.	He will be coming,	
	Perfect	He will have come,	
	Perf. Cont.	He will have been coming,	

		Principal Sentence	Dependent Sentence
Past	*Indef*	He came,	*Past tense*
	Contin	He was coming,	that he *might*
	Perfect	He had come,	see me
	Perf Cont	He had been coming,	

Note —The word "lest" = "that not" The *only* Auxiliary verb that can be used after "lest" is *should*, whatever may be the tense of the verb in the principal sentence —

	Principal Sentence	Dependent Sentence
Present	He goes,	lest he *should* see me or that he *may* not see me
Future	He will go,	lest he *should* see me or that he *may* not see me
Past	He went,	lest he *should* see me or that he *might* not see me

397 Conjunctions of Comparison —When the dependent sentence is introduced by some Conjunction of Comparison, Rule I has no existence whatever *Any tense can be followed by any tense*

Principal Sentence	Dependent Sentence
He *likes* you better,	than he *liked* me
He *liked* you better,	than he *likes* me
He *will like* you better,	than he *has liked* me
He *has liked* you better,	than he *liked* me
He *liked* you better,	than he *is liking* me
He *will like* you better,	than he *was liking* me, etc

Note 1 —If the comparison is expressed by "as well as" instead of "than," the same rule holds good Any tense may be followed by any tense, according to the sense intended by the speaker

He *likes* you as well as he *liked* me
He *will like* you as well as he *has liked* me, etc

Note 2 —If no verb is expressed after "*than*" or after "*as well as*," the tense of the verb *understood* in the dependent sentence is the same as that of the verb *expressed* in the principal sentence

He *liked* you better than (*he liked*) me
He *will like* you as well as (*he will like*) me

(*a*) *In the following examples say whether the verb in the dependent sentence is right or not, and if it is not right, correct it* —

1 I was informed that he *had been reading* a book 2 He did not say when he *will come* 3 No one knew whether he *intended* to come or not. 4 He concealed from me what his plans *are* 5 I fear that you *were* displeased with me yesterday 6 I shall soon find out why you *were* so displeased 7 His face was so changed that I *do* not know him again 8 The teacher gave me a prize that I *may*

work hard next year 9 The teacher has given me a prize that I *may work* hard next year 10 You will be pleased to hear that I *have won* a prize 11 He asked me why I *wish* to go away so soon. 12 No one understood how he *can* do so much work 13 He had come that he *might* help me to finish the task 14 You did not tell me when you *intend* to return home 15 I was sorry to find that I *have displeased* you 16 I hope that you *will pardon* me soon. 17 I did not know why you *give* me this order 18 We shall soon know what progress he *has made* 19 We heard to day what progress he *has made* 20 You never told us that honesty *was* the best policy 21 They told me that my brother *was* fond of his books 22 He gave me good advice lest I *may* fall into evil ways 23 He taught me that good deeds *were* never lost 24 He lends me his book, that I *might* be saved the expense of buying one

(*b*) *In each of the following examples supply the proper tense and voice of the verbs enclosed in brackets* —

1 I hoped that you (return) soon 2 If you (foresee) the consequences of idleness, you (be) more industrious than you were last term 3 He tried how many miles he (can) walk in an hour 4 He (go) away for a change, as soon as the holidays begin 5 He not (go) away till the work of the term was over 6 The oxen (low) so loud, that the thieves (can) not prevent us from finding out the place where they had hidden them 7 He is so disappointed with the result that he (decide) to give up all further trial 8 I went to his house that I (see) him and tell him all that (happen) 9 It was very unlikely that he (reach) before six o clock P M 10 There was a rumour that he (perished) in the fire, which (break) out in the village yesterday 11 I am sorry that you (keep) waiting so long last night 12 I signed my name on the understanding that you (keep) your engagement with me, but I am sorry to see that you not (do) so 13 Your son has turned out more industrious than I (expect) he (will) 14 To morrow you (do) what I (do) to day, and to day you (do) what I (do) yesterday 15 We never (see) such fine batting before, and perhaps we never (see) the like again 16 Though he (gain) one prize already, he is willing to begin working for another 17 The tradesman's voice trembled so much that my suspicions (arouse) 18 I gave him no answer lest I (make) him more angry than ever 19 The more money he made, the more he (want) 20 Though he is a poor man, he never (resort) to anything dishonest 21 He came upon me as suddenly as if he (drop) from the sky 22 I hope you (make) up your mind that such a thing never (happen) again 23 It made no difference to him how we (carry) on our business, for he (be) not one of our partners, and we (will) not take him into partnership, if he (ask) us 24 He told me that he lately (pay) a visit to his native village 25 They placed a guard at the door, lest the prisoner (find) means of escape, for he (has) friends outside, who (bring) him secret help, if they not (watch) 26 I shall not be satisfied, till I (gain) what I (want) 27 A lawsuit, even if you (gain) it, (cost) you more than the property is worth 28 It (make) no difference to me, whether you complain against me or not

CHAPTER XVII.—ADVERBS

§ 1.—SPECIAL USES OF SIMPLE ADVERBS

398. Much, very.

(*a*) "Much" qualifies adjectives or adverbs in the *Comparative* degree; "very" in the *Positive*:—

The air is *much* hotter to-day than yesterday.
We travelled quickly, but not *very* cheaply.

(*b*) "Much" qualifies *Past* participles; "very" *Present* ones:—

I was *much* surprised at hearing the news.
This news is *very* perplexing.

(*c*) "Very" is sometimes an adjective, used in the sense of *true*, *actual*, or for the sake of emphasis:—

This is the *very* man that I wanted to see.
He came at that *very* instant.

(*d*) "Very," in the sense of "actual" or "real," is used to give emphasis to adjectives in the Superlative degree:—

He is the *very* best student in the class.

(*e*) "Very" as an adverb is often used to qualify the adverb "much":—

His work is *very* much better than yours.

(*f*) "Much" is used to intensify the Superlative degrees of adjectives:—

He is *much* (=very decidedly, to a very marked degree) the best student in the class.

Insert "much" or "very" in the places left blank:—

1. I am —— astonished at what you tell me.
2. He explained his meaning —— clearly.
3. Of these houses yours is —— the largest.
4. Of all these houses yours is the —— largest.
5. He is a —— industrious student.
6. He has worked —— harder than you have done.
7. You are —— more industrious than you were last year.
8. I am —— happy at hearing this good news.
9. He was taken —— ill on the —— day of his arrival.
10. They found gold in Southern India, and the workmen were —— pleased.
11. The —— thing that you ask for is what all men would be —— glad to have.
12. It is —— strange that you should be so —— surprised.
13. The accounts from home are —— distressing.

399 Too

The adverb "too" denotes some kind of *excess* It means "*more than enough*," something *that goes beyond* the contemplated limit or purpose All such sentences as the following, where "too" has been wrongly written for "very," make sheer nonsense —

My son's progress has been *too* great Sugar is *too* sweet I am *too* happy to see you again He writes *too* neatly, and spells *too* accurately The milk of a cow is *too* nutritious The water of this river is *too* pure The roof of this house is *too* strong

Note —The force of "too" can be expressed by the suffix "over" —

He died of *over* exposure (*too* much exposure) to the sun
He *over* ate himself = He ate *too* much

400 Enough

The meaning of "enough" is the opposite to that of "too" "Enough" signifies that the *proper limit or amount has been reached* but "too" means "more than enough,"—that is, that the proper limit has been exceeded

Whenever "enough" is used as an Adverb, it is placed *after* the word that it qualifies

The air to day is *cold enough* for me (= is as cold as I wish it to be)
Your pay is *high enough* for your work (= is as high as it should be for your work)
The horses are tired we have ridden *far enough* to day (= as far as is proper for our horses)
He is now *strong enough* to leave his bed (= as strong as he should be for leaving his bed)

Note 1 —"Enough," besides being an Adverb of Quantity, can be also an Adjective of Quantity or an Adjective of Number (see § 96)

Note 2 – The adverb "enough," though it usually means "*sufficiently*," is sometimes a weak form of "*very*

It is distressing *enough* (= very distressing) to get such evil tidings

401 Little, a little

There is the same difference between these two adverbs, as between the corresponding adjectives (see § 343)

(*a*) "**Little**" is used in a *Negative* sense, and means "*not much*", in fact it is a weak form of "*not*," and is almost purely Negative —

I *little* expected that he would succeed so well
(I did *not* expect that he would succeed so well)

(*b*) "**A little**" is always used in an *Affirmative* sense, and means "*to some extent at least*," "*slightly*," "*somewhat*" —

He was *a little* (=slightly, somewhat) tired
Are you tired? Yes, I am *a little* tired

Note —The adverb "a little" has come into use from the habitual omission of some noun that is understood after the adjective "little" Hence "a little" is an adverbial phrase rather than a pure adverb In the adverbial phrase "a great deal" the noun has been retained, while in the corresponding adverbial phrase "a little" the noun has been dropped

402 Since

This word is sometimes an Adverb of Time, sometimes a Conjunction of Time, and sometimes a Preposition of Time

The proper use of this word is to Indian students one of the greatest puzzles in the English language, but no difficulty will exist if the following rules are attended to —

(*a*) As an **Adverb** it signifies *from now*,—that is, *from the present time dating backwards*, and its use is limited by three conditions —(1) it stands *after* the word or words which it qualifies, (2) it is preceded by a verb in the *Past Indefinite* tense, (3) it is placed after a noun or phrase denoting some *period* of time, never after a noun denoting a *point* of time —

The school *broke up* a fortnight since (=from now)

Erroneous	*Corrected*
My house *has fallen* two weeks since or ago	My house *fell* two weeks since or ago
The trees *have cast* their leaves a month since or ago	The trees *cast* their leaves a month since or ago
He has returned home *yesterday since*	He has returned home *since yesterday*
They have left school *last Monday since*	They have left school *since Monday last*

(*b*) As a **Conjunction** it signifies *from which time*, and its use is limited by three conditions —(1) it is followed by a verb in the *Past Indefinite* tense, (2) it is preceded by a verb in the *Present Indefinite* or *Present Perfect* tense, (3) it is preceded by a noun or phrase denoting some

399 Too

The adverb "too" denotes some kind of *excess* It means "*more than enough*," something *that goes beyond* the contemplated limit or purpose All such sentences as the following, where "too" has been wrongly written for "very," make sheer nonsense —

My son's progress has been *too* great Sugar is *too* sweet I am *too* happy to see you again He writes *too* neatly, and spells *too* accurately The milk of a cow is *too* nutritious The water of this river is *too* pure The roof of this house is *too* strong

Note —The force of "too" can be expressed by the suffix "over" —

He died of *over* exposure (*too* much exposure) to the sun
He *over* ate himself = He ate *too* much

400 Enough

The meaning of "enough" is the opposite to that of "too" "Enough" signifies that the *proper limit or amount has been reached*, but "too" means "more than enough,"—that is, that the proper limit has been exceeded

Whenever "enough" is used as an Adverb, it is placed *after* the word that it qualifies

The air to day is *cold enough* for me (= is as cold as I wish it to be)
Your pay is *high enough* for your work (= is as high as it should be for your work)
The horses are tired we have ridden *far enough* to day (= as far as is proper for our horses)
He is now *strong enough* to leave his bed (= as strong as he should be for leaving his bed)

Note 1 —"Enough," besides being an Adverb of Quantity, can be also an Adjective of Quantity or an Adjective of Number (see § 96)

Note 2 —The adverb "enough, though it usually means "*sufficiently*," is sometimes a weak form of "*very*

It is distressing *enough* (= very distressing) to get such evil tidings

401 Little, a little

There is the same difference between these two adverbs, as between the corresponding adjectives (see § 343)

(*a*) "**Little**" is used in a *Negative* sense, and means "*not much*", in fact it is a weak form of "*not*," and is almost purely Negative —

I *little* expected that he would succeed so well
(I did *not* expect that he would succeed so well)

(*b*) "**A little**" is always used in an *Affirmative* sense, and means "*to some extent at least*," "*slightly*," "*somewhat*" —

He was *a little* (=slightly, somewhat) tired
Are you tired? Yes, I am *a little* tired

Note —The adverb "a little" has come into use from the habitual omission of some noun that is understood after the adjective "little" Hence "a little" is an adverbial phrase rather than a pure adverb In the adverbial phrase "a great deal" the noun has been retained, while in the corresponding adverbial phrase "a little" the noun has been dropped

402 Since

This word is sometimes an Adverb of Time, sometimes a Conjunction of Time, and sometimes a Preposition of Time

The proper use of this word is to Indian students one of the greatest puzzles in the English language, but no difficulty will exist if the following rules are attended to —

(*a*) As an **Adverb** it signifies *from now*,—that is, *from the present time dating backwards*, and its use is limited by three conditions —(1) it stands *after* the word or words which it qualifies, (2) it is preceded by a verb in the *Past Indefinite* tense, (3) it is placed after a noun or phrase denoting some *period* of time, never after a noun denoting a *point* of time —

The school *broke up* a fortnight since (=from now)

Erroneous	*Corrected*
My house *has fallen* two weeks since or ago	My house *fell* two weeks since or ago
The trees *have cast* their leaves a month since or ago	The trees *cast* their leaves a month since or ago
He has returned home *yesterday since*	He has returned home *since yesterday*
They have left school *last Monday since*	They have left school *since Monday last*

(*b*) As a **Conjunction** it signifies *from which time*, and its use is limited by three conditions —(1) it is followed by a verb in the *Past Indefinite* tense, (2) it is preceded by a verb in the *Present Indefinite* or *Present Perfect* tense, (3) it is preceded by a noun or phrase denoting some

period of time, never by a noun denoting a *point* of time —

It *is* now a week since the school *broke up*

Erroneous	*Corrected*
Two years *passed* since my father died	Two years *have passed* since my father died
It *was* a week since the holidays commenced	It *is* a week since the holidays commenced
A month has passed since I *am coming* here	A month has passed since I *came* here
Two hours have elapsed since he *had fallen* asleep	Two hours have elapsed since he *fell* asleep

(*c*) As a **Preposition** it signifies *from*, and its use is limited by two conditions —(1) it is placed before a noun or phrase denoting some *point* of time, never before a noun or phrase denoting a *period* of time, (2) it is preceded by a verb in the *Perfect* tense —

The school *has broken up since* last Monday

Erroneous	*Corrected*
My father *died* since last Thursday	My father *has been dead* since last Thursday
The school *broke up* since yesterday	The school *has broken up* since yesterday
My father has been ill *since three weeks*	My father has been ill *for the last three weeks*
The results have been known *since two days*	The results have been known *for the last two days*

403 Ago

This is used only as an Adverb of Time, never as a Conjunction or Preposition Its use as an adverb coincides exactly with that of "since," as explained above under (*a*), and it signifies (as "since" also does) *from the present time dating backwards* The two words are precisely synonymous —

My father *died* two years ago (= from now)
The school *broke up* a fortnight ago (= from now)

404 Before

This word is used sometimes as an Adverb of Time, sometimes as a Conjunction of Time, and sometimes as a Preposition of Time

(*a*) As an **Adverb** of Time it signifies *formerly*, or *on a former occasion* —

> I did this once *before*, and I will do it again
> The post has come an hour earlier than *before*.
> I never *before* saw such a dreadful sight

(*b*) As a **Conjunction** of Time it is followed by a verb in some Present tense, if the verb in the Principal clause is in the future tense —

> The crops will die, before the rains *fall* or *have fallen*

(*c*) As a **Preposition** of Time it is always used with some noun or phrase denoting a *point* of time, and never with one denoting a *period* of time —

> The rains began to fall *before the first* of last month
> You will win a prize *before your next birthday*

405 Already

This adverb denotes that something has happened *prior to the time mentioned or thought of* It is never correctly used in any other sense —

> Light the fire It is lighted *already*
> Joseph's brethren went down into Egypt, Joseph himself was there *already*
> Does he seem to be recovering? He has almost recovered *already*
> He was now nearly grown up, for he had *already* passed his twentieth birthday
> Before this letter reaches you, you will have *already* reached home

406 Yes, No

Mistakes are often made by Indian students in the use of "yes" or "no" in answering a question

If the question is *affirmative* there is less fear of ambiguity in the answer —

> *Question* —Is the sky cloudy to day?
> *Answer* —Yes, it is, *or* No, it is not.

But if the question is put in a *Negative* form, the answer given is often ambiguous —

> Did you *not* find him at home?

The answer sometimes given is—

> *Yes*, I did *not* find him at home

This is wrong, and the proper answer would be—

Yes, I *did* find him at home, or *No*, I did *not* find him at home

Two rules, then, should be remembered —

(1) If the answer to be given is "yes," the verb following must be in the *affirmative*

(2) If the answer to be given is "no," the verb following must be in the *negative*

Note —Whenever the questioner wishes it to be understood that he expects the answer "*yes*" he uses "*not*" with the verb in asking the question —

Is *not* India a hot country?

The question thus expressed with "*not*" implies that in the opinion of the questioner India *is* a hot country, and that he expects the other person to agree with him and say—

Yes, India certainly *is* a hot country

407 Again

The uses and meanings of this adverb can be seen from the following examples —

(1) I hope you will never come here *again* (=a second time)
(2) When he was reviled, he reviled not *again* (=in return)
(3) Prick me Bullcalf till he roar *again* (=repeatedly)
(4) As you have broken my pencil, perhaps you will mend it *again* (mend it so as to restore it to what it was before it was broken)
(5) *Again* (=moreover), even if we were allowed to go, it is now too late to start
(6) My eldest son is fond of languages, the second *again* (=on the other hand) prefers science
(7) Start for a fresh term at college, and send me news *again* (=back) of your safe arrival
(8) This book is as hard *again* (=repeated) as that (=this book is *twice as hard* as that)

408 There

This adverb usually signifies "in that place" But it frequently stands as the first word in a sentence, where it has merely an *introductory* value, and has no signification of place (see § 29)

It should be used in the introductory sense, when the verb is Intransitive, and is followed (instead of being preceded) by its subject —

There were four persons present.
There came a messenger from the king's court

409 Why

This is usually an Interrogative adverb But it is also used colloquially as an expletive to denote slight impatience, surprise, hesitation, etc

Why, what a foolish question ! (*Impatience*)
What are you doing here ? *Why*, I can hardly say (*Hesitation.*)

410 Indeed

This adverb has three main senses or uses —

(1) In the sense of "certainly" —
That was *indeed* (certainly) a very serious blunder

(2) In an Interjectional sense —
Indeed ! I cannot agree with you on that point

(3) In the sense of admission or concession —
He is clever *indeed* in books, but a fool in practice

411 Quite

This adverb means "*perfectly*," "*completely*", but in India it is often wrongly used as equivalent to "*very*"

Thus it is wrong to say —"This bridge is *quite* dangerous", "Bad water is *quite* unwholesome"

Note.—'Quite,' however, is sometimes used with Past Participles in the sense of "very", as "quite delighted," "quite tired"

412 Once

This adverb is ambiguous (*a*) it sometimes means "*on one single occasion*," and (*b*) sometimes "*formerly*," "*at some time in the past*"

(*a*) If he *once* begins, he is sure to go on well
(*b*) There was *once* (formerly, in some past time) a grievous famine in the land

§ 2 —Adverbial Phrases in Common Use.

413 The use of the following adverbial phrases should be noted,—

(1) **Above all**, before every other consideration —
Above all (before anything else) beware of idleness

(2) **Above board**, without any secret or underhand scheming —
Everything that he did was open and *above board*.

(3) **After all**, in spite of every fact or appearance to the contrary —

He died *after all* (that is, notwithstanding the fact that he seemed at times likely to recover)

After all, it does not matter to us whether we win or not (that is, it seemed to make a great difference, but if we look into the subject more closely, we find that it does not matter)

(4) **Again and again, over and over again, time and again** —These phrases denote frequent repetition, and signify a great deal more than "*again*" standing by itself —

I shall have to mention this *again and again*,
(that is, very often, and not merely once again)

(5) **As it were** —This is an adverbial *clause* rather than an adverbial *phrase*, since it contains a Finite verb It is introduced for the purpose of making some sort of apology for using a word in an unusual sense or an unusual connection —

A good teacher is *as it were* (=if I may be allowed to say so) the intellectual father of his pupils

(6) **As yet, yet** up to the present time —The addition of "as" is not necessary, and should be avoided —

I have never failed *yet* or *as yet* (that is I have never failed, so far as relates to past time, but not future)

(7) **At all** —This is used only to emphasise a negation —

Did you see any cows in that field? None *at all*
He never laughed *at all*

(8) **At once** — This phrase sometimes means "*immediately*," and sometimes "*simultaneously*" —

He came *at once* (immediately)
They all came *at once* (simultaneously)

Note —Here "*once*" stands for a noun "one time," and is the object to the preposition "at" (see § 241, *a*)

(9) **At present, presently** —These words mean very different things but in India they are apt to be confounded "Presently" means the same as "shortly" —

Nothing more can be done *at present*, or *for the present* (at the present time)

I will return *presently* or *shortly* (after a short time)

(10) **Before long**, in a short time —

He will return to us *before long* (before a long time has passed)

(11) **By and by** —This signifies "*after an interval*"

whether the interval is a long or a short one, is either left open, or depends on the context —

You will feel better *by and by* (after a time)

By and by (some time afterwards) the teacher came into the room

It is therefore wrong to use it (as is often done in India) in the sense of "*little by little*," or "*gradually*," or "*one by one*"

Erroneous	*Corrected*
The visitors went away *by and by*	The visitors went away *one by one*
He recovered his health *by and by*	He *gradually* recovered his health
The water all flowed out *by and by*	The water all flowed out *little by little*

(12) **By the by** —This means "*incidentally*," or "*in passing*" —

By the by (=let me remark in passing), I heard yesterday that there was a violent storm of wind at Calcutta two days ago

(13) **Far and away, out and out**, very decidedly, beyond all comparison These phrases give emphasis to an adjective in the Superlative degree —

This boy is *far and away*, or *out and out* (very decidedly), the cleverest boy in the class

(14) **Far and near**, in all directions "**Far and wide**" is sometimes used in the same sense —

He sought for his missing friends *far and near*

(15) **First and foremost** —This is a more emphatic way of expressing "first" "First" and "foremost" mean the same thing the emphasis is produced by repeating the same thing twice —

First and foremost (before anything else), let me caution you against idleness

(16) **For long** —This means for a long time It is generally used in reference to *future* time, but sometimes also to past —

He was imprisoned *for long*

Men are not remembered *for long*

(17) **In time** —This sometimes means "*by the proper time*," and sometimes "*eventually*," or "at some time or other" —

He was not there *in time* (by the proper time)

A thief is certain to be caught *in time* (eventually)

(18) **In the long run, sooner or later**, eventually —

A knave will be caught *in the long run*, or *sooner or later*

(19) **Now and then, every now and then**, occasionally, at odd moments —

I hear from him *now and then*, or *every now and then*

Note —These two phrases mean the same thing—"occasionally" In the latter phrase, "every" is a Distributive adjective, and the Compound adverb "now and then" is used as a noun to the adjective "every"

(20) **Of course** —This signifies *in the course of nature*, or *by natural consequence*, and is introduced as a sort of apology for saying something that must necessarily be true, and was therefore scarcely worth mentioning —

My son was plucked, and of course (=as a matter of necessity) he was very much vexed

But in India the custom has sprung up of using this phrase loosely in the sense of certainty in general, whether the fact asserted is necessarily true or not

Erroneous	*Corrected*
I shall *of course* come here to morrow	I shall *certainly* come here to morrow
Of course she sings very well	She *certainly* sings very well
Did he win a prize last year? *Of course* he did	Did he win a prize last term? *Certainly* he did

(21) **Off and on**, irregularly —

He has been learning English *off and on* (not steadily) for some time past

The opposite to this phrase is **on and on**, which means "regularly," "steadily," "without interruption"

He worked *on and on* for seven years running

(22) **On** compounded with verbs —

He *lived on* (continued living) several years more
He *walked on* (continued walking) for another hour

When the adverb "on" is compounded with a verb, it denotes the continuance of the action expressed by the verb

(23) **On high**, in an elevated place —Sometimes this phrase is used as an object to a preposition, and is preceded by the preposition "from" See § 241 (*b*)

The dayspring from *on high* (heaven) hath visited us —*New Testament*

(24) **On the alert**, in a state of watchfulness or activity —

He was always *on the alert*, whenever the teacher came into the room

(25) **On the contrary, to the contrary** —These phrases

are not identical in meaning, as may be seen from the following examples —

I do not admire that man *on the contrary* (far from admiring him) I have a great contempt for him

I have nothing to say *to the contrary* (I have nothing to say against what you or some one else has said)

(26) **On the defensive**, in an attitude of defence as opposed to one of attack —

He acted *on the defensive*, and did not attempt to attack

(27) **Once again, once more, over again** —These phrases all mean the same thing, and denote that something is repeated only once, and not twice or more than twice —

I shall have to mention this *once again* (=on one other occasion)

(28) **Once and again, now and again** —The first means "*repeatedly*," once and more than once The second means "*occasionally*" —

Once and again the parrot said, "Come in"
Now and again the parrot bit the wire of its cage

(29) **Once for all** —This means that a thing is done once, and will never be repeated —

I tell you *once for all* that this noise must cease

They settled the matter *once for all*, and the question was not reopened

(30) **Over and above** —This is sometimes used as a preposition, and sometimes as an adverb —

Prep —*Over and above* (in addition to) what I have lost, I have been unjustly blamed

Adv —He was injured, and insulted *over and above*

(31) **Previous, previously** —The adjective "previous" has somehow or other come to be used adverbially —

The ground must be well dug *previous* or *previously* to the sowing of the seed

(32) **Through and through** —As the phrase "*again and again*" denotes frequency of repetition, so the phrase "*through and through*" denotes thoroughness and completeness of accomplishment —

He was drenched *through and through* (to the very skin)

He was pierced *through and through* (so that the spear came out at the opposite side of his body)

He read that book *through and through* (every word of it from beginning to end)

(33) **To and fro**, backwards and forwards:—

He walked *to and fro*, trying to make up his mind what to do.

(34) **To-morrow, on the morrow.**—The first means "on the day following *this* day." The second means "on the day following *that* day":—

We will start *to-morrow* (the day after *this* day).
They started *on the morrow* (the day following *that* day, namely, the day last mentioned in the narrative).

(35) **What not.**—When this phrase is used, it stands after a string of nouns or verbs, and denotes that many more might be added, but there is no need to mention them:—

Steam propels, lowers, elevates, pumps, drains, pulls, and what not (what does it not do?).
Persians, Copts, Tartars, Medes, Syrians, and what not (=and several more whom I need not name), were brought under the dominion of Alexander the Great.

§ 3.—Adverbs qualifying Prepositions.

414. It has been shown in § 222 that a preposition (or the phrase introduced by a preposition) can be qualified by adverbs. Examples of such adverbs are shown below:—

A little.

We have gone *a little beyond* a mile.
The crow flew *a little above* his head.
He is *a little under* fourteen years of age.

Almost.

A sword was hanging *almost over* his head.
It fell *almost on* his head.

Along.

He went to London *along with* his friend.
It was *all along of* (entirely owing to) your idleness that you were plucked. (Here the adverb "all" qualifies the prepositional phrase "along of." The phrase is colloquial.)

All.

His horse sprang forward *all of* a sudden.
I have looked *all through* that book.
Your efforts were *all to* no purpose.
Such conduct is *all of* a piece (thoroughly consistent) with his character.

Altogether.

He married *altogether below* his station.

Apart.

Apart from his imprudence (without taking his imprudence into account), he has been very unfortunate.

Away

He is never happy, *away from* home

Close

He is *close upon* fourteen years (very nearly fourteen) years of age.
He came and sat *close beside* me

Decidedly

Your son's industry is *decidedly above* the average

Distinctly

His abilities are *distinctly above* the average

Down

They lived *down in* a valley
They made him pay *down* his debt *to* the last farthing

Entirely

It was *entirely through* your neglect that we were late
He took his hat *entirely off* his head

Exactly

The house stands *exactly on* the top of the hill
Every word was copied out *exactly to* the letter
Your quarters are *exactly under* mine

Far

Your work is *far below* the proper mark
My house stands *far beyond* the river
Far from despising that man, I greatly respect him

Greatly

Greatly to his credit, he came out first

Hard

The cottage stood *hard by* the river

Half

By this time we had sailed *half across* the Atlantic

Immediately.

He went to bed *immediately after* his arrival
Immediately on his beginning to speak, every one was silent.

Long

He arrived *long after* twelve o'clock

Much

His work is *much below* the mark
Much to his surprise he was plucked

Out.

That was all done *out of* envy
I am *out of* patience with that man.

Partly

He wept *partly through* sorrow, and *partly through* anger.
The fog is *partly above* and *partly below* us

Precisely

It was *precisely on* that point that we differed
He arrived *precisely at* four o'clock

Quite

We walked *quite through* that forest (through its entire breadth)
He held his head *quite below* the water
I am *quite of* the same opinion as yourself

Right

He was leaning *right against* the wall
The sun was *right above* our heads

Shortly

He reached home *shortly before* four o'clock

Soon

I managed to get back *soon after* six

Up

Your work is not *up to* date

Well

I am sure I am *well within* the mark

CHAPTER XVIII—PREPOSITIONS AND PREPOSITIONAL PHRASES

§ 1—Relations denoted by Prepositions

415 A preposition (as it has been defined in § 10) shows "the relation in which the person or thing denoted by its object stands to something else" The relations denoted by the different prepositions may be summed up as follows —

(1) **About** (on + by + out) nearness of some kind —

1	He had a comforter *about* his neck	*Nearness of place*
2	It is *about* seven o clock	*Nearness of time*
3	He is *about* to be married	*Nearness of state*
4	He went *about* his work in earnest	*Occupation*
5	I am fond of hearing *about* ships	*Concerning*

(2) **Above** (on + by + up) in a higher position —

1	A sword was hanging *above* his head	*Higher than, over*
2	His expenses are *above* his means	*More than*
3	He is *above* such meanness	*Superior to*

(3) **Across** (on + cross, cross-wise) from one side to the opposite —

1	My house is *across* the river	*On the opposite side of*
2	He laid the bundle *across* his shoulder	*On both sides of*
3.	The light fell *across* the street,	*From one side to the other.*

(4) **After** (of + ter, comparative of "of") sequence —

1	I will enter *after* you	*Sequence in place*
2	He arrived *after* dark	*Sequence in time*
3	*After* all I have heard I am convinced	*Sequence as effect*
4	He is always seeking *after* wealth	*Search or pursuit*
5	He takes *after* his father	*Resemblance*
6	*After* all the advice I gave, he adopted a contrary course	*Notwithstanding, contrast*

(5) **Against** (on + going) opposition of some kind —

1	He is leaning *against* a wall	*Opposition of place*
2	He is acting *against* his own interests	*Opposition of aim*
3	Store up your grain *against* famine	*Provision for*
4	Four students have passed this year *against* three last year	*Comparison*

(6) **Along** (on + long, lengthwise) —

The line went *along* the highway He walked *along* the river's bank	*In the same line with anything contrary to "across"*

(7) **Amid, amidst** (on + middle) —

He was brave *amidst* all dangers	*In the midst of*

(8) **Among, amongst** (on + gemang, in a multitude) —

Distribute the books *among* the students He is fond of rambling *among* the trees	*In the midst of more than two*

(9) **Around** or **round** (on + round) —

To draw a circle *round* a given centre They stood *around* him while he spoke	*Contrary to "amidst"*

(10) **At** proximity with actual or intended contact —

1	He is not *at* home just now	*Proximity in place*
2	He was there *at* four o'clock	*Proximity in time*
3	He is now quite *at* his ease	*Proximity in state*
4	Stand up *at* the word of command	*Proximity in effect*
5	*At* what price is this sold?	*Proximity in value*
6	He frowned *at* me for laughing *at* him	*Proximity in aim*
7	He was busily *at* work all day	*Proximity in occupation*

(11) **Athwart** (on + thwart) from one side to the other —

The shadow ran *athwart* the grass	*Across.*

(12) **Before** (by + fore) the contrary to "behind" —

1 He stands *before* the door	*In front of*
2 The train starts *before* ten o'clock	*Priority in time*
3 Death *before* dishonour	*Priority of choice*

(13) **Behind** (by + hind) the contrary to "before" —

1 The dog ran *behind* its master	*At the back of*
2 The train is *behind* its time	*Lateness in time*
3 There is a smile *behind* his frown	*Concealment*

(14) **Below** (by + low) at a lower point or degree —

1 He stood *below* me in class	*Lower than*
2 The number was *below* ten	*Less than*
3 His attainments are *below* yours	*Inferior to*

(15) **Beneath** (by + neath) in a lower position —

1 Let us rest *beneath* the shade	*Under*
2 His conduct is *beneath* contempt	*Inferiority*

(16) **Beside** (by + side) by the side of —

1 He is standing *beside* his mother	*By the side of*
2 That remark is *beside* the question	*Irrelevancy*

(17) **Besides** in addition to —

Besides advising, he gave them money	*In addition to*

(18) **Between** (by + twain) in the middle of *two* —

How long halt ye *between* two opinions?

(19) **Beyond** (by + yonder) or **past** on the farther side of —

1 My house is *beyond* or *past* those hills	*Place*
2 It is now half *past* two o'clock	*Time*
3 This is *past* or *beyond* endurance	*State*

(20) **But** (by + out) except —

All *but* one were drowned He was all *but* (everything except) ruined	*Exception or exclusion*

(21) **By** nearness of some kind —

1 Come and sit *by* me	*Nearness in place*
2 Always get up *by* sunrise	*Nearness in time*
3 He was fairly treated *by* me	*Agency*
4 Seize him *by* the neck	*Manner, means, or instrument*
5 He is cleverer than you *by* a good deal	*Amount, measure,*
6 He swore *by* heaven	*Adjuration*

(22) **Down** descent of some kind —

1 The monkey ran *down* the tree	*Descent*

(23) **For** in front of, or in the place of —

1	He will soon start *for* home	*Direction in space*
2	He was imprisoned *for* life	*Direction in time.*
3	*For* what offence was he imprisoned?	*Cause or reason*
4	*For* all his learning, he has no sense	*In spite of*
5	He sold his horse *for* a small sum	*Exchange*
6	He fought hard *for* his friends	*On behalf of*
7	Do not translate word *for* word	*Conformity*
8	This stuff is not fit *for* food	*Purpose*

(24) **From** motion or rest apart from anything —

1	He had gone *from* home	*Space*
2	You must begin *from* daybreak	*Time*
3	He is sprung *from* noble ancestors	*Source*
4	*From* all we hear he is mad	*Inference*
5	This was all done *from* spite	*Motive*
6	A fool may easily be known *from* a wise man	*Discrimination*

(25) **In** rest in the interior of anything —

1	He is not *in* the house	*Space*
2	Expect me *in* (at the end of) a few days	*Time*
3	He is *in* a bad temper	*State, manner*
4	We found a true friend *in* him	*Point of reference*

(26) **Into** motion towards the interior of anything —

1	One stream flows *into* another	*Space*
2	He slept late *into* the day	*Time*
3	Water is changed *into* steam by heat	*State*

(27) **Of** (sometimes *off*) proceeding from, and hence pertaining to —

1	What did he die *of*?	*Cause*
2	*Of* what family is he sprung?	*Source*
3	He was despised and rejected *of* men	*Agency* (rare)
4	He was deprived *of* his appointment	*Separation*
5	He is a man *of* strong will	*Quality*
6	He sent me a box *of* books	*Contents*
7	This box is made *of* leather	*Material*
8	He lived in the house *of* his father	*Possession*
9	He received the sum *of* 100 rupees	*Apposition.*
10	What are you thinking *of*?	*Concerning*
11	The horse is lame *of* one leg	*Point of reference*
12	Do not tear the page *of* that book	*Partition*
13	The love *of* parents (parents' love for child)	*Subject.*
14	The love *of* parents (child's love for parents)	*Object*
15	He used to come here *of* an evening	*Time*

(28) **Off** separation at a near distance —

Ceylon is an island *off* the south of India
He fell *off* his horse. He was taken *off* his guard.

(29) **On** or **upon** rest on the upper surface of a thing —

1	I place my hand *on* the table	*Point of space*
2	I came here *on* Saturday last	*Point of time*
3	He lives on his father	*Dependence*
4	He was appointed *on* these terms	*Condition or basis*
5	They made an attack *on* my house	*Direction*
6	He spoke for an hour *on* that subject	*Concerning*

(30) **Out of** motion from the interior of a thing —

1	The mouse jumped *out of* its hole	*Place*
2	I paid it *out of* my own pocket	*Source*
3	He said that *out of* ill temper	*Motive*
4	He is *out of* his mind	*Exclusion*

(31) **Over** (comparative of "of") above or beyond anything —

1	The sun shines *over* the earth	*Above in space*
2	He was absent *over* two weeks	*Beyond in time*
3	His house is *over* the way	*On the other side of*
4	He is placed *over* me	*Authority*
5	He has been promoted *over* my head	*Precedence*

(32) **Since** from some *point* of *past* time (not from a period of time) see § 102 (*c*) —

It has not rained *since* Thursday last

(33) **Than** comparison or difference —

1	I will not take less *than* ten rupees	*Comparison*
2	No person other *than* a graduate will be fit	*Difference*

(34) **Through** across the interior of anything —

1	Bore a hole *through* that plank	*Place*
2	He worked hard *through* or *through-out* the summer	*Time*
3	He has passed *through* many troubles	*State*
4	*Through* your help I may succeed	*Cause*
5	All this was done *through* envy	*Motive*

(35) **To** motion towards anything —

1	He has returned *to* his father's house	*Place*
2	You must go back *to* night	*Time*
3	*To* all appearances he is tired	*Adaptation*
4	The chances are three *to* one	*Proportion*
5	They fought *to* the last man	*Limit*
6	*To* their utter disgust they failed	*Effect*
7	They will come *to* dinner / He came *to* see us	*Purpose*

(36) **Towards** —

1	He is coming *towards* the house	*Nearness of approach*
2	It is now *towards* evening	*Nearness of time*
3.	He was very kind *towards* his neighbour	*Behaviour*
4	He gave nothing *towards* that object	*In aid of*

(37) **Under** rest or motion in a lower place —

1	The house is *under* repairs	*Subjection*
2	It will not be finished *under* ten days	*Less than*
3	He travelled *under* the guise of a monk	*Concealment*

(38) **Up** rest or motion to a higher place —

1	The monkey ran *up* the tree	*Motion*
2	The monkey is seated *up* the tree	*Rest*

(39) **With** —

1	He arrived *with* all his luggage	*Union in place*
2	Frogs begin to croak *with* the rainfall	*Union in time*
3	His views do not accord *with* mine	*Agreement*
4	One king fought *with* another	*Opposition*
5	I parted *with* my friend yesterday	*Separation*
6	He is not popular *with* his pupils	*Point of reference*
7	*With* all his wealth he is in debt	*In spite of*
8	He killed the kite *with* a stone	*Instrument*
9	He looked upon them *with* anger	*Manner*
10	He has long been sick *with* fever	*Cause*

(40) **Within** inside the limits of anything —

1	He always slept *within* doors	*Space*
2	You must be back *within* an hour	*Time*
3	This is not *within* my power	*Circumstance*

(41) **Without** on the outside of anything —

1	He came *without* any money	*Opposite to "with"*
2	He stood *without* the gate	*Opposite to "within"*

416 Prepositional Phrases —The following examples show how the principal prepositional phrases are used Every such phrase ends in a Simple preposition (§ 30, *b*)

As to —I will inquire again *as to* what your reasons are

At home in —He is quite *at home in* (familiar with) Euclid

At the top of —He shouted *at the top of* his voice (as loud as he could)

At enmity with —The Jews were *at enmity with* (enemies to) the Samaritans

At variance with —Your words are *at variance with* (opposed to) the facts

Because of —He could not leave the house *because of* a snowstorm.

By dint of.—He gained the first prize *by dint of* steady application.
By force of.—Most things can be made easy *by force of* habit.
By means of.—He recovered his health *by means of* sea air and sea bathing.
By the side of.—The dog was sleeping *by the side of* (beside) its master.
By virtue of.—They won the day, but only *by virtue of* hard fighting.
By way of.—I mention this point *by way of* cautioning you.
For fear of.—He took an umbrella *for fear of* being caught in rain.
For the purpose of.—He bought the land *for the purpose of* building on it.
For the sake of.—*For the sake of* settling the matter they agreed to a compromise.
For want of.—The crops failed *for want of* seasonable rain.
In accordance with.—Your actions are not *in accordance with* common sense.
In or on behalf of.—This request is made to you *on behalf of* my son.
In case of.—I have kept a reserve fund *in case of* accidents.
In common with.—You deserve to be blamed *in common with* the rest.
In connection with.—Tell me all you know *in connection with* that matter.
In consequence of.—*In consequence of* that shipwreck many families are in mourning.
In consideration of.—*In consideration of* (=considering) his hard work, he may be allowed another chance.
In course of.—He happened, *in course of* conversation, to say that, etc.
In defence of.—He said all he could *in defence of* his client.
In defiance of.—He got up a riot *in defiance of* the law.
In favour of.—He has resigned his post *in favour of* his son (on the understanding that his son would succeed him).
In front of.—The house stood *in front of* the bridge.
In honour of.—The day was kept as a public holiday *in honour of* the victory.
In keeping with.—His love of sport is *in keeping with* his age.
In lieu of.—You must take my subscription *in lieu of* (as an equivalent to or substitute for) his.
In opposition to.—What you have done was *in opposition to* my wishes.
In point of.—He is senior to me *in point of* age, but not of service.
In prospect of.—Men plough and sow *in prospect of* the coming harvest.
In pursuance of.—He was ready to do anything *in pursuance of* that object.
In quest of.—They went out to Australia *in quest of* or *in search of* (to look for) gold.
In respect of.—*In respect of* (=in point of) age he is my senior.
In spite of.—*In spite of* (=notwithstanding) all the advice that I gave him, he took to the practice of smoking.

Instead of —You had much better work *instead of* idling away your time

In view of —We must make up our minds at once *in view of* (=considering) the urgency of the case

In sight of —We had now come *in sight of* land

In the event of, or **in case of** —I shall have another chance *in the event of* or *in case of* failure

In the face of —He was always brave *in the face of* danger

In the guise of —He travelled to Bokhara *in the guise of* a darwesh

In the hope of —He tried again *in the hope of* succeeding next time

In the rear of —The baggage followed *in the rear of* the troops on march

In the teeth of —The ship could scarcely hold her course *in the teeth of* the wind (while the wind was blowing straight against her)

In order to —Nothing should be left untried *in order to* accomplish this.

In proportion to —He is cleverer than you are *in proportion to* his years

In regard to —What have you to say *in regard to* that subject?

In unison with His opinions are not *in unison with* those of the majority of men

On account of —The famine took place *on account of* the failure of the rains

On the brink of —The country is *on the brink of* a serious disaster

On the eve of —He died *on the eve of* victory

On the ground of —He declined the invitation *on the ground of* a previous engagement (alleging a previous engagement as the ground or reason of his refusal)

On the part of —Incompetence *on the part of* a judge cannot but lead to miscarriage of justice

On the point of He was *on the point of* letting out the secret when he checked himself

On the score of —He begs to be excused *on the score of* inexperience (This means the same as *on the ground of*)

On pretence of —His evil deeds were done *on pretence of* religion

With a view to —I said all I could *with a view to* proving his innocence

With an eye to —He is working hard now *with an eye to* the future

With reference to —I have nothing to say *with reference to*, or *with regard to*, or *with respect to* this question

Insert prepositions or phrases in the places left blank —

I —1 He will —— necessity hear what you have to say 2 The house could not be finished —— lack of funds 3 She died —— sorrow —— her great bereavement 4 He was plucked —— the surprise —— every one 5 The owner —— this house has lowered his rent —— many other houses being vacant —— the neighbourhood 6 He deserves to be blamed —— his idleness. 7 Some medicine given —— this time will be —— his benefit, unless —— the mean-

while he dies —— this attack —— fever 8 I cannot sleep —— thinking —— all that I must do 9 —— my great disappointment the house is not yet ready —— me to enter

II —1 He was taken —— a traveller 2 A viceroy is one who rules —— a king or queen 3 Sixteen seers —— wheat are sold —— a rupee 4 He led his army —— the city, but the inhabitants fought bravely —— their homes, and therefore —— capturing the town he was repulsed 5 What he said and did was only meant —— fun. 6 He was picked up and carried off —— dead 7 You have grappled bravely —— your difficulties 8 He disputed that point —— me 9 You must take in crop —— a cash payment 10 Grain can be given —— rent

III —1 He always failed —— want —— help 2 None —— the brave deserves the fair 3 —— all appearances he is seriously ill. 4 This picture was painted —— a good model 5 All —— three were drowned in that shipwreck 6 He is still poor —— all his labours 7 I distrust you —— all your professions and fair words 8 You will not convince me —— all your endeavours 9 Your dress is well suited —— your figure, and would suit any one —— a short man 10 Let the coat be made —— this pattern —— a cost —— twenty rupees 11 He was a brute —— a man —— all that you may say —— his praise 12 There is no large island near India —— the island —— Ceylon 13 The city —— Patna is —— the province —— Behar 14 Such customs are not adapted —— the continent —— Asia 15 Men should not attempt to live —— foreign models

IV —1 I prefer a book —— travels to one —— pictures 2 This must be done —— any rate, or —— all risks, or —— all hazards, or —— all events 3 He is taller than you —— two inches 4 That portrait is true —— the life 5 He did it as a labour —— love, but not as a matter —— duty 6 She wore a wreath —— roses 7 A man continues to improve —— mind and body —— the age of thirty 8 Your agreement must be carried out —— the very letter 9 I set all your threats —— nought 10 He is a man —— much experience, but you must not judge —— him —— his words 11 He fought out the question —— the last, and set all their reproofs —— defiance

V —1 We must take advice —— that matter 2 He inquired —— whether the train would arrive —— twelve o clock 3 You can see —— his manner that he is speaking the truth 4 What he said, he said —— his heart 5 He missed his aim, and they all laughed —— him. 6 You are rather severe —— the student 7 The dog made a violent attack —— the stranger 8 Dirty water comes —— a dirty fountain 9 He shouted —— him to come 10 Look —— that beautiful star 11 He worked hard —— a desire to earn his own living 12 One man winked —— the other 13 This was his first attempt —— English composition 14 He was sent —— an errand of mercy 15 When do you intend to start —— home?

VI —1 He was faithful —— deed as well as —— word 2 My son, —— whom a better son was never born, has just left college 3 He incurred a loss of ten —— one —— that imprudent bargain 4 A man dull —— understanding and slow —— speech is not likely to

prosper. 5 My friend is not only learned —— Sanskrit, but versed —— modern studies. 6 Swear not at all, neither —— heaven, for it is God's throne, nor —— earth, for it is God's footstool; nor —— thy head, for thou canst not make one hair white or black 7 What are you ——? 8 He is clever —— translation 9 We all play fairly well —— cricket 10 He is always engaged —— business 11 A man should always be employed —— something, and should not be sparing —— labour —— anything that he undertakes 12 Although he was short —— money and timid —— disposition, yet —— perseverance he conquered

VII —1 He saved all the money he could spare —— the evil day 2 A few men —— the host were slain 3 A blind man cannot tell black —— white, or light —— darkness 4 Get all the men together —— the arrival of the chief 5 I should not have known him —— his brother 6 He inherited a third —— the estate 7 He is something —— a scholar 8 He never knows a friend —— an enemy 9 Many —— the wounded did not recover 10 That city is forty miles —— here 11 We are now within three miles —— the house 12 The man seems to be —— his head 13 He is —— debt 14 Calcutta is not very far —— the sea 15 He was acquitted —— that charge 16 We are —— duty to day, but shall be on duty again to-morrow 17 The school is —— order 18 The flute is —— tune 19 He broke himself —— that habit 20 Can you cure me —— this disease?

VIII —1 The conduct of such an honourable man is —— suspicion 2 Such work is —— a person —— my poor abilities 3 Man is —— the angels 4 The British army —— Havelock marched —— Lucknow 5 The general placed —— the army is a man —— long experience 6 His words are so false that they are —— notice 7 A man should not marry a wife —— him 8 Since you have been placed —— me, I must obey 9 He was transferred —— the orders of his superior 10 He is quite —— your thumb 11 I differ —— you entirely 12 I have made a contract —— him 13 He has a bad habit —— arguing —— other persons —— trifles

IX —1 All men should follow truth, for if truth fails —— first, it will prevail —— last, and triumph —— falsehood —— the end 2 He offered his horse —— a low price, and it was sold —— the first bid made —— the auctioneer —— one —— the persons present 3 He is not a true man there is a secret meaning —— his words 4 Some said he was mad or —— himself 5 They halted —— two opinions, and quarrelled —— themselves 6 He struck the boy —— a whip, and then had him beaten —— one —— the masters 7 I will stand —— you —— this matter, the difficulties will disappear one —— one 8 I took that man —— a rogue because he asked two rupees —— a hat which was not fit —— use 9 He was bruised —— head —— foot, but he is now free —— danger 10 You may know a dog —— a wolf —— the slant —— the eye —— the animal last named 11 It was kind —— you to say that, for every one speaks —— me as being a rogue —— a lawyer 12 Your conduct is bad, indeed it is —— contempt, and your honesty is not —— suspicion 13 He ruled —— his people —— great justice, but not —— some severity —— those

who offended —— the law 14 He was popular —— his subjects —— the whole, although he was never lenient —— habitual offenders. 15 They will fight —— the last man, and —— my mind they will gain the day 16 I learnt —— my surprise that the book I gave him was not —— his taste

§ 2.—On the Use or Misuse of Prepositions.

417 Wrong Use or Wrong Omission of Prepositions —The following mistakes should be guarded against —

Erroneous	*Corrected*
He *ordered for* my dismissal	He *ordered* my dismissal
He does not *obey to* my words	He does not *obey* my words
This book *resembles to* that	This book *resembles* that
I will *inform to* your father	I will *inform* your father
I am *tired with* this work	I am *tired of* this work
He was *angry upon* me	He was *angry with* me
He *complained upon* me	He *complained against* me
No one can *depend* his word	No one can *depend on* his word
Ten scholarships were *competed*	Ten scholarships were *competed for*
You must *apply* the judge for pardon	You must *apply to* the judge for pardon
He will not *listen* what you say	He will not *listen to* what you say
I hope you will *assist to* me in this matter	I hope you will *assist* me in this matter
I tried, but could not *prevail* him	I tried but could not *prevail with* or *on* him
I must now *dispense* your services	I must now *dispense with* your services
Have you *signed to* that contract?	Have you *signed* that contract?
You should not have *violated against* the rules	You should not have *violated* the rules
A modest man does not *boast* his merits	A modest man does not *boast of* his merits
He carefully *investigated into* the case	He carefully *investigated* the case
You must *compensate* this loss *to* me	You must *compensate* me *for* this loss You must *make good to* me this loss
I *confess* some suspicion of your honesty	I *confess to* some suspicion of your honesty
I shall *combat with* your views at the meeting	I shall *combat* your views at the meeting
Have you *disposed* the current work?	Have you *disposed of* the current work?
Your medicine has *benefited to* me much	Your medicine has *benefited* me much
He *recommended for* me to the magistrate	He *recommended me* to the magistrate

Erroneous.	*Corrected*
That thought *pervades through* my whole mind	That thought *pervades* my whole mind
It is useless to *muse* past errors	It is useless to *muse upon* past errors
Let us *partake* a meal before we start.	Let us *partake of* a meal before we start
He *meditates* his past life	He *meditates on* his past life
He *meditates upon* a fresh attempt	He *meditates* (=proposes to make) a fresh attempt
Your fault does not *admit* any excuses	Your fault does not *admit of* any excuses

418 Gerunds preceded by Prepositions—A Simple Infinitive and a Gerund are equivalent in meaning (see § 44) But if a preposition is required, the Gerund or some equivalent Abstract noun should be substituted for the Infinitive, and should be made the object to the preposition

Note—The only Prepositions that can have an Infinitive verb as object are *about, than, but, for* (see § 195, *d*)

Erroneous	*Corrected*
He persisted *to say* this	He persisted *in saying* this
I insisted *to have* my fee paid	I insisted *on having* my fee paid
We should refrain *to do* evil	We should refrain *from doing* evil
They prohibited me *to borrow* a book	They prohibited me *from borrowing* a book
Do not prevent me *to work*	Do not prevent me *from working*
I insisted on *him to go* away	I insisted *on his going* away
Abstain *to speak* evil of others	Abstain *from speaking* ill of others
I am debarred *to send* you a specimen	I am debarred *from sending* you a specimen
He resigned himself *to fail*	He resigned himself *to failure*
I am confident *to win*	I am confident *of winning*
I am intent *to win*	I am intent *on winning*
He assisted *to do* this	He assisted *in doing* this.
He hindered me *to do* this	He hindered me *from doing* this
He despaired *to succeed*	He despaired *of success*
He repented *to have been* idle	He repented *of having been* idle
You have no excuse *to be* idle	You have no excuse *for being* idle
Your brother has a passion *to study*	Your brother has a passion *for studying*
He excels *to speak* English	He excels *in speaking* English
I was discouraged *to learn* English	I was discouraged *against learning* English
You are disqualified *to manage* your estate	You are disqualified *for managing* your estate
You are right *to hold* that opinion	You are right *in holding* that opinion

Erroneous	*Corrected*
Are you desirous *to eat* your breakfast?	Are you desirous *of eating* your breakfast?
He is fearful *to go* out to sea	He is fearful *of going* out to sea

419. The following peculiarities in the use of Prepositions should be noted:—

(*a*) **At, in.**—"*At*" relates to a *small* extent of space or time; "*in*" to a *wider* extent:—

He will start *at* six o'clock *in* the morning.
The end is *at* hand (= very close).
The work is *in* hand (= in a state of progress).

(*b*) **With, by.**—"*With*" relates to the *instrument* employed for doing anything; "*by*" to the agent or doer:—

This book was written *by* me *with* a quill pen.

(*c*) **After, in.**—In relation to a *past* space of time we use "*after*"; in relation to a *future* space of time we use "*in*":—

He died *after* (= at the close of) a few days. (*Past.*)
He will die *in* (= at the close of) a few days. (*Future.*)

Note.—The mistake is often made of using "*after*" with reference to a space of *future* time; whereas it should be used only with reference to a space of *past* time. Hence we cannot say:—"He will die *after* a few days."

(*d*) **Between, among.**—The first denotes "in the middle of two"; the second "in the middle of more than two":—

Those two men quarrelled *between* themselves.
Those three men quarrelled *among* themselves.

(*e*) **Beside, besides.**—The former means *by the side of*, and hence sometimes *outside of*. The latter means *in addition to*:—

He came and sat *beside* me (= by my side).
Your answer is *beside* (= outside of, irrelevant to) the question.
Besides (= in addition to) advising he gave them some money.

(*f*) **By, since, before.**—These are all used for a *point* of time,—not for a *period* or *space* of time:—

You must be back *by* four o'clock.
He has been here *since* four o'clock.
He did not get back *before* four o'clock.

(*g*) **In, into.**—The preposition "*in*" denotes position or rest inside anything; while "*into*" denotes motion towards the inside of anything:—

The frog is *in* the well (*Rest*)
The frog fell *into* the well (*Motion*)

(*h*) **In, within** —"In" denotes (as has been explained under *c*), "at the close of some future period", "within" denotes some time *short of the close* —

He will return *in* (=at the close of) a week's time
He will return *within* (=in less than) a week's time

(*i*) **Since, from** —Both of these denote a *point* of time, not a space or period But "since" is preceded by a verb in some Perfect tense, and "from" by a verb in some Indefinite tense Another difference is that "since" can be used only in reference to *past* time, whereas "from" can be also used for *present* and *future* time —

He *has* or *had been* taken ill *since* Thursday last
He *was* taken ill *from* Thursday last (*Past*)
He *begins* school *from* to day (*Present*)
He *will begin* school *from* to morrow (*Future*)

(*j*) **Before, for** —"For" is used with *negative* sentences, to denote a *space* of *future* time

"Before" is used in negative and affirmative sentences alike, to denote a *point* of *future* time

The sun will *not* rise *for* an hour
(We could not say "before an hour," because "before" is used for a point of time, and not for a space of time)

The sun will rise (*affirmative*) } *before* six o'clock
The sun will not rise (*negative*) }

Insert appropriate prepositions in the places left blank —

I —1 I was brought up —— Italy —— Rome 2 The moon rose —— twelve o'clock —— the night 3 We knew him —— a glance as soon as he came —— sight 4 He lives —— Nuddea —— the province of Bengal 5 The boat was tied to the shore —— a sailor —— a rope 6 The field was ploughed up —— a peasant —— a pair of oxen 7 The work must be done —— twelve o'clock 8 You must be back —— a week from the present time 9 No one has seen him —— Thursday last 10 I have not seen him —— his last birthday 11 He will not get home —— sunset 12 I shall be ready to start —— two or three hours 13 Take care to be back —— mid day 14 I shall not be back —— the end of the week 15 He has been absent from home —— Friday last, and I do not think he will return —— the 30th of next month 16 Let me see you again —— an hour's time 17 I shall have completed my task —— to morrow evening 18 The train will start —— forty minutes from now 19 I have lived —— Allahabad —— 1st March 20 I do not expect that he will be here —— a week, and I am certain that he will not be here —— sunset to-day

II.—1. I was born —— India —— Bombay. 2. I shall expect you to be here —— four o'clock, or at least —— three hours from the present time. 3. He shot this bird —— a gun. 4. He fell —— a violent rage. 5. Come —— my private room. 6. I have not seen him —— the last three days. 7. You need not get up —— eight o'clock A.M., but you must go to bed —— nine P.M. —— the latest. 8. He has been hard —— work —— sunrise. 9. He slept soundly —— three hours running. 10. It rained —— seven —— twelve o'clock. 11. You have not visited me —— a long time past. 12. I have not heard of you —— the last week. 13. I shall start —— two hours. 14. I have lived —— Calcutta —— a year. 15. Call on me —— an hour. 16. He called on me —— a few days. 17. I live —— London —— No. 5 Trafalgar Square. 18. I have had no rest —— the last hour. 19. He has been a lucky person —— the day —— which he began business, and I believe he will be lucky —— the rest —— his life. 20. Thirty men applied for help, but there was only a small sum to be divided —— them. 21. Perfect confidence ought to exist —— two such friends as we are.

§ 3.—Words followed by Prepositions.

420. Particular words are followed by particular prepositions, although there may be several other prepositions that have the same meaning. For instance, out of the numerous prepositions or prepositional phrases signifying cause, the verb "die" has somehow or other selected "of" for denoting the illness which was the cause of death, and declines to be followed by any other. Thus we say, "He died *of* fever." We do not say, "He died *through* fever, or *by* fever, or *from* fever, or *owing to* fever, or *on account of* fever, or *with* fever." Yet in other connections all of these prepositions may be used to denote cause.

Again, though we always say "die *of* fever," we never say "sick *of* fever," but always "sick *with* fever," where "with" and "of" are both used in the sense of cause.

(a) *Nouns followed by Prepositions.*

Abatement *of* the fever
,, *from* the price asked
Abhorrence *of* ingratitude
Ability *for* or *in* some work
Abstinence *from* wine
Abundance *of* food
Access *to* a person or place
Accession *to* the throne
Accomplice *with* a person *in* some crime.
(In) accordance *with* rule
Accusation *of* theft

Acquaintance *with* a person or a thing
Adaptation of means *to* an end
Adherence *to* a plan or cause
Admission *to* a person
,, *into* a place
Advance (progress) *of* learning
,, (of a person) *in* knowledge
(To take) advantage *of* some one's mistake
(To gain) an advantage *over* some one.

(To have) the advantage *of* a man.
Affection *for* a person.
Affinity *with* something
,, *between* two things
Allegiance *to* a person
Alliance *with* a person or state
Allusion *to* something
Alternation of day *with* night.
Alternative *to* a plan
Ambition *for* distinction
Amends *for* some fault
Analogy of one thing *with* another
,, *between* two things
Animosity *against* a person
Annexation *to* some kingdom
Antidote *to* some poison
,, *against* infection
Antipathy *to* some animal or some taste
Anxiety *for* any one's safety
Apology *for* some fault
Apostate *from* a creed
Appetite *for* food
Application *to* books
,, *for* employment
Apprehension *of* danger
Approach *to* (step towards) any thing
Aptitude *for* mathematics
Arrival *at* a place
,, *in* a country
Ascendency *over* a person
Aspiration *after* or *for* fame
Assault *on* a person or thing
Assent *to* an opinion
Assurance *of* help
Atonement *for* sin
Attachment *to* a person or thing
Attack *on* a place
Attendance *on* a person
,, *at* a place
Attention *to* study
Attraction *to* or *towards* a thing
Authority *over* a person
,, *on* a subject
,, *for* saying or doing
Aversion *to* a person or thing

Bar *to* success
Bargain *with* a person
,, *for* a thing
Battle *with* anyone
Beneficence *to* the poor.
Benevolence *towards* the poor
Betrayal *of* a secret
Bias *towards* a thing
Blindness *to* one's own faults.

Candidate *for* election
Capacity *for* mathematics
Care *for* his safety
,, *of* his books
Cause *for* anxiety
,, *of* trouble
Caution *against* error
Certainty *about* a matter
Certificate *of* good conduct.
Cessation *from* work
Charge *of* murder (*Noun*)
,, *with* murder (*Verb*)
Claim *on* or *against* some one
,, *to* something
Cloak *for* vice
Coheir *with* a person *to* some property
Collusion *with* a person
Comment *on* something said
Commerce *with* a country
Compact *with* a person
Comparison *with* a person or thing
Compassion *for* a person
Compensation *for* a loss
Competition *with* a person
,, *for* a thing
Complaint *against* a person
,, *about* a thing
Compliance *with* a request
Complicity *in* a crime
Concession *to* a demand
Concurrence *with* a person
,, *in* a proposal
Condemnation *to* death
Condolence *with* a person
Confidence *in* a person
Conformity *with* any one's views
,, *to* rule
Connection *with* a person or thing
Connivance *at* any one's faults.
Consciousness *of* guilt.
Consideration *for* a person
,, *of* a thing
Contact *with* something
(A) contemporary *of* some person
Contempt *for* a person or thing
(A) contrast *to* a person or thing

(In) contrast *with* a person or thing
Contribution *to* a fund
,, *towards* some project
Control *over* a person or thing
Controversy *with* a person
,, *on* or *about* something
Convergence *to* a point.
Conversation *with* a person
Conviction *of* guilt
Copartner *with* a person
,, *in* something
Copy *from* nature
Correspondence *with* a person
,, *to* a thing
Craving *for* anything

Decision *on* some case
,, *of* some dispute
Degradation *from* rank
Delight *in* a person or thing
Deliverance *from* a danger
Dependence *on* a person or thing
Descent *from* ancestors
Desire *for* wealth
Deviation *from* rule
Dexterity *in* doing something
Digression *from* a subject
Disagreement *with* a person
Discouragement *to* a person
Disgrace *to* a person
Disgust *at* meanness
Dislike *to* a person or thing
Dissent *from* a proposal
Distaste *for* mathematics
Distrust *of* a person or thing
Dominion *over* sea and land
Doubt *of* or *about* a thing
Drawback *to* success
Duty *to* a person

Eagerness *for* distinction
Economy *of* time
Eminence *in* painting
Emulation *for* the first place
Encroachment *on* one's rights
Endeavour *after* happiness
Endurance *of* pain
Engagement *in* a business
,, *with* a person
Enmity *with* a person
Entrance *into* a place.
Envy *at* another's success.

Equality *with* a person
Escape *from* punishment.
Esteem *for* a person
Estrangement *from* a person
Evasion *of* a rule
Exception *to* a rule
(Make) an exception *of* some person or thing
Excuse *for* a fault
Exemption *from* a penalty
Experience *of* a thing
,, *in* doing something
Exposure *to* danger

Failure *of* a plan
,, *of* a person *in* something
Faith *in* a person or thing
Familiarity *with* a person or thing
Fine *for* an offence
Fitness *for* some position
Fondness *for* anything
Forbearance *for* some weakness
Freedom *from* care
,, *of* action

(Has) a genius *for* mathematics
(Is) a genius *in* mathematics
Glance *at* a person or thing
,, *over* a wide surface.
Gratitude *for* a thing
,, *to* a person
Greediness *for* or *after* a thing
Grief *at* an event
,, *for* a person
Guarantee *for* a man's honesty
Guess *at* the truth

Harmony *with* anything
Hatred *of* or *for* a person
,, *of* a thing
Heir *to* some property
,, *of* some person
Helpmate *to* another person
Hindrance *to* anything
Hint *at* some reward
Hope *of* or *for* better luck
Hostility *to* a person or cause

Identity *with* a person or thing
Immersion *into* water
Impediment *to* progress
Implication *in* some misdeed

Imposition *on* the public
Imprecations *on* some one.
Imputation *of* guilt
,, *against* some one
Incentive *to* industry
Inclination *for* or *to* study
Independence *of* help
Indifference *to* heat or cold
Indulgence *in* wine
,, *to* a person
Inference *from* facts
Infliction *of* punishment
,, *on* the guilty
Influence *over* or *with* a person
,, *on* a man's action
Initiation *into* a brotherhood
Inkling *of* a secret
Innovation *upon* former practice
Inquiry *into* circumstances
Insight *into* a man's character
Instruction *in* music
Intercession *with* a superior
,, *for* a friend
Intercourse *with* a person
Interest *in* a subject.
,, *with* a person
Interference *with* a man's affairs
Interview *with* a person
Intimacy *with* a person
Intrusion *into* a man's house
Invective *against* a person
Investiture *with* a title
Invitation *to* a dinner
Irruption *into* a country
,, *by* invaders

Jest *at* a man's bad luck
Joy *in* his good luck
Judge *of* a matter
Jurisdiction *over* a province
,, *in* a lawsuit
Justification *of* or *for* crime

Key *to* a mystery

Laxity *in* morals
Lecture *on* a subject.
Leisure *for* amusement
Leniency *to* prisoners
Liability *to* an illness
Libel *on* a person.
,, *against* his character
Likeness *to* a person or thing
Liking *for* a person or thing
Limit *to* a man's zeal
Longing *for* or *after* a thing
Look *at* a thing
Lust *for* money

Malice *against* a person
Margin *for* losses
Martyr *to* rheumatism
,, *for* a certain cause
Match *for* a person
Menace *to* the public health
Motive *for* action

Necessity *for* anything
,, *of* the case
Need *for* assistance
(In) need *of* assistance
Neglect *of* duty
,, *in* doing a thing
Nerve *for* riding
Nomination *of* a person
,, *to* a post

Obedience *to* orders, parents, etc
Objection *to* a proposal
Obligation *to* a person
Obstruction *to* traffic
Offence *against* morality
,, *at* something done
Offset *to* a loss
Onslaught *on* a traveller
Operation *on* a thing
Opportunity *for* action
Opposition *to* a person
Order *for* or *against* doing a thing
Outlook *from* a window
,, *on* the sea.

Parley *with* a person
Parody *on* or *of* a poem
Partiality *for* flatterers
Partnership *in* a thing
,, *with* a person
Passion *for* gambling
(At) peace *with* all men
Penance *for* some fault.
Penetration *into* motives.
Penitence *for* some fault.
Perseverance *in* well-doing

Persistence *in* an attempt.
Piety *towards* God
Pity *for* sufferers
Popularity *with* neighbours
Postscript *to* a letter
Power *over* a person
Precaution *against* infection
Predilection *for* a person or thing
Preface *to* a book
Preference *for* one thing
,, *to* another thing
Prejudice *against* a person
Premium *on* gold
Preparation *for* action
Pretension *to* learning
Pretext *for* interference
Pride *in* his wealth (*Noun*)
Prides himself *on* his wealth (*Verb*)
Proficiency *in* mathematics
Profit *to* the seller
Progress *in* study
Prohibition *against* doing a thing
Proneness *to* deceit
Proof *of* guilt
,, *against* temptation
Propensity *to* gambling
Proportion *of* three *to* one
Protest *against* his proceedings
Provocation *to* or *for* action
(In) pursuance *of* an object

Qualification *for* office
Quarrel *with* another person
,, *between* two persons
Question *on* a point

Ratio *of* one *to* five
Readiness *at* figures
,, *in* answering
,, *for* a journey
Reason *for* a thing
,, *against* a thing
Receptacle *for* boxes
Recompense *for* labour
Reference *to* a person or thing
Reflections *on* a man's honesty
Regard *for* a man's feelings
(In) regard *to* that matter
Regret *for* something done
Relapse *into* idleness
Relation *of* one thing *to* another
,, *between* two things

Relations *with* a person.
Relevancy *to* a question
Reliance *on* a man's word.
Relish *for* food
Remedy *for* or *against* snake bite
Remonstrance *with* a person
,, *against* his conduct.
Remorse *for* a crime
Reparation *for* an injury
Repentance *for* sin
Reply *to* a letter
Repugnance *to* his wishes
Reputation *for* honesty
Request *for* a thing
Resemblance *to* a person or thing
Resignation *to* fate
Resistance *to* injustice
Resolution *into* elements
,, *on* a matter
Respect *for* a man or his office
(In) respect *of* some quality
(With) respect (*to*) a matter
Respite *from* suffering
Responsibility *to* the law
,, *for* action
Result *of* a proceeding
Reverence *for* age
Revolt *against* authority
Rival *in* anything
Rivalry *with* a person
Rupture *with* a friend
,, *between* two persons

Satire *against* follies
Satisfaction *for* some fault
Savour *of* an orange
Search *for* or *after* wealth
(In) search *of* wealth
Sequel *to* an event
Shame *at* or *for* his fault
Share *of* a thing
,, *with* a person
Sin *against* God
(A) slave *to* avarice
(The) slave *of* avarice
Slur *on* his character
Sneer *at* good men
Sorrow *for* his misfortunes
Specific *for* or *against* fever
Speculation *in* bank shares.
Spite *against* a person

Stain *on* one's character
Stickler *for* trifles.
Subjection *to* the laws.
Submission *to* authority
Subscription *to* a fund
Subsistence *on* rice.
Succession *to* an estate
Supplement *to* a book
Supremacy *over* a country
Surety *for* a person
Suspicion *of* his intentions
Sympathy *with* or *for* the poor

Taste (experience) *of* hard work
,, (liking) *for* hard work
Temperance *in* diet
Temptation *to* evil
Tenacity *of* purpose
Testimony *to* his character
,, *against* his character
Title *to* an estate
Traffic *in* salt
,, *with* Calcutta
Traitor *to* his country

Treatise *on* medicine.
Trespass *against* the law
Trust *in* his honesty

Umbrage *at* his behaviour
(In) unison *with* his character.
(We have no) use *for* that
(What is the) use *of* that?
(There is no) use *in* that.

(At) variance *with* a person
(A) victim *to* oppression
(The) victim *of* oppression
Victory *over* his passions

Want *of* money
Warrant *for* his arrest
Witness *of* or *to* an event
Wonder *at* his rudeness

Yearning *for* his home

Zeal *for* a cause
Zest *for* enjoyment

(b) *Adjectives and Participles followed by Prepositions*

Abandoned *to* his fate
Abhorrent *to* his feelings
Abounding *in* or *with* fish
Absolved *of* a charge
Absorbed *in* study
Acceptable *to* a person
Accessible *to* strangers
Accessory *to* a crime
Accomplished *in* an art
Accountable *to* a person
,, *for* a thing
Accruing *to* a person *from* some thing
Accurate *in* his statistics
Accused *of* a crime
Accustomed *to* riding
Acquainted *with* a person or thing
Acquitted *of* a charge
Adapted *to* his tastes
,, *for* an occupation
Addicted *to* bad habits
Adequate *to* his wants.
Adjacent *to* a place.
Adverse *to* his interests
Affectionate *to* a person

Afflicted *with* rheumatism
Afraid *of* death
Aggravated *at* a thing
,, *with* a person
Aghast *at* a sight
Agreeable *to* his wishes
Akin *to* a person or thing.
Alarmed *at* a rumour
Alien *to* his character
Alienated *from* a friend
Alive *to* the consequences.
Allied *to* a thing
,, *with* a person or country
Allowable *to* or *for* a person
Amazed *at* anything
Ambitious *of* distinction
Amenable *to* reason
Amused *at* a joke
Analogous *to* a thing
Angry *at* a thing
,, *with* a person
Annoyed *at* a thing
,, *with* a person *for* saying or doing something.
Answerable *to* a person
,, *for* his conduct.

Anxious *for* his safety
,, *about* the result
Appalled *at* the prospect.
Apparent *to* any one
Applicable *to* a case
Apprehensive *of* danger
Apprised *of* a fact
Appropriate *to* an occasion
Apt (expert) *in* mathematics
,, *for* a purpose
Arraigned *for* high treason
Arrayed *in* fine linen
,, *against* the enemy
Ashamed *of* his dulness
Assessed *at* Rs 40 a year
Assiduous *in* his studies
Associated *with* a person
,, *in* some business
Assured *of* the truth
Astonished *at* his rudeness
Astonishing *to* a person
Averse *to* hard work
Aware *of* his intentions

Backward *in* his books
Bare *of* grass
Based *on* sound principles
Beguiled *into* a trap
Beholden *to* a person
Bent *on* doing something
Bereft *of* a child
Beset *with* difficulties
Betrayed *to* the enemy
,, *into* the enemy's hands
Bigoted *in* his opinions
Blessed *with* good health
,, *in* his children
Blind *to* his own faults
,, *of* one eye
Boastful *of* his wealth
Born *of* rich parents
,, *in* England
Bought *of* a person.
Bound *in* honour
,, *by* a contract
(Ship) bound *for* England
Busy *with* his lessons

Callous *to* suffering
Capable *of* improvement
Careful *of* his money
,, *about* his dress

Cautious *of* giving offence
Celebrated *for* his ability
Censurable *for* some fault.
Certain *of* success
Chagrined *at* his failure
Characterised *by* a thing
Characteristic *of* a person
Charged *to* his account
,, (loaded) *with* a bullet
,, *with* (accused of) a crime
Clamorous *for* better pay
,, *against* lower pay
Clear *of* blame
Close *to* a person or thing
Clothed *in* purple
,, *with* shame
Clumsy *at* cricket
Co-equal *with* another person
Co-eval *with* some other event
Cognisant *of* a truth
Collateral *with* something else
Commemorative *of* a victory
Commensurate *with* one's desires
Committed *to* a course of action
Common *to* several persons or things
Comparable *to* something else
Compatible *with* one's temper
Competent *for* certain work
Complaisant *to* a person
Compliant *with* one's wishes
Composed *of* a material
Compounded *with* something else
Concerned *at* or *about* some mishap
,, *for* a person's welfare
,, *in* some business
Conclusive *of* some fact
Condemned *to* death
Conditional *on* something happening
Conducive *to* success
Confident *of* success
Confirmed *in* a habit
Conformable *to* reason
Congenial *to* one's tastes
Congratulated *on* his success
Conscious *of* a fault
Consequent *on* some cause
Consistent *with* honesty
Conspicuous *for* honesty
Contemporary *with* a person or event

Contemptible *for* his meanness
Contented *with* a little
Contiguous *to* anything
Contingent (conditional) *on* success.
Contrary *to* rule.
Contrasted *with* something else
Conversant *with* persons or things
Convicted *of* a crime
Convinced *of* a fact.
Convulsed *with* laughter
Correct *in* a statement
Coupled *with* something else
Covetous *of* other men's goods
Creditable *to* his judgment.
Cured *of* a disease
Customary *for* a person

Deaf *to* entreaties
Debited *with* a sum of money
Defeated *of* his purpose
Defective *in* point of style
Deficient *in* energy
Defrauded *of* his earnings
Deleterious *to* health
Delighted *with* success
Dependent *on* a person or thing
Depleted *of* strength
Deprived *of* some good thing
Derogatory *to* his character
Descriptive *of* a place
Deserving *of* praise
Designed *for* a purpose
Desirous *of* success
Despondent *of* success
Destined *for* the bar
Destitute *of* money
Destructive *of* health
Determined *on* doing a thing
Detrimental *to* health
Devoid *of* foundation
Dexterous *in* or *at* doing something
Different *from* something else
Diffident *of* success
Diligent *in* business
Disappointed *of* a thing not obtained
,, *in* a thing obtained
,, *with* a person
Disastrous *to* a person, etc.
Disgusted *with* a thing
Disgusted *at* or *with* a person
Dismayed *at* a result
Displeased *with* a person
Disqualified *for* a post.
,, *from* competing
Distinct *from* something else
Distracted *with* pain
Distrustful *of* a man s motives
Divested *of* office
Doubtful or dubious *of* success
Due *to* some cause
Dull *of* understanding

Eager *for* distinction
,, *in* the pursuit of knowledge
Earnest *in* his endeavours
Easy *of* access
Economical *of* time
Educated *in* law
,, *for* the bar
Effective *for* a purpose
Eligible *for* employment
Eminent *for* his learning
Employed *in* gardening
Empty *of* its contents.
Emulous *of* fame
Enamoured *with* a person
,, *of* a thing
Endeared *to* all men
Endowed } *with* natural ability
Endued }
Engaged *to* some person
,, *in* some business
Engraved *on* the memory
Enraged *at* something done
Entailed *on* a person
Entangled *in* a plot.
Entitled *to* a hearing
Enveloped *in* mist
Envious *of* another s success
Equal *to* the occasion
Essential *to* happiness
Estranged *from* a friend
Even *with* a rival
Exclusive *of* certain items
Exempted or exempt *from* a fine
Exhausted *with* labour
Exonerated *from* blame
Exposed *to* danger
Expressive *of* his feelings.

Faithful *to* a master
False *of* heart
,, *to* his friends
Familiar *with* a language
,, (well known) *to* a person
Famous *for* his learning
Fascinated *with* a person or thing
Fatal *to* his prospects
Fatigued *with* travelling
Favourable *to* his prospects
,, *for* action
Fearful *of* consequences
Fertile *in* resources
Fit *for* a position
Flushed *with* victory
Foiled *in* an attempt
Fond *of* music
Foreign *to* the purpose
Founded *on* fact
Fraught *with* danger
Free *from* blame
Fruitful *in* resources
Fruitless *of* results
Full *of* persons or things

Gifted *with* abilities
Glad *of* his assistance
,, *at* a result
Glutted *with* commodities
Good *for* nothing
,, *at* cricket
Grateful *for* past kindness
Greedy *of* or *after* riches
Guilty *of* theft
Gulled *of* his money

Hardened *against* pity
,, *to* misfortune
Healed *of* a disease
Heedless *of* consequences
Held *in* high esteem
Honest *in* his dealings
Honoured *with* your friendship
Hopeful *of* success
Horrified *at* the sight
Hostile *to* my endeavours
Hungry *after* wealth
Hurtful *to* health

Identical *with* anything
Ignorant *of* English
Ill *with* fever
Illustrative *of* a subject
Imbued *with* confidence
Imitative *of* a master
Immaterial *to* the point
Immersed *in* thought
Impatient *of* reproof
,, *at* an event
,, *for* food
Impending *over* one's head
Impenetrable *to* heat
Imperative *on* a person
Impertinent *to* his master
Impervious *to* water
Implicated *in* a crime
Incidental *to* a journey
Inclined *to* laziness
Inclusive *of* extras
Incumbent *on* a person
Indebted *to* a person
,, *for* some kindness
,, *in* a large sum
Independent *of* his parents
Indicative *of* his motives
Indifferent *to* heat or cold
Indigenous *to* a country
Indignant *at* something done
with a person
Indispensable *to* success
Indulgent *in* wine
,, *to* his children
Infatuated *with* a person
Infected *with* smallpox
Infested *with* rats
Inflicted *on* a person
Informed *of* a fact
Infused *into* a mixture
Inherent *in* his disposition
Inimical *to* a person
Innocent *of* a charge
Insatiable *of* learning
Insensible *to* shame
Inspired *with* hope
Intent *on* his studies
Interested *in* a person or thing
Intimate *with* a person
Introduced *to* a person
,, *into* a place
Inured *to* hardships
Inveigled *into* a plot
Invested *with* full powers
,, *in* government paper
Involved *in* difficulties.

Irrelevant *to* the question
Irrespective *of* consequences

Jealous *of* his reputation

Lame *of* one leg
Lavish *of* money
,, *in* his expenditure
Lax *in* his morals
Level *with* the ground
Liable *to* error
,, *for* payment
Liberal *of* his advice
Lightened *of* a burden
Limited *to* a certain area
Lost *to* all sense of shame
Loyal *to* the government

Mad *with* disappointment
Made *for* a teacher
,, *of* iron
Material *to* success
Meet *for* a rich man
Mindful *of* his promise
Mistaken *for* a traveller
Mistrustful *of* a person
Moved *to* tears
,, *with* pity
,, *at* the sight
,, *by* entreaties

Natural *to* a person
Necessary *to* happiness
Neglectful *of* his interests
Negligent *of* duty
,, *in* his work
Notorious *for* his misdeeds

Obedient *to* parents
Obligatory *on* a person
Obliged *to* a person
,, *for* some kindness
Oblivious *of* the past
Obnoxious *to* a person
Observant *of* facts
Obstinate *in* his resistance
Obstructive *to* a project
Occupied *with* some work
,, *in* reading a book.
Odious *to* a person.
Offended *with* a person
,, *at* something done

Offensive *to* a person.
Officious *in* his attentions.
Ominous *of* ruin
Open *to* flattery
Opposed *to* facts
Opposite *to* a place
Overcome *with* sorrow
Overwhelmed *with* grief

Painful *to* one's feeling
Parallel *to* or *with* anything
Paramount *to* everything else
Partial *to* the youngest son
Patient *of* suffering
Peculiar *to* a person or thing
Penitent *for* a fault
Penurious *in* his habits
Pertinent *to* a question
Polite *in* manner
,, *to* strangers
Poor *in* spirit
Popular *with* schoolfellows
,, *for* his pluck
Possessed *of* wealth
,, *with* a notion
Precious *to* a person
Precluded *from* doing a thing
Pre eminent *above* the rest
,, *in* cleverness
Preferable *to* something else
Prefixed *to* a title deed
Prejudicial *to* his interests
Preliminary *to* an inquiry
Preparatory *to* an inquiry
Prepared *for* the worst
Preventive *to* fever (*adj*)
(A) preventive *of* fever (*noun*)
Previous *to* some event
Prodigal *of* expenditure
Productive *of* wealth
Proficient *in* mathematics
Profitable *to* an investor
Profuse *of* his money
,, *in* his offers
Prone *to* idleness
Proper *for* the occasion
Prophetic *of* evil
Proud *of* his position
Provident *of* his money
,, *for* his children
Purged *of* evil thoughts
Pursuant *to* an inquiry

Qualified *for* teaching music
Quarrelsome *with* every one
Quartered *on* the town
Quick *of* understanding
,, *at* mathematics

Radiant *with* smiles
Ready *for* action
,, *at* accounts
,, *in* his answers
Receptive *of* advice
Reckless *of* expenditure
Reconciled *to* a position
,, *with* an opponent
Redolent *of* smoke
Reduced *to* poverty
Regardless *of* consequences
Related *to* a person
Relative *to* a question
Relevant *to* the point
Remiss *in* his duties
Remote *from* one's intentions
Repentant *of* his sin
Replete *with* comfort
Repugnant *to* his wishes
Repulsive *to* his feelings
Requisite *to* happiness
,, *for* a purpose
Resolved *into* its elements
,, *on* doing a thing
Respectful *to* or *towards* one's superiors
Responsible *to* a person
,, *for* his actions
Restricted *to* a humble fare
Retentive *of* figures
Revenge *on* a person for doing something
Rich *in* house property
Rid *of* trouble

Sacred *to* a man's memory
Sanguine *of* success
Satiated *with* pleasure
Satisfactory *to* a person
Satisfied *of* (concerning) a fact
,, *with* his income
Secure *from* harm
,, *against* an attack
Sensible *of* kindness
Sensitive *to* blame
Serviceable *to* a person
Shocked *at* your behaviour
Shocking *to* every one
Short *of* money
Sick *of* waiting.
Significant *of* his intentions
Silent *about* a subject
Similar *to* a person or thing
Simultaneous *with* an event.
Skilful *in* doing a thing
Slothful *in* business
Slow *of* hearing
,, *in* making up his mind
,, *at* accounts
Solicitous *of* a reply
,, *for* your safety
Sorry *for* your sufferings
Sparing *of* praise
Spiteful *against* a person
Stained *with* crimes
Startled *at* a sight
Steeped *in* vice
Strange *to* a person
Subject *to* authority
Subordinate *to* a person
Subsequent *to* another event
Subsidiary *to* trade
Subversive *of* discipline
Sufficient *for* a purpose
Suitable *to* the occasion
,, *for* his income
Suited *to* the occasion
,, *for* a post
Sure *of* success
Suspicious *of* his meaning
Sympathetic *with* sufferers
Synonymous *with* another word

Tantamount *to* a falsehood
Temperate *in* his habits
Tenacious *of* his purpose
Thankful *for* past favours
Tired *of* doing nothing
,, *with* his exertions
Transported *with* joy
True *to* his convictions

Uneasy *about* consequences
Useful *for* a certain purpose

Vain *of* his fine dress
Veiled *in* mystery
Versed *in* Euclid.

Vested *in* a person
Vexed *with* a person *for* doing [something
,, *at* a thing
Victorious *over* difficulties
Void *of* meaning

Wanting *in* common sense
Wary *of* telling secrets

Weak *of* understanding
,, *in* his head
Weary *of* doing nothing
Welcome *to* my house
Worthy *of* praise

Zealous *for* improvement
,, *in* a cause

(c) *Verbs followed by Prepositions*

Abide *by* a promise
Abound *in* or *with* fish
Absolve *of* or *from* a charge
Abstain *from* wine
Accede *to* a request
Accept *of* a favour
Accord *with* or *to* a thing
Account *for* a fact
Accrue *to* a person
Accuse *of* some misdeed
Acquiesce *in* a decision
Acquit *of* blame
Adapt *to* circumstances
Adhere *to* a plan
Admit *of* an excuse
,, *to* or *into* a secret
Admonish *of* a fault
Agree *to* a proposal
,, *with* a person
Aim *at* a mark
Alight *from* a carriage
,, *on* the ground
Allot *to* a person
Allow *of* delay
Allude *to* a fact
Alternate *with* something else
Anchor *off* the shore
Animadvert *on* his faults
Answer *to* a person
,, *for* conduct
Apologise *to* a person
,, *for* rudeness
Appeal *to* a person
,, *for* redress or help
,, *against* a sentence
Apply *to* a person *for* a thing
Appoint *to* a situation
Apprise *of* a fact
Approve *of* an action
Arbitrate *between* two persons
Argue *with* a person *for* or *against* a point.

Arrive *at* a place
,, *in* a country
Ascribe *to* a cause
Ask *for* a thing
,, *of* or *from* a person
Aspire *after* worldly greatness
,, *to* some particular object
Assent *to* your terms
Associate *with* a person or thing
Assure a person *of* a fact
Atone *for* a fault
Attain *to* a high place
Attend *to* a book or speaker
,, *on* a person
Attribute *to* a cause
Avail oneself *of* an offer
Avenge oneself *on* a person
Avert *from* a person

Balk any one *of* his object
Bark *at* a person or thing
Bask *in* sunshine
Bear *with* a man's impatience
Beat *against* the rocks (the waves)
,, *on* one's head (the sun)
Become *of* you (what will?)
Beg pardon *of* a person
,, a person *to* do a thing
,, *for* something *from* some one
Begin *with* the first
Beguile a person *of* a thing
Believe *in* one's honesty
Belong *to* a person
Bequeath a thing *to* a person
Bestow a thing *on* a person
Bethink oneself *of* something
Beware *of* wine
Blame a person *for* something
Blush *at* one's own faults
,, *for* any one who is at fault
Boast or brag *of* one's cleverness
Border *on* a place

Borrow *of* or *from* a person.
Break *into* a house (thieves)
,, oneself *of* a habit.
,, *through* restraint.
,, ill news *to* a person
,, (dissolve partnership) *with* a person
Bring a thing *to* light
,, ,, *under* notice
Brood *over* past grievances
Burden an animal *with* a load
Burst *into* a rage
,, *upon* (suddenly invade) a country
Buy a thing *of* a person
,, ,, *from* a shop

Calculate *on* success
Call *on* a person (visit him at his house)
,, *to* (shout to) a person
,, *for* (require) punishment
Canvass *for* votes or thing
Care *for* (attach value to) a person
Carp *at* one's conduct
Catch *at* an opportunity
Caution a person *against* a danger
Cavil *at* a word or deed
Cease *from* quarrelling
Censure a man *for* a fault
Certify *to* a man's character
Chafe *at* or *under* rebuke
Challenge a man *to* combat
Charge a man *with* a crime
,, payment *to* a person
Cheat a man *of* his due
Clamour *for* higher wages
Clash *with* one's meaning
Cleanse *from* stain
Clear a man *of* blame
Cling *to* a person or thing
Close *with* (accept) an offer
Coalesce *with* something else
Coincide *with* one's opinion
Combat *with* difficulties
Come *across* (accidentally meet) any one
,, *into* fashion
,, *by* (obtain) a thing
,, *of* (result from) something
,, *to* (amount to) forty
Commence *with* a thing
Comment *on* a matter
Communicate a thing *to* a person
,, *with* a person *on* a subject.
Compare similars *with* similars—as one fruit *with* another
,, things dissimilar, by way of illustration — as genius *to* a lightning flash
Compensate a person *for* his loss
Compete *with* a person *for* a prize
Complain *of* some annoyance *to* a person
,, *against* a person
Comply *with* one's wishes
Conceal facts *from* any one
Concede *to* some demand
Concur *with* a person
,, *in* an opinion
Condemn a person *to* death
,, ,, *for* murder
Condole *with* a person
Conduce *to* happiness
Confer (*Trans.*) a thing *on* any one
,, (*Intrans.*) *with* a person *about* something
Confess *to* a fault
Confide (*Trans.*) a secret *to* any one
,, (*Intrans.*) *in* one's honour
Conform *to* (follow) a rule
,, *with* one's views
Confront a man *with* his accusers
Congratulate a man *on* his success
Connive *at* other men's faults
Consent *to* some proposal
Consign *to* destruction
Consist *of* materials
,, *in* facts or results
Consult *with* a person *on* or *about* some matter
Contend *with* or *against* a person
,, *for* or *about* a thing
Contribute *to* a fund
Converge *to* a point
Converse *with* a person *about* a thing
Convict a person *of* a crime.
Convince a person *of* a fact
Cope *with* a person
Correspond *with* a person (write)

Correspond *to* something (agree)
Count *on* a thing (confidently expect.
Count *for* nothing
Crave *for* or *after* happiness
Credit *with* good intentions
Crow *over* a defeated rival
Cure a man *of* a disease
Cut a thing *in* or *to* pieces
,, ,, *in* half

Dabble *in* politics
Dally *with* a person
Dash *against* anything
,, *over* anything
Dawn *on* a person
Deal well or ill *by* a person
,, *in* (trade in) cloth, tea, spices, etc
,, *with* a person (have dealings in trade, etc)
,, *with* a subject (write about it)
Debar *from* doing anything
Debit *with* a sum of money
Decide *on* something
,, *against* something
Declare *for* something
,, *against* something
Defend a person *from* harm
Defer *to* a man's wishes
Defraud a person *of* his due
Deliberate *on* a matter
Delight *in* music
Deliver *from* some evil
Deluge *with* water
Demand a thing *of* a person
Demur *to* a statement
Depend *on* a person or thing
Deprive a person *of* a thing
Derogate *from* one's reputation
Descant *on* a subject
Desist *from* an attempt
Despair *of* success
Despoil a person *of* a thing
Deter a person *from* a thing
Determine *on* doing something
Detract *from* one's reputation
Deviate *from* a certain course
Devolves *on* a person (a duty)
Die *of* a disease
,, *from* some cause, as overwork

Die *by* violence.
Differ *with* a person *on* a subject.
,, *from* anything (to be unlike)
Digress *from* the point.
Dilate *on* a subject
Dip *into* a book
Disable one *from* doing something
Disabuse one's mind *of* error
Disagree *with* a person or thing
Disapprove *of* anything
Dispense *with* a man's services
Dispose *of* (sell) property
Dispute *with* a person *about* any thing
Disseize (dispossess) *of* an estate
Dissent *from* an opinion
Dissuade *from* an action
Distinguish one thing *from* another
,, *between* two things
Divert a person *from* a purpose
Divest one's mind *of* fear
Divide *in* half, *into* four parts
Doat *upon* a person or thing
Domineer *over* one's inferiors
Draw money *on* a bank
Dream *of* strange things
Drive *at* some point
Drop *off* a tree
,, *out of* the ranks
Dwell *on* a subject

Eat *into* iron
Elicit *from* a person
Embark *on* board ship
,, *in* business
Emerge *from* the forest
Employ *in* a work
Encroach *on* one's authority
Endow a hospital *with* an estate
Enjoin *on* a person
Enlarge *on* a subject
Enlist *in* the army
,, a person *in* some project.
Entail labour *on* a person
Enter *upon* a career
,, *into* one's plans
Entitle any one *to* an estate
Entrust anyone *with* a thing
,, a thing *to* anyone
Err *on the side of* leniency.

Escape *from* jail
Exact payment *from* a person
Excel *in* languages
Exchange one thing *for* another
,, *with* a person
Exclude *from* an examination
Excuse a person *from* coming
Exempt a person *from* a rule
Exonerate a person *from* blame
Expatiate *on* a subject
Explain *to* a person
Expostulate *with* a person
Exult *in* a victory *over* a rival

Fail *in* an attempt
,, *of* a purpose
Fall *among* thieves
,, *in love with* a person
,, *in with* one's views
,, *on* the enemy (attack)
,, *into* a mistake
,, *under* some one's displeasure
Fawn *on* a person
Feed (*Intrans.*) *on* grass
,, (*Trans.*) a cow *with* grass
Feel *for* a person *in* his trouble
Fight *for* the weak *against* the strong
,, *with* or *against* a person
Fill *with* anything
(*full of* something) (*Adject.*)
Fire *on* a city
Fish *for* compliments
Flirt *with* a person
Fly *at* (attack) a dog
,, *into* a rage
Free *of* or *from* anything
Furnish a person *with* a thing
,, a thing *to* a person

Gain *on* some one in a race
Get *at* (find out) the facts
,, *over* (recover from) an illness
,, *on with* a person (live or work smoothly with him)
,, *out of* debt
,, *to* a journey's end
Glance *at* an object
,, *over* a letter
Glory *in* success
Grapple *with* difficulties
Grasp *at* something unattainable

Grieve *at* or *for* or *about* an event.
,, *for* a person
Grow *upon* one = (a habit grows on, etc.)
Grumble *at* one's lot
Guard *against* a bad habit.
Guess *at* something

Hanker *after* riches
Happen *to* a person
Heal *of* a disease
Hear *of* an event
Hesitate *at* nothing
Hide a thing *from* a person
Hinder one *from* doing something
Hinge *on* (depend on) some event.
Hint *at* an intention
Hope *for* something
Hover *over* a nest
Hunt *after* or *for* anything

Identify one person or thing *with* another
Impart a thing *to* a person
Impend *over* one's head
Import goods *into* a country
,, things *from* a country
Impose *on* (deceive) a person
Impress an idea *on* a person
,, a person *with* an idea
Impute blame *to* a person
Incite a person *to* some action
Increase *in* wisdom
Inculcate *on* a person
Indent *on* an office *for* stamps
Indict a person *for* a crime
Indorse *with* a signature
Indulge *in* wine
,, oneself *with* wine
Infer one fact *from* another
Inflict punishment *on* a man
Inform a person *of* a thing
,, *against* a person
Infringe *on* a man's rights
Infuse an ingredient *into* some mixture
Initiate a man *into* an order
Inquire *into* a matter
,, *of* a person *about* or *concerning* some matter
Insist *on* something being done
Inspire a man *with* courage

Instil a thing *into* the mind
Intercede *with* a superior *for* some one else.
Interfere *with* a person *in* some matter
Intermeddle *with* other men's affairs
Intersect *with* each other
Intrench *on* a man's rights
Intrigue *with* the opposite party
Introduce a man *to* some one
,, *into* a place or sect
Intrude *on* one's leisure
,, *into* one's house
Intrust a person *with* a thing
,, a thing *to* a person
Inveigh *against* injustice
Inveigle *into* a trap
Invest money *in* some project
,, a man *with* authority
Invite a man *to* dinner
Involve a man *in* debt
Issue *from* some source

Jar *against* one's nerves
Jeer *at* a person
Jest *at* (make fun of) a person
Join *in* a game
,, one thing *to* another
Judge *of* something *by* something
Jump *at* (eagerly accept) an offer
,, *to* a conclusion

Keep (abstain) *from* wine
,, *to* a point
Kick *against* (resist) authority
,, *at* a thing (scornfully reject)
Knock one's head *against* a wall
,, *at* a door
Know *of* a person

Labour *under* a misapprehension
,, *for* the public good
,, *in* a good cause
,, *at* some work
Lament *for* the dead
Languish *for* home
Lapse *into* idleness
Laugh *at* a person or thing
,, *to* scorn
Lay facts *before* a person
,, a sin *to* one's charge
Lay a person *under* an obligation
Lead *to* Calcutta (a road)
Lean *against* a wall
,, *on* a staff
,, *to* a certain opinion
Lecture a person *on* some fault
Level a city *with* the ground
,, a gun *at* a bird
Lie *in* one's power
,, *under* an imputation
Light *on* a person or object
Listen *to* complaints
,, *for* a discordant note
Live *for* riches or fame
,, *by* honest labour
,, *on* a small income
,, *within* one's means
Long *for* or *after* anything
Look *after* (watch) some business
,, *at* a person or thing
,, *into* (closely examine) a matter
,, *for* something lost
,, *over* (examine cursorily) an account
,, *through* (examine carefully) an account
,, *out of* a place
Lust *after* riches

Make *away with* (purloin) money
for (conduce to) happiness
,, *up to* (approach) a person.
,, some meaning *of* a thing
March *with* (border on) a boundary
Marry one person *to* another
Marvel *at* some sight or report
Match one thing *with* another
Meddle *with* other men's business
Meditate *on* some subject
Meet *with* a rebuff
Menace *with* punishment.
Merge *into* anything
Minister *to* other men's wants.
Mortgage land *to* a pleader
Mourn *for* the dead
Murmur *at* or *against* anything
Muse *upon* the beauties of nature.

Object *to* some proposal.
Occur *to* one's mind.

Offend *against* good taste
Officiate *for* some one *in* a post.
Operate *on* a patient
Originate *in* a thing or place
,, *with* a person
Overwhelm *with* kindness

Pall *upon* one's taste
Part *with* a person or thing
Partake *of* some food
Participate *with* a person *in* his gains
Pass *from* one thing *into* another
,, *for* a clever man
,, *over* (omit) a page
,, *by* a man's door
Pay (suffer) *for* one's folly
Penetrate *into* a secret
Perish *by* the sword
,, *with* cold
Persevere *in* an effort
Persist *in* doing something
Pertain *to* a question
Pine *for* a lost child
Pitch *upon* a plan
Play *at* cricket
,, *upon* the guitar
,, tricks (trifle) *with* one's health
Plead *with* a creditor *for* longer time
Plot *against* a man
Plunge *into* a river, work, etc
Point *at* a person
,, *to* some result
Ponder *on* or *over* a subject
Possess oneself *of* an estate
Pounce *on* a thing
Pray *for* pardon
Predicate hardness *of* iron
Prefer one thing *to* another
Prejudice any one *against* some person or thing
Prepare *for* the worst
,, *against* disaster
Present anyone *with* a book
Preserve *from* harm
Preside *at* a meeting
,, *over* a meeting
Presume *on* a man's kindness
Pretend *to* omniscience
Prevail *on* (persuade) a person to do something.
Prevail *against* or *over* an adversary
,, *with* a person (have more influence than anything else)
Prevent *from* going
Prey *upon* one's health
Pride oneself *on* a thing
Proceed *with* a business already commenced
,, *to* a business not yet commenced
,, *from* one point *to* another
,, *against* (prosecute) a person
Prohibit *from* doing something
Protect *from* harm
Protest *against* injustice
Provide *for* one's children.
,, *against* the evil day
,, oneself *with* something
Provoke one *to* anger
Pry *into* a secret
Punish any one *for* a fault.
Purge the mind *of* false notions

Quake *with* fear
Qualify oneself *for* a post
Quarrel *with* some one *over* or *about* something
Quote something *from* an author

Rail *at* or *against* any one
Reason *with* a person *about* something
Rebel *against* authority
Reckon *on* (confidently expect) something
,, *with* (settle accounts with) a person
Recoil *from* a sight
Recompense one *for* some service
Reconcile *to* a loss
,, *with* an adversary
Recover *from* an illness.
Refer *to* a subject
Reflect credit *on* a person
,, (*Intrans.*) *on* a man's conduct
Refrain *from* tears.
Rejoice *at* the success of another
,, *in* one's own success.

Relapse *into* idleness.
Relieve *of* or *from* pain.
Rely *on* a person or thing
Remind a person *of* a thing
Remonstrate *with* a person *against* some proceeding
Render (translate) *into* English
Repent *of* imprudence
Repine *at* misfortune
Repose (*Intrans*) *on* a bed
,, confidence *in* a person
Reprimand a person *for* a fault
Require something *of* some one
Resolve *on* a course of action
Rest *on* a couch, *on* facts, etc
(It) rests *with* a person to do, etc
Result *from* a cause
,, *in* a consequence
Retaliate *on* an enemy
Revel *in* vice
Revenge myself *on* some one *for* some injury
Revert *to* an appointment
Revolt *against* a government
Reward a man *with* something *for* some service done
Ride *at* anchor
Rob a person *of* something
Rule *over* a country
Run *after* (eagerly follow) new fashions
,, *at* (attack) a cat
,, *into* debt
,, *over* (read rapidly) an account
,, *through* his money

Save a person or thing *from* harm
Scoff *at* religion
Search *for* something lost
,, *into* (carefully examine) a matter
See *about* (consider) a matter
,, *into* (investigate) a matter
,, *through* (understand) his meaning
,, *to* (attend to) a matter
Seek *after* or *for* happiness
Send *for* a doctor
Sentence a man *to* a fine
Set *about* (begin working at) a business
Set a person *over* (in charge of) a business
,, *upon* (attack) a traveller
Settle some money *on* a daughter
Show a person *over* a house
Shudder *at* cruelty
Side *with* a person in a dispute.
Sit *over* a fire
,, *under* an imputation
Slur *over* a matter
Smack *of* a certain flavour
Smart *under* a sense of wrong
Smell *of* fish
Smile *at* (deride) a person's threats
,, *on* (favour) a person
Snap *at* a person
Snatch *at* (try to seize) a thing
Speak *of* a subject (briefly)
,, *on* a subject (at greater length)
Speculate *in* shares.
,, *on* a possible future
Stand *against* (resist) an enemy
,, *by* (support) a friend
,, *on* one's dignity
,, *to* (maintain) one's opinion
Stare *at* a person
,, a person *in* the face
Start *for* Calcutta
Stick *at* nothing
,, *to* his point
Stipulate *for* certain terms
Stoop *to* meanness
Strike *at* (aim a blow at) a dog
,, *for* higher pay
,, *on* a rock
Strip a person *of* his property
Struggle *against* difficulties
Subject a person *to* censure
Submit *to* authority
Subscribe *to* a fund
Subsist *on* scanty food
Succeed *to* a property
,, *in* an undertaking
Succumb *to* difficulties
Sue *for* peace
Supply a thing *to* a person
,, a person *with* a thing
Surrender *to* the enemy
Sweep the dirt *off* the floor
Sympathise *with* a person *in* his troubles.

Take *after* (resemble) his father
,, a person *for* a spy
,, *to* (commence the habit of) gambling
,, *upon* oneself to do a thing
Talk *of* or *about* an event.
,, *over* (discuss) a matter
,, *to* or *with* a person
Tamper *with* statistics
Taste *of* salt
Tell *of* or *about* an event
Testify *to* a fact
Think *of* or *about* anything
,, *over* (consider) a matter
Threaten a man *with* a lawsuit
Throw a stone *at* anyone
Tide *over* losses
Touch *at* Gibraltar (ships)
,, *upon* (briefly allude to, a subject
Tower *over* every one else
Trade *with* a country *in* oranges
Trample *on* justice
Treat *of* a subject.
Tremble *at* a lion *with* fear
Trench *on* a man's rights
Trespass *against* rules
,, *on* a man's time
,, *in* a man's house
Trifle *with* a man's feelings
Triumph *over* obstacles

Trust *in* a person } (*Intr.*)
,, *to* a man's honesty } (*Intr.*)
,, a man *with* money (*Trans.*)
Turn verse *into* prose
,, *to* a friend *for* help
,, *upon* (hinge on) evidence

Upbraid a person *with* ingratitude
Urge a fact *on* one's attention

Venture *upon* an undertaking
Vie *with* another person
Vote *for* (in favour of) anything
,, *against* a thing

Wait *at* table
,, *for* a person or thing
,, *on* (attend) a person
Warn a person *of* danger
,, ,, *against* a fault.
Wink *at* one's faults
Wish *for* anything
Work *at* mathematics
,, *for* small pay
Worm oneself *into* another man's confidence
Wrestle *with* an adversary

Yearn *for* affection
Yield *to* clamour

(d) *Adverbs followed by Prepositions*

Note.—Adverbs are followed by the same prepositions as the corresponding adjectives.

Adversely *to* one's interests
Agreeably *to* one's wishes
Amenably *to* reason
Angrily *with* a person
Anxiously *for* one's safety
Appropriately *to* an occasion
Compatibly *with* reason
Conditionally *on* some event
Conformably *to* reason.
Consistently *with* reason
Contentedly *with* one's lot
Effectively *for* a purpose
Favourably *to* one's interests
Fortunately *for* a person

Independently *of* persons or things
Irrelevantly *to* a question
Irrespectively *of* consequences
Loyally *to* one's rulers
Obstructively *to* happiness
Offensively *to* a person
Prejudicially *to* one's interests
Previously *to* some event
Profitably *to* oneself
Proportionately *to* anything
Simultaneously *with* some event
Subsequently *to* some event
Sufficiently *for* the purpose

421 The following examples show what the meaning

of a verb is, when it stands alone, and how its meaning is modified when a preposition is added to it —

Admit —I do not admit (accept) the excuse This matter admits *of* no excuse (is such that it cannot be excused or pardoned)

Attend —He attends (goes to) the meeting He attends *to* the meeting (gives his mind to the business of the meeting)

Bear —We must bear (endure, suffer) his reproaches We must bear *with* (endure patiently, tolerate) his reproaches

Begin —Let us begin this song (commence to sing it) Let us begin *with* this song (sing this song before we sing any other)

Believe —I do not believe this man (accept his statement as true) I do not believe *in* this man (trust in his honesty)

Call —I will call him (shout to him and order him to come) I will call *on* him (visit him at his house)

Catch.—He caught (seized) the reins He caught *at* (tried to seize) the reins

Close —This closes (finishes, concludes) the bargain I cannot close *with* (accept) such a bargain

Commence —We must commence this work (begin to do it) to day We should commence *with* this work (do this work before doing any other)

Consult —I must consult you (ask your advice) on this point I must consult (take counsel) *with* you on this point

Count —Have you counted (reckoned up) the money? I count *on* that money (expect it as a certainty)

Deal —He dealt (distributed) the cards He dealt *in* (sold) cards and other kinds of games

Dispense —Dispense (distribute) your charities fairly all round We can dispense *with* (we do not require) your charities

Eat —Do you ever eat cheese (take it as food) The mice are eating *into* the cheese (making a hole in it by eating)

Feel —Feel this table (examine it by feeling or touching it) The blind man is feeling *for* the table (trying to find the table by groping for it with his hand)

Gain.—He gained the land (reached it safely) The sea is gaining *on* the land (washing it down) along this coast

Grasp —He grasped (seized and held tight) the money He grasped *at* (attempted to seize) the money

Guard.—Guard this man (protect him) from danger Guard *against* (take every precaution against) this man

Guess.—He guessed the facts (hit upon the facts by guess or conjecture) He guessed *at* the facts (made a guess or conjecture concerning them, tried to find them out by conjecture)

Inquire —He inquired or enquired the reason (asked what was the reason) He inquired *into* the reason (investigated it by a careful examination of the evidence)

Meditate —He meditates revenge (*future action*) He meditates *on* the revenge that he took (*past action*).

Meet.—I met him on the road (as I was walking on the road, I came in front of him) I met *with* him (found him) in the library

Prepare.—He prepared (got ready) a feast. He prepared *for* the feast (got himself ready for it)

Repair—Let us repair the house (put it into good repair) Let us repair (go) *to* the house

Search.—Search that thief (examine his clothes and other belongings) Search *for* that thief (try to find out where he is)

See—Do you not see (perceive) this danger? We must see *to* this danger (attend to it, and guard against it)

Send.—Send (despatch) the doctor at once Send *for* the doctor (send some one to call the doctor)

Snatch.—He snatched the book (seized it by a rapid movement of the hand) He snatched *at* the book (attempted to seize it)

Strike—He struck the dog He struck *at* (aimed a blow at, or endeavoured to strike) the dog

Taste—He tasted the salt This water tastes *of* (has a flavour of) salt

Touch—He has not yet touched the point (come to the point under debate) He touched *upon* the point (briefly alluded to it)

Work.—He worked (managed) the machine He worked *at* (was busily engaged *with*) the machine

Note—Sometimes there is no appreciable difference of meaning between a verb standing alone and the same verb followed by a preposition The following are examples —

Accept, or accept *of*, a gift
Attain, or attain *to*, perfection
Beg, or beg *of*, a person to do something
Confess, or confess *to*, a fault
Enter, or enter *into* a house
Judge, or judge *of*, a person
Join, or join *in*, a game
Know or know *of*, a fact.
Penetrate, or penetrate *into*, a secret
Seek or seek *for*, happiness
Succeed or succeed *to*, some one
Treat, or treat *of*, a subject

Insert prepositions or prepositional phrases —

I—1 I acquit you — all complicity —that crime, and hope you will be compensated — the annoyance entailed — you — the groundless imputation 2 I was horrified — the sight — so much distress 3 He did not die — cholera, but — the effects — over exposure — the sun — an unhealthy time — the year 4 This shopkeeper deals — grain, but he did not deal honestly — me, and I shall have no more dealings — him in future 5 You will have to answer — me — your misconduct 6 Forty students competed — one another — a single scholarship 7 I must consult — you — that matter shortly 8 Do not exult offensively — the victory you have won — your rival 9 He is not possessed — much wisdom, but is possessed — a very high notion — his own importance 10 Will you entrust me — that letter? No, I will entrust nothing — you 11 Always be prepared — the worst. 12 That motive prevails — me 13 I prevailed — him to make the attempt, but he could not prevail — his adversary 14 I rejoiced not only — my own success, but — yours. 15 We must provide — our children — the evil day 16 Some men

stick —— nothing, so long as they can stick —— their point. 17 Why do you stare me —— the face? It is bad manners to stare —— one in that manner 18 The ship touched —— Gibraltar 19 He touched —— the subject of tides 20 He supplied money —— the men, and they supplied his horses —— provender 21 He could smile —— their threats, for fortune continued to smile —— him 22. They proceeded —— the business that they had commenced yesterday, before they proceeded —— the consideration of any new questions 23 Do not live —— riches, but whatever you live ——, live —— honest labour, and if you have to live —— a small income, live —— your means 24 He is labouring —— a misapprehension, but he thinks he is labouring —— a good cause and —— the public welfare 25 He once laid me —— an obligation, and therefore I am very unwilling to lay the blame of this affair —— his charge 26 He not only intruded —— my house, but —— my leisure, for I was engaged —— that time —— reading an interesting book 27 The railways intersect —— each other —— this place 28 Let me intercede —— you —— my friend 29 I inquired —— him —— that matter 30 He is impressed —— that notion, and he desires to impress it —— me

II —1 The river —— which I went —— my brother abounds —— fish, we took a boat and rowed —— the stream —— the opposite bank 2 He promised to abide —— the contract, and they relied —— his honour —— its fulfilment But they were disappointed —— their hopes, and found they could never trust their work —— him again 3 He lives —— small cost, and he does so —— abstaining —— every kind of luxury and accustoming himself —— humble fare such as is suitable —— a person —— small income 4 The person who stood —— the judge yesterday was accused —— throwing a stone —— his neighbour's window, but nothing more came —— the matter, and he was acquitted —— the charge imputed —— him 5 A man —— honour will adhere —— his convictions, and act —— a sense —— duty, even if men rail —— him and think him weak —— understanding and wanting —— common sense 6 The intentions —— that man admit —— no doubt, we must agree —— his terms, whether we approve —— them or not, and there is no reason to be anxious —— the result 7 Aim —— doing your duty —— all risks, and do not be uneasy in mind —— the consequences. 8 He was much alarmed —— what he had just heard, and alluded —— it as soon as he arrived —— my house and alighted —— his carriage 9 The ship stopped a little way —— the shore, and an experienced man was at once appointed —— the post of pilot —— bringing her —— port. 10 He had a great affection —— his parents, but he had no taste —— hard work, and was not attentive —— his studies 11 One man complained —— the magistrate —— A's dishonesty, another brought a complaint —— A —— some debt; in fact, A has made many enemies —— himself 12 When you attend school, attend —— your studies What has been the cause —— your idleness hitherto? Surely there was no just cause —— such laziness 13 He took advantage —— my ignorance, but he gained no real advantage —— me in the end 14 I am vexed —— him —— what he has done 15 A man is adapted —— any occupation which

is adapted —— his capacities. 16 I was annoyed —— him —— saying that, and I am not easily annoyed —— trifles

III —1 Whatever you decide ——, stick —— it and do your best —— difficulties. 2 I understand —— all I hear that, though he despairs —— success, nothing will deter him —— his purpose. 3 I differ —— you —— the exact point —— which dogs differ —— wolves in shape or kind But there is no difference of opinion —— their comparative fierceness 4 He is so weak that all food disagrees —— him Care must be taken that he does not die —— weakness. 5 He was deprived —— that very thing —— which he delighted most. 6 I depended —— his coming —— four o'clock, but —— all the hopes I had formed he deviated —— his purpose and did nothing to defend me —— injustice 7 I disapprove —— your way —— working, and must therefore dispense —— your services 8 A blind man cannot distinguish light —— darkness. Death does not distinguish —— rich and poor 9 I can divide this apple —— two persons, but it is too small to be divided —— forty, for it cannot be divided —— forty parts 10 When they had disposed —— all their wares, there was a dispute —— the profits, each man differing —— the other 11 Dissuade him —— this folly, if you can, but I fear he is weak —— his head —— constant overwork and anxiety 12 I will have nothing to do —— a man, who tries to domineer —— every one and cavils —— everything which does not coincide —— his own opinion 13 More things are wrought —— prayer than this world dreams —— 14 He dwells —— a simple minded people,—— the kalpi village,—— the northern part —— the district 15 He dwelt —— a long time —— that subject but no one really knew what he was driving —— 16 The magistrate's decision —— that case was not in accordance —— the evidence we must appeal —— a higher court, where perhaps this slur —— our character will be removed 17 He has an excellent appetite —— his dinner, but no aspiration —— anything higher 18 The hill was veiled —— a mist, and we were tired —— waiting till the mist cleared off, besides being tired —— our exertions 19 I am reconciled —— my opponent, but not —— my losses 20 He was disqualified —— the post on account of age, but he was not disqualified —— competing —— a diploma 21 It is better to be clothed —— rags, than to be clothed —— shame

IV —1 He embarked —— board the steamer, which was to take him —— India, where we intended to embark —— some kind —— trade He was more popular than most men —— the people of the country 2 —— some places the sea encroaches —— the land, —— others the land gains —— the sea This is so well known, that I need not expatiate —— it any further 3 As soon as he emerged —— poverty, he entered —— partnership —— a man —— wealth, and the two then entered —— a grand commercial career 4 I will exchange this book —— you —— another, if you have a good one to offer me —— exchange 5 He rejoiced —— his success, and exulted —— his fallen rival 6 I am not familiar —— that subject; so I cannot fall in —— your views, or engage —— this controversy any longer 7 He fought —— the robber —— his life. The Spaniards

allied —— the English fought —— the French —— what is called the Peninsular war 8 While the cat was running —— the mouse, the mouse ran —— its hole and freed itself —— danger 9 Be so good as to furnish me —— a copy of that letter Furnish medicine —— the sick 10 A glance —— this letter will convince you —— its contents that he is grasping —— your money Every one will grieve —— your loss 11 He increased —— wisdom —— the increase of age, and at last grew —— the follies of his boyhood and youth Thus —— degrees he rose —— eminence —— his profession 12 A young man should be —— his guard —— bad company, and beware —— falling —— their evil ways 13 He loitered —— this place —— the greater part —— the day, sometimes leaning —— the wall, and sometimes strolling —— the opposite side —— the street 14 Madagascar is an island —— the east coast of Africa The French could not prevail —— the inhabitants to surrender —— an effort 15 We must get rid —— this difficult business at once Let us inquire —— the danger, and be ready —— the evil day 16 Your words are strange and quite —— my comprehension It is foolish to say what no one can understand, and I thought you were —— such folly 17 This leaves no stain —— his character, and no further prejudice —— him should be entertained, as he has now cleared himself —— all the faults imputed —— him 18 I have no liking —— that man in fact, I have taken a decided dislike —— him For all that, I wish to deal fairly —— him 19 My relations —— him are now quite friendly, and there is no ill feeling left in relation —— that dispute 20 Did you beg pardon —— the teacher? No, I do not like to entreat any one —— mercy 21 I cannot agree —— you in this matter, and therefore I do not agree —— your proposal 22 I blush —— my own fault more than I blush —— your reputation 23 Rhetoric might be compared —— poetry 24 I am —— need —— good advice, but there is no need —— your reproaches 25 There would be no use —— my purchasing that article for I have no use —— it 26 I have failed —— my purpose because I failed —— my first attempt, and was not allowed to make another 27 He is invested —— full authority from me to invest my money —— that speculation 28 He is profuse —— his promises, but not at all profuse —— his money

V —1 You must apologise —— him —— what you have done, even though the act was not done —— any bad intention 2 You will have to answer —— your master —— that mistake, and you may hope —— pardon, if you ask —— it —— the proper way 3 You can appeal —— a higher court and apply —— a fresh trial, but it will be wiser to appoint some man who is versed —— such matters to act as arbitrator —— you and the opposite party 4 To continue arguing and disputing —— a man, when you are certain that he will not assent —— your own views, is not wise —— you men will only blame you —— wasting your time, and ascribe your conduct —— obstinacy 5 While he was battling —— the sea, the wind rose and the waves beat —— the shore he begged —— help —— those persons who were —— the boat, and these pulled him up —— the water 6. I have bestowed great attention —— that subject, and I bethought myself —— one thing, namely, that a bridge must be built at once —— the river, and that this bridge should be —— iron, not ——

wood or brick. 7 One man boasts —— his wealth, another prides himself —— his wisdom we cannot help blushing —— persons who are so wanting —— modesty and who cannot blush —— their own faults 8 India borders —— Burma, and is separated —— it partly —— the Bay of Bengal, which lies —— them, and partly —— a line —— mountains situated —— the north —— the Bay 9 A man should not brood —— his troubles, however much he may be burdened —— them 10 She burst —— tears, when she found that he did not care —— her affection 11 I am indifferent —— heat and cold, because I have a strong chest and there is no need —— caution, I am sorry, however, that you have need —— so much caution —— every change —— the weather 12 He has a great capacity —— mathematics, and in respect —— this subject his teacher has a great respect —— his abilities 13 In consideration —— the fact that no one is perfect, you ought to show more consideration —— other men's weaknesses, though there is no need to connive —— their faults

VI —1 A drowning man will catch —— a straw, and if he escapes, you need not caution him again —— the danger of throwing himself —— the water and bathing —— his depth 2 Cease —— speaking evil —— others, and cling —— charity You will yourself be judged —— your judgment —— others 3 It is useless to clamour —— what we cannot have Do not complain —— your lot Be content —— what you have already, and leave the future —— Providence 4 An eye —— an eye and a tooth —— a tooth this was the old law, but it has now been superseded —— the duty —— forgiveness 5 They brought a complaint —— the magistrate —— their neighbour, who —— asking their consent had dug a hole almost —— the foundations —— their house and thus rendered it unsafe —— a dwelling place The magistrate complied —— their request and issued a summons —— him He sentenced him —— a fine —— trespass 6 A man who confides —— a friend will not conceal anything —— him, but will confer —— him —— all matters —— real importance 7 The wing —— a bird corresponds —— the arm —— a man 8 I had a long correspondence —— him —— the wisdom of conforming —— custom, but he did not yield —— my advice, and remained unconvinced —— his error A man convinced —— his will is —— the same opinion still, as you know —— the proverb You cannot cure a man —— his prejudices 9 The culprit craved —— pardon, and succeeded —— getting it 10 One cock crowed —— the other —— its victory, as one man boasts —— having conquered another, and exults —— his defeated rival 11 You cannot compete —— a man who is superior —— yourself —— resources It is better to acquiesce —— the fact that he has the advantage —— you 12 That trader there, who deals —— cotton goods, has dealt hardly —— his customers, and they must not concede —— his demands —— future 13 The point you spoke —— will be attended to But if you ever touch —— it again, I hope you will speak at length —— the wider question —— which that point hinges 14 This is an exception —— the usual rule I hope, therefore, you will make an exception —— my son's case, and show some forbearance —— his inexperience 15 Live amenably —— reason, and independently —— other men's help 16 It is better even to be blind —— an eye, than to be blind —— one's own

faults. 17 He is committed —— a policy which he now dislikes, and is not at all certain —— its success 18 He is blessed —— his children, who have all turned out well, but he is not blessed —— good health 19 The ship is bound —— India, and is bound——contract to arrive —— Calcutta —— the 18th of July 20 He is accountable —— his master —— the money 21 I do not concur —— you —— that opinion 22 The decision —— the dispute is left to me, but I have not yet given my decision —— the matter 23 I have had much experience —— sicknesses, but none —— curing them 24 He guesses —— his answers, for he has no genius —— mathematics, in fact, he is not a genius —— anything 25 In old times an irruption was made —— England —— the Danes, who —— first were more than a match —— the Saxons 26 I have no influence —— that man, and therefore my advice has no influence —— his actions

CHAPTER XIX —CONJUNCTIONS AND CONJUNCTIONAL PHRASES

The distinction between Co-ordinative and Subordinative Conjunctions has been shown already in chapter viii The present chapter shows how individual Conjunctions or Conjunctional phrases can be idiomatically used —

(1) **Both and** —This is an emphatic way of expressing the union of two facts or events —

He is *both* a fool *and* a knave (He is not a fool only, not a knave only, but both at once)

Note —If one fact is more important than the other, the more important one should be mentioned last —

He was *both* degraded from his class, *and* expelled for one year from the school

(2) **As well as, no less than** —In adding one word or sentence to another, they give emphasis to the *first* of the two —

He *as well as* you is guilty (=He is guilty as well as you are guilty)

He is *no less* guilty *than* you (=He is guilty *no less than* you are guilty)

(3) **Not only but** or **but also** —In adding one word or sentence to another, these give emphasis to the *second* of the two —

Not only I, *but* all other men declare this to be true

That man was *not only* accused of the crime, *but also* convicted of it by the magistrate

(4) **Nay** —This has sometimes the force of "not only but also" by appearing to negative the previous statement, it places the second one in a stronger light —

He was accused *nay* convicted (accused, and what is more, convicted) of the crime by the magistrate.

(5) **Or rather** —This has very much the same force as "nay" It corrects the previous statement in order to place the second one in a stronger light —

He was injured, *or rather* ruined altogether, by the failure of that bank

(6) **Now** —This Conjunction (which must not be confounded with the adverb of time) introduces a new remark in *explanation* (not simply in continuation) of a previous one —

And Pilate said unto them, "Will ye have this man or Barabbas?" They answered, "Not this man, but Barabbas" *Now* Barabbas was a robber —*New Testament*

(7) **Well**—This word (when it is used as a Conjunction, and not as an Adverb) introduces a new remark implying satisfaction, regret, surprise, or any other feeling of the mind suggested by the previous remark —

You have finished the work that was given you ,—*well*, you have done a good deal better than you usually do, and I am much pleased with your improvement

(8) **No sooner than, as soon as** —These two Conjunctional phrases mean the same thing, except that what is the Principal clause with the former becomes the Subordinate clause with the latter, and *vice versa* —

Principal Clause	*Subordinate Clause*
(*a*) He had no *sooner* heard the news,	*than* he wept aloud
(*b*) He wept aloud,	*as soon as* he heard the news.

(9) **Scarcely (or hardly) before, scarcely (or hardly) when.** —These two Conjunctional phrases mean the same thing , and the meaning is identical with that shown under (8, *a*) —

He had *scarcely* (or *hardly*) heard the news, *before* he wept aloud
He had *scarcely* (or *hardly*) heard the news, *when* he wept aloud

(10) **Until, as long as, while** —To express *time before* we use "until" , to express *time how long* we use "as long as" or "while" But Indian students are very apt to use "until," where they ought to use "as soon as" —

Erroneous	*Corrected*
Until you work hard, you will improve	*As long as* you work hard, you will improve
He continued lazy, *as long as* he was seventeen years old	He continued lazy, *until* he was seventeen years old
Until it rains, we must stop inside the house.	*As long as* it rains, we must stop inside the house

Erroneous.	*Corrected*
Until you stop here, you will find no time for work	*As long as* you stop here, you will find no time for work.
Until the world lasts, the earth will go round the sun	*While* or *so long as* the world lasts, the earth will go round the sun

(11) **Unless, if**—The conjunction "unless" means "if not." But in practice it is often confounded with "if"

Erroneous	*Corrected*
Unless you do not work hard, you will be plucked	*If* you do not work hard, you will be plucked
Unless you have no objection, I will come to morrow	*If* you have no objection, I will come to morrow

(12) **Because, in order that**—To express a *cause* or *reason* we use "because" To express a *purpose* we use "in order that," "so that," etc But they are often confounded in practice

Erroneous	*Corrected*
Men work, *because* they may earn a living	Men work, *that* or *so that* or *in order that* they may earn a living
He took medicine, *because* he might get well	He took medicine, *so that* he might get well
He started early, *because* he might not be late	He started early, *that* he might not be late

(13) **Since**—The use of this word as an Adverb, a Conjunction, or a Preposition has been explained already (see § 402) The student must bear in mind that when it is used as a Conjunction it is *never preceded*, and is *always followed* by a verb in the Past Indefinite tense

Erroneous	*Corrected*
Two years *passed* since my father *has died*	Two years *have passed* since my father *died*
It *was* a week since the holidays commenced	It *is* a week since the holidays *commenced*
A month *passed* since *I am coming* here	A month *has passed* since I *came* here
Two hours *elapsed* since he *had fallen* asleep	Two hours *have elapsed* since he *fell* asleep

(14) **Before.**—The use of this word as an Adverb, a Conjunction, or a Preposition has been explained already (see § 404) The student must bear in mind that whenever it is used as a Conjunction with reference to some *future* event, it is never followed by a verb in the Future tense, if the verb in the Principal clause is future

Erroneous	*Corrected*
The crops will die, before the rains *will* fall	The crops will die, before the rains *fall* or *have fallen*
You will leave India, before three months *will* pass	You will leave India, before three months *have passed*

(15) **That**.—This conjunction should never be used before a sentence in the Direct Narration, nor before Interrogative adverbs or pronouns in the Indirect Narration.

Erroneous	*Corrected*
He said *that* "I shall soon be there"	He said, "I shall soon be there"
He asked *that* how long you would be absent	He asked how long you would be absent
Tell me *that* whether you will soon return	Tell me *whether* you will soon return
I wish to know *that* how much this book will cost	I wish to know how much this book will cost

(16) **Or**.—This conjunction has four separate meanings:—

(*a*) An alternative or exclusive sense (§ 249, *b*):—

Either this man sinned *or* his parents.

(*b*) An inclusive or non-alternative sense. Here the "or" is nearly equivalent to "and":

Such trades as those of leather, *or* carpentry, *or* smith's work flourish best in large cities.

(*c*) To indicate that one word is synonymous or nearly synonymous with another:—

The tribes *or* castes of India are very numerous.

(*d*) As an equivalent to "otherwise" (§ 249, *b*):—

You must work hard, or (=otherwise=if you do not work hard) you will lose your place in the class.

(17) **If**.—This conjunction has three different uses or meanings:—

(*a*) For asking a question in the Indirect form of narration. In this sense it is equivalent to "whether":—

I asked him *if* (=whether) he would return soon.

(*b*) For expressing a condition or supposition:—

If you return to us to-morrow (=in case you return, or in the event of your returning), we shall be glad to see you.

(*c*) For making an admission or concession. (Here the verb must be Indicative, because it concedes something as a *fact*):—

If I *am* dull (=though I admit that I am dull), I am at least industrious. (I am dull *indeed*, *but* nevertheless industrious.)

Considering how ill I was, it is no wonder *if* (=that) I made some mistakes yesterday.

(18) **But** —The uses of this word as a Preposition have been shown already in § 245 Its uses as a Conjunction and as an Adverb have still to be shown

(*a*) As a Subordinative conjunction —

(1) It never rains *but* it pours —*Proverb*
(It never rains *except that* it pours, or It never rains without pouring)

(2) Perdition catch my soul, *but* I love thee —*Shakspeare*
(Perdition catch my soul *if* I do *not* love thee)

(3) It cannot be *but* Nature hath some Director of infinite power —*Hooker*
(It cannot be, or it is impossible, *that* Nature hath *not* a Director, etc)

Note —This use of "but" as a Subordinative conjunction has arisen from the omission of the conjunction 'that If "that' were expressed, "but" would retain its original character as a preposition signifying "except," and the Noun clause following it would be its object

(*b*) As a Subordinative conjunction, with some Demonstrative pronoun understood after it. It then has the force of "*who* or *which* + *not*" (§ 133) —

No one saw that sight *but* went away shocked
(No one saw that sight *except that* he went away, or *who* did *not* go away, shocked)

Note —It was not always the custom to omit the Demonstrative pronoun after "but" Thus we have in Shakspeare —

I found no one *but he* was true to me

(We should now say, "I found no one *but* was true to me)

(*c*) As an Adversative conjunction of the Co ordinative class —

He is rich, *but* discontented

(*d*) As an Adverb in the sense of "only" —

There is *but* (= only) a plank between us and death
We can *but* die (nothing worse than death can befall us)

(19) **While, or whilst** —"While" is properly a noun signifying "time" The conjunction "while" is an abridged form of the phrase "the while that," etc., and in this phrase the noun "while" is an Adverbial objective (see § 287)

The Conjunction "while" has three separate uses or meanings —

(*a*) To denote the *simultaneity* of two events —

You can sit down, *while* (at the same time that) I stand

(*b*) To denote *indefinite duration* —

While (so long as) the world lasts, human nature will remain what it is

(*c*) To denote some kind of antithesis or contrast —

Men of understanding seek after truth, *while* (=whereas) fools despise knowledge

(20) **Lest**.—This is a contraction of "by which the less." In older English it was followed by the present Subjunctive :—

{Take heed, *lest* you *fall*
{Take heed, *that* you may *not* fall

Note —The Subjunctive is here used in the Optative sense (see § 190),—that is, in the sense of wish or purpose

In modern English the verb following this conjunction is formed by the Auxiliary verb "should" —

{He worked hard, *lest* he *should* fail
{He worked hard, *that* he *might* not fail

(21) **As**.—Since this word is a Relative adverb, it is also a Conjunction (see § 18, 3)

Its uses and meanings as a Conjunction can be seen from the following examples (see also chapter xi p 130)

(*a*) *Time* —

He trembled *as* (=at what time, or while) he spoke

(*b*) *Manner* —

Do not act *as* (=in what manner) he did

(*c*) *State* or *Condition* —

He took it just *as* (=in what state) it was

(*d*) *Extent* --

He is not so clever as (to what extent) you are

(*e*) *Contrast* or *Concession* resulting from the sense of extent —

{Hot *as* the sun is (to whatever extent the sun is hot), we must leave the house
{However hot the sun is, we must leave the house
{Although the sun is ever so hot, we must leave the house

(*f*) *Cause* —

As (from what cause or for the reason that) rain has fallen, the air is cooler

(22) **However** —This is a Co ordinative conjunction, when it stands alone, but Subordinative, when it qualifies some adjective or adverb

(*a*) Co-ordinative —

All men were against him, he kept his courage, *however*, to the last.

(*b*) **Subordinative** —

However poor a man is, he need not be dishonest.
However well you may work, you cannot demand more than your stipulated pay

(23) **Indeed . . . but**—These go together as a pair. They emphasise the contrast between the first and the second statement (see No 17, *c*)

The robbers *indeed* were caught and convicted, *but* nothing that they had stolen could be found

(24) There are certain words and phrases signifying **Time** or **Place**, which when they stand *alone* are simply adverbs. But when they are used *in pairs* for the sake of contrasting one time with another time, or one place with another place, they may be included among Conjunctions, since they join one sentence to another by way of contrast

(1) On the battle field there was a dead body *here* (=in one place), and a dying man *there* (=in another place)
(2) *On the one side* all was quiet, *on the other* there was nothing but confusion and disorder
(3) *On the one hand* he spoke the truth, *on the other* he broke a secret (This might be written - "He spoke the truth *indeed*, *but* in doing so he broke a secret")
(4) *Now* (=at one time) he laughs, *then* (=at another time) he cries

(25) Certain Prepositions and Adverbs are sometimes used as Conjunctions —

Supposing the rain does not fall, we cannot commence ploughing
Now you have packed up your clothes, you are ready to start
Provided you give a receipt, I will pay the bill

Note —In all such cases the conjunction "*that*" is understood after the preposition or adverb. Similarly the prepositions *before*, *after*, *since*, *until*, *for*, *but*, were followed by "*that*" in earlier English. By the omission of this word, they were changed from prepositions to conjunctions. "Provided" is elliptical for "it being provided that"

(26) **When, where.**—These conjunctions or Relative adverbs (in the same way as the Relative pronouns "who" or "which") can be used in two very distinct senses —

(*a*) The Restrictive or qualifying (§ 134) —

The house *where* (=in which) we lived has fallen down
The hour *when* (=at which) you arrived was four P M

(*b*) The Continuative or simply connective —

On 24th January we reached Calcutta, *where* (=and there) we stayed a fortnight
We stayed at Calcutta for two weeks, *when* (=and then) I received a letter which compelled me to return to Hoogly

(27) **Though, yet.**—The conjunction "though," when it is followed by a verb in the Subjunctive mood, expresses a doubt; and, when it is followed by a verb in the Indicative mood, it expresses a fact:—

Though he *punish* me (even if he should punish me, which may or may not happen), yet will I trust in him.
Though he *has denied* the deed, no one will believe his word.

(28) **At the same time, all the same.**—These phrases are used as Co-ordinative conjunctions of the Adversative class, and mean the same thing as "nevertheless":—

There is much point in what you say; *at the same time* (= nevertheless) we adhere to our own opinion.
There is much point in what you say; we adhere to our own opinion *all the same*.

Note.—"At the same time" generally stands at the beginning of its sentence, while "all the same" generally stands at the end of it.

(29) **According as.**—

The plan will succeed or not *according as* it is judiciously managed.
The phrase "according as" means "according *to the extent to which*," or "according to the manner in which."

(30) **As sure as.**—

As sure as you are sitting there, you will have to go.
Here "sure" is an adverb = surely:—"Surely to that extent to which," etc.

(31) **In case.**—This is equivalent to "supposing," and is an elliptical phrase for "in the case in which":—

In case we fail, we must have something to fall back upon.

(32) **In order that, so that.**—If there is any fear of ambiguity in the meaning of "that," the addition of the words "in order" or "so" shows clearly that *purpose* is the sense intended:—

He shouted at the top of his voice, *in order that* he might be heard.

(33) **Inasmuch as,** or **in as much as.**—This phrase denotes cause or reason:—

He yielded to the invader, *inasmuch as* (= because) his army was thoroughly defeated.

(34) **Directly.**—This is an adverb qualifying the conjunction "when" understood. It is equivalent to "as soon as":—

Directly I heard the news, I hastened to the spot.

(35) **So that.**—This phrase is sometimes used to express a condition:—

You can do whatever you like, *so that* (provided, or on condition that) you injure no one but yourself

Conjunctions less commonly used

(36) **Except, without, against**.—Once "except" and "without" were used for "unless," and "against" as equivalent to "against the time in which" —

Except ye repent, ye shall all likewise perish
You will not live long *without* you take exercise
Have everything ready *against* he returns home

(37) **Albeit**.—This signifies "although" —

Albeit all is fair, there lacketh something still

(38) **Howbeit**.—This signifies "nevertheless," "however that may be" —

The Moor is of a constant nature, *howbeit* I endure him not.

(39) **Nathless**.—Used in poetry for "nevertheless."

(40) **Or ere, or ever**.—These signify "before" —

Would I had met my dearest foe in heaven, *or ever* I had seen that day, Horatio!—*Shakspeare*

It is generally explained that "or" is a corruption of "ere," which means "before" Hence "or ere" is merely a reduplication, and in "or ever" the "ever" is a suffix, as in "whatever"

(41) **In that**, *in the fact that, since*.—Here "that" is the conjunction of apposition, and the Noun-clause following it is the object to the preposition "in" —

In that he died, he died unto sin once —*New Testament*

(42) **In so much that**.—This denotes effect or consequence —

The riots continued all day, *in so much that* (with the result that) it was dangerous to leave the house

(43) **For as much as**.—This denotes cause or reason, and is equivalent to "since" —

For as much as many have taken in hand to do this, further help is not required

(44) **An if**.—In older English this was sometimes used for "if," and it is still used in poetry,—always in the Conditional sense (see No 17, *b*)

Note.—The "an" is a contraction of "and," which was once used to combine two clauses conditionally as well as assertively When this sense of "and" or "an" was forgotten, the "if" was inserted to remove any doubt as to the meaning

A.—Insert Co-ordinative conjunctions in the places indicated by ——

1 Hear the opinions of other men, —— form thine own judgment.
2 He was not surpassed —— by you —— any one else
3 We have —— heard —— read about that matter, we are —— in total ignorance, —— unable to form an opinion about it
4 We see poverty on all sides, —— discontent nowhere.
5 He blamed them for their rashness, —— relieved their wants
6 The flowers have come out before their season, —— I have never seen such a thing before
7 They were defeated indeed, —— not disgraced
8 He came upon me very suddenly, —— I had no time to run off —— hide
9 You are not a man to quarrel —— we had better come to terms
10 Glamis hath murdered sleep —— he shall sleep no more
11 The approach of the horsemen was now beyond doubt, —— a cloud of dust was seen in the distance, —— a tramping of horses' feet was distinctly heard
12 In the discharge of his duty he was a strict —— just man
13 The sound of a gun near at hand startled —— my horse —— myself
14 Stone walls do not make a prison, —— iron bars a cage
15 The rain comes —— goes in slight showers, —— the heavy rains have not yet set in
16 My own house —— yours is built of good lime —— burnt brick, —— it will not crumble to pieces sooner than yours
17 He has given each of you a sum of money, —— he has left you all his books —— all his gardens
18 Julius Cæsar was murdered in Rome by a gang of conspirators, —— Julius Cæsar was the first of the Roman Emperors
19 He fell suddenly down in a fainting fit several persons rushed forward to support him, —— they were too late
20 He has run away with all the money entrusted to him, —— what steps shall we take? Shall we search for him ourselves, —— shall we employ the police?
21 Civil wars have been usually marked —— by the fierceness —— by the stubborn pertinacity of the contending parties
22 Heaven and earth may pass away, —— my words shall never pass away
23 My son last term was —— idle —— in bad health, —— he was not promoted at the end of the term
24 He paid off his creditors in time, —— he would certainly have been imprisoned for debt
25 He declared he would never forsake his post, —— he fled away at the first sign of danger
26 Prince Azgid was good natured, handsome, and clever, —— he was of rather a timid disposition
27 This poor man must be off his head, —— he laughs at one time, —— weeps at another
28 The temple stands in the middle of a fine masonry tank, ——

a marble bridge leads up to it —— this temple was built by an ancient Hindu Raja

29. Do not take any part —— in his amusements —— his plots, —— you will get into trouble by being seen in his company

30 They were determined to obtain his consent —— by flattery, —— by force, —— by persuasion, —— they never succeeded after all.

31 My father made me go to school regularly every day; —— I should not now be so successful in life as I am

32 He was so shocked at the sad news that he —— spoke —— wept, —— went away in silence —— was not seen again that day

33 I hope you will remember to be just —— generous to those who are dependent on you

34 I must speak out, —— I shall blame myself ever afterwards

35 He is a worthless fellow, possessed —— of ability —— industry —— honesty —— common sense, —— what sort of punishment can be inflicted on such a creature?

36 Give thine ear to every man, —— thy voice to few

B —*Insert Subordinative conjunctions or Relative or Interrogative adverbs in the places indicated by* ——

1 The wind beat against the house, —— a part of the roof was blown off

2 The bulls, —— they stood together, were a match for the lion, but —— they separated from each other, they fell an easy prey

3 Tell me candidly —— you like my composition, and —— you think it shows signs of future promise

4 No sooner had he gone to bed —— a telegram was brought in

5 Elephants are not full grown —— they are fifty or sixty years of age

6 It is of no use for me to shoot, —— I am sure to miss the mark

7 What can be gained in a place —— every one is poor?

8 This dreadful thought pursues me —— I go

9 He was received with respect —— he went, and listened to attentively —— he began to speak

10 Remain —— thou art, —— I return

11 Be ye wise —— serpents, but harmless —— doves

12 The river had risen so high, —— we could not cross it even in a boat

13 Present evils are sometimes less distressing —— expected ones

14 Evil is meant by that man's words, smooth —— they are

15 The more we study the human mind, the less able are we to understand —— it came into existence or —— it had its source

16 I am quite as much ashamed —— you are

17 I cannot fear any evil, —— thou art near

18 I will keep it by me night and day, —— any harm should come to it.

19 We are glad —— he has succeeded so well, —— he has thoroughly deserved it.

20 His success is the more creditable, —— he had no help from any one, —— many offered to help him

21 At length the moon arose, —— it was almost hidden by clouds.

22 They shut up all the shops, —— the travellers might not be able to take anything by force

23 Some men eat —— they may live, others live —— they may eat

24 I am ready to start, —— you may desire to do so

25 The terrified women would have fled more quickly —— they did, —— they had not been burdened with baggage

26 We can be happy, —— we are poor, —— we are contented

27 I shall die of this disease, —— I first die of hunger

28 You have lied so often, —— no one will trust you, even —— you speak the truth

29 I will not rise from my seat —— I am bidden

30 He was forced to get up, —— he liked it —— not

31 On first coming here, —— I was quite honest, every one distrusted me so much, —— for a long time I found it difficult to live

32 He gave the boy a prize, not —— he had actually earned one, but —— he might be induced to work harder next term

33 Agriculture is the foundation of all wealth, —— food is raised by this means, and no one, —— clever he may be, can live without food

34 Past errors may be regretted, but past moments, —— they have once fled, are fled for ever and cannot be recalled

35 The savages, —— they saw the ship approaching their island, believed —— it was some great animal moving on the water, —— they had never seen a ship before

36 The peasant grows pale, —— he sees a cloud of locusts approach

37 I do not doubt —— you will succeed in time, —— only you will persevere and trust —— your labours will be at last rewarded

38 She turned away in disgust, —— she was unable to bear the sight any longer

39 I will pay you down all that you ask, —— you sign a receipt on a stamped paper

40 They were willing to commence work and begged —— they might be ordered to do so, —— they were still weak from the recent attack of fever

41 The robber fled —— he heard the shouts, but he escaped —— any one had time to see his face

42 Seed must be sown —— it will germinate, and flowers must bloom for some time —— they can turn into seed

43 He walked on, —— he was so tired —— he could walk no farther then he sat down and waited —— food was brought to him

44 Do —— you are told, and then no one can blame you, —— a mistake has been made

45 Tired —— you are, you will finish your journey by twelve o'clock, —— you stop nowhere on the road

C — *Correct, where necessary, the Conjunctions used in the following sentences, or change the words in such a way as to make the Conjunction and entire sentence correct* —

1 He was hopeful as well as confident

2 No sooner he died, his sons quarrelled over his property

3. He scarcely returned home, before his son was taken seriously ill

4 He was not only convicted, but also accused

5 He said in his letter that "I shall arrive at the station by ten o'clock"

6 Unless you do not take care, you will fall into debt

7 He started early, because he might not be late

8 One year passed, since I first came to live in this place

9 We must have more sun, before the mangoes will ripen

10 Until you remain in camp, your men and horses will get no rest

11 He inquired of me that when I intended returning home

12 As long as you amend your ways, you have no chance of becoming prosperous or happy

13 When I give to one, I must give to all

14 I asked him to tell me that how much he paid a month for his son's tuition

15 No sooner he heard of his son's success, than he was taken ill with fever

16 Unless he does not work harder, he will certainly fail

17 Until you do not begin to make a better use of your time, I shall not cease to find fault with you

18 He was sent to Bombay, because he might get the best medical advice

19 He ought to start at once, lest he may become too ill to travel, if he stays here any longer

20 She disliked to be questioned that how old she was

D —*Substitute equivalent Conjunctions or phrases wherever you can in the following sentences* —

1 He no less than you was guilty of that crime

2 No sooner had the clock struck twelve, than all the doors were closed

3 I am a passionate admirer of good poetry, while you prefer good prose

4 He had scarcely sat down to breakfast, when a letter came in that compelled him to leave the house

5 I occupied the house that we were speaking of for four years, and then I left it, because I found one that suited me better

6 Seeing that all men are liable to make mistakes, you must not be surprised, if I made one yesterday

7 Unless you are very careful you will run into debt

8 He rose at six A M on that day, lest he should be too late for the train

9 Discouraged as we have been, we must still persevere

10 Please let me know if you succeeded at last

11 While human nature continues to be what it is, men must guard against selfishness

12 Be careful of that man, or he will cheat you

13 Their strength, or speed, or vigilance were given in aid of our defects —*Cowper*

14 If the Puritans in the time of King Charles suppressed bear-fighting, this was not done out of mercy to the bears

15. Not only was he commended, but rewarded for what he had done

16. He was injured, nay ruined by the dishonesty of his partner.

17. Never dream but ill must come of it.—*Shelley.*

18. As you are now eight years old, your education must be no longer postponed

19 I will take an early walk every day, that I may recover my health

20 Supposing you resign this post, what better one do you expect to get in its place?

21 Now the rain has fallen the seed that was lately sown will commence to sprout

22 However rich a man may be, his wealth leaves him as much as ever a prey to ill temper and disease

23 Themistocles was a traitor to his country, while Miltiades was surnamed the Just

24 He was not refreshed, considering that he passed a very sleepless night

25 I do not doubt but you are wrong

26 Tell me whether I am right

27 In case you are taken ill on the way, a dose of this medicine will put you right

28 Money or your life

29 The wind was blowing a heavy gale, as the ship left port and went out to sea

30 At one time he works, at another he relapses into idleness

31 He drove indeed as fast as he could, but not fast enough to catch the train

32 Except ye repent, ye shall all likewise perish —*New Testament*

33 We halted four days at Patna and then we started for Benares

34 They threatened to fine him 100 rupees, unless he kept a cleaner yard

35 He is an active, and therefore a healthy man

36 All men are mortal so he will die some day like the rest of us

37 Though every one else deny thee, yet will I never deny thee —*New Testament*

CHAPTER XX —MISCELLANEOUS WORDS, PHRASES, AND CONSTRUCTIONS

(1) **All of them, both of them** —

All of them (=they all) consented
Both of them (=they both) consented

In phrases like "some of them," "one of them," "two of them," the "*of*" has a partitive sense. Such a sense is, however, impossible where "all" or "both" are concerned We must therefore conclude that phrases like "all of them," "both of them," have come into use by analogy

(2) **And** in Interrogative sentences —

And art thou cold and lowly laid?—*Scott*

In such sentences the "and" does not join its own sentence

to a previous one, but introduces a form of exclamation —"Can it be true that thou art cold and lowly laid?"

(3) The use of "**as**" before a noun —

(a) This box will serve us *as* a table
(b) We will not have this man *as* our chief

The ellipses can be filled up as follows —

(a) This box will serve us *as* a table (would serve us, if we had a table)
(b) We will not have this man *as* (in the way in which we would have) our chief

(4) The use of "**as**" before an adjective —

He considered the report *as* false

That is, "He considered the report *as* (he would consider, if it were) false"

(5) The use of "**as**" before "*if*" and "*though*" —

(a) He clung to it *as if* his life depended on it
(b) He clung to it *as though* his life depended on it

That is, (a) "He clung to it, as (he would have clung to it, if) his life depended on it" (b) "He clung to it as (fast as he could have clung to it, for he could not have clung to it faster) though his life depended on it"

(6) **As** ... **as, so** ... **as** —

He is *as* clever *as* his brother (*Affirm*)
He is not *as* clever *as* his brother (*Negat*)
He is not *so* clever *as* his brother (*Negat*)

All that can be said is that "*as* ... *as*" is used in both affirmative and negative sentences while "*so* ... *as*" is used in negative ones only This is purely a matter of custom or idiom, and no reason can be given for it

(7) **As thee, as me** —

The nations not so blest as *thee* —*Thomson*
Even such weak minister as *me*
May the oppressor bruise —*Scott*

These uses of the Objective case, if we consider "*as*" to be here a conjunction, are grammatical blunders, for the right construction would be "not so blest as *thou* (art blest)," and "such weak minister as *I* (am weak)" But it has been suggested by one writer that "*as*" may here be regarded as a preposition of comparison followed by a pronoun in the Objective case In colloquial English this use of "as" is common, but careful writers now avoid it

(8) **As usual** —

He came at four o'clock, *as usual*,

"As" is here used as a Relative for "which," and the verb "*is*" is understood after it:—"He came at four o'clock, which (his coming at four) is or was usual (with him)."

(9) **At best, at its best,** or **at the best**:—

> *At best* he is only a moderate speaker.
> He was *at his best* this morning.

In Superlative phrases of very frequent occurrence, such as "at best," "at worst," "at first," "at last," "at most," "at least," no pronoun or article is placed between the preposition and the adjective, unless we wish to particularise.

But in similarly constructed phrases, which are of less frequent occurrence, a pronoun or the Definite article should be inserted:—

The wind is *at its loudest* or *the loudest*. The storm is *at its fiercest*. To-day the patient is *at his weakest*. The season is now *at its loveliest*. The air is now *at its hottest*.

(10) **At ten years old, at four miles distant**:—

(1) My son was *ten years old* when he died.
(2) My son died *at ten years of age*.
(3) My son died *at ten years old*.
(1) My house is *four miles distant* from the sea.
(2) My house is *at four miles' distance* from the sea.
(3) My house is *at four miles distant* from the sea.

Sentences (1) and (2) in both sets of examples are quite correct. Sentence (3) has arisen from a confusion between the constructions in (1) and (2). Such a construction is not grammatically correct; and, though it is used by some writers and speakers, it is best to avoid it.

(11) **Bid fair to,** etc.:—

This institution *bids fair* (= makes a fair or good promise) to flourish for many years to come.

Here the adjective "fair" qualifies some noun implied in the verb "bid":—"bids a fair bidding or promise."

(12) **But he.**

What stays (=supports) had I *but they*?—*Shakspear.*
And was he not the tail? 'Twas none but *he*.—*William Tayler.*
The boy stood on the burning deck,
Whence all but *he* had fled.—*Mrs. Hemans.*

The Nominative after "but" has arisen from a confusion between the conjunctional use of "but" and its prepositional origin:—"Whence all had fled, *but he* had not fled,"—that is, all had fled except him.

(13) **But what** —

(*a*) I cannot say *but what* you may be right
(*b*) Not *but what* he did his best

Here "what" has come into use as a substitute for "that." In both sentences "but" is a preposition, to which the following Noun-clause is the object (see § 241, *c*)

(*a*) This sentence could be reworded thus —"I cannot say anything *except* or *against* that-you-are-right,"—that is, anything to the contrary of your being right

(*b*) This sentence is elliptical The ellipse would be filled up as follows —"I do not say anything except that he did his best, or to the contrary of his having done his best"

Note —The substitution of "*what*" for "*that* after the preposition "but" occurs only after the verbs "say" or "believe" It does not occur after any other verbs

(14) **By thousands, by little, by himself**, etc —

(*a*) The white ants came streaming out *by thousands*
(*b*) The water oozes out little *by little*
(*c*) He went out of the room *by himself*

From denoting instrumentality, the preposition "by" came to denote manner or number, in which sense it often does the work of a Distributive adjective (see § 352, *a*) In (*a*) "by thousands" means "in the manner or to the number of thousands,"—that is, "a thousand at a time," or "one thousand after another" In (*b*) "little by little" is elliptical for "by little by little", as in Pope —

Loth to enrich me with too quick replies,
By little and by little (he) drops his lies.

In (*c*) the phrase "by himself," which is often used for "alone," is founded on the analogy of the above phrases —"He went out by himself,"—that is, "he went out himself at a time," or "he went out *alone*, unaccompanied by any one else"

(15) **Came to pass, came to be considered**, etc —

In this construction (which is very common), the Infinitive is Gerundial, and the "to" denotes *effect* or *result* On this use of the preposition "to" before a noun, see § 415 (35), on its use in the same sense with the Gerundial Infinitive, see § 196 (*a*)

(16) **Can but, cannot but** —

(*a*) We *can but* die
(*b*) We *cannot but* die

In (*a*) the word "but" is an adverb "We can *only* die,"—

that is, nothing worse than death can befall us. In (*b*) the word "but" retains its original character as a preposition — "We cannot do anything *except* die" Here "die" is the Noun-Infinitive used as object to the preposition "but" (see § 193, *f*)

(17) **Come, go** —

(*a*) Are you *coming* to the meeting to day?
(*b*) Are you *going* to the meeting to day?

In sentence (*a*) the use of the verb "*come*" implies that the questioner himself intends to be present at the meeting, and he inquires whether the person addressed will be present also The person addressed might say in reply, "Yes, I shall be there with you", or "No, I shall not join you there."

In sentence (*b*) the use of the verb "*go*" is perfectly general, and hence the person addressed might reply —"Yes, I am going to the meeting, are you?" or "No, I am not going, are you?"

"*Come*" means motion *towards* a person or place, "*go*" means motion *from* a person or place Thus we say, "The sun is *coming* up," or "the sun is *going* down", "The plant is *coming* into *flower*," or "the plant is *going* to *seed*,"—that is, it has passed its prime, and is beginning to fade or go away

(18) **Come to grief, go to the dogs** —

He has come to grief
He has gone to the dogs

These colloquial phrases mean almost the same thing There is no saying why "come" is used in one and "go" in the other

(19) **Dependent on, independent of** —

I am wholly dependent *on* your help
I am quite independent *of* your help

Why is the same preposition not used with both adjectives? "On" is used after "dependent," because this preposition denotes rest, support, as on some foundation "Of" is used after "independent," because this preposition denotes "separation," and the same meaning is implied in the adjective "independent."

(20) **Doubt that doubt but** —

(*a*) I do not doubt *that* he is ill
(*b*) I do not doubt *but* or *but that* he is ill

These two sentences amount to the same thing They might be rewritten as follows —

(a) I do not doubt (=question) the fact that he is ill
(b) I do not doubt anything *except* or *against* the fact that he is ill

In (b) the word "but" is a preposition, and the Noun-clause "that he is ill" is its object, or if "that" is omitted after "but," the "but" is a conjunction

Note —It is only after the verbs "doubt" and "deny" that "but" can be substituted for "that"

(21) **Excuse, excuse not** —

(a) I hope you will excuse my coming here to day
(b) I hope you will excuse my *not* coming here to day

These two sentences amount to the same thing, and could be rewritten as follows —

(a) I hope you will excuse (=dispense with, not insist on) my coming here to day
(b) I hope you will excuse (=pardon) my *not* coming (my neglect to come) here to day

Observe that the verb "excuse" is used in a different sense in each sentence

Note —Owing to the ambiguity of the verb "excuse," sentence (a) might mean "I hope you will excuse or *pardon* the fact of my having come here to day"

(22) **Far, by far, far from, anything but** —

(a) { The air is *far* hotter to day than yesterday
The air is *much* hotter to day than yesterday }
(b) { He is *far* or *by far* the best boy in the class
He is *much* the best boy in the class }
(c) { His manners are *far from* pleasant
His manners are *anything but* pleasant }

In (a) "far" is equivalent to "much" Both of these adverbs can qualify an adjective in the *Comparative* degree, but not in the Positive (see § 398, a)

In (b) "far" or "by far" is equivalent to "much" Both of these adverbs are used to intensify the *Superlative* degree of adjectives (see § 398, f)

Note 1 —The phrase "by far" is used with the Superlative degree only We cannot say "The air is *by far hotter* to day"

Note 2 —In the phrase 'by far,' "far" is used as a noun and is object to the preposition "by," like "*at once*," "*till now*," etc "By far" is equivalent to "by a great deal" (see § 241, a)

In (c) the phrase "far from" is equivalent to "anything but" —"His manners are anything *but* (=except) being pleasant." Here "being pleasant" is the object to the preposition "but." "The quality of being pleasant is not merely absent from his manners, but *far* distant *from* them"

(23) **First importance, last importance** —

(a) This is a matter of the *first* importance
(b) This is a matter of the *last* importance

Though "first" and "last" are usually of opposite meanings, yet in the above phrases their meaning is the same. In (a) "first" denotes "foremost,"—taking precedence of everything else. In (b) "last" denotes "utmost," "greatest,"—which comes to the same thing as "foremost."

The opposite phrase to "of the first or of the last importance" is "of the least importance" —

This is a matter of the least importance (=of little or no importance, of less importance than anything else).

(24) **Good looking**

He is a *good looking* (=handsome) man.

This is a well-established phrase. Yet we cannot turn it round and say "He looks good" for "He is handsome"; and if we say "He looks *well*," this means, "He looks (or seems to be) *in good health*."

(25) **He to deceive me**, and similar phrases —

(a) *I* to be so foolish!
(b) *He* to deceive me!

These exclamatory sentences are elliptical. (a) "Am I a person to be so foolish?" (b) "Could he be a person to deceive me!" The Infinitive is here Gerundial, and qualifies the noun or pronoun going before.

(26) **His, its** — The older Possessive form for "it" was "his" —

No comfortable star did lend *his* light. —*Shakspeare*.

Sometimes "it" was used as a Possessive —

It knighthood and *it* friends. — *Ben Jonson*.

"Its" is used only three times by Milton, A.D. 1608-1674. After Milton's time the use of "its" as the Possessive form of "it" became thoroughly established.

(27) **I beg to**, etc.

I *beg* to inquire whether I may go home.

This is a common ellipse for "I beg leave to," etc. It is more common to omit the noun "leave" than to insert it.

(28) **I take it**

You will win in that case, *I take it*.

This is a common phrase for "in my opinion."

(29) **I was given to understand** —

If this sentence is converted from the Passive form to the Active, it becomes —"Some one gave or caused me to understand" Here "me" is the Indirect object, and "to understand" (Noun-Infinitive) is the Direct By the rule given in § 164, a verb which has two objects in the Active voice can retain one in the Passive. Hence in the sentence "I was given to understand," the Noun-Infinitive is *Retained object* to the Passive verb "was given"

(30) **In respect of, with respect to** —

He is senior to me *in respect of* service
We must have a talk *with respect to* that subject

These phrases are not identical in meaning "In respect of" means "in point of" some quality, and is preceded by an adjective "With respect to" means "concerning," and qualifies some verb we should not say, "We must have a talk in respect of that subject"

(31) **In thorough working order**

Here "thorough" is an adjective qualifying the compound noun "working order" (that kind of order which is suitable for working) On Compound nouns of this description see below, § 443 (2)

(32) **It's me, that's him** --

The phrases "it's *me*," "that's *him*," are used colloquially, but are condemned by grammarians, because "me" and "him" are Subjective complements to the verb "is," and such complements must be in the same case as the Subject,--that is, in the Nominative case (see § 285, 2) But the phrase "it's me" has been defended on two grounds (1) because it is the counterpart and exact translation of the French "*c'est moi*," which is recognised as an established idiom by the best French writers, (2) because "me" is an adopted or borrowed objective of "I," and might be appropriately used as a predicate, though not as a subject.

(33) **Lesser, less** —"Lesser" is a Double Comparative, which is used for euphony to balance the sound of "greater" --

The *greater* light to rule the day, and the *lesser* light to rule the night —*Old Testament*

Note —Observe "lesser" is always an adjective But "less" may be either an adjective or an adverb

(34) **More than**, with adjectives and verbs —

(*a*) It is *more than* probable that he will fail (*With Adj*)
(*b*) He *more than* hesitated to promise that (*With Verb*)

The construction is elliptical. The two sentences could be written at greater length as follows:—

(*a*) It is not only probable, but more than this,—it is very nearly certain, that, etc.

(*b*) He *did* more than *hesitate* (almost refused) to promise. (Here the Noun infinitive "hesitate" is object to "than." § 244.)

(35) **Mutual friend**:—

The word "mutual" implies reciprocity, as "our friendship is mutual,"—that is, "I love you, and you love me in return." But the phrase "a mutual friend" has come into vogue in a sense quite different from that of reciprocity. "I made his acquaintance through a *mutual friend*,"—that is, a *common* friend, some one who was a friend to myself as well as a friend to him. The use of the word "mutual" in this particular phrase is anomalous, but sanctioned by usage. We could not speak of two persons having "mutual ancestors."

(36) **Never so, ever so**:—

(*a*) He refuseth to hear the voice of the charmer, charm he *never so* wisely.—*Old Testament*.

(*b*) He refuseth to hear the voice of the charmer, charm he *ever so* wisely.

These two phrases mean the same thing. In (*a*) the dependent clause written out in full would be, "although he charm *so* wisely as he *never* charmed before." In (*b*) the clause can be rewritten "however wisely he may charm." The phrase "*ever so*" is the one now used; "*never so*" was used in older English.

(37) "**No,**" "**none,**" as adverbs:—

(*a*) He is *no* scholar.

(*b*) He is *none* the wiser for all his experience.

In (*a*) the word "no" = in no respect. In (*b*) "none" = in no degree. "None" is used in this adverbial sense, only when it is followed by such a phrase as "the wiser,"—that is, by "the" and a Comparative. Similarly we can say "*all* the better," where "all," like "none," is used adverbially.

(38) **None of them**:—

None of them *were* present.

"None," when it is used as a Subject, is a Singular = not one, or no one. But the phrase "none of them," when it is used as a Subject, takes a Plural verb by attraction:—"they none." Or the Plural may be explained by analogy to the phrases "all of them," "some of them," etc.

(39) **Of in the sense of Apposition.**—This can be used before some kinds of Proper names, but not before all —

The island *of* Ceylon The province *of* Bengal The Presidency *of* Bombay The city *of* Delhi The district *of* Delhi The continent *of* Asia The county *of* Kent The lake *of* Geneva The title *of* Colonel The name *of* Brighton

On the other hand, we cannot place it before Proper names of rivers, mountains, or capes Thus we cannot say "the river of Ganges," "the mountain of Kinchinjunga," "the cape of Comorin"

(40) **One, the same, one and the same** —

(*a*) It's all *one* to me
(*b*) It s all *the same* to me
(*c*) It s *one* and *the same* thing to me

These three sentences all mean the same thing, except that (*c*) is a little more emphatic Here "one" is used in the sense of "the same" The emphasis is produced by the repetition.

(41) **One more and** —

(*a*) *One more* whistle, *and* the train started
(*b*) *One more* such loss, *and* we shall be ruined

In each of these sentences there is an ellipsis of some verb in the Principal clause (*a*) "*There was* one more whistle, and the train started,"- that is, *after* one more whistle, the train started. (*b*) "*We must incur* one more such loss, and then we shall be ruined," that is, *if we incur* one more such loss, we shall be ruined This sentence therefore expresses a condition and its consequence

(42) **One to another, to one another, to each other** —

(*a*) They shouted *one to another*
(*b*) They shouted *to one another*

The phrase in (*a*) is grammatically correct, while that in (*b*) is grammatically wrong, since "one" is in the Nominative case in apposition with "they" —"They shouted—one shouted to another" Nevertheless the phrase "*to one another*" has become established by usage, and is now the more idiomatic of the two

If we use the phrase "each other," we could not say "they shouted each to other", but we should have to say "they shouted each to *the other*," because "each other" is used for two persons, whereas "one another" is used for more than two (see § 351) "Each to the other" is, however, an awkward phrase, and far less idiomatic than "to each other"

(43) **Or, nor,** in Negative sentences —

He was not a clever man in books *or* in business.

The question has been raised whether "or" is correct in such sentences, or whether "nor" should be written in the place of it.

The answer is that the "or" is correct The sentence, however, is elliptical, and the ellipse would be filled up as follows —

He was not clever *either* in books *or* in business

If "nor" is used instead of "or," the sentence must be rewritten in the following form, which, however, is awkward and cumbersome

He was not clever in books, *nor* was he clever in business

(44) **Other than, other besides** -

(*a*) No person *other than* a graduate need apply
(*b*) No other person *besides* my friend applied

In (*a*) "other than" means "different from," "except," "but" — "No one *except* a graduate, no *other* person *but* a graduate" The word "than" is here a preposition (not a conjunction), which compares or distinguishes a graduate from other men. In (*b*) "other besides" means "other in addition to" — "No one besides or in addition to my friend applied"

(45) **Out of temper, in a temper** —

(*a*) He is *out of temper* (angry)
(*b*) He is *in a temper* (angry)

These phrases mean the same thing, and written in full would be, (*a*) out of his *ordinary* or *good* temper, (*b*) in a *bad* temper

(46) **Prevent being, prevent from being** -

(*a*) The delay *prevented* your letter *being* sent
(*b*) The delay *prevented* your letter *from being* sent

These two sentences mean the same thing, and both are correct But in (*a*) "being sent" is a Passive Participle *used gerundively*, while in (*b*) "being sent" is not a participle at all, but a Passive gerund or noun used as object to the preposition "from"

In (*a*) the Gerundive Participle (see § 211 and § 300, *c*) contains an implied noun, and the words "prevented your letter *being sent*" are equivalent to "prevented *the sending of* your letter"

(47) **Save he, save we,** etc -

There was no stranger in the house save *we* two —*Old Testament*
No man hath seen the Father, save *he* which is of God —*New Testament*

All the conspirators, save only *he* —*Shakspeare*
None shall be mistress of it save *I* alone —*Shakspeare*

This Nominative (which is now gradually going out of use) is a survival of the Nominative Absolute, which was used when "save" or "saved" was still a Past Participle, and had not been changed into a Preposition On Participial prepositions see § 243 (4), (*a*)

(48) **Self, my-self, him-self,** etc —

When "self" is added to a pronoun of the *First* or *Second* person, it is preceded by the *Possessive* case But when it is added to a pronoun of the *Third* person, it is preceded by a pronoun in the *Objective* case Thus we have—

First and Second Persons —My self, our selves Thy self, your selves
Third Person —Him self, her self, them selves

How is this to be explained? The word "self" was originally an adjective signifying "same," "actual," "identical", as in the common phrase "self-same" = "the very same"

On these *self* (=identical) hills —*Raleigh*
To shoot another arrow that *self* (=same) way
Which thou didst shoot at first —*Shakspeare*
At that *self* (=same) moment enters Palamon —*Dryden*

But, like many other adjectives, "self" was also used as a noun, as we still see it used in such phrases as "a man's better *self*" (= the better side of his character), "she was beauty's self" (=a personification of beauty) Here the noun "self" is very correctly qualified by a noun in the Possessive case Similarly in the First and Second persons we have "myself," "yourself," etc, where the noun "self" is correctly qualified by the Possessives "my" and "your"

But in composition with pronouns in the Third person, "self" has retained its original force as an adjective Hence we have—

He hurt *him* self (*Object to Verb*)
He did it by *him* self (*Object to Prep*)

Two anomalies, however, remain (*a*) The Plural form of the Reflexive pronoun is "themselves Now, if "self" is an adjective, this should have been "them self," since adjectives have no separate forms for the Plural (*b*) The form "himself," "herself," and "themselves," although they are in the Objective case, are used in apposition with pronouns in the Nominative case, as—

He *him*-self saw it. They *them* selves saw it.

Regarding these anomalies we can only say that they have arisen from a confusion between "self" as a noun and "self" as an adjective, and that they are now fully established by custom

(49) **Several people, several persons** —

Several people think that the rains are over

The phrase "several people" is not so correct as "several persons," because "several" has a distributive force and denotes individuals, while "people" is a Collective noun

(50) **Shortly, briefly** —

I will write *shortly* (= in a short time)
I will write *briefly* (= in few words)

The adverb "shortly" is used to denote shortness only of *time*, and only of *future* time We cannot say "He went away *shortly*" (a short time ago) nor can we say, "He lived there *shortly*" (for a short time) The adverb "briefly" is used only in the sense of shortness in *language*

(51) **So and so, or so, so so, and so on** —

(*a*) He asked what I meant, and I told him *so and so*
(*b*) I shall return in a week *or so*
(*c*) *So so* it works now, mistress, sit you fast —*Dryden*
(*d*) He disliked dances, plays picnics, *and so on*

In (*a*) "so and so" is the adverbial form of the Indefinite adjective "such and such" "I told him *so and so*," might be rewritten "I gave him *such and such* an answer" (see § 347, *c*) These expressions are used, when the speaker does not think it necessary to enter into particulars

In (*b*) "or so" is also used Indefinitely, and the sentence might be rewritten, "I shall return in a week or such-like,"—that is, a week more or less (see § 347, *c*)

In (*c*) "so so" means "fairly well," and is used when the speaker does not wish to be more precise When the phrase is preceded by "but," it means something less than "well" "His leg is but *so so*" (*Shakspeare*),—that is, "his leg is in rather a worse state than usual"

In (*d*) the phrase "and so on" means "and such-like," or "etc" (*et cetera*) The adverb "on" means "forward,"—that is, to the end of the list —"He disliked dances, plays, picnics, and such-like amusements to the end of the list"

(52) **So as to,** etc —

I got up at SIX A M *so as to be* certain of being in time.

This construction is elliptical, and the ellipses should be filled up as follows —"I got up at six A.M. *so* (= in such a way) *as* (= in which way I should get up) to be certain," etc. The Infinitive in such phrases is Gerundial. See also § 385.

(53) **So kind as to,** and similar phrases —

He was *so* kind *as to* take me into his house.

"He was so (to that extent) kind as (to which extent a man would be kind) to take me (for taking me)," etc. Here the Infinitive is Gerundial. The sentence is equivalent to, "He was kind *enough* to take me."

(54) **Somehow or other, anyhow** —

He managed *somehow or other* to pay off his debts.

Here "how" has been substituted for the corresponding noun. "He managed some how or other how = in some *way* or other (way) to pay off his debts." (Compare the explanation given in §§ 385, 386.)

(55) **This much, so much, so much for** —

(*a*) *This much* at least we can promise.
(*b*) He is now *so much* better that we need not be alarmed.
(*c*) *So much for* his courage; now as to his honesty.

In (*a*) "much" is used as a noun: "this much" is equivalent to "this amount," "this quantity." In (*b*) "much" is an adverb qualifying the adjective "better"; and "so" is another adverb qualifying "much."

In (*c*) the first clause written out in full would be —"As *for* (= regarding) his courage, *so much* has been or can be said." Here there is a confusion between "this much" as a noun and "so much" as an adverb. The phrase "so much" is used in this place as a noun to some verb understood. It is generally used when the speaker or writer has been depreciating something: "This is all that can be said about his courage; now let us see what can be said about his honesty."

(56) **To be mistaken** —

(*a*) You will find that you *were mistaken*.
(*b*) You will find that you *mistook it*.

The form of the verb in (*a*) is according to idiom, and this must be adhered to. The form in (*b*) is what we should have expected from the meaning of the verb "mistake," which is "to misapprehend, or to misunderstand." But the form of the verb in (*b*) is against idiom, and should therefore not be used.

(57) **To be sure** —

Shall you go? *To be sure* I shall.

Here "to be" is the Gerundial Infinitive, and the phrase "to be sure" signifies "certainly" The phrase, "Well, to be sure!" is a form of exclamation denoting astonishment (see § 254).

(58) **Very pleased**, etc —

> I am *very pleased* to hear this
> I am *very tired* with that long walk

According to rule, "much" is used with *Past* Participles and "very" with *Present* ones (see § 398, *b*) This rule very rarely fails Such phrases as "very pleased," "very tired," "very contented," "very dejected," are exceptions

(59) **What was, what was not** —

> (*a*) *What was* my astonishment on seeing this!
> (*b*) *What was not* my astonishment on seeing this!

These two sentences come to the same thing, in spite of the "not" The first means "How great was my astonishment," etc, the second means "No astonishment could be greater than mine was," etc

(60) **What with, somewhat** —

The phrase "what with," repeated before two or more nouns, is sometimes used for enumerating a series of things —

> *What with* the cunning of his methods, *what with* the flattery of his tongue, and *what with* the influence of his money, he soon became the leading man in the town

It might be supposed that "what with" is an elliptical phrase for "what *he effected* with cunning," etc But more probably "what" is here an Indefinite pronoun used as an adverb in the sense of "partly" The compound word "somewhat" is still used sometimes as a noun signifying "something," and sometimes as an adverb signifying "to some extent" or "partly" —"I am *somewhat* tired of this book" In colloquial English we still say —"I tell you what," which means "I tell you something," or "I have something to tell you" In Shakspeare we have

> I tell you *what* (=something), Antonio

(61) **Write you, write to you** —

> I will *write you* a letter on this matter
> I will *write to you* soon

We can use the phrase "*write you*," when "you" is the Indirect object to the verb and is followed by a Direct object But if there is no Direct object and the verb "write" is used Intransitively, we must say "*write to you*"

(62) **Active Gerund in a Passive sense** —

This pen needs *mending*

In this and similar sentences "mending" must be parsed as a Gerund, and as object to the Transitive verb "needs." The Active voice in this Gerund is used in a Passive sense, as in "This house was three years in *building*,"—that is, in the process of being built. "The pen needs mending" = needs to be mended (see § 166, *Note*).

(63) **Participle with Implied Noun or Pronoun** —

(*a*) *Having stated* our first reason, the second must now be taken up and disposed of

(*b*) *Defeated* on all sides, his courage began to fail

In (*a*) the construction cannot be defended, although it is not uncommonly used It would be correct, if we added the words "by us" at the end of the sentence, because the participle "having stated" would then qualify the pronoun "us."

In (*b*) the construction, besides being very common in practice, is defensible, because "his" = *of him*, and "defeated" qualifies the implied pronoun "him"

(64) **Adverbs repeated**, as in the following examples —

Again and again By and by Over and over Over and above Out and out Far and away More and more Worse and worse First and foremost Through and through

The adverb is repeated either (*a*) to denote frequency of succession, as in "again and again," "over and over", or (*b*) to denote frequency combined with increased intensity, as in "more and more," "worse and worse", or (*c*) for the sake of emphasis, as in "by and by," "over and above," "out and out," "far and away," "first and foremost"

He is *out and out*, or *far and away* (that is, very decidedly), the best student in the class

Note —Adjectives are sometimes similarly repeated to denote succession —

The dishes should be served up *hot and hot* (that is, one after another, each hot in succession)

The animals went out *two and two* (that is, two in succession, or two at a time) See § 352 (*b*)

(65) **Cardinal Numerals used as Nouns** —

(*a*) The stars come out *by twos and threes* —*Wordsworth*.

(*b*) They are all *at sixes and sevens*

In (*a*) the phrase italicised means "two or three at a time" Here the preposition "by" denotes the manner or rate at which

the stars come out they come out two at a time, or three at a time In (*b*) the phrase denotes "in a state of disorder"

(66) **Possessive Pronoun as Antecedent to a Relative** —

Their sorrows shall be multiplied *that* run after another God.—*Old Testament*

The antecedent to the Relative "that" must be found in the Possessive "their" = of them The sentence could be more appropriately written — "The sorrows *of them that* run after another God shall be multiplied"

(67) **Absolute Case** —In mediæval English the Absolute case was the Dative, not the Nominative —

They have stolen away the body, *us sleeping* —*Wiclif's Bible*

In Milton we meet with such phrases as "me overthrown," "us dispossessed," "him destroyed," which he introduced in imitation of the classical languages Milton, however, uses the Nominative case in other places —

I should not lag behind or err the way, *Thou leading*

The Nominative alone is now used absolutely, and this case is appropriate, because the Nominative noun or pronoun is the Subject to the Finite verb implied in the Participle, for the phrase "thou *leading*" is equivalent to the clause "*whilst* thou *leadest*" (see § 285 (5), *Note*)

(68) **Omission of "that" after "than"** —

I will suffer myself rather than (that) he should

It is optional with the writer or speaker either to express the "that" or to leave it out, but it is more usual to leave it out Here "than" is a preposition, not a conjunction, and the Noun-clause "that he should suffer" is its object (see § 244)

(69) **Elliptical uses of "that" as a Relative** —

(*a*) Equivalent to "when" or "in which time" —
Now *that* he is dead we must find a successor
The moment *that* he left the house they pursued him
(*b*) Equivalent to "why" or "for which reason" —
This is the reason *that* I told you to come
(*c*) Equivalent to "with which" —
He shouted with the loudest voice *that* he could (shout)

Note —Sometimes the antecedent to "that" is borrowed from the verb of the preceding clause —

Have you ever met him before? Not (a meeting) *that* I can remember

(70) **Correlative Words in Phrases** —These can be summed up as follows —

(*a*) **The same . . . that, the same . . . as** —

This is *the same* man *that* came yesterday
This is *the same* kind of house *as* yours

(*b*) **As . . . so** —

As men sow, *so* will they also reap

(*c*) **As or so . . . as** —

I am not *so* strong *as* I once was ("*So*" *with Negative*)
I am quite *as* strong *as* I ever was ("*As*" *with Affirm*)

(*d*) **Such . . . as** —

He is not *such* a man *as* I admire

(*e*) **No sooner . . . than** —

No sooner had we left the house, *than* it began to rain

(*f*) **Scarcely . . . before** —

We had *scarcely* left the house, *before* it began to rain

(*g*) **Hardly . . . when**

We had *hardly* (or scarcely) left the house, *when* it began to rain

(*h*) **So . . . that** —

I am *so* tired *that* I cannot go any farther

(*i*) **Not only . . . but** or **but also** —

He was *not only* accused and tried, *but* convicted

(*j*) **Both . . . and** —

He is *both* a fool *and* a knave

(*k*) **Either . . . or, neither . . . nor** —

Either this man sinned *or* his parents
Neither the one *nor* the other satisfies me

(*l*) **Whether . . . or** —

You must do this *whether* you like it *or* not

(*m*) **Though . . . yet** —

Though murder have no tongue, *yet* will it speak

(71) **Emphasis** is frequently indicated by a change in the natural order of words, since by putting a word out of its natural order more attention is drawn to it Of this the following kinds of examples are common —

(1) Placing the object before its verb instead of after it (see § 147 and § 318) —

Silver and gold have I none

(2) Placing the complement before its verb instead of after it (see § 153, *Note 2*, and § 310) —

Straight is the gate and *narrow* is the way that leadeth unto life

(3) Placing the adjective after its noun instead of before it (see § 306) —

I appeal from Philip *drunk* to Philip *sober*

(4) Placing an adverb before instead of after the verb with which it is compounded (see § 315) —

Down went the *Royal George* with all its crew complete.

(72) **An Adverb substituted for an Adjective** —It is the province of adjectives, not of adverbs, to qualify nouns, otherwise the distinction between adjective and adverb is destroyed. The exceptions are apparent, not real (see § 224) In Byron, however, the following phrase occurs —

My *almost drunkenness* of heart.

This is a short way of saying "that state of my heart which I might almost describe as one of drunkenness"

Similarly in prose an adverb *appears* to qualify a noun in such phrases as the following —

A man *asleep*=a sleeping man, or the man *that is asleep*
The world *above*=the world *that is above*

We cannot say "in asleep man," or "the above world," because these words are not really adjectives, but adverbs used to quality some verb or participle understood

"The *above* book" means "the above named book," where the adverb "above" qualifies the participle "named," which may be either expressed or understood

Note —It has been affirmed by some that nouns can be qualified by adverbs, as is the following example

This man, *formerly the possessor* of much wealth, is now poor

But the words "formerly the possessor' is merely a short way of saying "who was formerly the possessor," where formerly is an adverb qualifying the verb "was" We cannot say "the formerly possessor," which shows that the adverb "formerly" does not really qualify the noun "possessor,' but some verb or participle understood

(73) **An Adjective substituted for an Adverb** —Since adjectives and adverbs are both qualifying words, an adjective qualifying the subject to a verb can be substituted for an adverb qualifying the verb itself, as has been explained in § 290 How far is this admissible in prose? and how far in poetry?

In prose and poetry alike —

(*a*) When the adjective describes the state of the agent. The adjective is then an "Adverbial Adjunct" to the predicate-verb (see § 266, *c*) —

He went away *sad* (that is, he was sad when he went away)

(*b*) When the adjective describes the effect of the action Here again the adjective is an "Adverbial Adjunct" —

The moon shines *bright* (the moon shines, and the effect of its shining is brightness)

Note —This use of the adjective is *in prose* limited to monosyllables Thus in prose we should not say, "The moon shines *brilliant*," but "The moon shines *brilliantly*"

In poetry only —

(*c*) When the adjective is intended to describe neither the state of the agent, nor the effect of the action, but *the manner of doing the action* —

First they praised him *soft and low* —*Tennyson*
(Their manner of praising him was soft and low)
The green trees whispered *low and mild* — *Longfellow*
(The kind of whisper was low and mild)
They fall *successive*, and *successive* rise —*Pope*
(Their mode of falling and rising is successive)

(74) **Verb followed by Adjective** —In such phrases the adjective is sometimes a complement and sometimes an adverbial adjunct to the verb The verb may be either Transitive or Intransitive —

Bear hard.—The new tax will *bear hard* on (be specially burdensome to) landlords

Break loose —He allowed his passions to *break loose* (break themselves loose, burst forth)

Break open —Let us *break open* the box (open it by force)

Breathe free —We can now *breathe free* (take breath freely) again

Come true —The news has *come* (turned out to be) *true*

Come wrong —A good dinner never *comes wrong* (is always acceptable) to any one

Cut dead.—(Colloquial) He *cut* me *dead* (passed me without making any sign of recognition, with the intention of insulting me)

Cut short.—His life was *cut short* (brought to an untimely end) by cholera

Do wrong —He *did wrong* (acted wrongly, made a mistake) to believe or in believing that man s word

Drink hard —He *drinks hard* (is a confirmed drunkard)

Fall flat —His speech *fell flat* (produced no effect) on the audience

Fall or **run foul** —The ship *fell foul* of (struck on) the rocks

Fall heavy —The water rate *falls heavy* on (is specially burdensome to) tenants

Fall or **come short.**—The result *fell short* of (was less than) our expectations

Fight shy —I *fought shy* of that man (kept out of his way without telling him that I was doing so)

Get rid or quit.—I cannot *get rid* or *quit* of this fever (get myself rid of, throw it off)

Go hard.—That man's death *went hard* with (brought much distress on) his family

Go mad, etc.—The dog *went* (became) mad. He *has gone* blind.

Go wrong.—Everything *went wrong* (turned out badly) with me.

Hold good.—This rule *holds good* (holds itself good, continues in force) here also

Hold true.—This saying always *holds true* (holds itself true, continues true)

Lay bare or **open**.—He managed to *lay bare* (expose) their plots.

Lay waste.—He *laid waste* (ravaged) the enemy's country

Let loose.—He *lets* the dog *loose* (unchains it) at nights

Live fast.—One who *lives fast* (leads a rapid, that is, dissolute life) dies early

Look blank.—He *looked blank* (seemed puzzled, disturbed, or surprised), when he was informed of his dismissal

Look sharp.—I hope you will *look sharp* (make haste, lose no time) about this

Make good.—I incurred a heavy loss through you, and so now you must *make* it *good* (compensate me for the loss)

Make merry.—Sailors like to *make merry* (make themselves merry, have some fun) on shore

Make sure.—A cautious man will *make sure* (make himself sure) of his ground (take care that his course is a safe one)

Make little or **light**.—He *made little* of my illness (considered it of no importance)

Make much.—He *made much* of my illness (considered it serious)

Make too much.—He *made too much* of my abilities (over-estimated them)

Make nothing.—(*a*) He *made nothing* of my abilities (regarded them as worthless)

(*b*) The teacher could *make nothing* of him (could not succeed with him)

Muster strong or **in force**.—The boys *mustered strong* (mustered or collected themselves in large numbers) on that occasion

Play false.—He *played* me *false* (acted deceitfully towards me)

Put right or **set right** or **put to rights**.—The teacher soon *put* the class *right* (put it into good order)

Ride rough shod.—He tried to *ride rough shod* over all of us (force his own way upon us, whatever annoyance it might give us)

Run short.—(*a*) The money *ran short* (became too little for the purpose required)

(*b*) We *ran short* of money (spent all we had while we still needed it)

Set free.—England *set* every slave *free* (set at liberty or released every slave)

Sow broadcast.—They *sowed* sedition *broadcast* (scattered it widely and profusely) over the country

Steer clear.—I hope you will *steer clear* of (steer the boat clear, keep out of the way of) usurers

Stop short.—He *stopped short* in the middle of his speech (stopped suddenly, when he was expected to go on)

Strike dumb.—We are *struck dumb* by this news

Take ill.—My father *took ill* (or was taken ill, was attacked with an illness) yesterday

Talk big—He *talks big* (boasts, exaggerates) about himself

Think fit—He *thinks fit* (thinks it fit) to blame me for nothing (This implies that he not only thinks fit to do something wrong, but that he actually does it)

(75) **Obsolete words in phrases**—There are some phrases in which one of the words is either obsolete (except in the phrase itself) or is used in a unique sense In the examples given below every such word is shown in italics —

Beck and call—He is at your *beck* (nod or motion of the head) and call (Hence the word "beckon")

By hook or by crook—We must do this by hook or by *crook* (by some means or other)

Cheek by jowl—I will go with thee cheek by *jowl*—*Shakspeare* (Jowl means "jaw" "cheek by jowl" is similar in form as well as in meaning to "side by side" in close proximity)

Chop and change—We go on *chopping* and changing our friends—*L'Estrange* ("To chop" means to barter, to give one thing for another The colloquial equivalent to "chop" is "swop")

Hue and cry—They raised a *hue* (hoot or clamour) and cry

In fine—In conclusion ("Fine" means "end", hence "finish")

In vogue—This dress is much in *vogue* (fashion)

Kith and kin.—He is far from all *kith* (blood relations) and kin (kinsfolk)

Learn by rote—Do not learn anything by *rote* (by merely repeating the words and neglecting the sense)

Lie in wait—He lay in *wait* (ambush) for the enemy

Malice prepense.—This was done out of malice *prepense* (see § 308)

Neck and crop—He turned him out neck and *crop* (altogether, completely) ("Crop" means the craw of a bird)

Neither chick nor child—("Chick" is a term of endearment for child)

Nick of time—He came in the *nick* (critical moment) of time

Odds and ends—Pick up the *odds* (scraps) and ends

Of no avail—Your excuses are of no *avail* (effect)

On pain of death—("*Pain*" here means "penalty")

Part and parcel—("*Parcel*" here means "portion" The word is a Diminutive of "part")

Picking and stealing—Keep your hands from *picking* (pilfering) and stealing

Rack and ruin—He went to *rack* (wrack or wreck) and ruin

Rhyme or reason—He did that without *rhyme* (sound) or reason, (without any valid reason)

Run a rig—He ran a *rig* (had a frolic) that day

Scot free—He got off *scot* free (free of payment, unharmed)

Shrewd turn.—He did me a *shrewd* (ill) turn

Shrewd blow—He gave me a *shrewd* (severe) blow

Sick or sorry—This horse is never sick or *sorry* (ill) (This phrase is used only for horses)

Spick and span.—He has a *spick* and *span* new coat (new as a *spike* or nail just made, and a *chip* or span of wood just chopped off)

Stand in good stead—His kindness stood me in good *stead* (in good standing, was of great service to me)

Stark and stiff—His body was *stark* (rigid) and stiff

Take umbrage—He took *umbrage* (offence) at what I said

Tit for tat—(Probably a corruption of "tip (or slight blow) for tap" The phrase means "blow for blow," "like for like")

Toil and moil.—He was always toiling and *moiling* (labouring as a drudge)

Watch and ward.—He kept watch and *ward* (guard)

Widow's weeds—The *weeds* (mourning clothes) worn by a widow

(76) **Words in pairs**—There are certain stock phrases, in which words of the same, or almost the same, meaning *go in pairs* The second word has been added either to increase the force of the first by repeating its meaning, or for the sake of rhythm Most of these words are monosyllables, but if one of them consists of two syllables, the dissyllable is always put last —

Bag and baggage—They were expelled *bag and baggage* (with all their belongings) (These two nouns are in the Adverbial objective)

By fits and starts—He did everything *by fits and starts*, but stuck to nothing long

By leaps and bounds—His progress is not steady, but goes by *leaps and bounds*

Fair and square—He was *fair and square* (just) in all his dealings

Fire and brimstone—He threatens us with *fire and brimstone* (fearful penalties)

Fire and fury—His language was full of *fire and fury* (passion)

First and foremost—We must inquire about this *first and foremost.*

Forms and ceremonies—We cannot always neglect *forms and ceremonies*

Free and easy—He is very *free and easy* (unrestrained) in his manner

Gall and wormwood—His voice is *gall and wormwood* (a source of intense annoyance) to me

Goods and chattels—He took away all his *goods and chattels* with him

Heart and soul—He went *heart and soul* into the business

High and mighty—He is very *high and mighty* (haughty) in his manner

Hole and corner—He adopted a *hole and corner* (underhand) method

House and home—He was turned out of *house and home*

(To all) **intents and purposes**—He was, to all *intents and purposes*, dismissed, but nominally he resigned

Jot or tittle—He would not lower his price one *jot or tittle*

(The) **loaves and fishes**—He was eager for the *loaves and fishes* (emoluments) of office.

Null and void.—This ruling has now become *null and void* (invalid)

Open and above board.—Let everything be *open and above board* (honest and straightforward)

Over and above.—*Over and above* being lazy he is dull

Over head and ears.—He was *over head and ears* in debt

Pains and penalties.—Let us know what are the *pains and penalties* inflicted by the law

Safe and sound.—He arrived home *safe and sound*

Stuff and nonsense.—What you are saying is all *stuff and nonsense* (rubbish)

Sum and substance.—This is the *sum and substance* (pith) of the whole question

Time and tide.—*Time and tide* wait for no man

To hum and haw.—He could not speak without *humming and hawing* (hesitation)

(To be) up and doing.—We must be *up and doing* (begin to act)

Ways and means.—Are you provided with the *ways and means* (necessary funds)

Well and good.—If that is what you mean to do, *well and good*

Will and pleasure.—I will act entirely according to your *will and pleasure* (I will carry out your wishes in everything.)

Wit and wisdom.—The *wit and wisdom* (cleverness and wisdom) of this man can be seen from his writings

With might and main.—He worked *with might and main* (as hard as he could)

(77) **Words used in a bad sense**.—There are certain words and phrases which are chiefly or always used in a bad sense Some of those in common use are given below —

Abide by the consequences (await the *evil* results)

Accident.—"He met with an accident" (*mishap*)

Accomplice.—Partner in some *crime*

Addicted to some *bad* habit, as gambling, intemperance

Adventurer.—One who enters upon *rash* projects

Adversary.—A *hostile* opponent, one from whom *harm* may come

Airs.—"He should not give himself airs" (*conceited* airs, a conceited demeanour)

Amenities.—Almost always ironical, for "rude words"

Apprehensive of some *harm* or *injury*

Artisan.—One who practises some *inferior* art. (One who practises a *fine* art is called an *artist*.)

Audacious.—Bold in the sense of *presumptuous* or *impudent*

Besetting.—A besetting *sin* or *fault*

Blunder.—A *gross* or *serious* mistake

Bode.—"This fact bodes us some *harm*"

Boisterous.—*Rude* and *rough* as well as strong

Brat.—Contemptuous word for "child"

Break news.—To be the first to communicate *bad* news

Broil.—A *noisy* quarrel, a brawl

Brook.—Tolerate or endure something *bad*

Catastrophe.—A *disastrous* conclusion

Coalition of men of *divergent* or *opposite* views, and hence it means a kind of partnership which is not homogeneous.

Commit.—To do something *wrong*, as "to commit a fault"
Conceit.—An *extravagant* notion
Concoct—To devise a plan for an *evil* purpose
Condign.—Used only to qualify "*punishment*" (Not used to qualify "reward")
Consummate—Consummate *nonsense* a consummate *coward*
Conventional—Guided by fashion, and not by judgment or taste
Counterfeit.—To imitate for a *dishonest* purpose
Covert—Hidden for the sake of *disguise*
Cowardly—Timid to an *unworthy* degree
Credulity—A *foolish* readiness to believe anything
Cunning—*Crooked* cleverness employed for an *evil* purpose
Demagogue—An *unprincipled* popular leader
Demerit—*Ill* desert on account of *faults* committed
Demure—*Affecting* to be modest and retiring
Desert—Abandon something which ought not to have been left
Despot—A *tyrannical* kind of absolute ruler
Dole—A *scanty* allowance or share
Doom—To consign to an *evil* fate
Effeminate—Womanish, unmanly ("Feminine" and "womanly" are used in a good sense)
Egregious—Remarkable in a *bad* sense, as "egregious folly
Equivocal—*Intentionally* ambiguous or misleading
Fabricate—To invent with a *bad* motive
Facetious—Jocular in a *foolish* kind of way
Faction.—A political cabal
Fain—Willing to do a thing not from choice, but under necessity
Fancy—Imagination when it is not guided by reason
Fine figure—"He cut a fine figure (*ridiculous* or *disgraceful* figure) in that matter" (The phrase "fine figure" is ironical)
Flagrant Remarkable in a *bad* sense, as "a flagrant blunder"
Forge—To produce something that is not genuine as "to forge a will"
Forsake—The same meaning as "desert
Forsooth In truth (said ironically)
Fulsome—Full or excessive, so as to produce *disgust* as "fulsome flattery"
Garble—"To garble a quotation" to separate it from its context and thus put a false meaning on it
Ghost—A spectre or goblin (It once meant the soul or spirit)
Glaring—Conspicuous for something *evil*, as "a glaring error"
Gossip—An *idle* talker or *idle* talk
Gross—Bulky combined with the sense of *coarse* and *vulgar*
Grotesque—Irregular in the sense of "extravagant," "whimsical"
Hasty—Quick to a *fault*, rash, easily excited, impetuous
Homely—Domestic in the sense of plain, common, unpolished
Impertinent—Saucy, (it once meant "irrelevant")
Implicated.—Involved in, or mixed up with, something *evil*.
Inveterate—Used for something *bad*, as "an inveterate liar," "an inveterate enemy"
Legend—A story not supposed to be as true as a tradition

Lie —A falsehood uttered for the sake of deceiving or doing harm
Loiter —To linger at a time when greater haste should have been made.
Lonely —Not merely alone, but *depressed* or *sad* from being alone
Luck —"He was too late, as luck (=*bad* luck) would have it."
Lumber —Household stuff of little or no value
Maudlin —Easily moved to tears, sentimental to the extent of *weakness*
Minion —An *unworthy* favourite
Names.—"He should not call me names (=*bad* names)
Notorious —Possessing an *evil* reputation
Obsequious.—Complaisant to the extent of servility
Officious —Busy with other men's affairs, troubling men with attentions, which are not asked for and not desired
Palliate —To throw a cloak or veil over something which ought not to be concealed, hence to make excuses for faults
Peculiar —Often used in the sense of strange or eccentric, as "a peculiar man," "a man of *peculiar* tastes"
Perpetrate —This verb is used only of *crimes*
Plausible —Apparently, but not really, worthy of applause or praise specious, colourable
Plight —A *sad* or *painful* condition "He is in a *sad plight*"
Pocket —To put into one's pocket *fraudulently*, as "he pocketed the money" Or to submit patiently to an insult, as "he pocketed the insult"
Possessed —"He fought like one possessed (that is, possessed of *evil* spirits)
Prone to some vice or weakness, as "he is prone to idleness, intemperance," etc (apt to become idle, intemperate, etc)
Prejudice.—A judgment formed *against* some one without evidence.
Retaliate —Pay back an *injury*, the opposite to "recompense, or reward"
Richly —"He *richly deserved* the punishment" This phrase is always used in reference to something undesirable
Sanctimonious —Said of one who makes an *affectation* of godliness
Sensual —That which appeals to the *lower* or *carnal* senses
Sentimental —*Affectedly* tender or emotional
Serve a man right —"This serves him right" Always in reference to some *evil* consequences which a man has deserved through his own *fault*
Servitude - Service of a *slavish* kind
Sheer, as "sheer nonsense," "sheer folly" The word "sheer" is always used in reference to something bad We never say "sheer virtue," but "perfect or pure virtue"
Shrewd —Clever, but often in a sense implying some dishonesty
Soft —Often used in the sense of "effeminate," "unmanly"
Specious.—Same meaning as "plausible" "A *specious* (apparently sound) argument."
Stickler —One who sticks to a *small* point *perversely* or *obstinately*
Tempt.—To put a man on his trial with the intention of *seducing* him, or leading him into a trap.
To a degree —"He is insolent, or dull, or dishonest *to a degree*"

(that is, to a high degree) (This phrase is usually applied to some *bad* quality)

Totally.—Always used for something bad, as "totally incompetent," "totally blind."

Trivial.—Ordinary in the sense of *paltry*. "A *trivial* or commonplace subject."

Usurer.—One who charges *extortionate* interest.

Utter.—"An utter *fool*", "an utter *failure*." Always used for something bad.

Utterly.—Same meaning as "totally."

Versatile. One who is changed too quickly. Unstable, unsteady.

Voluble.—Said of a fluent, but rather *empty*, talker.

Wiseacre.—Always used ironically, to denote a fool.

(78) **Adjectives understood**.—There are some nouns which must be taken in a good sense, when no adjective is placed before them to denote the opposite.—

Age.—He is of (*full*) age (=grown up). He is under (*full*) age (=a minor).

Breeding.—He is a man of (*high*) breeding (=a well bred man).

Condition.—The horse is out of (*good*) condition (=is thin).

Family.—He is a man of (*high*) family.

Feeling.—He is a man of (*tender* and *good*) feeling.

Form.—The boatmen pulled together in form (=in *good* form or style).

Order.—Everything is in (*proper*) order.

Parts.—He is a man of parts (=of *good* qualities or abilities).

Place.—Everything was in place (=in its *right* place). Your conduct is quite out of place (=out of its *right* place, improper).

Position.—He is a man of (*good*) position.

Principle.—He is a man of (*high*) principle.

Quality.—He is a person of (*good* or *high*) quality.

Rank.—Men of (*high*) rank.

Taste.—His remark was not in taste (=in *good* taste).

Temper.—He is out of temper (=*ordinary* or *good* temper). (But "*in temper*" or "*in a temper*" means in *bad* temper, as, "He said that *in a temper*,=in a rage.")

Thing.—That was just the thing (=the *right* thing) to say.

Time.—He arrived in time (=in the *proper* or *right* time).

(79) **Elliptical phrases**.—The following are of common occurrence.—

And no wonder.—He has been acquitted, *and no wonder* (=and *it is* no wonder *that he has been acquitted*).

And welcome.—You may take my book, *and welcome* (=and *be* welcome *to it*).

As ever.—He is as idle *as ever* (=as *he* ever *was before*).

As usual.—He is idle *as usual* (=*in the manner* which *is* usual *to him*, see p. 259).

Easier said than done=this *is* easier *when it is* said than *when it is* done.

If not sooner.—I shall get there by four, *if not sooner* (=if *I do* not *get there* sooner)

Leave well alone —We had better leave *well* (=what is well) alone.

Lay about one with a whip —He laid (*blows*) about him with a whip

No sooner said than done=*it was* no sooner said than *it was* done

Practice makes perfect=makes *a man* perfect

Provided.—I am willing, *provided* (=*it being* provided *that*) you are

Ride and tie —We had better *ride and tie* (that is, one of us ride some way forward, and then tie the horse for the other to have his turn of riding)

Right or wrong —I intend to go, *right or wrong* (=*whether it is* right or wrong *to do so*)

Right and left —He hit out *right and left* (=to the right hand and the left, on all sides of him)

To see fair play=to see that the play or playing is fair

Thanks —He recovered, thanks to the doctor (=our thanks *are due* to the doctor)

Whether or no —We must do as we are told, *whether or no* (= whether we like it or no)

Will he, nill he —He must take service *will he nill he* (=whether he is willing or not)

Note —"*Will I, nill I*" and "*will ye, nill ye*," have been similarly used for the first and second persons, and all three forms or persons have been corrupted into "*willy nilly*"

Would-be – The *would be* thief (= the man who would or wished or intended to be a thief, but was prevented from being one)

(80) **Specialised expressions** — Phrases in which some word is restricted to a certain connection, so that no other word can be put in its place —

Bevy of ladies —We never say "a bevy of *gentlemen*"

Bosom friend.—We never speak of "a *breast* friend" or "a *heart* friend"

Broad daylight —We do not speak of "broad *moonlight*," but "bright moonlight

Drawn battle —We do not speak of "a drawn *combat*" or "a drawn *fight*"

Fast friend —We do not speak of "a fast *enemy*" or "fast *foe*"

Foregone conclusion —We do not speak of "a foregone *inference*" or "a foregone *result*"

Golden age —We do not speak of "the golden *time* or *period*"

Gratuitous insult —We do not speak of "gratuitous *abuse*"

Green old age —We do not say that a man is in a "*verdant* old age"

Honest penny —We do not speak of "turning an honest *sixpence*"

Implicit confidence, faith, or reliance, but not implicit *love*, *hatred*, etc.

Leading question.—We can "put a leading *question*," but not a "leading *inquiry*"

Livelong day or night —We cannot say "the livelong *hour*, or *week*, or *year*"

Maiden speech (the first speech made) —We cannot say "a maiden *song*" or "a *virgin* speech"

Market rate, market value —We cannot substitute "trade" for "market"

Moot point —We can speak of "an open question," but not "a moot *question*"

Open question —We cannot speak of "an open *point*"

Out of doors —We never say "out of *door*"

Retrench expenditure —We do not say "retrench *trade* or *business*"

Sharp practice (=knavery) —We do not combine "sharp" in the same sense with any other noun

Short cut = a cross-path which shortens the distance

Sinews of war (money) We speak of "the sinews," but not of *the muscles* of war

Single combat —We never speak of "a single *fight*, or *conflict*, or *contest*"

Slow coach We call a man "a slow *coach*," but not "a slow *carriage*"

Special pleading —We do not speak of "special *argumentation* or *advocacy*"

Standing army (=permanent army) —We never say "a standing *navy*"

Standing joke (=permanent joke) —We never say "a standing *jest*"

Standing nuisance —We may say "a *constant* trouble," but not "a standing *trouble*"

Stone's throw —We never say "a stone's *fling*" or "the throw *of a stone*"

Storm signal —We never speak of "a *tempest* signal" or "a storm *warning*"

Stubborn fact —We never speak of "an *obstinate* fact" or "a stubborn *truth*"

Stump orator —We never say "a stump *speaker*" or "a stump *rhetorician*"

Sworn friends We speak of "an *avowed* enemy," but not of "a sworn *enemy*"

Tall talk —We never speak of "*lofty* talk" or "tall *professions*"

Watery grave —We do not speak of "a watery *tomb* or watery *burial*"

(81) **Phrases used as Adjectives** —These phrases are all colloquial

A *happy go lucky* (haphazard) plan	A *go ahead* (pushing) man
An *out of the way* (secluded) place	A *stick in the mud* (not pushing) man
Out of doors (open air) work	An *upside down* (inverted) notion
A *hole and corner* (clandestine) method	A *dog in the-manger* (selfish) policy
A *stay at-home* (domestic) person.	A *jack in-the-box* (volatile) man

PART III—THE TRANSFORMATION AND SYNTHESIS OF SENTENCES

CHAPTER XXI—DIRECT AND INDIRECT NARRATION

422 When the verb in one sentence reports what is said by some speaker in another sentence, the verb in the first sentence is called the *reporting verb*, and what is said in the second sentence is called the *reported speech*, as—

Reporting Verb	*Reported Speech*
My father said,	"It is time to go away"

423 Now, there are two different ways in which the reported speech may be expressed —

It may either (*a*) repeat *the actual words* used by the speaker, or (*b*) it may give their *substance*

424 When the reported speech repeats the *actual words*, this is called **Direct Narration**, as in the above example

Reporting Verb	*Reported Speech*
My father said,	"It is time to go away"

Note 1 —This is the mode generally used in the Vernaculars of India But in English the sentences are *not* joined by "*that*"

Note 2 —In all cases of Direct Narration the reported speech must be marked off by commas, as in the above example

425 When the reported speech gives the *substance* of the words used by the speaker, and not the actual words, this is called **Indirect Narration**, as—

My father said *that* it was time to go away

Note —In this construction the sentences are joined by "*that*"

426 *The tense of the reporting verb is never changed* But the tense of the reported speech is liable to certain changes in passing from the Direct Narration to the Indirect; and these depend on the tense of the reporting verb

427 There are two main rules regarding the change of tense in the reported speech, and these are similar to the rules given in § 394 about the Sequence of Tenses —

RULE I —*If the reporting verb is a* **Past** *tense, the tense of the verb in the reported speech must be changed to one or other of the four forms of the* **Past** *tense*

RULE II —*If the reporting verb is a* **Present** *or* **Future** *tense, the tense of the verb in the reported speech is* **not changed** *at all*

Rule II

428 Rule II is so simple, that we can dispose of it at once By this rule the reporting verb is assumed to be in some **Present** or **Future** tense, and whenever this occurs, the tense of the verb in the reported speech is *not changed at all* in passing from the Direct to the Indirect Narration.

	Reporting Verb (Present Tense)	Reported Speech (Any Tense)
Direct	He has told you,	"I *am coming*"
Indirect	He has told you	that he *is coming*
Direct	He says to his friend,	"I *have been reading*
Indirect	He says to his friend	that he *has been reading*
	(Future Tense)	(Any Tense)
Direct	He will say,	"Thou *hast spoken* falsely"
Indirect	He will tell thee	that thou *hast spoken* falsely
Direct	He will say,	"The boy *was* lazy"
Indirect	He will tell them	that the boy *was* lazy

429 Sometimes there is an uncertainty as to whether the pronoun "*he*" in the reported speech refers to the person speaking or to the person spoken to —

	Reporting Verb	Reported Speech
Direct	Gobind says to Cleon,	"I am wrong"
	Gobind says to Cleon,	"You are wrong"
Indirect	Gobind says to Cleon	that *he* (who?) is wrong

How is this uncertainty about the "*he*" to be removed? This can only be done by inserting the name of the person intended after "*he*," as in the examples given below —

	Reporting Verb	Reported Speech
Direct	Gobind says to Cleon,	"I am wrong"
Indirect	Gobind says to Cleon	that he (Gobind) is wrong.
Direct	Gobind says to Cleon,	"You are wrong"
Indirect	Gobind says to Cleon	that he (Cleon) is wrong

Convert the following from the Direct to the Indirect Narration :—

The judge will say to you, "You are innocent of that crime."
All men declare, "He has never been defeated"
He has told them, "I did not commit this fault"
He is still declaring, "You are the man who did it"
He has been saying all day, "I am tired of work"
I shall tell him plainly, "You cannot come here again"
I shall always affirm, "He, and not I, is the guilty man"
He says every day, "This climate will not suit my health, I must go away as soon as I can"
The judge informs the court, "The man is guilty and will be hanged in four days' time"
The man has confessed, "I am the guilty man, and deserve the punishment"

Rule I

430 For the working out of Rule I in detail, the following special rules must be observed :—

(*a*) The Present tense (in the reported speech) must be changed to its *corresponding* Past form

(*b*) The Past Indefinite (in the reported speech) must be changed to the Past Perfect

(*c*) The Past Continuous (in the reported speech) must be changed to the Past Perfect Continuous

431 *Special Rule* (*a*)—Change the Present tense (in the reported speech) into its *corresponding* Past form

Thus *shall* is changed into *should*, *will* is changed into *would*, *may* is changed into *might*, *can* is changed into *could*, *come* is changed into *came*, *is coming* is changed into *was coming*, *has come* is changed into *had come*, *has been coming* is changed into *had been coming*

	Reporting Verb	Reported Speech	
Direct	He said,	"The man *shall* come"	*Present*
Indirect	He said	that the man *should* come	*Past*
Direct	He said,	"The man *will* come"	*Present*
Indirect	He said	that the man *would* come	*Past*
Direct	He said,	"The man *may* come"	*Present*
Indirect	He said	that the man *might* come	*Past*
Direct	He said,	"The man *can* come"	*Present*
Indirect	He said	that the man *could* come	*Past*
Direct	He said,	"The man *comes*"	*Pres Indef*
Indirect	He said	that the man *came*	*Past Indef*
Direct	He said,	"The man *is coming*"	*Pres Contin*
Indirect.	He said	that the man *was coming*	*Past Contin*

	Reporting Verb	*Reported Speech*	
Direct	He said,	"The man *has come*"	*Pres Perfect*
Indirect	He said	that the man *had come*	*Past Perfect.*
Direct	He said,	"The man *has been coming*"	*Pres Per Con*
Indirect	He said	that the man *had been coming*	*Past Per Con*

Examples

Direct —And Jacob said "It *is* enough, my son Joseph *is* yet alive, I *will* go and see him before I *die*"—*Old Testament*

Indirect —And Jacob said that it *was* enough, that his son Joseph *was* yet alive, and that he *would* go and see him before he *died*

Direct.—And David's anger was greatly kindled, and he said, "The man who *hath done* this thing *deserveth* to die, and he *shall* restore the lamb fourfold"—*Old Testament*

Indirect —And David said that the man who *had* done this thing *deserved* to die, and that he *should* restore the lamb fourfold

432 *Special Rule (b)* —Change the Past Indefinite (in the reported speech) into the Past Perfect —

	Reporting Verb	*Reported Speech*	
Direct	He said,	"The man *came* at six"	*Past Indef*
Indirect	He said	that the man *had come* at six	*Past Perfect*
Direct	He said,	"The rain *fell* yesterday"	*Past Indef*
Indirect	He said	that the rain had *fallen* yesterday	*Past Perfect*

433 *Special Rule (c)* —Change the Past Continuous (in the reported speech) into the Past Perfect Continuous —

	Reporting Verb	*Reported Speech*	
Direct	He said,	"The man *was coming*"	*Past Contin*
Indirect	He said	that the man *had been coming*	*Past Perf Con*
Direct	He said,	"The rain *was falling* yesterday"	*Past Contin*
Indirect	He said	that the rain *had been falling* yesterday	*Past Perf Con*

(1) *Convert the following sentences from Direct to Indirect* —

We said to him, "The weather is stormy, and the way is long"

He said to us, "The carriage has come, and we shall start soon"

The teacher told us, "The prize will be presented to morrow"

He said to me, "The rain has been falling since daybreak, and you cannot go"

We said to him, "Your fault will be pardoned, if you confess it"

He said to me, "I am glad to tell you that you are pardoned"

He said, "The man has started, but he has not yet come"

We heard him say, "I will agree to what you propose, if you sign this"

He said to me, "You are mistaken, you will not go to day."

Hasain said to me, "I shall leave this place, as soon as I can"

Hasain said to me, "You will be tired before you arrive"

Hasan said, "Our friend arrived yesterday, but will go to day"
My son exclaimed, "Some one has taken the book I was reading"
He made a promise, "I will come, if I can."
He said, "I have been very ill, but am now better"
Pilate replied to the Jews, "What I have written, I have written"
He said to me, "You are guilty, and I am innocent"
They said, "The boy is hiding in the place where we left him"
They said, "The boy will soon be found, and we will bring him"

(2) *Convert the following sentences from Indirect to Direct* —

He made them understand that he would soon return
He told them that he had been robbed of the book which he had bought
He said that he was very sorry for the fault he had committed
They all said to him that he deserved to be pardoned
They affirmed that he was the best worker they had seen
He admitted that he had not worked so hard as Ram had done
He heard them say that he did not deserve the prize
He promised them that he would do it as soon as he could
They said that he deserved their thanks for all he had done
All who heard this said that he was speaking the truth
He said that he had been three years in jail, and yet was innocent
They told him they would never believe what he said
He replied that he would prove what he had said to be true
My brother told me that he had been reading all day
My father told me that I was wrong and would be fined
I replied that if my fault was proved I would pay the fine
I admitted that I had acted foolishly in what I did

434 There is one exception to Rule I similar to that described in § 395 for the Sequence of Tenses

If the reported speech relates to some *universal* or *habitual* fact, then the Present Indefinite in the reported speech is *not* changed into the corresponding Past, but remains exactly as it was —

	Past tense	*Present tense*
Direct	He said,	"We *cannot* be quite happy in this life"
Indirect	He said	that we *cannot* be quite happy in this life
Direct	He said,	"The earth *moves* round the sun"
Indirect	He said	that the earth *moves* round the sun
Direct	He said,	"God *rules* and *governs* all things"
Indirect	He said	that God *rules* and *governs* all things
Direct	He reminded me,	"When the cat *is* away, the mice *play*"
Indirect	He reminded me	that when the cat *is* away, the mice *play*

435. In the reported speech, when the *Present* tense is changed into the *Past* by Rule I, an adjective, verb, or

adverb expressing *nearness* is similarly changed into one expressing *distance*

Thus as a general rule we change —

Now	into *then*	*To day*	into *that day*
This or *these*	,, *that* or *those*	*To morrow*	,, *next day*
Hither	,, *thither*	*Yesterday*	,, *the previous day*
Here	,, *there*	*Last night*	,, *the previous night*
Hence	,, *thence*	*Ago*	,, *before*
Thus	,, *so*	*Now*	,, *then*
Come	,, *go*		

	Reporting Verb	*Reported Speech*
Direct	He said,	"I *will* leave you *now*"
Indirect	He said	that he *would* leave them *then*
Direct	He said,	"I *will come here*"
Indirect	He said	that he *would go there*
Direct	He said,	"I *have* seen *this* man"
Indirect	He said	that he *had* seen *that* man
Direct	He said	"I *saw this* man long *ago*"
Indirect	He said	that he *had seen that* man long *before*

But if "*this*," "*here*," "*now*," etc, refers to some object, place, or time that is present to the speaker during the delivery of the speech, then no change of adjective or adverb is made in the reported speech

	Reporting Verb	*Reported Speech*
Direct	Gobind said,	"*This* is my coat"
Indirect	Gobind said	that *this* (the coat in his hand) was his coat
Direct	Gobind said,	"I will do it *now* or never"
Indirect	Gobind said	that he would do it *now* or never

436 Interrogative Sentences —When the reported speech is an Interrogative sentence (§ 2), the reporting verb "say" or "tell" is changed into "ask" or "inquire"

	Reporting Verb	*Reported Question*
Direct	He *said* to me,	"What *is* the shortest way back?"
Indirect	He *inquired* of me	what *was* the shortest way back
Direct	He *said* to me,	"Where *are* you going?"
Indirect	He *asked* me	where I *was* going
Direct	He *said* to him,	"Why *do* you *stop* here?"
Indirect	He *asked* him	why he *stopped* there
Direct	He *said* to us,	"*Are* you *going* away to day?"
Indirect	He *inquired* of us	whether we *were going* that day
Direct	He said to me,	"Why *did* you *strike* me?"
Indirect	He *demanded* of me	why I *had struck* him

437 Imperative Sentences.—When the reported speech is an Imperative sentence (§ 2), the reporting verb "say" or

"tell" must be changed to some verb signifying a *command*, or *a precept*, or an *entreaty*, and the student must select the verb best suited to the sense or context.

In its passage from the Direct Narration to the Indirect, the Imperative mood must be replaced by the *Infinitive*

	Reporting Verb	*Reported Imperative*	
Direct	He *said* to his servants,	"*Go* away at once"	*Command*
Indirect	He *ordered* his servants	*to go* away at once	
Direct	He *said* to his friend,	"*Work* steadily"	*Precept*
Indirect	He *advised* his friend	*to work* steadily	
Direct	He *said* to the student,	"*Do not sit* there"	*Prohibition*
Indirect	He *forbade* the student	*to sit* there	
Direct	He *said* to his master,	"*Pardon* me, sir	*Entreaty*
Indirect	He *begged* his master	*to pardon* him	
Direct	He *said* to his friend,	"*Please lend* me your book"	*Request*
Indirect	He *asked* his friend	*to be kind enough to lend* him his book	

Whenever a subordinate clause is attached to an Imperative sentence, the tense of the verb in the subordinate clause is regulated by the tense of the reporting verb, (see Rule I in § 430)

	Reporting Verb	*Reported Speech*
Direct	He *said* to his servant	"*Do* as I *tell* you"
Indirect	He *ordered* his servant	*to do* as he *told* him
Direct	He *said* to his friend,	"*Wait here* till I *return*"
Indirect	He *begged* his friend	*to wait there* till he *returned*

438 Exclamatory Sentences—When the reported speech consists of an Exclamatory or Optative sentence (§ 2), the reporting verb "say" or "tell" must be changed to some such verb as "exclaim," "cry out," "pray," etc, and the student must select the verb best suited to the sense or context

	Reporting Verb	*Reported Exclamation*
Direct	He said,	"*Hurrah!* my friend *is* come"
Indirect	He *exclaimed with delight,*	that his friend *had* come
Direct	He *said* to them all,	"Good bye, my friends!"
Indirect	He *bade* good bye	to all his friends
Direct	He *said*,	"*May* God pardon *this* sinner!"
Indirect	He *prayed* that God	*would* pardon *that* sinner
Direct	He *said*,	"*Alas!* how foolish I *have been*!"
Indirect	He *confessed with regret*	that he *had been* very foolish

I. *In the following examples an assertion, a question, and an imperative are mixed up in the same speech* :—

1 **Direct.**—And he said, "I *will* arise and go to my father, and will say unto him Father, I *have sinned* against heaven and before thee, and *am* no more worthy to be called thy son *make* me as one of thy hired servants "—*New Testament*

Indirect —And he said that he *would arise* and go to his father, and *would confess* that he *had sinned* against heaven and against him, and *was* no more worthy to be called his son, and that he *would entreat* his father *to make* him one of his hired servants

2 **Direct** —"What *is this* strange outcry?" said Socrates, "I *sent* the women away mainly in order that they might not offend in *this* way, for I *have heard* that a man should die in peace *Be* quiet then and *have* patience"

Indirect —Socrates *inquired* of them what *that* strange outcry *was* He *reminded* them that he *had sent* the women away mainly in order that they might not offend in *that* way, for he *had heard* that a man should die in peace He *begged* them therefore *to be* quiet and *have* patience

3 **Direct** —The teacher became angry with the student and *said*, "Why *have* you again *disturbed* the class in *this* way? I *have told* you before, that when I *am speaking*, you should be silent *Leave* the room, and *do not return* again *to day* "

Indirect —The teacher became angry with the student and *inquired* of him why he *had* again *disturbed* the class in *that* way He *reminded* him that he *had told* him before that he (the student) should be silent when he (the master) *was speaking* He *ordered* him therefore *to leave* the room, and *forbade* him *to return* again *that* day

II *Change the following from Direct to Indirect* —

1 And Reuben said unto them, "Shed no blood, cast Joseph into this pit that is in the wilderness, but lay no hand upon him"—*Old Testament*

2 And Judah said unto his brethren, "What profit is it, if we slay our brother and conceal his blood? Come, let us sell him to the Ishmaelites, and let not our hand be upon him, for he is our brother and our flesh"—*Old Testament*

3 Joseph said to James, "I can tell you what strikes me as the most useful machine in the world" James replied, "Can you, Joseph? I should like to hear of it What is it used for?"

4 "What do you mean?" asked the man, "how can a rope be used for binding flour?" "A rope may be used for anything," replied the man, "when I do not wish to lend it"

5 Once the rich man said to his poorer brother, "Why do you not enter the service of the king, so that you may relieve yourself from the baseness of labour?"

6 Finding no remedy, he said to himself, "It is better to die than to live in such misery as I am compelled to suffer from a master who treats me and always has treated me so unkindly"

7 All her maidens watching said, "She must weep, or she will die"—*Tennyson*

8. And they said one to another, "We are verily guilty concerning our brother, in that we saw the distress of his soul, when he besought us, and we would not hear therefore is this distress come upon us."—*Old Testament.*

9 The violent man said, "What violence have I done? What anger have I been guilty of?" Then the others laughed and said to him, "Why should we speak? You have given us ocular proof of your violent temper"

10 And Nathan said unto David, "Thou art the man"

11 The robber said to Alexander, "I am thy captive I must hear what thou art pleased to say, and endure what thou art pleased to inflict But my soul is unconquered, and if I reply at all to thy reproaches, I will reply to thee like a free man"

12 "You are old, Father William," the young man cried,
"The locks that are left you are grey,
You are hale, Father William, a hale old man,
Now tell me the reason, I pray"

13 "I am sorry indeed," replied the king, "that my vessel is already chosen, and I cannot therefore sail with the son of the man who served my father"—*Dickens*

14 He cried to them in agony, "Row back at any risk! I cannot bear to leave her behind to be drowned"—*Dickens*

15 He made a promise to the king's surgeon, saying —"Bleed the king to death with this lancet and I will give you a thousand pieces of gold and when I ascend the throne, you shall be my chief minister"

III *Change the following from Indirect to Direct* —

1 Damon, before his execution, requested but one favour from Dionysius, which was that he might be permitted to visit his wife and children, who were at that time a considerable distance from him, promising faithfully to return on the day appointed

2 This Dionysius refused to grant, unless some person could be found who would consent to suffer death in his stead, if he did not perform his promise

3 In a short speech Pythias told the surrounding multitude that his dear friend, Damon, would soon arrive, but he hoped not before his own death had saved a life so dear as Damon's was to his family, his friends, and his country

4 He sent his compliments to Francis, Clavering, and Monson, and charged them to protect Raja Guru Das, who was about to become the head of the Brahmans of Bengal

5 The governor of the town then called out with a loud voice, and ordered Androcles to explain to them how a savage and hungry lion could thus in a moment have forgotten its innate disposition, and be converted all of a sudden into a harmless animal

6 Androcles then explained to them that that very lion, which was standing before them, had been his friend and partner in the woods, and had for that reason spared his life, as they now saw

7 Socrates then suggested to Glaucon that the entire abolition of the guards which he (Glaucon) recommended could not remedy the evils which he desired to remove, and he inquired of Glaucon whether

he knew by personal examination that the guards did their work as badly as he imagined

8. When he reached home, his father asked him where his ship was and what had become of his merchandise. The son in reply told him what had happened,—how he had given up his vessel with its cargo, and had taken in exchange the slaves and set them free, and how he had consented to take this girl back with him and make her his wife.

9. When they asked Thales what thing in the world was more universal than anything else, he replied that Hope was the most universal thing, because Hope remained with those who had nothing else left.

10. When Solon and Periander were sitting together over their cups, Periander, finding that Solon was more silent than usual, asked him whether he was silent for want of words or because he was a fool. Solon told him in reply that no fool could be silent over his cups.

CHAPTER XXII.—THE TRANSFORMATION OF SENTENCES

To transform a sentence is to change it from one grammatical form to another without altering its sense. Of this process one important example has been given in the previous chapter, viz. the conversion of sentences from the Direct to the Indirect narration and *vice versâ*.

Other examples of the conversion or transformation of sentences are given in the following sections:—

(1) *Sentences containing the adverb* "too." These may be rewritten in the following or other forms:—

He is *too* honest to accept a bribe.
He is *so* honest that he *will not* accept a bribe.

Rewrite the following sentences so as to remove the adverb "too" without altering or weakening the sense.

1. This news is *too* good to be true.
2. That sight was *too* dreadful to be seen.
3. Drinking water cannot be *too* pure.
4. Be not *too* eager for praise.
5. A man may be *too* lucky, if it leads to his becoming proud or selfish.
6. He was *too* much given to idleness.
7. A man who has received a kindness cannot be *too* grateful for it.
8. He was *too* much distressed to be able to speak.
9. The sun is *too* hot for us to go out at present.

10 You are *too* ignorant of the subject to understand what you are saying
11 His will is *too* strong to bend, and *too* proud to learn
12. *Too* many cooks spoil the broth
13 He reached the station *too* late to catch the train
14 This sad news is *too* true
15 It is never *too* late to mend
16 This fact is *too* evident to require proof

(2) *Modes of expressing a condition* These may be summed up as follows, but they are not all equally suitable for the same context —

(*a*) By the conjunction "if" or "unless" —

I would do this *if* you allowed me
I will do this, *if* you allow me
I will not do this, *unless* you allow me

(*b*) By a conjunctional phrase —

In case you give me leave, I will start at once
But that he is (=if he were not) in debt, he would leave this country

(*c*) By an absolute participle used as a conjunction —

Supposing you are taken ill, the doctor lives close by
Provided or *provided that* you consent, I will pay my schooling fee next week

(*d*) By an Imperative sentence coupled with an Assertive one —

Take care of the pence, *and* the pounds *will take* care of themselves

(*e*) By the conjunction "if" understood —

Had he (=if he had) met me he would have known me
Should he meet me, he would know me
Should you be feeling ill, you can leave off work

(*f*) By the preposition "but" followed by a phrase as object —

But for your help (except through your help—if it had not been otherwise through your help), I should have been ruined

(*g*) By an Interrogative sentence, followed by an Imperative one —

Have you paid your fare? then come in (Come in, if you have paid your fare)

(*h*) By the phrase "one more" —

One more such loss, and we are ruined (If we suffer one more such loss, we are ruined)

(*i*) By the phrase "were to," etc, preceded by "if" —

If he *were to* see me, he would know me at once.

Rewrite the following sentences in the manner indicated below —

1. Are you not tired of doing nothing? then begin at once to teach your younger brothers *Change to* (*a*)

2 One more word, and I will send you out of the room *Change to* (*a*)

3 Supposing the house catches fire, we have plenty of water for extinguishing the flames *Change to* (*b*), (*c*), *and* (*e*)

4. If the rain does not fall in a day or two, the young crops will be burnt up *Change to* (*b*) *and* (*c*)

5 Had you been more careful such a calamity would not have befallen us *Change to* (*a*) *and* (*c*)

6 But for your interference, everything would have gone smoothly on *Change to* (*a*) *and* (*c*)

7 If I were to pay you what you deserve, you would get nothing *Change to* (*a*)

8 If you persevere, you will succeed in the end *Change to* (*d*)

9 You may have the loan of this book so that you return it within a week *Change to* (*a*) *and* (*c*)

10 If you are in debt to any one, you cannot be appointed to this post *Change to* (*g*) *and* (*e*)

11 Provided we are all agreed, the resolution can at once be passed *Change to* (*a*) *and* (*g*)

12 If he had not promised to sell that house, he would not now part with it *Change to* (*f*)

13 If such a misfortune befalls us again, we must go to the insolvent court *Change to* (*b*), (*c*) *and* (*h*)

14 But that he was ill, he would certainly have come out first *Change to* (*a*) *and* (*c*)

(3) *Modes of expressing a concessional or contrasting clause* These can be summed up as follows —

(*a*) By the conjunction "though"

He is honest, *though* or *although* he is poor

(*b*) By the conjunction "as" —

Poor *as* he is, he is honest

Note —Remember that when "as" is used in a concessional sense, it must be preceded by some adjective, participle, or adverb

(*c*) By the Relative adverb "however" followed by some adjective or adverb —

However rich he may be, he is never contented
However often he may try, he will never succeed

(*d*) By the phrases "at the same time," "all the same" —

There is some force in what you say, *at the same time* we adhere to our own opinions, or we adhere to our own opinions *all the same* (Although there is some force, etc, yet we adhere, etc.)

(*e*) By an absolute participle followed by a Noun-clause —

Admitting that he is not naturally clever, he might yet have been more industrious.

(*f*) By the phrase "for all that" followed by a Noun-clause :—

He will not trust you *for all that* you may say in your defence (in spite of all you may say, etc = though you may say many things in your defence)

(*g*) By the preposition "notwithstanding" followed by a Noun-clause —

He is still asleep, notwithstanding that (= although) he has already slept for ten hours

(*h*) By the conjunction "if" followed by a verb in the *Indicative* mood —

If the English paid ship money (= although it is true that they paid ship money), they did it under protest

(*i*) By the adverb "indeed" followed by the conjunction "but" —

He recovered *indeed, but* his health has never been so good since (Although he recovered, yet his health, etc)

(*j*) By the phrases "nevertheless" or "none the less" —

I do not blame myself for this result, but I am *none the less* disappointed (Though I do not blame, etc , I am none the less disappointed)

Rewrite the following sentences in the manner indicated below —

1 He was poor indeed, but he was always honest *Change to* (*a*), (*b*), *and* (*c*)

2 Though he never failed in anything, he was always modest and retiring *Change to* (*d*) *and* (*g*)

3 Though it is true we have lost all our money, it has not been through our own fault *Change to* (*h*) *and* (*i*)

4 Though his lineage may be high, his tastes are low and vulgar *Change to* (*c*), (*d*), *and* (*j*)

5 Notwithstanding that it rained all yesterday, the air is still hot and disagreeable *Change to* (*a*), (*i*), *and* (*j*)

6 The weather, though cool, is not healthy for this time of the year *Change to* (*b*) *and* (*i*)

7 He was a strict man, but he was just *all the same* *Change to* (*a*), (*g*), *and* (*i*)

8 Supposing I grant that he was in his right mind, that was no excuse for his conduct *Change to* (*e*) *and* (*i*)

9 Although he was deserted by his friends, he was pardoned by his enemies *Change to* (*g*) *and* (*h*)

10 However guilty he is, he is still an object of compassion *Change to* (*a*), (*b*), *and* (*g*)

(4) *Interchange of Degrees of Comparison*

(*a*) { *Posit* He is *as* dull *as* an ass.
Comp An ass is *not duller than* he is

(b) *Comp* The air of hills is cooler than that of lowlands
Posit The air of lowlands is not so cool as that of hills

(c) *Superl* Bombay is the best seaport in India.
Comp Bombay is better than any *other* seaport in India.
Posit No *other* seaport in India is so good as Bombay

(d) *Superl* Clive was *one of the greatest* of Indian viceroys.
Comp Clive was *greater* than *most other* Indian viceroys
Posit *Very few* Indian viceroys were *so great as* Clive

(e) *Posit* Some grains are *at least as* nutritious *as* rice
Comp Rice is not *more nutritious than* some other grains are
Some grains are *not less nutritious than* rice
Superl Rice is not *the most nutritious of* all grains

Transform the following sentences in all possible ways according to the above models —

1 The younger brother is cleverer than the elder
2 A sharp ride on a spirited horse is the best kind of exercise
3 Gold is one of the heaviest of metals
4 Bad health is a more terrible enemy than poverty
5 This man has more debts than cash
6 Some countries are at least as hot as India
7 Very few countries are as hot as India
8 Platinum is as heavy as gold
9 Thou art much older in mind than in age
10 It is easier to imagine this scene than to describe it
11 A live ass is stronger than a dead lion
12 A zebra is at least as swift footed as an antelope
13 He repented of his fault more seriously than he seemed to do
14 He treats the poor with the same degree of justice as the rich
15 He sprung upon his enemy as fiercely and as fast as a tiger could do
16 I would as soon die as injure a friend
17 He is in no respect superior to you
18 You know his character quite as well as I do
19 He knows no more than a child how to keep his temper
20 A voyage at sea is one of the healthiest things in the world

(5) *Interchange of Active and Passive Voices*

(a) *Act* Your behaviour *has* greatly *astonished* me
Pass I *have been* much *astonished at* your behaviour

(b) *Pass* The judge suspected that the witness *had been bribed*
Act The judge suspected that *some one had bribed* the witness

(c) { *Act* It is now time *to call over* the names
{ *Pass* It is now time *for* the names *to be called over*

(d) { *Act* Many persons went to see the *launching of* the ship
{ *Pass* Many persons went to see the ship *launched*.

I *Transform the verbs in the following sentences from Active to Passive* —

1 The wise will not rely on medicine for keeping their health
2 I felt the wasp stinging me on the arm
3 The workmen feared that their master would not forgive them the fine
4 It is now necessary to consult the doctor
5 I dislike the noise of drum beating
6 That book has interested me greatly
7 Your want of improvement has much disappointed me
8 I found the boys laughing at me
9 Hew down the bridge, Sir Consul, with all the speed ye may
10 Many went to see the hanging of the murderer
11 Wild flowers have grown all over the field
12 The cries of distress greatly alarmed them
13 Tell him to leave the room at once
14 The house is rapidly building
15 They said that he had left his home for ever
16 Your admonitions have wearied me

II *Transform the verbs in the following sentences from Passive to Active* —

1 This is too good to be expected
2 What cannot be cured, must be endured
3 In India the jackal's howl is often heard at night
4 The road to hell is paved with good intentions
5 Nothing is difficult to a man who is fired by ambition
6 This is a suitable time for the new book to be introduced
7 Let great care be taken boy, to have everything ready
8 I have been much distressed at your failure
9 No time will be lost, my son, in having the results announced
10 His fine voice will never be heard again in this hall
11 Every one was charmed with his fine singing
12 I am sorry to find that you were not promoted this year
13 The idle candidates were all plucked
14 He begged the teacher that he might be forgiven

(6) *Interchange of Exclamatory and Assertive Sentences*

(a) { *Exclam* O *what* a fall was there my countrymen !— *Shakspeare*
{ *Assert* That was a terrible fall, my countrymen

(b) { *Exclam* O *that* the desert were my dwelling-place.— *Byron*
{ *Assert* *I wish that* the desert were my dwelling-place.

(c) { *Exclam.* *How* lovely were thy tents, O Israel !—*Heber.*
{ *Assert.* Thy tents, O Israel, were very lovely

(d) { *Exclam.* *If* I could only gain the first prize !
{ *Assert.* I earnestly desire to gain the first prize.

I. *Transform the following sentences from Exclamatory to Assertive* —

1 If only I could see him to reproach him for his ingratitude !
2 If you deny me my rights, fie upon your law !
3 Woe is me, that I am compelled to have my habitation among the tents of Keber !
4 Would that I had not wasted my time, when I was young !
5 O what misery awaits a wasted youth !
6 O for the might that laid the traitor low !
7 How sad was the sight of the deserted city !
8 What a very lame excuse !
9 A fireman, and afraid of sparks !
10 How are the mighty fallen !
11 Too late ! too late ! ye cannot enter now !
12 Woe to him that giveth his neighbour drink, that putteth the bottle unto him, and maketh him drunken also !
13 A horse ! a horse ! my kingdom for a horse !
14 O the depth of the riches both of the wisdom and knowledge of God !
15 How unsearchable are His judgments, and His ways past finding out !
16 Foolish fellow ! to think that he should have so neglected his duty !
17 Well done !
18 It must needs be that offences come ; but woe to that man by whom they come !
19 Death before dishonour !

II *Transform the following sentences from Assertive to Exclamatory* —

1 I wish I had never left my home
2 We had a very merry time of it last night
3 A vast number of pilgrims go to the Hardwar fair
4 All the uses of this world have become weary, stale, flat, and unprofitable
5 I wish I had the wings of a dove, that I might flee away and be at rest
6 The mighty have fallen low
7 The mind of man is one of the greatest marvels in nature
8 A little knowledge is indeed a dangerous thing
9 The beauties of nature are infinitely various
10 A little spark may kindle a great fire
11 I should very much like to see my native land again
12 It was an evil day when I first met that man

13. I cry shame upon your laws, if you refuse me justice
14. That man is utterly foolish and improvident

(7) *Interchange of Interrogative and Assertive Sentences*

A question is sometimes put, not for the sake of getting information, but to suggest the answer that the speaker or writer desires to be given to it

In such interrogatives, when the question is affirmative (see example 1), a negative answer is implied, and when the question is negative (see example 2), an affirmative answer is implied (see § 406, *Note*) —

(a) { *Inter* Can the Ethiopian change his skin?
Assert The Ethiopian cannot change his skin

(b) { *Inter* Who would not flee from a state of bondage?
Assert Every one would flee from a state of bondage

I *Transform the following sentences from Interrogative to Assertive* —

1 Hath not a Jew eyes? Hath not a Jew hands, organs, dimensions, senses, affections, passions? Fed with the same food hurt with the same weapons, subject to the same diseases, healed by the same means, warmed and cooled by the same summer and winter, as a Christian is? If you prick us do we not bleed? If you tickle us, do we not laugh? If you poison us, do we not die? And if you wrong us, shall we not take revenge?—*Shakspeare*

2 Who is here so base that would be a bondman? Who is here so rude that will not love his country? *Shakspeare*

3 O death, where is thy sting? O grave, where is thy victory?—*New Testament*

II *Transform the following sentences from Assertive to Interrogative* —

1 You cannot make a silk purse out of a sow's ear
2 No one can bear an unprovoked insult
3 To a lovely lady bright, I can wish nothing better than a faithful protector
4 Fair words and promises are of no avail in the time of danger
5 O Solitude, I do not perceive the charms that sages have seen in thy face
6 No one ever saw a brighter daybreak than this
7 It will profit a man nothing, if he gain the whole world and lose his own soul
8 This is a strange sort of freedom, that is enforced with whips and fetters
9 I do not see any reason why I should make another man's quarrel my own
10 The beauties of nature are beyond description

(8) *Interchange of Negative and Affirmative Sentences*

(a) *Negat* None but the brave deserves the fair
Affirm The brave alone deserve the fair

(b) *Negat* His services cannot be forgotten
Affirm His services have been too great to be forgotten

(c) *Negat* A wise man will not overstep the bounds of duty
Affirm A wise man will abstain from overstepping the bounds of duty

(d) *Negat* No sooner did he see the tiger than he fled
Affirm As soon as he saw the tiger he fled

I *Rewrite each of the following sentences without a Negative* —

1 You are not taller than he is
2 No one but a coward would flee from his duty
3 As long as the fair continued, not a man lost his temper
4 We had not gone far, when the horse began to show signs of fatigue
5 Learned men are not always judicious
6 This was too great an honour not to excite the envy of his rivals
7 He was not blind to the faults of his own children
8 A tent does not take long to be moved to another place
9 Great men are of no one nation, nor of one particular class
10 He cannot but give me the thanks that I deserved
11 No one will deny that your son has done his best
12 His office is no sinecure
13 He will not grudge you the wages you have earned
14 His deserts cannot be overlooked
15 Nowhere does France come so near to England as at the Straits of Dover
16 Never again will I revisit the shores of France
17 He left no plan untried
18 The romances of Sir Walter Scott are not likely to be ever forgotten
19 His temper did not improve with age

II *Transform the following sentences from Affirmative to Negative* —

1 It always pours when it rains
2 He had a good reason for saying what he did
3 As soon as the master entered the room, every one was silent
4 There is always some lightning when it thunders
5 We must have more money if we are to finish this work
6 Your son is a boy of marked intelligence
7 Such a disaster as this is beyond all precedent
8 At this season of the year we always expect fine weather
9 We all expect him to succeed in the long run
10 This book was meant for men of quick understanding

11 The demolition of the bridge is the only thing that can save the town.
12 Whenever I see that ship I am astonished at its bulk
13 We expected something back in return for all the sacrifices we had made
14 You are quite as foolish as he is

(9) *The Substitution of one Part of Speech for Another*

A sentence may be transformed in such a way that one of its leading words is changed from one Part of Speech to another

Nouns, Verbs, Adjectives, and Adverbs are thus liable to be interchanged —

Verb Lead and tin *differ* very greatly in weight
Noun Between lead and tin there is much *difference* in weight
Adject. The weight of lead is very *different* from that of tin
Adverb Lead and tin are very *differently* constituted in point of weight

I *Rewrite the following sentences, substituting the Verb form for the words Italicised* —

1 He promised his *assistance* to the project
2 The *condemnation* of Socrates was a crime on the part of the Athenians
3 I have an *engagement* to day at four o'clock
4 He talked to us very *amusingly*
5 St Paul was by *birth* a citizen of Rome
6 *Reliance* on such a traitor as that would be foolish
7 I am glad that my intention to become a soldier has received your *assent*
8 The play gave us much *pleasure*
9 If you desire *admission* to my service you must put your *signature* to this bond
10 You have not acted according to *instructions*
11 He *successfully* strove to win the first prize
12 Whatever he gave, he gave *ungrudgingly*
13 He did it *unknowingly*
14 The plan is *apparently* a good one
15 He was *presumptuous* enough to expect the first place
16 It is against my *inclination* to do anything dishonest
17 I acted thus in the *belief* that I was doing right
18 He *forcibly* made his way through the crowd
19 The rain will give fresh *fertility* to the soil

II. *Rewrite the following sentences, substituting the Noun form for the words Italicised.*—

1 *Hoping* that you may still amend your conduct, I will *allow* you 20 rupees a month, as before.

2 What does he *mean* by such impertinence?
3 He was so *impertinent* as to *defy* his master
4 A spider is wonderfully *sagacious*
5 Among barbarous tribes, bodily strength is *necessarily* required of the chief or king
6 I left my house at six o'clock because he *desired* it
7 A wise man is the best *qualified* to *exercise* power
8 I *believe* that the accused is entirely *innocent*
9 He did not reflect whether it was *possible* or not to outwit his enemies
10 His mind was so *active* that he *succeeded* in everything
11 I am sorry that he behaved so *rudely* to you
12 He was *sensible* enough to mind his own business
13 Her dress is so *simple* that it adds to her beauty
14 They *easily* gained the day
15 The journey was not very *expensive*
16 Whatever he may have *intended*, he has *disappointed* us
17 He is at times inclined to act *dishonestly*
18 The way to *live* long is *to keep* regular habits

III *Rewrite the following sentences, substituting the Adjective form for the words italicised* —

1 He was *absolutely* ruined by that unlucky business
2 He has more *influence* with the minister than with the king
3 Theft in former times was a crime *to be punished* with death
4 He is an *unusually* good speaker
5 He *presumes* to think that his opinion has more *weight* than mine
6 There is much *plausibility* in his way of talking, but it is full of *deception*
7 He is a man of remarkable *industry*
8 A man inclined to *vice* will never *prosper*
9 He was so given to *suspicion*, that he looked upon every man as his secret *enemy*
10 To eat and drink *temperately* is the way to preserve health
11 He had not the *politeness* to stand aside
12 Every one was pleased with his *fearlessness* and *independence*
13 Whatever he said, he said *deliberately*

IV *Rewrite the following sentences, substituting the Adverb form for the words italicised* —

1 It was not his *intention* to do you that injury
2 It is *probable* that rain will fall to-morrow
3 He answered his accusers with as much *ingenuity* as *earnestness*
4 He had a very *narrow* escape of being caught
5 I sign this bond with great *reluctance*
6 He is *careless* in everything that he does
7 His eloquence that morning was *unusual*
8 It was a *fortunate* thing that no lives were lost in that shipwreck.
9 It is quite *evident* that you have been misinformed
10 You could do that with *ease*, if you tried
11 There is no *meaning* in what he says.

12. The doctor made a very *careful* and *patient* study of the invalid's case
13 He led a *temperate* and *regular* life
14 He pretends that he drinks brandy as a *medicine*
15 His behaviour was very *insolent*, and they say that he behaved so on *purpose*
16 He was very *generous* in his treatment of the prisoners
17 He was ordered to leave the room in an *instant*

(10) *Conversion of Simple Sentences to Compound Ones*

Simple Sentences can be converted into Compound ones, by expanding words or phrases into Co-ordinate clauses

The following examples will serve to indicate the process —

(*a*) *Cumulative Conjunctions*

Simple *Besides making* a promise, he kept it
Compound He *not only made* a promise, *but* he *also* kept it

(*b*) *Alternative Conjunctions*

Simple He must confess his fault *to escape being fined*
Compound He must confess his fault, *or he will be fined*

(*c*) *Adversative Conjunctions*

Simple Notwithstanding his sorrow, he is hopeful
Compound He *is sorrowful, but yet* hopeful

(*d*) *Illative Conjunctions*

Simple *Owing to* bad health, he could not work
Compound *He was* in bad health, *and* so he could not work

I *Expand each Simple Sentence into a Compound one, using some Cumulative Conjunction for combining the clauses* —

1 Seeing a bear coming, he fled
2 Besides myself, every one else declares him to be guilty
3 Before retiring, he must first serve twenty five years
4 After making a great effort, he at last gained his end
5 In addition to advising them, he helped them liberally
6 The agreement having been signed, all were satisfied
7 Drawing his sword, he rushed at the enemy
8 The judge believes with me in his innocence.
9 The sun having risen, the fog dispersed

II *Expand each Simple Sentence into a Compound one, using some Alternative Conjunction for combining the clauses* —

1 He will be dismissed in the event of his doing such a thing again
2 You must take rest, on pain of losing your health
3 He fled away, to escape being killed.
4 He escaped punishment by confessing his fault

5 Approach a step nearer at peril of your life
6 You must walk two hours a day to preserve your health

III *Expand each Simple Sentence into a Compound one, using some Adversative Conjunction for combining the clauses* —

1 For all his riches, he is not contented
2 Notwithstanding all his efforts, he failed to gain his end
3 In spite of the opposition of all men, he never swerved
4 In spite of our search, we could not find the book
5 He had every qualification for success, except quickness of understanding and decision of character
6 He hated every one but himself
7 He persevered, in spite of all men being against him
8 He stuck to his point against every one
9 Notwithstanding his recent failure, he is still hopeful

IV *Expand each Simple Sentence into a Compound one, using some Illative Conjunction for combining the clauses* —

1 He was honoured in virtue of his wealth
2 He worked night and day out of ambition to excel
3 He was taken ill through grief at the loss of his son
4 By means of his great wealth, he was able to build himself a fine house
5 He spoke the truth from fear of the disgrace of falsehood
6 The letter, having been addressed to the wrong house, never reached me
7 To our great disappointment, we failed to carry out our purpose
8 To add to his difficulties, he lost his health
9 The fog being very dense we were forced to halt
10 St Paul continued preaching at Rome, no man forbidding him
11 To make matters worse, the bank broke
12 To our utter surprise, he had entirely deceived us
13 The bank having broke, the creditors were ruined
14 Having taken no trouble about his work, he was plucked
15 Owing to ill health, he was unable to work
16 He and I having come to terms, the business will now prosper
17 The real culprit having confessed, the accused was acquitted

(11) *Conversion of Compound Sentences to Simple*

(*a*) By substituting a Participle for a Finite verb

Compound The sun rose and the fog dispersed
Simple The sun having risen, the fog dispersed

(*b*) By substituting a Preposition, etc , for a clause

Compound He not only made a promise, but kept it
Simple Besides making a promise, he kept it.

(*c*) By substituting a Gerundial Infinite for a clause

Compound. He must confess his fault or he will be fined.
Simple He must confess his fault to escape being fined.

Reduce each sentence from Compound to Simple

1. An ass accidentally found a lion's skin, and put it on to frighten the other beasts

2. He was very tired with walking, and so he sat down to take a little rest.

3. Turn to the left and you will find the house of your friend

4. Not only the tank, but even a part of the river was frozen over with ice

5. The judge, as well as the jury, believed the prisoner to be guilty

6. You must work hard the whole term and then you will get promotion

7. He was the son of poor parents, and therefore he had to encounter many trials and difficulties at the outset of his career

8. He was a poor man, and yet he was of an independent spirit at all times.

9. I advised him to make the best use of his time, but he paid no heed

10. He was much frightened, but not much hurt

11. Every effort was made to check the spread of cholera, yet a large number of persons died

12. He was well fitted for that post by character and attainments, only he was rather too young and inexperienced

13. He did his best to be punctual, but still he was occasionally behind time

14. He is well versed in books, but wanting in common sense

15. You must work hard, or you will not get promotion

16. Give us some clear proofs of your assertion, otherwise no one will believe you

17. A certain fowler fixed his net on the ground, and scattered a great many grains of rice about it

18. The pigeons flew down to pick up the rice grains, for they were all hungry

19. The old man frequently begged his sons to live together in peace, but he was disregarded

20. They bound themselves to live together in brotherly love, and then no one could harm them

21. An English sailor had been shut up for several years, but he was set free at the peace

22. Not only was the sailor set free, but he was provided with some money for his journey home

23. There are many serious defects in his character, only he is honest

24. His act was not really noble, for it was done from a low motive

25. He was out of health, and therefore he could not go to school

26. The bulls quarrelled among themselves, and so the lion soon devoured them.

27. The wheel was lifted out, and the cart was soon again moving along the road

28. The sun shone out, and the bats all flew away into their hiding places.

29 He had no money, and so he was obliged to give one kind of goods in exchange for another

30 A quarrel arose amongst them, and each man went away to his own house

31 Every one should make the best use of his younger days, or he will repent it in his old age

32 Not only energy, but patience is necessary to success in life

33 He was an impatient, impulsive man, and therefore he failed in all his undertakings

34 I have suffered heavy losses since our last meeting, and so I cannot now pay for a seat in the coach

35 The vessel sank, and her captain perished

36 The parrot frequently heard the words of command used by the officers, and in this way it became expert in repeating them

37 The slave was thrown several times into the water, after which they pulled him up into the ship by the hair

38 Their real character was now exposed to view, and every one laughed at them

39 His mother tried to correct him, but he continued none the less to be lazy

40 He prayed the officers to allow him to retire for one moment, and his request was freely granted

41 His health failed during the examination, and every one was very sorry

42 The sting by the scorpion gave him a great deal of pain, but he showed no signs of suffering

43 The mice found their numbers getting thinner every day, so they held a meeting to consider some means of escape

44 The speaker resumed his seat, and a murmur of applause rose from the assembly

45 The rose is called the queen of flowers, for it stands first in brightness of colour

46 Sweetness of scent as well as brightness of colour makes the rose the queen of flowers

47 The rose tree is a most delightful bush only it is covered with thorns

(12) *Conversion of Simple Sentences to Complex*

Simple sentences can be converted to complex ones, by expanding words or phrases into subordinate clauses

The following examples will serve to indicate the process —

(a) Noun-Clause

Simple I am certain *of giving* you satisfaction
Complex I am certain *that I shall give* you satisfaction.

(b) Adjective-Clause

Simple. He paid off *his father's debts*
Complex. He paid off the debts *which his father had contracted.*

(c) *Adverb-Clause*

Simple	*On reaching manhood* you will have to work for your living
Complex	*As soon as you have reached manhood,* you will have to work for your living

I *Expand each Simple Sentence into a Complex one containing a* **Noun-clause** *or* **clauses** —

1 I was glad to hear of your having succeeded so well
2 He is generally believed to have died of poison
3 No one can tell the time of his coming
4 One man's meat is another man's poison
5 We have read of savages being able to produce fire by the friction of two pieces of wood
6 He shouted to his neighbours to come to his help
7 We can place no confidence in any of his words
8 The fact of his having gone away without leaving us his address is a clear proof of the dishonesty of his intentions
9 The usefulness of even the simplest weapons to men in the savage state will easily be understood
10 His death at so young an age is much to be regretted
11 We must hope for better times
12 Tell me the time and place of your birth
13 The verdict of the judge was in favour of the accused
14 All his statements should be accepted
15 They questioned the propriety of doing that
16 The greatness of his labour could be seen from the result
17 My departure will depend upon my getting leave
18 He desired to know the nature of his offence
19 The burial place of Moses was never known to the Jews
20 They explained to him the duty of confessing his fault
21 He was reported to have lost most of his money
22 We know the name of the writer of that letter

II *Expand each Simple Sentence into a Complex one containing an* **Adjective-clause** —

1 Joseph remained a long time in prison, utterly forgotten
2 Our present house suits us exactly
3 This rule, the source of all our troubles, is disliked by every one.
4 After a storm the weather is generally calm
5 That was a fault not to be forgiven
6 The diamond field is not far from here
7 He and his friend entered into a partnership binding themselves to incur equal risks
8 Their explanation cannot be true
9 The king took refuge in the fortress, being determined to make a last attempt in that place to save his kingdom
10 He was a man of irreproachable conduct.
11 He was not a man to tell a lie

12 The snow line in India is about 20,000 feet high
13. The troubles besetting him on all sides did not daunt him.
14. They soon forgot their past labours
15 This spot, the first landing place of the Pilgrim Fathers, is held to be sacred ground
16. His offence was unpardonable
17 My leave application has been despatched
18 Is this the way to learn your lessons?
19 A certain cholera-cure has not yet been found
20 Egypt was the first country to become civilised
21 Death from snake bite is of daily occurrence
22 The benefits of his early training were thrown away
23 Disease, the sure accompaniment of famine, soon broke out with virulence
24 That was the act of a coward
25 Milton was the greatest poet in King Charles' reign
26 These hills have never yet been trodden by the foot of man

III *Expand each Simple Sentence into a Complex one containing an* **Adverb-clause** *or* **clauses** —

Cause

1 In the absence of any other helper, we must accept his aid
2 The two chief points having been gained, success is now certain.
3 They were much surprised to hear him confess his fault.
4 Owing to repeated failures, he made no further attempt
5 He resigned his post on the ground of unfair treatment
6 Being all well armed, they were quite ready to fight
7 He was ashamed at being unable to give an answer

Effect

1 The problem was too difficult to be solved
2 He worked very well, to the astonishment of every one
3 The hare could not be caught on account of its swiftness of foot.
4 He fell under suspicion by becoming suddenly rich
5 By reason of his cleverness he could not be defeated in argument.
6 He was too fond of amusement to become a prosperous man

Purpose

1 He worked hard for the purpose of gaining a prize
2 He labours day and night with a view to becoming rich
3 Every precaution was taken against the failure of the plan
4 They proceeded very cautiously for fear of being caught
5 He started by night to escape being seen by any one
6 He purposes to become rich by sticking steadily to his work.

Condition

1 Without leave from the master, we should not go out.
2 He would be very thankful to be relieved of all this trouble
3 Going straight ahead for a mile, and then turning to the right, you will find the house
4 I should be very glad to be able to help him in any way

5. With or without his leave, I shall leave the room
6 In the event of his refusal to sign the bond, what will happen ?
7 He would have been caught but for his flight across the border
8 On condition of your signing this receipt, I will pay you the money
9 In the absence of the master, the whole house would have been burned to the ground

Concession or Contrast

1 Notwithstanding the heat of the sun we must go out
2 In spite of all his riches, he is never contented
3 In defiance of the order to finish the work, he went away leaving half of it undone
4 For all his experience he is still incompetent

Comparison or Proportion

1 The depth of the sea equals the height of the mountains
2 The air becomes cooler in proportion to the height of the ground
3 With every man who came in another went out
4 His cleverness is not inferior to that of any other boy in the class
5 Of all the boys in the class James is the most industrious
6 Men's wants become greater in proportion to the increase in their possessions
7 He is strong for a child of eight

Extent, Manner, Price

1 Keep perfectly silent at peril of your lives
2 He acted precisely according to instructions
3 Be it done unto thee according to thy belief
4 My treatment of you shall be similar to your treatment of me
5 The harvest will depend upon the sowing
6 Within my knowledge nothing like this has ever happened before
7 He always did his work to the best of his power
8 Nothing in my opinion will prosper under such a man

Time when

1 He returned to duty immediately on the expiry of his leave
2 He was very sorry on finding out his mistake
3 With every cough he felt a good deal of pain
4 With the first appearance of the sun, the birds begin to sing
5 The city having been taken, the inhabitants fled
6. Having finished their dinner, they started off again
7 The case being now hopeless, we must change our plans

Time during

1 With the continuance of life, there is still hope
2 In the performance of duty, no one should feel afraid
3 In the absence of the cat the mice play

Time before

1 Previously to his appointment to the post, everything was badly managed.
2 Before the commencement of his illness, he was always at work
3 She made everything ready in expectation of his arrival

Time after

1 Since the receipt of this news, every one has been happy
2 After the issue of that order everything went straight
3 From the time of its falling under English rule, India has always enjoyed peace
4 From the close of Aurangzebe's reign, the Mogul Empire began to fall into decay
5 He was first taken ill three weeks since

Time up to

1 Till the arrival of the Saxons English was not spoken in Britain
2 By constant work he was utterly exhausted
3 Before the signing of the receipt, the money will not be paid

(13) *Conversion of Complex Sentences to Simple*

I *Noun-clause*

(*a*) By substituting a noun for the Noun-clause introduced by the Conjunction "that" —

Complex It is said that he died so young
Simple His death at so young an age is said

(*b*) By substituting a noun for the Noun-clause introduced by a Relative adverb —

Complex Tell me when and where you were born.
Simple Tell me the time and place of your birth

(*c*) By substituting a noun for the Noun-clause introduced by a Relative pronoun —

Complex We need not disbelieve what he said
Simple We need not disbelieve his word

1 It is not known precisely when Buddha, the Indian reformer, was born
2 There is scarcely any doubt that Buddha lived some 500 years before Christ
3 What he spoke on that occasion was unworthy a man of his age and experience
4 How extensive the Mahommedan conquests in India were, can be best seen from the spelling of geographical names in different parts of that country
5 That the rose is the sweetest and most beautiful of flowers is admitted by almost every one

6 They are now ready to confess that the charge against my friend was groundless.

7 Even his friends admitted that what his enemies complained of was just and reasonable

8 What we have learnt already is a step towards learning what we do not at present know

9 How or where that ignorant ploughman learnt to read so well is understood by no one except himself

10 No one in this company has any doubt that he got secret help from some teacher

11 We could not make out what those lines of poetry meant

12 I am anxious to know where your father lives and what his occupation is

13 They admit that Milton was a great poet, but deny that he was a good man

14 What seemed most strange in the battle of Plassey was that the Nawab's immense army should have been defeated by so small a force, and that the victory on the English side should have been so decisive

15 You can never know what he is really aiming at or what he means by his words

16 I should like to be informed what character in English history you most admire

17 You are requested to state on oath when and where you were born and what are the names of your parents

18 I will now be bold enough to confess what my heart desires and how I shall obtain it

19 From what you have read in this book you have become acquainted with the state in which the Saxons were living, when the Normans arrived under William the Conqueror

20 You will easily understand from what you have been told how much this book has displeased me by its bad teaching

21 Whether the plan suggested will succeed or fail depends on how it will be received by those who are most interested in its progress

22 Cromwell was shrewd enough to perceive where the strength of the king's party lay, and at what point it could be most easily attacked, and how it could be best resisted

23 We know what we are, but we do not know what we shall be.

24 Whether resistance to rulers is proper or improper, and what the limits and aims of such resistance should be, depends upon whether the said rulers have exercised their authority lawfully or not

II *The Adjective clause*

(*a*) By using some adjective or participle —

Complex Such pupils as work hard may win a prize
Simple Hard-working pupils may win a prize

(*b*) By using a noun or pronoun in the Possessive case —

Complex. They soon forgot the labours they had endured
Simple They soon forgot *their* past labours

(*c*) By using a noun in apposition —

Complex. This rule, from which all our troubles have come, is much disliked

Simple This rule, the source of all our troubles, is much disliked

(*d*) By using a Preposition with its object —

Complex The benefits that he derived from his early training were soon lost

Simple. The benefits of his early training were soon lost

(*e*) By using a Gerundial Infinitive —

Complex I have no money that I can spare
Simple I have no money to spare

(*f*) By using a Compound noun —

Complex That is the place where my father was buried.
Simple That was my father's burial-place

1 Uneasy lies the head that wears a crown

2 A stone that is rolling gathers no moss

3 The explanation he gave was not to the point

4 The opinion you have formed of me is unjust

5 He made those foolish remarks at a time when he was not on his guard.

6 The relation in which you stand to me at present may be reversed at some future time

7 The first year in which the school was opened was 1884

8 His kindness to me has been such as I cannot express, and such as I never did anything to deserve

9 Let us take a walk into the grove that adjoins my father's house

10 Most of the poems that Kalidas wrote have been preserved.

11 The army that Hannibal led against Rome was the most formidable that the Romans had up to that time encountered

12 He was not fully aware of the extent of the dangers by which he was surrounded

13 The man disguised himself by putting on such a coat as is worn by foreigners, and by painting his face and dyeing his hair

14 Mary Queen of Scots was the most unfortunate of all the sovereigns of the century in which she lived

15 My friend managed to keep his seat in spite of the tricks that his horse played him

16 The English honour the name of Wellington in all those parts of the world that are included in the British empire

17 The century that followed the death of the Emperor Aurangzebe was one of the most disturbed periods of Indian history

18 The whole plan was upset by the course which affairs took after the 24th of May

19 Men should strive to imitate the high examples of virtue which their forefathers displayed in previous ages

20 We decided on building a cottage in the vale that is watered by a streamlet which flows from a perennial fountain

21 The people of Israel mourned in the land to which they had been taken captive

22 At the time when Julius Cæsar was murdered ghosts, according to the legend which was then current, were seen to walk in the streets of Rome

23 The temple of Solomon was built on the site which David had taken from the Jebusites who were its former masters

24 There was no rope whereby the boat might be tied to the river's bank

25 The evil that men do lives after them

26 This is a matter in which no proof is necessary and the signature of witnesses not required

27 The intelligence that the lower animals display in the search for food, and in the preservation of their young, is something very different from blind instinct

28 You are not the kind of man who would tell an untruth for the sake of an advantage that would be merely temporary

29 The house that stands in front of us, about half a mile distant, was built of stones which were dug out of its own site

30 This is a rule that must not be violated by any one and admits of no variation

31 King Charles, who was the second of the Stuart line, paid no regard to the promises he had made to his subjects

32 This portrait of our friend who died lately will keep us always in remembrance of what he said and did during his long and useful life

33 A series of lectures will be given this term on a subject in which we are all much interested, and in a style that we shall easily comprehend

34 The thieves have fled away into a jungle that is covered with a dense scrub and is very favourable to concealment from the eyes of those who are pursuing them

35 In his old age, after a laborious life most of which he had spent in the metropolis, he retired to the quiet village where he was born, and where he intended to spend his remaining years

36 In India, in times when the Mogul Empire was declining, the governors who were placed in charge of the outlying provinces became virtually independent, and exercised such powers as belonged by right to the Emperor who reigned at Delhi

37 I do not clearly understand the force of the excuses that you have made and of the objections that you have urged

38 Between this spot and our own house we have to finish a journey that will cover a distance of fifty miles, and last three days

39 The story that was told us by the messenger, and that seemed almost incredible, turned out to be true after all

40 This rule, from which we get so much trouble and suffer so much loss, would be cancelled by any master who was wise enough to know what our wants and difficulties really are

41 This field, in which so much coal is dug, appears to be very rich in the mineral named.

42. Wolsey founded a seat of learning at Ipswich, the town where he was born

43 The boys, whose annual examination had just been finished, went home for the holidays on the very day on which the school closed

44 A woman cannot easily find a place to which she can flee or retire from a husband who persecutes her

45 The old city that stood on the banks of the Tigris had seven gates by which men might come in, and seven others by which they could go out

46 The messenger whom we expected fled away without giving the explanation that he was required to give

47 Cromwell, who was entitled the Protector, expelled from the House of Commons all who were in any way opposed to his plans

48 A severe penalty was inflicted on every man who possessed or was caught reading that dangerous book

III *Adverb clause*

(*a*) By using a preposition or prepositional phrase —

Complex The boy was pleased that he had won a prize

Simple The boy was pleased at having won a prize

(*b*) By using a participle —

Complex. As the main point has been gained, success is certain

Simple The main point having been gained, success is certain

(*c*) By using a Gerundial Infinitive —

Complex They were surprised, when they heard him confess

Simple They were surprised to hear him confess

1 He drew the plan of the building more skilfully than any one else could have done it

2 Abide by your promise, as you value your good name

3 They were much alarmed, when they saw that their position was hopeless

4 He was quite aware what the consequences would be, if he acted so foolishly

5 The king or queen cannot impose taxes, unless the Parliament consents or approves.

6 If a man puts on the appearance of honesty, he can sometimes pass for honest

7 Though every one else became alarmed, he himself remained as cool as he usually is

8 Though he is a man of years and experience, he is still apt to be imprudent and thoughtless when some sudden emergency arises

9 Although his intentions are kind, he is sometimes a hard master

10 The speaker declared he had changed his mind on that subject so that the audience were much surprised and distressed

11 We never looked him in the face but we laughed

12 Although he has made a few mistakes, let him have a prize, lest he should be discouraged

13 As the sun has set, we had better start for home

14. These men suspect that I am a swindler

15. He did as he was told

16 He left the house in great anger, as (or since) he had taken offence at some of the remarks made by the last speaker

17 When the fire was put out and the inmates of the house rescued, the firemen removed the pumps, so that they might take a little rest

18 As soon as the signal was given, every one raised a shout, and gave a hearty welcome to the royal visitor

19 As the judge has already decided the case, further defence is useless

20 His mother will be much consoled, when she sees that her son has escaped from so many dangers

21 I should be indeed sorry, if I were the cause of your ruin or stood in the way of your advancement

22 He spoke so rapidly that we could not clearly understand him

23 What evils have befallen him that he should be so much pitied by every one?

24 There is no branch of knowledge so difficult that it cannot be conquered by perseverance

25 The rope in your hand is so long, that it will touch the bottom of the well, if a stone is tied to the end of it

26 He was not so courageous, that he was willing to ride that spirited horse

27 The higher we go up, the cooler the air becomes

28 The more, the merrier

29 When the trick was found out, the master ordered the man to be expelled from the house at once

30 A time there was ere England's griefs began,
When every rood of ground maintained its man — *Goldsmith*

31 No sooner was the first drop of rain seen to fall, than the peasant brought his oxen and plough, that he might break the first sod and cast the first seed into the earth

32 The moment I saw how industriously and patiently he worked, I decided that I would secretly give him some pecuniary help that very day

33 He made such an excellent speech in defence of his friend, that every one admired and respected him

34 The judge delivered a verdict, as became his abilities and office

35 The peasantry became poorer, as the landlord became richer

36 The reasons of this unfortunate result are so complicated, that I am unable to explain them in few words

37 The success of that dull boy in the last examination was so unexpected, that suspicions were aroused

38 Dull, backward, and lazy as he was, yet he almost headed the list of passmen, so that every one was astonished

39 The rocks that first meet the eye of the traveller, as he enters the Suez Canal, are a part of the break water that was built for some two miles out into the sea, so that ships might enter the canal in safety

40 Great delays are caused in the canal, when a ship is accidentally

disabled or grounded, since all other vessels are detained, until that ship has been removed and the way cleared for other ships to pass

41 Before the canal was cut, vessels bound for India had to proceed by a long and tedious voyage, and to round the Cape of Good Hope, since without doing so they could not have entered the waters of the Indian Ocean

42 If the canal were closed or obstructed, such a tedious voyage would be deemed a serious hardship

43 But a calamity of this kind is not likely to occur, as treaties have been signed between the principal nations of Europe, which provide that even in time of war all vessels shall be permitted to pass unhindered

44 He failed in the examination, because he was unable to answer more than a quarter of the questions

45 The father was much displeased, when he perceived that his son was not inclined to profit by his advice

46 As you are now well acquainted with the facts, you can judge for yourself as to whether I have been fairly treated or not

47 As the weather was bad and threatened to become worse and worse, we stayed at home so that we might not be drenched with rain before we had finished our journey or found shelter in a house

48 He is miserable now, because in his youth he was idle and neglected his best opportunities

49 He would have come to a miserable end, had not a stranger unexpectedly appeared and relieved him of his most urgent wants.

50 Unless the examiner is lenient and gives him more marks than are usually allotted, there is no hope of his passing this examination

51 If I had not been thoroughly acquainted with his designs, there is no doubt he would have brought me into serious trouble

52 The traveller, although he was furnished with ample means, and had received clear instructions as to the course to be taken, was scarcely able to reach the end of his journey by the time appointed

53 Though I had many difficulties to conquer, and expected to be degraded from the class, I succeeded at last in mastering the subject

54 The subject was difficult (it must be admitted), but not so difficult that it could not be mastered in the long run, if only the student persevered and was determined to master it

55 Dull as a student may be, and difficult as a subject may seem to be at first sight, he will find the study become easier or more difficult, according as he perseveres or neglects it

56 He laboured day and night, that all evils might be removed, and the condition of the people improved

57 They will do their utmost, so that he may never again have the power to injure them

58 Love not sleep, lest thou come to poverty —*Proverbs of Solomon*

59 The railway carriage was overcrowded, so that all the passengers suffered much inconvenience

60 I cannot even speak, but you find fault with me and accuse me of an untruth.

61 He and his neighbour never passed each other, that they did not look angry and make some rude remark.

62 We were all much distressed at his words, not because we feared he had spoken an untruth, but because we feared he had almost lost his senses.

63 The sailors refused to go on board, as they observed that the ship was overloaded, and would therefore be unable to stem the waves, should a storm at any time arise

64 When you have at last gained the object of your desires, you will not find the object gained as good as you expected to find it, and you will be much disappointed

65 He is working very hard to night, so that he may be free next day, and be able to spend the holiday with his friends

66 What fault has he committed, that he should be dismissed and be sent away in disgrace?

67 He was a brave man, it is true, but not so brave, that he would face a tiger, unless he was furnished with a gun and seated on an elephant

68 Although I am so old that I am unable to work, yet I am so proud that I cannot beg

(14) *Conversion of Compound Sentences to Complex.*

In a Compound sentence the second of two co-ordinate clauses is the one that completes the sense, and is therefore the more important of the two

Hence it follows that in transforming a Compound sentence to a Complex one, the *second* clause must be made the *Principal*, and the *first* the *Dependent*

(*a*) *Cumulative Conjunctions*

Compound Speak the truth, *and* you need have no fear
Complex *If* you speak the truth, you need have no fear

(*b*) *Alternative Conjunctions*

Compound Leave this room, *or* I will compel you to do so
Complex *Unless* you leave this room, I will compel you to do so

(*c*) *Adversative Conjunctions*

Compound He was a poor man, *but* he was always honest
Complex He was always honest, *although* he was poor

(*d*) *Illative Conjunctions*

Compound He was very tired, and *therefore* he fell sound asleep
Complex He fell sound asleep, *because* he was very tired

Transform the following sentences from Compound to Complex —

(*a*) Cumulative

1 Hand over the prisoner to me, and I will examine him

2 Take care of the pence, and the pounds will take care of themselves.

3 Ask no questions, and you will hear no lies.
4 Only hold your tongue, and you can hold anything else.
5 I fall sound asleep, and immediately the fever leaves me
6 The bank broke, and he became very poor
7 He persevered in his efforts, and succeeded at last
8 I am now poor and unfortunate, and my friends have left me in the lurch
9 He stands up to speak, and every one is at once silent
10 Seest thou a man wise in his own conceit? there is more hope of a fool than of him
11 Is any man sick? let the elders pray for him
12 I placed the book on the table, and it is still there
13 Everyone else had left the room, and then he left it himself
14 I go to this place and that, and the same thought pursues me everywhere
15 He might speak at any time or place, and he was always listened to with respect

(b) Alternative

1 He confessed his fault, or he would have been punished
2 Sign your name, or I shall not agree to this
3 I have not ten rupees myself, or I would be glad to lend you the amount
4 Go away at once, otherwise I will send for a policeman
5 Speak, or I fire
6 You must be careful of your money, or you will soon lose it
7 Conquer thy desires, or they will conquer thee
8 I will conquer this fellow, or perish in the attempt
9 Hold your tongue, or you will repent it

(c) Adversative

1 He distrusts me, and yet I will trust him none the less
2 He is sixty years old, and yet he still has good sight
3 Murder has no tongue, but it will some day speak
4 He is now old and infirm but he is still industrious
5 A rabbit is not so swift footed as a hare, but it is a better burrower
6 All men were against him, nevertheless he persevered
7 He was rich to any extent, yet he was greedy for more
8 Wise men love truth, whereas fools shun it
9 Go wherever you like, only do not stay here
10 England is not a good country for vines, but the wines of all countries find their way to its shores
11 Every one before now knew that he was a fool, but no one till now knew that he was a coward
12 I called thee to curse my enemies, but behold! thou hast blessed them altogether
13 His arguments may be sound, but his inferences are almost always one sided
14 They were defeated indeed, but not disgraced
15. In the discharge of duty he was a strict, but just man.

(d) Illative

1 I thoroughly dislike that man, and therefore I cannot admire him

2 He has worked steadily all through the past year, and therefore he is certain to be promoted

3 It is now late, so we had better go to bed

4 He came suddenly upon me, and so I was caught

5 My son's health was bad last year, and hence he was not promoted at the end of the term

6 They were bent upon winning him over, either by flattery or by persuasion, but he was an honest man, and therefore they did not succeed

7 I am almost certain to miss the mark, so it is of no use for me to shoot

8 You desired me to start, and so I am ready to do so

9 Food is raised by agriculture which is therefore the foundation of all wealth

10 My son has never done such a thing before he shall therefore be pardoned

Note —In such sentences as the following it is an open question to which of the clauses we should give precedence —

Compound	He loves you most and me least
Complex	He loves you more than me
	He loves me less than you
Compound	Either you or I must make the confession
Complex	If you do not make the confession, I must do so
	If I do not make the confession, you must do so

(15) *Conversion of Complex Sentences to Compound*

In a Complex sentence the Principal or Containing clause is, as its name implies, of more importance than the Subordinate or Contained clause

Hence it follows that in transforming a Complex sentence to Compound, the Principal clause must be placed last, and the Subordinate (which now becomes a Co-ordinate) clause must be placed first

Complex	I am certain that he will not recover
Compound.	He will not recover, and of this I am certain
Complex.	I have found the sheep that I had lost
Compound.	I had lost a sheep, but I have found it again.
Complex.	He is more a fool than a knave.
Compound.	He is something of a knave, but still more a fool.

I. *Change the following sentences from Complex to Compound, using some* **Cumulative** *conjunctions, or the* **Relative** *pronoun in a* **Continuative** *sense, for combining the component clauses* —

1 You may keep this book, when you have earned it as a prize
2 He will pay off all his debts in time, if only his creditors will have patience
3 The enemy fled as soon as our guns came in sight
4 Every man howled with pain, as he took his turn of the lash
5 When you have worked out this sum, you may go out to play
6 Could I but see that wonderful object, I would believe in its existence
7 If thou cuttest more or less than a just pound, nay, if the scale do but turn in the estimation of a hair, thou diest and all thy goods are confiscated —*Shakspeare*
8 As soon as the trumpet sounded, the battle commenced
9 He left for home yesterday as soon as he received that letter
10 We selected this boy as the best in the class, after we had examined all of them
11 He is still lying down on the very bed where we last saw him
12 He would prefer war to peace if war would bring him more honour
13 If the accused was guilty of that murder, he deserves to be hanged if he was innocent, the witnesses have perjured themselves
14 If he were commended for his work, it would encourage him to be equally industrious in future
15 We have had no trouble of any kind, since we came here
16 You may have everything in the house, if only you will leave me my mother's legacy
17 You shall not leave this room, till you have made an apology
18 I will make tea, when the water is boiling

II *Change the following sentences from Complex to Compound, using some* **Adversative** *conjunctions for combining the component clauses* —

1 He could do this if he tried
2 If our king should be slain on the battlefield, we still have his son to lead us against our enemies
3 Though you may not be able to conquer, I exhort you to fight bravely to the last
4 Brave as he is, he has few men around him, and may be defeated
5 Grievous words stir up anger, though a soft answer turneth away wrath —*Old Testament*
6 Though the waves dash ever so high, the ship will not be lost
7 Though the Israelites were carried captive to many foreign lands, yet in all places they maintained the creed and customs of their race
8 However fond I may be of my own country, I shall have to go abroad for the sake of earning a living
9 Bad as his disposition is, he is our master, and we must endure it.

10 I would have gone to see you, if I had known your house.
11 The sea is as deep as the mountains are high
12 Although he is a hard master, his intentions are good
13. If his theory was sound, he certainly did not act up to it

III *Change the following sentences from Complex to Compound, using some* **Alternative** *conjunctions for combining the component clauses* —

1 If you do not hold your peace, you will be fined
2 Unless he speaks the truth in your behalf, you will not be acquitted
3 If we had helped him in the time of need, he would now be ready to give help to us
4 If I had known the extent of his demand, I would not have promised to pay him
5 Unless he works hard and in earnest, he will be certainly plucked
6 If he buys that house he will run into debt
7 If he acts so foolishly, he will certainly be ruined
8 You would not be acting fairly, if you refused to hear him on his defence
9 If you believe in my words, you will not be misled
10 The king cannot impose taxes, unless the parliament consents
11 He would have come to a miserable end, had not the law protected him

IV *Change the following sentences from Complex to Compound using some* **Illative** *conjunction for combining the component clauses* —

1 I must begin my book with a preface as other writers do
2 Now that every one is convinced of your honesty, you are free to go
3 Those bags should be carefully guarded, as every one is trying to steal them
4 Seeing that almost all our friends are dead, what is the use of life ?
5 I bought to day's newspaper, that I might see the last news from the seat of war
6 The prince was not permitted to enter the cottage, lest any one should say that he demeaned himself by so doing
7 My orders were repeated three or four times, that there might be no misapprehension
8 The people will give all their votes to A, lest B should be elected
9 If he were here, I would tell him what I mean
10 If you were not my senior, I would endeavour to teach you better manners
11 He worked hard, as he had an object to work for
12 He was taken very ill, because he had lost his only son
13 He spoke the truth, because he feared the disgrace of false hood

(16) *The Interchange of Principal and Subordinate clauses*

The Principal clause being that which is uppermost in the speaker's mind, and the Subordinate clause being merely a modification of it, we cannot usually put the one in the place of the other without altering the sense, and hence as a general rule no interchange of Principal and Subordinate clauses is permissible

Nevertheless, it may sometimes happen that the speaker is indifferent which clause takes precedence of the other, or the facts expressed by the two clauses may be so closely dependent on each other, that it is immaterial to the sense whether the one or the other is made the Principal In such instances the Principal and Subordinate clauses may change places —

{ He is more eager to win a prize than to work for one
{ He is not so eager to work for a prize as to win one

{ He never borrowed what he did not afterwards repay
{ He always repaid whatever he borrowed

Rewrite the following sentences, making the Principal and Subordinate clauses change places —

1 No sooner did the sun rise than the mist cleared up
2 I always felt an appetite as soon as I heard the dinner bell
3 He had scarcely finished speaking, when his orders were obeyed.
4 He had hardly left the ship, when his old dog recognised him and ran to meet him
5 He never entered into a discussion, but he lost his temper
6 The audience shouted applause, till they made themselves almost hoarse
7 He reached the house about an hour after we had left it
8 Before we had gone far, the child began to complain of fatigue
9 The general cannot get more men, unless Parliament votes the money
10 Unless you amend your ways, you will get into trouble
11 He never promises what he does not intend to perform
12 The judge put several questions to the witness, which he (the witness) could not answer
13 He entered the room at the very moment when I was leaving it
14 The surgeon could not lance the wound, before it began to mortify
15 I was instructed to leave all those things in the place where I had put them
16 The patient is progressing as well as could be expected
17 He is not such a clever man as he was said to be
18 I like the climate of this place more than I ever did before

19. The stag never ceased running, till it had placed itself entirely out of danger

20. Victory seems nearer to us to-day than it did yesterday

21 I kept clear of that bull, which looked so fierce

22. The promise that we have made shall be faithfully kept

23 A tiger, which the bravest did not dare to attack, sprang out of the bush

24 You are bound in duty to defend these rights which were bequeathed to you by your ancestors

25 Thy descendants shall be masters of regions which Cæsar never knew

26 I distrust that man because he is always talking about religion

27 You have been bold enough to do what very few persons would have undertaken

28 The masts of the ship are still seen in the place where it sank

29 Pope began to write verses when he was only ten or twelve years old

30 Our attack was maintained for ten hours before the walls of the enemy fell

31 My workmen live on the same kind of food that I take myself

32 The boy was sent back to his parents because he was taken seriously ill

33 Be careful in walking over these rocks, lest you should fall and injure your ankle

34 No one will trust you, unless he knows that you are rich

35 I will not send them away fasting to their houses, lest they should faint by the way

36 He cannot walk fast, because he is a little lame

37 I endured his censure, because it was just

38 He is such a false man, that no one will believe his words

39 He is so full of his books that he has forgotten to use his common sense

(17) *Miscellaneous examples on the Transformation of Sentences*

Rewrite the following sentences according to the directions indicated below —

1 Only the evening star has yet appeared (Replace "only" by "none)

2 Only the morning star has remained in sight (Replace "only" by "all ")

3 He is so proud that he will not submit to correction (Replace "so" by "too ")

4 After finishing the work, he asked for his pay (Substitute a participle for the gerund, and an infinitive for the preposition with its object)

5 After the pay had been given him, he put all he could spare into the savings bank (Use the absolute construction)

6 My son is now in his sixteenth year, and is almost qualified to enter some college (Substitute a cardinal for the ordinal, and a Gerund for the Infinitive)

7 My hope was that he would not enter college till he had had some grounding in science (Cancel the "not")

8 Though this rain is out of season, it will do some good (Substitute "as" for "though")

9 I went out and took an airing as soon as the clock struck 5 P M (Use "soon" in the comparative degree)

10 Young men are taught English in these days for some other purpose than to become quill drivers (Insert 'not' before "taught")

11 Better to reign in hell than serve in heaven.—*Milton* (Insert the Finite verb, begin the sentence with 'to reign,' and substitute "preferable" for "better")

12 Death before dishonour (Expand this into a complete sentence, and substitute some adjective in the comparative degree for "before")

13 I would prefer a good knowledge of a few things to a bad knowledge of many (Substitute an Infinitive verb for "knowledge," and "than" for 'to')

14 But for the careful nursing that she gave him, he would not have recovered (Substitute a clause for "but," and a participle for "gave")

15 No sooner had the sun shown itself above the horizon than he got out of bed to commence work (Make the Adverbial clause the Principal one)

16 I have not seen him since last Thursday (Expand into two clauses, and change 'since' from a Preposition to an Adverb)

17 I last saw him three weeks ago (Substitute the preposition "for" for the adverb "ago")

18 I last saw him three weeks ago (Expand into two clauses, and substitute a conjunction for the adverb ago)

19 I could not but feel sorry for what you had said (Substitute the verb "help" for "but")

20 Every person who was present can bear witness to my statement (Rewrite this, using "but" in a relative sense)

21 I am very desirous to meet you once more (Rewrite this in an exclamatory form, using "oh!")

22 I wish that I could meet you once more (Rewrite this, substituting "like" for 'wish,' and changing "could" into an Infinitive verb)

23 The best scholar that ever left college, if he is discontented, is less to be envied than the poorest peasant who drives his plough in the field and finds some enjoyment in life (Make the Principal clause Adverbial)

24 He is so clever that I cannot keep pace with him (Substitute "too" for "so," and change the sentence to a Simple one)

25 He is so clever that I cannot keep pace with him (Substitute "very" for "so," and change the sentence to a Compound one)

26 He is so clever that I cannot keep pace with him (Substitute "such" for "so," and make the Adverbial clause a Co-ordinate one)

27 It was not till King Charles tried to seize the five members, that the Commons began to take him for an enemy instead of a king (Cancel "it was not," and reduce to a Simple sentence beginning with "the Commons")

28 It is better to have health without riches than to have riches without health (Substitute an adjective formed from "prefer" for "better")

29 Nothing is worth doing, if it is not worth doing well (Substitute an Adjective clause commencing with "but" for the conditional one)

30 He was more worthy of praise than any one else (Make this sentence a Negative one)

31 He was insolent enough to disobey his master (Expand this into a Complex sentence, in which the verb 'disobey' will be in the subordinate clause)

32 He gained his end less by honesty than by cunning (Substitute an adverb in the Positive degree for "less")

33 The striking events which preceded Napoleon's downfall have made his name one of the most memorable in modern history (Rewrite this sentence, commencing with "Napoleon's")

34 As soon as the storm commenced, the boat upset (Rewrite this as a Simple sentence)

35 As soon as the storm commenced, the boat upset (Make the Principal clause the Subordinate one, and use the adverb "hardly")

36 Our *laxity* in duty increases with our *aversion* to work (Substitute adjectives for the nouns italicised, and use "the—the")

37 Having been idle for the whole of the past term, he could not get promotion (Supply the clause implied in the participle)

38 The doctor reached the house too late to find the patient alive (Make this sentence a Negative one, but let it remain a Simple one)

39 He was too late to help him (Expand this into a Complex sentence)

40 The whole of northern India was troubled, and its inhabitants perplexed, at the outbreak of the Indian mutiny (Rewrite this as a Simple sentence, making 'the outbreak' the subject)

41 Your estate is twice as large as mine (Substitute some other adverb for *twice*)

42 It was my good *fortune* to find a friend in the time of need (Rewrite this, substituting an adjective for the noun italicised, and cancelling 'it was')

43 No man is more ready to tell tales about other men's affairs than he who is perpetually asking questions (Rewrite this, making "he" the subject of the principal clause)

44 Every man within the British Empire can claim the protection of the law (Rewrite this (*a*) in the form of a Negative sentence, (*b*) in the form of an Interrogative one)

45 Ah! what a fall was there, my countrymen! (Rewrite this in the Interrogative form)

46 If the Puritans suppressed bear fighting, it was not done out of mercy to the bears, but because they desired to put an end to all popular amusements —*Macaulay* (Make the first Adverbial clause the Principal, and change the sentence from Complex to Compound)

47 Work hard, or you will lose your place in the class (Change this from Compound to Complex)

48 But for the care taken by the doctor, your illness would have ended in your death (Change this from Simple to Complex)

49. We hope that better times are coming (Reduce this to a Simple sentence)

50 Although he was industrious, he failed in the final test. (Change "although" into "as")

51 We started at 12 o'clock for Calcutta, which we reached at 4 P M (Substitute an equivalent word or words for "which")

52 The child shrieked as if it were being killed (Insert the necessary clause after "as")

53 He glided quickly and quietly to the ground and escaped to another country, where he lived until the old sultan died (Substitute an equivalent word or words for "where," and change the final clause into a phrase)

54 He was an intelligent and quick lad, only he was very deficient in application (Rewrite the second clause using "but" for "only," and using the verb "have" in the place of "deficient")

55 He is supposed not to have done the exercise himself (Make "exercise" the subject of the sentence)

56 He is almost the best scholar in the class (Use the positive for the superlative)

57 He knows a good deal *for a lad of ten* *For all his wealth* he is discontented He has been educated *for the bar* Oh *for a lodge* in some vast wilderness ! (Substitute a clause for each of the italicised phrases)

58 The force was not *strong* enough to *maintain* order It is not *likely* that he will *fail* He was so *bold* as to *defy* his enemies (Substitute the noun form for each of the italicised words)

59 The Britons having long been unaccustomed to war, were easily conquered by the Saxons, after the departure of the Romans (Expand into three clauses)

CHAPTER XXIII—THE SYNTHESIS OF SENTENCES

Synthesis is the process of binding the parts of a sentence into a whole It is therefore the opposite to Analysis, which consists in breaking up the whole into its component parts

The subject of Synthesis will be dealt with under the three headings shown below —

I To combine Simple sentences into a Simple sentence

II To combine Simple sentences into a Compound sentence

III To combine Simple sentences into a Complex or Mixed sentence

I. *To combine Simple sentences into a single Simple sentence*

(a) *By using Participles*

Separate He had fled. He had seen a bear coming.
Combined *Seeing* a bear coming, he fled

(b) *By using Absolute Phrases*

Separate The sun rose. The fog dispersed
Combined *The sun having risen*, the fog dispersed

(c) *By using Prepositions with nouns or gerunds*

Separate He gave them his advice. He helped them liberally
Combined. *Besides giving* them his advice, he helped them liberally

(d) *By using Infinitives*

Separate He has three daughters He must get them married
Combined He has three daughters *to get* married

(e) *By using Nouns or Phrases in apposition*

Separate He fled from his creditors This was very dishonest.
Combined He fled from his creditors,—a very dishonest act

(f) *By using Adverbs or Adverbial phrases*

Separate He was unconscious of his faults His unconsciousness was complete
Combined He was wholly (or utterly or completely or quite) unconscious of his faults

(a) *Combine into Simple sentences by using Participles.*

1 He worked hard He felt tired
2 He drew his sword He rushed at the enemy
3 He must confess his fault Without making such a confession he will be fined
4 He had half cut down the tree by 12 o clock He had still three hours left to finish it
5 I took this journey to London yesterday I desire to get the best medical advice
6 I explained my case to the doctor I was seated on a chair against the table at the time I held my hat in my right hand
7 The three brothers were joint heirs to that estate. They lived in the same house For that reason they did not divide the property
8 I met with an old friend unexpectedly I was walking along the street at the time It was then 10 o'clock A M
9 They were too late to catch the train They tried therefore to

hire a conveyance They hoped by this means to reach the bank in time

10 He sat down to rest a little He had had a long and tiring walk.

11 The father was very careful to make a clear will before his death He left an equal share of his property to each of his sons

12 He first selected a site Then he levelled it Then he dug the foundations Finally he began to build a house

13 The coachman struck the horse on its hinder parts The horse was always inclined to kick The horse then threw up its hind legs It dashed one of them against the front springs of the carriage

14 Your letter never reached me It had been addressed to the wrong house

15 Turn to the left You will then find the house

16 The Spartan general fought bravely with a small band against the Persian host He then died gloriously for his country

17 Every now and then he came stealthily from behind the tree Each time he cocked his gun He was hoping to see some rabbit run by He was hoping to shoot any such rabbit

18 He at last found out the real facts He had inquired carefully into every point He had consulted every witness He had examined every document He had visited the spot He had seen it with his own eyes

19 I was seated safely on an elephant's back I saw behind a thicket the head of a tigress She was crouched in an attitude for making a sudden spring on a bull The bull was unconsciously grazing a little distance off

20 The bull heard the noise of something moving from the thicket It then threw up its horns It gored the tigress through her ribs

21 A leopard saw me aim my gun towards it It then sprang to one side In this way it avoided the intended shot

22 Men of long experience analysed the water Such analysis cannot lead to a false report as to the quality of the water

23 Cowper's pet dog plunged into the river It swam out to get a lily That lily was the one especially admired by the poet

24 I was disgusted with the manners of the people in this place I therefore decided to leave the place at once I decided to find some other place to live in

25 King Canute was arrayed in his royal robes He was attended by his courtiers He walked to the sea shore He took his seat upon a chair The chair was previously placed there for his reception

26 He was seated on the chair He was surrounded by his courtiers He was then told by them to await the influx of the tide

27 The tide came up It threatened to wash away the chair That chair was occupied by the king It forced the king to get up and go In this way it proved the courtiers to be a pack of dishonest flatterers

(b) *Combine into Simple sentences by using Absolute phrases* —

1 The agreement was signed All were satisfied

2 The creditors were ruined The bank had broke

3 The fog was very dense No one could see his way through the streets

4. The town was well stocked with provisions The guns were well stocked with ammunition The enemy were forced to raise the siege

5 The siege was over The enemy withdrew The city opened its gates By this means its trade and prosperity rapidly revived

6 The real culprit has confessed his guilt The accused is therefore acquitted of the charge

7 The business will now prosper He and I have come to terms

8 There is no proof of guilt against you The only course open to me is to dismiss the case with costs

9 Your son has been ill during the greater part of this term His studies have fallen into arrears I am unable to give him promotion

10 St Paul continued to preach at Rome No man forbade him

11 The plaintiff did not answer to his name No one knows the reason of his absence The court has decided to postpone the hearing of the case for the present

12 The tents were pitched in a grove The beds were placed inside the tents A couple of blankets was supplied to each bed In this way every one passed a warm and comfortable night

13 The captain was mounted on an inferior horse He was badly armed The enemy had thus a good chance of gaining the day

14 The captain was slain The soldiers were therefore seized with a panic

15 The peasant made his bow The landlord had nothing more to say The assessment was then fixed

(c) Combine into Simple sentences by using Prepositions with nouns or gerunds --

1 He made a promise He kept it also

2 He must serve twenty five years After that he can retire

3 He must first serve twenty five years He cannot retire without doing that

4 He is sorrowful He is still hopeful

5 The sons of Jacob saw their brother Joseph once more in Egypt They could not then refrain from weeping aloud and falling on his neck

6 He was in bad health He was therefore unable to attend school regularly

7 We were defeated We were much disappointed at this

8 He was a rich man He had much civility shown to him for this reason

9 He was very rich He was thus able to build himself a fine house

10 He had every qualification for success but one or two He was slow of understanding and undecided in character

11 It rained all day The travellers suffered much inconvenience

12 An alliance was recently formed in Europe The parties to the alliance were Germany, Austria, and Italy It was called the Triple Alliance

13 In the forest a woodman met me He had a hatchet in his hand and a bundle of sticks on his back

14. I declared him to be guilty Every one else declared him to be guilty

15 He must confess his fault He will be heavily fined otherwise.

16 We were much surprised. He had entirely deceived us

17 He made a great effort At last he gained his end

18 He is very rich He is still discontented

19 We searched for the book We could not find it

20 They were sailing along in the barque They were almost driven ashore by the wind

21 The police searched his house They were allowed to see and examine every part of it

22 That defeat dealt a deadly blow Their reputation for courage never recovered from it

23 Julius Cæsar was a distinguished man His shrewdness, pertinacity of purpose, and skill on the battle field made him so

24 The workmen saw the approach of a violent dust storm They then took shelter in a hut. The hut was not far from the corner of the field

25 I was visiting some relations They then informed me of the news about my son This was the first time I had been informed of the news

26 The exploits of those famous warriors have been handed down to us in books The books were written by ancient historians and poets

27 Julius Cæsar entered the senate house His mind was tranquil as usual The senators went in immediately behind him They were determined to assassinate him

28 They walked together for more than a mile through the forest. They maintained a perfect silence to the end Their minds were engrossed with the thought of the approaching conflict

29 He heard the result He demanded the reason They then promised to give a full explanation of everything

30 Every one was opposed to him He never swerved from his purpose

31 The result was altogether disastrous Our side suffered the disaster

32 The stag pricked up its ears The sound of some one s feet made it do so

33 The feats of the juggler were astonishing Everyone standing by was astonished

34 He did not succeed He had made every effort

35 The camels wanted their food Bundles of leaves were brought The peepul trees furnished the leaves

36 He bought a new gun Its cost was three pounds It was made by a London firm

37 This book was written by me In doing so I used a quill pen

38 Bind that man with manacles They should be fastened round his hands

39 He died at last at the age of forty five Fever was the cause of his death He had almost died from the same cause five years before

40 You helped me out of that difficulty I should have been ruined otherwise.

41. He gave me a book. He had exchanged one with me.

42. That man going along there is a highwayman He has disguised himself as a pilgrim

43 You are defending my interests You are injuring your own

44 He had difficulties to meet. He grappled bravely with them

45 I like a book of travels I do not like a novel or work of fiction so well

46 A cup of water will often do a man good A glass of wine is not so frequently beneficial

47 The Hindus have laws of their own The Mussulmans have laws of their own The two sets of laws are not the same

48 Miltiades was surnamed the Just The name suited his character

49 He is seriously ill So at least he appears to be

50 He might return this evening or he might not I inquired of him which he would do

51 My friend wrote a book Its subject was proverbs The proverbs contained in the book related to prudence, sanitation, and duty

52 He must be a bad man Your account of him leads me to infer this.

53 He is speaking the truth His manner shows this

54 He worked hard He desired to earn his own living

55 He lends out money He charges six per cent

56 She made the house ready She was expecting her husband

57 He saved up his money An evil day might come

58 Ceylon is an island The nearest mainland is the southern coast of India

59 The boat went out to sea It left the shore two miles away

60 He is a man of good character He would not do anything mean

61 He married a wife She was of lower rank than himself

(*d*) *Combine into Simple sentences by using Infinitives* —

1 He has lost his health This added to his difficulties

2 He had a large family He must provide for them

3 He could not prepare well for the examination He had not sufficient time

4 They sell their potatoes to green grocers They plant them for this purpose

5 Everyone should be honest and industrious Our country expects this of every man

6 He stayed at home and looked after his aged parents This was his reason for staying there

7 There is only one way By that you may succeed

8 The planets revolve round the sun in certain orbits. These revolutions have been observed by astronomers

9 Julius Cæsar was declared to be a usurper Brutus declared this, Cassius declared this

10 His house and goods were sold His debts had to be paid

11 The poor old ox has little strength left. It cannot draw the plough over this heavy soil.

12 Men cross deserts by camels. There is no other way

13 Several thousand men may have died in that battle That was the report

14 We hear the cuckoo's voice in early spring In England it is a pleasant sound

15 In India men travelled hundreds of miles by palkees, that was the custom before the introduction of railways

16 He stayed up at nights working out problems in mathematics This was a pleasure to him

17 In a football match each side must have its captain The captain controls the game

18 I thoroughly distrust that man I must speak plainly at once on this point

19 A disease may be cured A disease may be prevented This is the better of the two

20 He must confess his fault He will be fined otherwise

21 He formed a resolution He resolved that he would drink no more wine

22 Some men can make a fortune out of small capital No one finds it easy

23 The French were far inferior to the English by sea This fact was well known

24 The head guides the rest of the body It was made for this purpose

25 My father was very much delighted He had heard of my brother's success

26 Your cousin had not much industry He could not therefore keep his place in the class He did not win a prize

27 The child grew worse every day The parents were therefore grieved

28 The general has just come The inspection of the volunteers is his object

29 That man cheated all his creditors He must have been mad

30 The servant was desirous of showing his zeal So in his master's presence he was very attentive and diligent

31 The bank suddenly broke Matters were thus made worse

32 Suraj ud Doulah shut up a large number of prisoners in a suffocating dungeon In doing such a thing he was very cruel

(e) *Combine into Simple sentences by using Nouns or Phrases in apposition* —

1 Cromwell assumed the powers of a king He had once been a private gentleman Next he was a popular leader in the Long Parliament Then he was the commander of the Parliamentary forces Finally he was called Protector

2 Lord Clive commenced his career in India as a clerk In that capacity he was a writer in a merchant's office He ended his career with founding the British Empire in the east

3 Suraj ud-Doulah was nawab or viceroy of the Bengal province The sovereignty of the Emperor of Delhi was nominal He shut up his prisoners in the Black Hole. This was a suffocating dungeon in Calcutta.

4. Suraj-ud-Doulah perpetrated many atrocities He oppressed the British merchants of Calcutta He oppressed his own people no less He was defeated at the battle of Plassey This was a fit end to such an evil reign.

5 Byron had certainly some of the qualifications of a first rate poet. He possessed great command of language He was a keen observer of nature He had an accurate knowledge of men and manners.

6 Sometimes he travelled in Italy Sometimes he travelled in Greece Sometimes he travelled in Switzerland He always carried with him the same moroseness of temper

7 John Bunyan wrote the book called Pilgrim's Progress He had once been a thoughtless youth After that he became a religious penitent

8. Francis Bacon was Lord High Chancellor of England He wrote many learned books He devised a new system of logic He has nevertheless been accused of doing many things unworthy of his high position.

(*f*) *Combine into Simple sentences by using Adverbs or Adverbial phrases* —

1 He was wanting in application This ruined him

2 All the inmates escaped from the flames This was fortunate

3 The letter was addressed to the wrong house It never reached me

4 Notwithstanding his idleness in the past term he was confident of success His confidence surprised me

5 The rose is the sweetest of flowers This is certain

6 He begged for pardon His request was not granted

7 Most of the blame for that robbery was thrown on one of the house servants The servant deserved the blame

8 He wrote a severe letter to the school managers That was his intention

9 The boat was leaking The sinking of the boat was unavoidable

10 This boy is the cleverest in the school No other boy can be compared with him

11 He invested all his money in a single bank The investment was not a prudent one

12 By the breaking of the bank he lost all his money The loss was necessary under the circumstances

13. They defended themselves against the charge Their defence was clever Their defence was resolute

14 Beware of wine This is of the first importance

15 He has been attending school this term His attendance has been irregular

16 He will return to us He will not be long absent

17 The tree was cut down The cutting was gradual

18 He searched for the lost watch in distant places He searched for it in neighbouring places.

19. He dismissed his old ministers and advisers. This was a foolish act.

(*g*) Miscellaneous examples *Combine the following sets of sentences into Simple sentences, by any of the methods shown above* —

1 He is a wise man This is well known to all
2 The earth is round Men of science have proved this.
3 Our side was victorious Such was the result
4 He was fined for some reason The reason was unknown
5 I asked him to grant me a request He refused to grant it
6 Some of the students work hard All such students will get promotion
7 Moses was the Jewish lawgiver He was buried in a certain place No one could find it
8 We honour the name of Wellington He won the battle of Waterloo He destroyed the power of Napoleon
9 He suffered for certain debts His son had contracted them His son was an improvident youth
10 I have not much money I cannot spare any
11 They were in debt They were thrown into prison for that reason
12 The boy was determined to win a prize He worked very hard
13 I see he is working hard I am therefore much pleased
14 He was very quick in his answers He was never defeated in argument
15 He suddenly became rich His conduct fell under suspicion
16 He worked very regularly He aimed at gaining a prize
17 He labours day and night By this means he hopes to become rich
18 There was some fear of the failure of the plan Every precaution was taken
19 He fled across the border He would otherwise have been caught
20 He has had much experience He is none the less incompetent
21 The sea is deep Mountains are high The height and depth are equal
22 Pardon his fault You will thus show your usual forbearance
23 He returned to duty His leave had expired just before he did so
24 The city was taken The inhabitants fled
25 We have no dictionary We are therefore unable to look out the meaning of this word
26 Things are not now going on well They went on well previously At that time he had not been placed in charge
27 The whole house has been happy Some one had brought us good news This was the cause of the happiness
28 English at one time was not spoken in Britain It began to be spoken after the arrival of the Saxons
29 Our success is said to be certain This is by no means clear
30 He intended to return soon He told us so
31 A serious famine prevailed This was the cause of the riot
32 He managed to succeed somehow or other Did you inquire about the means?

33 Some things are known Others are unknown The former help us to understand the latter

34 The house is now out of repair It was taken by us two years ago

35 Much trouble has come to us from this regulation It ought to be cancelled

36 Their only hope of escape lay in the coming of the ship The ship now came fully into sight

37 A star appeared in the East Christ was born at that time

38 Death must be destroyed It is our last enemy

39 Their position was now hopeless They gave themselves up to the enemy in consequence

40 The boy had won a prize He was much pleased

41 He could not speak He was thoroughly ashamed of his misconduct

42 They had no hope of his recovery They all felt sad

43 They could not be proved guilty of the charge They were therefore acquitted

44 They heard him confess his fault They were therefore much surprised

45 The problem was a very difficult one It could not be solved

46 He is a clever boy No other boy is more clever

47 I will convict you In doing so I shall be guided by a sense of justice

48 On all occasions he prepared his lessons He did his best to prepare them well

49 He had found out his mistake He was very sorry It was then too late

50 The Mogul empire fell to pieces Aurangzebe's reign was over

51 The receipt has not been signed The money will not be paid without this

52 The English nobles remembered the example set them by their fathers This was set them in the reign of King John The government by Henry III was equally bad He had foreign favourites The nobles were determined to put an end to these things

53 Insurrections had come to an end Henry VII after this desired to marry his children He desired to amass money He devoted his attention to these two things

54 The king spent the following year in Normandy He desired to strengthen his position there He desired to secure the succession of his son The son was then eighteen years old

55 There were 300 persons on board Only one escaped All the rest went down with the ship One of the men drowned was Fitz stephen He was captain of the ship The man who escaped was a butcher of Rouen

56 Prince William had been drowned Henry had only one object after this. His object was to secure the crown of England for his only daughter, Matilda She had been married to the emperor The emperor's name was Henry V He was now dead

57 Henry was fond of his children This was one strong point in his character His fondness for learning was another strong point In other respects his character was devoid of any commendable qualities

II. *To combine Simple sentences into a Compound sentence* —

(a) *By using some* **Cumulative** *Conjunction* —

Separate He was declared to be guilty by the magistrate Even his best friends believed the verdict to be just

Combined Not only was he declared to be guilty by the magistrate, but even his best friends believed the verdict to be just.

(b) *By using some Relative Pronoun or Adverb in a* **Continuative** *sense* (see § 134) —

Separate We started for Calcutta yesterday We shall stop there four days

Combined We started yesterday for Calcutta, *where* we shall stop four days

(c) *By using some* **Alternative** *Conjunction* —

Separate That animal may be a fish It may be a serpent It must be one of them

Combined That animal is *either* a fish *or* a serpent

(d) *By using some* **Adversative** *Conjunction* —

Separate He is poor He is honest

Combined He is poor, but honest

(e) *By using some* **Illative** *Conjunction* —

Separate At the sight of a cat the mouse runs into its hole The mouse fears the cat

Combined At the sight of a cat the mouse runs into its hole, for it fears the cat

(f) *By combining the above processes* —

Separate The cat is meek The cat is silent The cat is sly The cat is cruel The mouse runs away at the sight of the cat The mouse enters into its hole

Combined The cat is meek *and* silent, *but* sly *and* cruel, *and hence* the mouse runs away at the sight of it *and* enters its hole

Combine the following Simple sentences into one Compound sentence —

1 Two cats had stolen some cheese They could not decide how to divide it equally between them They decided on asking a monkey

to settle the dispute for them They went to the monkey at once for that purpose (Express by *two* Finite Verbs)

2 The monkey agreed to hear and decide the case. He called the two cats before him He held out a pair of scales He put one piece of cheese in one scale and one in another (*Two* Finite Verbs)

3 He weighed the two pieces He found one to be heavier than the other He wished to make them of equal weight and size He bit a piece off one of them (*Two* Finite verbs)

4 He passed the examination No one expected him to do so He came out at the head of the list of passmen (*Two* Finite verbs)

5 I was not the only person to hear this strange story You heard it You believed it to be true I did not believe it (*Four* Finite verbs, expressed or understood)

6 Every boy should learn how to swim Swimming is a fine healthy exercise Swimming is often the means of saving one's own life. Swimming is often the means of saving the life of others (*Three* Finite verbs)

7 I am glad to see your love for gardening The first thing to be done towards making a garden productive is to clear the soil of weeds Nothing will grow well in an untidy soil (*Three* Finite verbs)

8 You seem to have made up your mind to work hard this year This is something quite new I am glad to see it I hope your good resolutions will not fail (*Four* Finite verbs)

9 That hopping animal may be a frog It may be a toad It cannot be both (*Two* Finite verbs, expressed or understood)

10 He rushed out of the room in time He would have been crushed to death by the falling of the roof The roof fell very suddenly It gave scarcely any warning of the impending crash (*Two* Finite verbs)

11 He is a rich man He is not proud of his wealth He makes no distinction between rich and poor (*Three* Finite verbs)

12 Look at the feet of a cat You will see the reason of her skill in catching birds or mice The feet are furnished with long, sharp claws A bird or mouse once caught, cannot get loose from the claws (*Three* Finite verbs)

13 The air of the plains of India is often very hot The air on mountain tops in the same country is generally cool This seems strange at first The sun overhead is the same in either case The sun shines on hills and plains alike (*Three* Finite verbs)

14 A brave and honest man will speak out He will not be afraid of the consequences A timid man may keep silent at the time of danger He may tell falsehoods He is afraid of some harm coming to him. (*Three* Finite verbs)

15 In all labour there is profit Mere talking tends only to failure (*Two* Finite Verbs)

16 A certain rumour was current He was said to have been taken seriously ill He was quite well He wrote to me that very day He informed me by letter of his intention to extend his business (*Three* Finite verbs)

17 In private life he was amiable In private life he was even fond of amusement In public life he was severe In public life he was a rigorous dispenser of justice. (*Two* Finite verbs)

18 A blind man carried a lantern in his hand He carried a pitcher on his shoulder He was walking along one night alone He met a thoughtless young fellow He was asked to explain the reason why he carried a lantern, although he was blind (*Three* Finite verbs)

19 The Prince of Wales was the son of Henry IV of England He had a strong sense of justice He knew the duties of a subject. He knew the duties of a prince He was hot tempered He was quick at taking offence He was fond of the company of profligate men On one occasion he struck Sir William Gascoigne Sir William Gascoigne was a judge He was at that time seated on the bench (*Two* Finite verbs)

20 Sir W Gascoigne knew the dignity and power of his position He resolved to do his duty at all hazards He instantly ordered the Prince of Wales to be committed to prison (*Two* Finite verbs)

21 The Prince was now conscious of his fault He submitted to the order He allowed himself to be led away to prison He had enough sense to know the necessity of obeying the law In so doing he set an example to princes in all future ages (*Three* Finite verbs)

22 Life has few enjoyments We cling to it (*Two* Finite verbs)

23 Some men die fighting on the battlefield Such men die on a bed of honour (*Two* Finite verbs)

24 At this time of the year I do not rise at five o'clock in the morning I rise a little before seven (*Two* Finite verbs, expressed or understood)

25 We would have entered that dark cave We would have explored thoroughly its inner parts We had no torches We were forced to give up the attempt (*Three* Finite verbs)

26 The battle was over Edward marched to Calais He besieged it by sea and land In the meanwhile Robert Bruce took advantage of Edward's absence He invaded England He was king of Scotland He was the ally of France (*Three* Finite verbs)

27 Calais was captured A truce was then made between France and England This was further prolonged by the outbreak of a plague The plague was called the Black Death (*Two* Finite verbs)

28 The northern states of America had a contest with the southern The contest lasted four years The northern States fought for freedom The southern States fought for slavery In spite of their long resistance, the southern States were finally defeated (*Two* Finite verbs)

29 I am young You are old and experienced I was afraid of your age and dignity I durst not speak my mind openly before you (*Three* Finite verbs)

30 The sluggard will not plough by reason of the toil He shall beg in harvest. He shall have nothing (*Three* Finite verbs)

31 Cast thy bread upon the waters Thou shalt find it after many days (*Two* Finite verbs)

32 It was now six o'clock in the evening It was too late to start on our journey We postponed starting till the following morning (*Two* Finite verbs.)

33 The people of this place are thrifty They are industrious, I

noticed the fertility of their fields Their cottages were neat. Their persons were clean (*Two* Finite verbs)

34 I have no knowledge of the person referred to I am unable to say any good of him I am unable to say any evil of him. (*Two* Finite verbs)

35 I am not the only person who has done wrong. You did wrong You attempted to obtain a certificate on false pretences. (*Two* Finite verbs)

36 All the beams in the roof of this house are made of teak Teak is the strongest kind of wood in the East It is much prized for building wooden houses These are very often used by Europeans in Burma (*Four* Finite verbs)

37 You have never before heard of the Himalaya mountains. This is a very surprising fact Your knowledge of geography must be very small (*Two* Finite verbs)

38 You were promoted You had worked hard all last year Two other students carried off the class prizes (*Two* Finite verbs)

39 The robber was notorious for his evil deeds The hermit was known everywhere for his good deeds This made the robber jealous of the hermit The hermit's reputation was superior to the robber's (*Three* Finite verbs)

40 Almost all the combatants were said to have been slain on the battlefield A large number of them escaped alive Many of these took up arms again in the following year They wished to defend their country They loved their country (*Three* Finite verbs)

41 The boat seemed likely to sink He did not lose his courage He continued pulling the oars He brought the boat safely to land (*Three* Finite verbs)

42 He was clever, accomplished, and virtuous He had one failing He was of rather a timid disposition (*Two* Finite verbs)

43 He caught the robbers He never got back the stolen property The property consisted of gold and silver ornaments It was worth 150 rupees (*Four* Finite verbs)

44. You made a deplorable mistake You did it in ignorance of the facts and their consequences You deserve pardon (*Three* Finite verbs)

45 According to the rumour, he was killed by a flash of lightning striking his house The house was not struck by lightning He was not at all hurt (*Three* Finite verbs)

46 We must reach Lucknow by four o'clock P M There is only one hour left We must start at once (*Two* Finite verbs)

47 The storm had now passed The sun rose above the horizon Every drop of dew sparkled like a diamond The birds warbled their morning hymns The streams were dancing down the rocks or through the glens The little brooks tinkled like silver bells The trees, fanned by the morning breeze, waved the ends of their huge branches in the blue sky The birds hopped about chirping their cheerful notes. All nature seemed to have put on its brightest and most pleasing colours (*Nine* Finite verbs)

48 He received all the pay promised him He was dissatisfied He filed a petition in court (*Two* Finite verbs.)

49 Henry was not in a position to follow up his victory He had

gained this victory on the field of Agincourt He proceeded to Calais. From Calais he proceeded to Dover At Dover he was received with the greatest enthusiasm (*Three* Finite verbs)

50 Perkin Warbeck was promised his life He surrendered on that promise He was carried in mock triumph to London A confession of the imposture was published in London The object of this publication was to satisfy the people (*Two* Finite verbs.)

51 A poor Arab came suddenly upon a spring of sweet water. He had never before tasted any but brackish wells He thought such sweet water fit only for a king He filled his leathern bottle from the spring He set off to present it to the Khalif (*Three* Finite verbs.)

52 The courtiers pressed forward They desired to taste this precious water The Khalif forbade them to taste even a drop The water had turned sour on the way The Khalif did not desire to give offence to the peasant The peasant was simple minded The peasant was loyal (*Four* Finite verbs)

53 You have finished the job before the time You have done it in good style This is more than I expected from you You have never before shown so much quickness and energy I have seen a great deal of you for many years past (*Five* Finite verbs)

54 The Jews begged Pilate to release Barabbas They begged him to condemn Jesus to death Jesus was innocent Barabbas was a robber (*Three* Finite verbs)

55 He is a fool He is a knave (Combine these sentences in three different ways, so as (1) to give equal stress to both statements, (2) to give most stress to the first, (3) to give most stress to the second one)

56 The monsoon failed The tanks became almost empty The fields could not be irrigated No grain could be sown A famine was feared The ryots looked anxiously for the next monsoon It proved more abundant than usual The danger was averted (*Madras Matriculation*, 1888 *Six* Finite verbs)

57 Henry III had several times confirmed the Magna Charta He regarded that document as an encroachment upon the rights of a king He broke its provisions on several occasions He looked upon the English barons with suspicion as men desirous of lessening the kingly power (*Three* Finite verbs)

58 A boat was lowered The prince at once put off from the sinking vessel The nobles put off He heard the cries of his half sister He returned to the vessel His purpose was to save his half sister (*Two* Finite verbs)

59 The nobles made Simon de Montford their leader He had married Henry's sister Her name was Eleanor They attended a council at Westminster in full armour There they demanded the redress of national grievances (*Three* Finite verbs)

60 The barons were not content with having thus far humbled the king. They selected twelve of their number The duty of these twelve was to act as a standing council Good government was the object to be gained These men did not consult the interests of the country They usurped the royal power They gave their chief care to the aggrandisement of their own families. (*Three* Finite verbs)

III *To combine Simple sentences into a Complex or mixed sentence.*

(a) *The Noun-clause*

A Noun-clause can be introduced by the conjunction "that" in the sense of Apposition, or by some Relative pronoun (or adverb) whose Antecedent is not expressed, or by some words quoted in the Direct Narration —

Separate The rose is the sweetest of flowers. This is certain

Combined It is certain *that* the rose is the sweetest of flowers

Separate He is going to some place No one knows it.

Combined No one knows *where* he is going

Combine into a Complex sentence containing one or more Noun-clauses, and make the italicised verb the predicate verb of the principal clause —

1 He will not return soon He *declared* this to be his intention

2 He will get us out of this difficulty in some way or other His way of doing it *is known* to no one but himself

3 Some one will be selected to watch my work My reputation *will depend* on him

4 Perhaps better luck is in store for us We *hope* so

5 Is there any hope of his success? That *was* my question

6 He had made a serious mistake He had caused much mischief thereby Perceiving this he *confessed* his fault

7 He was innocent That *was* the verdict of the judge

8 He is said to have committed some offence He *desires* to be informed about it

9 A man may steal my purse In doing so he steals trash

10 You have succeeded very well This was news to us It *gave* us much pleasure

11 Moses was buried in some place The place *was* never *known*

12 He was dismissed from his post The reason *was* clearly *explained* to him

13 The meadow looks green and pleasant. *See* it

14 A lazy man injures no one but himself This *is* not true

15 I have suffered many losses No one pities me This *is* a fact

16 You have done an excellent day's work I *was* much pleased to see it

17 I *resolved* to be very careful I say or do certain things in his presence

18 A despised enemy may turn out a dangerous rival This *has* often *happened*

19 He will not remain here another day He *told* them so

20 Our friend will soon recover his health There *is* no doubt of this.

21 He is going somewhere I do not *know* His best friends do not *know*

22 What do you desire to have? I *will* grant you anything

23 We can make our lives sublime Lives of great men all *remind* us of this

24 He cannot resist your claims He cannot deny your merits. Of this you *may be* sure

25 You require a certain amount of time for preparing your plans. You *shall be granted* it

26 The messenger told us something about that matter I *heard* it

27 It was your duty to make the best use of your time at school You *found* out this too late

28 Your hopes about your son's future may or may not be fulfilled Time alone *will show*

29 Some one has been making a great noise I *should like* to know the person

30 Columbus discovered America in a certain way He was provided with ships and men by a certain king He met with certain difficulties in the way I *should like* to be told about these things

31 You have come from a certain place You have come for a certain purpose You began your journey on a certain day You arrived here on a certain day Tell me about these things

32 The Russians, during the Crimean war, remained strictly on the defensive It *is* not difficult to perceive the reason

33 I have seen that man's face before somewhere I *am* sure of it

34 The earth moves round the sun The sun does not move round the earth It seems to move round the earth Men of science *have* clearly *proved* these points

(b) *The Adjective-clause*

An Adjective-clause is introduced by some Relative pronoun or Relative adverb used in a *Restrictive* (that is, a qualifying) sense

In composing an adjective-clause the student should remember that the Relative pronoun or Relative adjective should stand *as close as possible* to its antecedent, that is, no word should be placed between them, if it can be conveniently placed anywhere else

Separate A man once had a goose The goose laid every day a golden egg

Combined A man once had a goose, *that* every day laid a golden egg

Combine into a Complex sentence containing one or more Adjective-clauses, and make the italicised verb the predicate-verb of the principal clause —

1 The messenger had a duty to perform The duty *was* difficult

2 I suffered anxiety The anxiety *was* extreme

3 He has done much good to the public His services *cannot* be paid too highly

4 Daniel *came* alive out of the den In that den lions were kept

5 An orator should possess a clear voice My friend *does* not possess one

6 We *came* upon a certain cottage Here a shepherd was living with his family

7 The Saxon and Danish languages *were* dialects of a certain language This language was once widely spoken in Europe

8 Every one spoke well of that man thirty years ago He was then a fine young warrior Now he *has become* a confirmed drunkard

9 One of the great annual fairs is held at Muttra Muttra is visited on that occasion by many pilgrims from all parts of India Muttra *is* one of the most ancient cities of Hindustan

10 I *went* down a footpath At the end of the footpath there was a chasm The depth of the chasm was about twenty feet The dead body of a man was lying there A faithful dog was still seated by its side

11 A small rest house stood at the foot of the hill We *stopped* there for the night

12 The shipwrecked mariners *watched* for the appearance of a ship All their hopes of escape were centred on this vessel

13 He had received a good education This *raised* him above many men of his own age

14 In our ramble through the forest we *came* upon a thatched cottage A fine cedar tree was growing by its side

15 He has no money laid by He cannot borrow He cannot earn a good monthly income A man of that kind *must* not *attempt* to embark in trade

16 The Greeks were a nation of antiquity They *were* the first to become civilised

17 The body of conspirators *met* together secretly Their place of meeting was a private house Their object was to murder the king

18 The Indian Empire was acquired by the British in various different ways He briefly *described* the most important of these to the audience

(c) *The Adverb Clause*

An Adverb-clause can be introduced by any of the Subordinate conjunctions or by a Relative pronoun (or adverb) used in an adverbial sense (see § 284)

Subordinate conjunctions

Separate He left off trying to do his best He could not give satisfaction anyhow

Combined He left off trying to do his best, *as* he could not give satisfaction anyhow

Relative pronouns.

Separate My son had no sleep last night. He must be very tired to-day

Combined My son, *who* had no sleep last night, must be very tired to-day

Combine into a Complex sentence containing one or more Adverb-clauses, and make the italicised verb the predicate-verb of the Principal clause —

1 All men must die and be forgotten Why then *does* he *seek* for fame and riches?

2 He *gave* up most of his spare time to home preparation He wished to gain a scholarship at the end of the term

3 You must sign your name He *will* then *agree* to your terms

4 He became more and more rich He *was* never contented

5 He *is* a lazy boy The other boys in the class are not equally lazy

6 Men may sow much or little They may sow prudently or imprudently They *will reap* accordingly

7 He found out his mistake He *was* then very sorry

8 He *learnt* English very rapidly He astonished his teacher thereby

9 A thief *goes* about his work very cautiously He does not wish to be caught

10 I may perhaps be allowed to speak I *can* then explain everything

11 He has been very unfortunate He *is* always cheerful

12 He *is* a clever boy No other boy in the class is more clever

13 He was directed to do something in a certain way He *did* it accordingly

14 The school bell rang All immediately *went* to their places

15 Life may continue for some time During such time there *is* still hope

16 He *persevered* day and night At last he gained his end

17 The rain may or may not fall this month With the fall of rain there *will be* no fear of famine

18 He possessed enormous wealth He never *enjoyed* peace of mind He never enjoyed freedom from care

19 A man gets more wealth He then *wants* more

20 You have treated me in a certain way I *will treat* you in the same way

21 The world may last for an indefinitely long period During such period the sun *will continue* to rise

22 He may or may not be careful Without great care he *will come* to serious harm.

23 The branches of some trees grow to a great height Their roots *are* not equally deep

24 *Forgive* him Thou art a man of mercy

25 I *must have* your receipt. I then consent to paying the money

26 He *continued* staring at that elephant. He seemed not to have seen one before

27 The mountains increase in height The air proportionately *increases* in coolness

28 Men may behave well or ill in this life. Hereafter they *will be* blessed or miserable accordingly

29 He was not yet seventeen years old He *could* not at that age take possession of his estates

30 He may give me leave He may not give me leave I *shall go* back to my parents in either case

31 India fell under British rule It *has* always from that time forward *been* free from invasion

32 Every green thing *began* to wither The hot weather had set in

(*d*) Miscellaneous examples of simple sentences to be combined into Complex, Compound, or Mixed sentences The italicised verb shows the predicate-verb of the Principal clause The other clauses in each sentence are either Co-ordinate or Subordinate

1 The murder was proved The judge then *ordered* the man to be executed The man had been four days under trial (One co ordinate clause)

2 The supply of pasture often runs short The nomads of Tartary then *shift* their abode They search for new pasture elsewhere (One subordinate clause)

3 We heard the sad news We immediately *started* for the afflicted house There we found the mourners (One co ordinate clause)

4 They spoke in defence of their absent friend They *could* not *have spoken* better (One subordinate clause)

5 He behaved prudently under the circumstances Few men *would have acted* so prudently (One subordinate clause)

6 Suraj-ud-Doulah was defeated He fled from the field of battle His horse *could* not *carry* him more than a few miles His horse was of the purest Arab blood (Two subordinate clauses)

7 His difficulties become greater and greater He *shows* more and more energy (One subordinate clause)

8 I *will visit* your house in June next You have frequently asked me to do so I will not disappoint you any longer (One subordinate and one co ordinate clause)

9 The followers of Suraj ud Doulah *deserted* him They hated his cruelty and vices. They had often praised him to his face. (One subordinate clause)

10 Richard I, the king of England, *was seized* with remorse He had rebelled against his father The father at that time was an old man He was much attached to all his sons (One co ordinate clause)

11 I *am* very sorry He has lost all hope He has given up work He worked hard last year He has excellent abilities. (Two subordinate and two co ordinate clauses)

12. I *left* him to his fate. He persisted in refusing help I offered

him help on all occasions. On such occasions he needed it. (Three subordinate clauses.)

13. The ships *were* in the greatest danger. They had not been sufficiently warned. A violent storm was rising. Yesterday the wind was calm. (One co-ordinate and two subordinate clauses.)

14. He is attacked unjustly. He is blamed for serious faults. He has not been guilty of such faults. He *becomes* for this reason very much vexed. (One subordinate clause.)

15. The prince cannot increase his forces. He *must* first *raise* the money. He cannot pay his men without this. He cannot without this induce them to fight cheerfully for his cause. (One subordinate and two co-ordinate clauses.)

16. You may still perhaps succeed in your object. You *must persevere* steadily. Success is impossible without this. (One subordinate and one co-ordinate clause.)

17. We expostulated with him. He *would* not *yield*. He kept to his own purpose. This purpose was certain to work much mischief. (Two co-ordinate clauses.)

18. He puts on a grave face. At heart he *is* a foolish fellow. No one trusts him. He has disappointed us a hundred times already. (One subordinate and two co-ordinate clauses.)

19. The result may be of this kind or that. We at least *are* now out of danger. (One subordinate clause.)

20. I *gave* the man the same instructions again and again. I wished him to avoid making mistakes. Mistakes at such a time might be fatal. (Two subordinate clauses.)

21. They *adopted* very decisive measures. They wished to put an end to all further difficulties. (A simple sentence.)

22. We found that the worst dangers were over. For this reason we *were* greatly relieved. (One subordinate clause.)

23. He was armed with a coat of mail. Hence the blows of his assailants *had* no effect. The blows fell thickly upon him. (Two subordinate clauses.)

24. You may open your eyes anywhere. You *will see* on all sides signs of famine. The famine has been caused by the want of seasonable rain. (One subordinate clause.)

25. He *kept* his class in good order. Hence they did not all speak at once. Only one spoke at a time. The one who spoke, spoke in his proper turn. (Three subordinate clauses.)

26. He acts in a certain way. From acting in that way he *seems* to be guilty. (One subordinate clause.)

27. The authors of this outbreak *are* disappearing. They are melting away. The mist in the same way melts before the sun. Clouds in the same way are broken by the wind. Leaves in the same way are scattered by the breeze. (One co-ordinate and three subordinate clauses.)

28. He *wept* at the sad news. A child would have wept in the same way. (Two subordinate clauses.)

29. The people *were* not ill prepared for war. Every man had been trained to arms once in his life. That was the law of the country. That law was always faithfully observed. (One subordinate and one co-ordinate clause.)

30 His sons and daughters *were* much distressed He was led away before their eyes They thought he was being led away to his death (One subordinate clause)

31 They *were* much delighted They saw him come back He held in his hand the king's pardon (A simple sentence)

32 The lion was let out of its cage for the amusement of the spectators It *did* not then run at Androcles to devour him It came up quietly It fawned upon him A dog fawns in the same way upon its master It licked his hand He had been kind to it in the forest It remembered this (Three co ordinate and two subordinate clauses)

33 I walked with him to the sea shore The wind at that time *was sighing* mournfully around us It seemed to sympathise in our sorrow at his leaving us so soon (One subordinate and one co ordinate clause)

34 They had now finished their meal They at once *resumed* their journey They walked another ten miles They then stopped and rested (One co ordinate and two subordinate clauses)

35 The heretics could not be convinced of their error Hence attempts *were made* to compel them to recant The means used were fire and sword All such attempts failed The heretics remained unconvinced as before (One subordinate and two co ordinate clauses)

36 The dog could not enter the kennel The hole *was* too small It had been made for a smaller animal The purchaser had not widened it (Two co ordinate clauses)

37 There is no longer any fear of invasion The army *may be reduced* The ships may return into port The sailors may go back to their homes (One subordinate and two co ordinate clauses)

38 He *is* now an old man He cannot learn He could have learnt in his younger days (One co ordinate clause)

39 The wind was strong It drove the ship ashore The ship *struck* into the sand It remained fixed there for several days (One co ordinate clause)

40 The town of Upsala *is looked upon* as an historic centre of this there is no doubt Here the sanctuaries of Paganism once flourished Many monuments of them still survive within and around the modern town (Two co ordinate clauses)

41 For an hour he *continued* telling them stories of absorbing interest They all had the element of mystery All of them dealt with crimes The crimes thus dealt with were atrocious They were equally inexplicable (Two co ordinate clauses and one subordinate)

42 I have devoted my life to teaching To a man in my position there is something exciting in finding himself in sight of an ancient university This *is* a fact (Two subordinate clauses)

43 The next two months *were* most pleasantly *spent* in this lovely island During that time we made many friends amongst the planters We also enjoyed their hospitality They are noted for being hospitable (Two co ordinate and one subordinate clause)

44 Henceforth Axel s progress in his studies *was* surprising In comparison with other boys he could devote little time to them Considering this fact his progress was indeed surprising (One sub ordinate clause)

45 Mr Merriman *left* the cottage. He crossed the river. He returned almost immediately He was accompanied by five Dyaks. He had met them in the Chinese quarter They had arrived there with a boat load of commodities collected from the jungle (One co-ordinate clause and two subordinate clauses)

46 Marsupials are a kind of animal They have pouches for carrying their young They *were* once scattered all over the world Most of them have long since become extinct The survivors are thus confined to two quarters of the globe One quarter is Australia Here we find kangaroos, wombats, etc The other quarter is a limited portion of America Here we find only one small group This group is the opossums (Five clauses besides the principal)

47 In the opossums the pouch *is* very small It is thus useless as a receptacle for the little ones The mother carries these on her back The mother carries as many as a dozen Their tails are lashed round hers (One clause besides the principal)

48 In former times there *was* a class of persons They were called knights errant They were clad in coats of mail They rode about singly One object was to fight with each other at tournaments The other object was to redress the wrongs of persons These persons sought their assistance (Three clauses besides the principal)

49 (*a*) In those times two strong and warlike knights came from opposite directions They *met* at a certain place In that place a statue was erected (One clause besides the principal) (*b*) In the arm of the statue *was* a shield One side of the shield was of iron The other side was of brass The two knights approached the statue from opposite quarters Each saw only one side of the shield (Four clauses besides the principal) (*c*) They immediately *fell* into conversation in regard to the statue before them One declared that the shield was made of iron The other corrected him It was made of brass according to his assertion (Two clauses besides the principal)

50 (*a*) Two persons sometimes attempt to decide a dispute by fighting One man may be right on the disputed question The other may be wrong To settle such a question by fighting is very absurd You *will* think so (Three clauses besides the principal) (*b*) But persons may be ignorant They may be proud They may be conceited Among such people that mode of settlement ***has been*** a common practice in the history of mankind A long and furious combat now ensued between the two knights They fought earnestly over this petty question They would not have fought more earnestly for their lives or honour (Three clauses besides the principal) (*c*) They had fought for a long time Both *were* at last exhausted. Both were unhorsed Both lay bleeding on the ground They then found out something new It surprised and vexed them greatly The sides of the shield were of different metals They might have saved themselves the trouble of quarrelling and wounding each other for nothing But they had not taken the trouble at first to look at both sides of the shield (Five clauses besides the principal)

PART IV.—WORD-BUILDING AND DERIVATION

CHAPTER XXIV.—COMPOUND WORDS

439 A word that cannot be reduced to a simpler form is called a *simple* or primary word, as, *join*, *good*, *drink*, *man*, *hope*. Such words are called also *Roots*.

440 When two Roots or Simple words are joined together, the word so formed is called a *compound* word, as *ink-pot*, *door-step*, *horse shoe*, *drinking-water*.

441 Compound words are subdivided into two classes —

I **Unrelated**, or those in which the Simple words are not connected together by any grammatical relation. (These have been also called Juxta-positional.)

II **Related**, or those in which there is some grammatical relation between the component words. (These have been also called Syntactical.)

I UNRELATED OR JUXTA-POSITIONAL COMPOUNDS

442 In all compounds of this class the word that stands *first* defines the one that stands second —

Thus "*horse-race*" means that kind of race which is ran by *horses*, and not by boats or by men or by anything else. But "*race horse*" means that kind of horse which is used for *racing*, and not for ordinary riding or for drawing a carriage.

443 **Nouns** can be made up in the following ways:—

(1) A noun preceded by another noun —

Oil-lamp, lamp oil, ear ring, ring-finger, rail-way, way-side, trap-door, door step, jaw bone, bone handle, sign post, post-man.

(2) A noun preceded by a Gerund —

Cooking stove, looking glass, drinking water, bathing place, spelling book, stepping stone, sealing wax, writing desk, walking stick, schooling fee, sticking plaster, blotting paper

Note —Sometimes for the sake of shortness the "ing" in the middle of the word has been dropped —

Wash house for washing-house, grind stone for grinding stone, tread mill for treading mill, stand point for standing point, store house for storing house, saw mill for sawing mill, work-shop for working shop

(3) A noun preceded by an adverb (Such compounds must be classed as Unrelated, because adverbs do not qualify nouns see § 224 and page 276)

By word, by law, by path, under tone, under wood, up land, in land, in mate, in side, after glow after thought, after life, over dose, over coat, counter part, counter check

444 Adjectives can be made up in the following ways —

(1) An adjective or participle preceded by a noun The noun may denote —

(*a*) Some point of resemblance, as *milk-white*, that is, white like milk —

Snow white, blood red, coal black, sky blue, ice cold, stone blind, sea green

(*b*) Some point of reference, as *tongue-tied*, that is, tied in the tongue —

Air tight, water tight fire proof, head strong, heart broken, top heavy, colour blind, blood thirsty, penny wise

(*c*) The cause or source of the quality denoted by the adjective, as *home-sick*, that is, sick on account of home —

Bed ridden, purse proud, heaven born

(*d*) The extent or measure of the quality denoted by the adjective, as *skin-deep*, that is, as deep as the skin and no more —

World wide, breast high, life long

(2) A noun preceded by a noun The second noun must have *d* or *ed* at the end of it, as *eagle-eyed*, that is, one whose eye is like that of an eagle (see § 203)

Chicken hearted, hook nosed, ox tailed, web footed, cow houghed, dog faced, honey mouthed

(3) An adjective or participle preceded by an adjective

Here the adjective that stands *first* qualifies the one that stands second, as per § 442 (Such compounds come under the class of Unrelated, because in grammar an adjective qualifies a noun, and not another adjective)

Red hot, dark brown, bright blue, dead alive, luke warm, worldly wise, free spoken, fresh-made, ready-made, wide spread, thorough-bred, dear bought, fool hardy, full grown, high-born, thick set, new laid

445 Verbs can be made up in the following ways —

(1) A verb preceded by a noun —

To *hen peck*, said of a woman who annoys her husband, as a hen sometimes pecks a cock

To *brow beat*, to threaten or frighten a person with scowling and disdainful looks

To *top dress*, to dress or manure land on the surface without digging it in

To *back bite*, to bite any one at the back, hence to speak ill of him in his absence

To *hood wink*, to make a person wink or shut his eyes by throwing a hood over him, hence to deceive him by false words or false appearances

To *way lay*, to lie in wait for a man on the way, hence to stop a man on the road for an evil purpose

(2) A verb preceded by an adjective —

To *safe guard*, to guard a thing or person so as to make it safe

To *rough hew*, to hew wood into a certain shape, but so that it still remains rough and unfinished

To *white wash*, to wash or daub a wall with a liquid which gives it a white colour when it is dry

To *rough shoe*, more commonly used in the participial form "rough shod, shod with pointed shoes

To *dumb found* or *dumb founder*, to confound or confuse a person so as to make him dumb This is more commonly used in the participial form "dumb founded" or "dumb foundered."

II Related or Syntactical Compounds

446 Nouns can be made up in the following ways —

(1) A verb Transitive followed by its noun in the Objective case —

A tell-tale (one who tells tales, a sneak), a cut throat, a pick pocket, a skin flint, a turn key, a pas time, a make shift, a stop gap, a break fast, a break-water

(2) A verb Transitive preceded by its noun in the Objective case (Here the suffix "*er*" is added to the verb.)

(*a*) *A Common noun signifying an agent* :—

Shoe maker, man eater, tax payer, snake charmer, purse holder, brick layer, sooth sayer, rat catcher, fox hunter, screw-driver, pen wiper, engine driver, tax-gatherer, watch-maker

(*b*) *A Verbal or Abstract noun ending in "ing"* :—

Shoe making, snake charming, watch making, engine driving, tax gathering, house building, etc

Note —Sometimes the "*er*" under (*a*) and the "*ing*" under (*b*) are omitted for the sake of shortness, as in *tooth pick* for *tooth picker, blood-shed* for *blood-shedding, hero worship* for *hero worshiping*

(3) A verb qualified by an adverb (see § 238)

(*a*) When the adverb precedes the verb :—

An out turn, an out look, an out fit, an up start, an in let, an in come, off spring, an on set, an off set, an out break

(*b*) When the adverb is placed after the verb :—

A run away, a cast away, a break down, a break up, a keep sake, a fare well, a lock up, a draw back, a stand still, a go between

Note —Some compounds of this class have two forms, *set off* or *off set*, *turn out* or *out turn*, *look out* or *out look*

(4) A noun qualified by an adjective :—

A noble man, a half penny, a mad man, a strong hold, free trade, mid day, a sweet heart, dumb bells, proud flesh, low lands, quick silver, quick sand, etc

(5) A noun qualified by a participle :—

(*a*) *Present Participle* :—

Humming bird, loving kindness, spinning top, finishing stroke

Note —Sometimes the final "*ing*" is dropped, as in *screech owl*, for *screeching owl*, *mock bird* for *mocking bird*, *glow worm* for *glowing-worm*

(*b*) *Past or Passive Participle* (Here the final "*ed*" is dropped)

Compound noun for compounded noun, hump back for humped back, lock jaw for locked jaw, char coal for charred coal, rack rent for racked rent, foster child for fostered child, skim milk for skimmed milk

(6) A noun qualified by a Possessive noun (see § 286) (Here however the apostrophe *s* is dropped)

Sales-man (for sale's man), bats man, oars man, trades man, kins man, herds man, crafts man, bees wax, states man, sports-man, hunts-man

Note 1 —In the following words the apostrophe *s* has been retained :—*stone's-throw, king's-bench, cat's paw, heart's ease, land's end,*

The noun *spoke's-man* has been formed by a false analogy, as there is no such word as "spoke" for "speech"

Note 2 —The following compounds, since the first word does not take the Possessive form, belong to the class of Unrelated compounds — *boat-man, sea man, oil man, wood man, cart man, plough man, head-man, watch man, foe man, fire-man, horse man*

(7) A noun in apposition with another noun or with a pronoun —

Washer-man, washer woman, he goat, she goat, man-servant, maid servant, gentleman farmer, child wife, lady doctor, peasant proprietor, barber surgeon, oak tree, boy magistrate

(8) A noun preceded and governed by some preposition —

After noon (that part of the day which comes after noon, or after twelve o'clock), fore noon (that part of the day which comes before noon)

447 Adjectives can be made up in the following ways —

(1) A noun preceded and qualified by an adjective (Here the participial suffix "*ed*" is added to the noun, as has been shown in § 203)

Evil hearted, hot headed, long tailed, one sided, red coloured, long legged, bare footed, quick sighted, public spirited, thick skinned, sharp edged narrow minded

(2) A noun preceded and governed by the Present participle of some Transitive verb —

A *man eating* tiger, a *heart rending* sight, a *time serving* man, a *soul stirring* story, a *mind expanding* subject, a *self sacrificing* act

(3) A noun preceded and governed by some preposition —

An *over land* (over the land, and not by water) journey, an *under-hand* trick, *over time* work (work done beyond or over the time), *up hill* work, an *out of door* occupation

448 Verbs can be compounded with adverbs —

(*a*) When the adverb precedes the verb (Uncommon)

Back-slide, cross-question, over awe, over hear, under-state, under-value, over estimate, with hold, with draw

(*b*) When the verb precedes the adverb This is very common The two words are generally written separately, as *turn out, come on*, etc, but in *doff* (= do + off), and *don* (= do + on) they are amalgamated.

Exercise in Compound Words

Say whether each of the following compounds belongs to the class of Related or of Unrelated, and, if it belongs to the former, show what the grammatical relation is —

Uphill, single logged, lockjaw, outlet, bricklayer, pickpocket, hard fought, chicken hearted, penny wise, pound foolish, tread mill, sunstroke, shoe making, salesman, pastime, bloodshed, post man, whitewash backbite, underground, undergrowth, after life, afternoon, humpback, mock bird

CHAPTER XXV —PRIMARY DERIVATIVES

449 A Derivative word is called *Primary*, when it is formed out of some root or Primary word by making some change in the body of the root, as, *stride*, *stroke*

It is called *Secondary*, when some Prefix or Suffix or both are added to it

450 Nouns have been formed in the following ways —

(1) From verbs by changing the sound of the inside vowel

Verb	*Noun*	*Verb*	*Noun*	*Verb*	*Noun*
Bite	bit	Shear	share	Bless	bliss
Write	writ	Sneak	snake	Click	clock
Gape	gap	Bear	bier	Crack	creak
Scrape	scrap	Deal	dole	Sit	seat
Skim	scum	Let	lot	Sing	song
Say	saw *	Lend	loan	Shine	sheen
Sell	sale	Learn	lore	Strike	stroke
Tell	tale	Drive	drove		

* *Note* —Here *saw* signifies a "wise saying" or "maxim"

(2) From verbs by changing the sound, and sometimes the spelling also, of the last Consonant from flat to sharp

Verb	*Noun*	*Verb*	*Noun*	*Verb*	*Noun*
Dig	ditch	Use	use	Gird	girth
Stick	stitch	Advise	advice	Behove	behoof
Speak	speech	Practise	practice	Prove	proof

Similarly from the noun *arc* we get another noun of allied meaning *arch*

(3) From verbs by changing not only the sound of the last consonant, but also the sound or spelling of the *inside* vowel.

Verb	*Noun*	*Verb*	*Noun*	*Verb*	*Noun*
Live	life	Lose	loss	Break	breach
Dig	dike	Hold	hilt	Weave	web, or woof.
Clothe	cloth	Wake	watch		
Choose	choice	Bake	batch	Seethe	sud

451 Adjectives have been formed from verbs or nouns by changing the vowel or last consonant of the root.

Root	*Adject*	*Root*	*Adject*	*Root*	*Adject*
Pride	proud	Flit	fleet	Fill	full
Heat	hot	String	strong	File (as in defile)	foul
Heal	hale	Wring	wrong		
Milk	milch	Wit	wise	Chill	cool

452 Verbs have been formed in the following ways —

(1) From nouns by changing the inside vowel —

Noun	*Verb*	*Noun*	*Verb*	*Noun*	*Verb*
Blood	bleed	Chop	chip	Sniff	snuff
Brood	breed	Gold	gild	Sop	sip
Food	feed	Roll	reel	Rest	roost
Bond	bind	Whole	heal	Shake	shock
Knot	knit	Chop	chip	Knell	knoll

(2) From Nouns by changing the sound of the last consonant from sharp to flat —

Noun	*Verb*	*Noun*	*Verb*	*Noun*	*Verb*
Bulk	bulge	Half	halve	Grease	grease
Dog	dodge	Calf	calve	House	house
Sooth	soothe	Thief	thieve	Shelf	shelve
Wreath	wreathe	Grief	grieve	Strife	strive

(3) From Nouns by changing not only the sound of the last consonant from sharp to flat, but also the sound or spelling of the inside vowel —

Noun	*Verb*	*Noun*	*Verb*	*Noun*	*Verb*
Glass	glaze	Hook	hitch	Drag	dredge
Grass	graze	Breath	breathe	Cling*	clench
Bath	bathe	Hound	hunt	Wring*	wrench

* *Note* —These two words are verbs (not nouns) out of which other verbs have been formed

(4) From other verbs by prefixing some augment, as *s*, *t*, *c*, *g* —

Lash	slash	Plash	splash	Rumple	crumple.
Mash	smash	Quash	squash	Wag	swag
Melt	smelt	Rob	crib	Wing	swing
Nip	snip	Tumble	stumble	Whirl	swirl
Rumble	grumble	Twitch	switch		*or* twirl

(5) Intransitive verbs have received a Transitive or

Causal sense by changing the inside vowel, and sometimes the final consonant (see § 157) —

Intrans	*Trans*	*Intrans*	*Trans*	*Intrans*	*Trans.*
Quail	quell	Droop	drip *or* drop	Lie	lay
Drink	drench			Stand	stay
Suck	soak	Stoop	stop	Cling	clench
Dip	dive	Sit	set	Rise	raise *or* rouse
Wend	wind	Fall	fell		

CHAPTER XXVI —SECONDARY DERIVATIVES SUFFIXES AND PREFIXES

453 When a particle is added to the beginning or to the end of a root, or to both, the word so formed is called a SECONDARY DERIVATIVE, as, *un*-man-*ly*

Particles added to the *end* of a root are called **Suffixes**, as, "good," "good-*ness*"

Particles added to the *beginning* of a root are called **Prefixes**, as, "deed," "*mis*-deed"

454 The three sources from which most of the Suffixes and Prefixes have come are —

I English itself   II Latin or French   III Greek

§ 1 —ENGLISH SUFFIXES

Nouns

455 An **Agent** or **Doer** —

er ar, or bak-*er*, do-*er*, begg-*ar*, li-*ar*, tail-*or*, sail-*or*, cloth-i-*er*, court-i-*er*, law-y-*er*, saw-y-*er*

ster (fem) spin-*ster* It is not feminine, but merely marks the agent in song-*ster*, malt-*ster*, trick-*ster*, young-*ster*, huck-*ster*, etc

-en (fem) vix-*en*, formerly the feminine of "fox", now denotes a cunning and spiteful woman

ard, art cow-*ard*, drunk-*ard*, slugg-*ard*, dot-*ard*, bragg-*art* (This suffix implies excess and sometimes contempt)

-nd (*old ending of present participle*) fie-*nd*, frie-*nd*, erra-*nd*, wi-*nd*

ter, ther, der daugh-*ter*, fa-*ther*, mo-*ther*, spi-*der* (spin-der), ru(d)-*der* (from *row*)

456 **Abstract Nouns,** marking *state, action, condition*

dom wis-*dom*, king-*dom*, free-*dom*, martyr-*dom*, serf-*dom*.

hood, head god-*head*, man-*hood*, child-*hood*, neighbour-*hood*, mother-*hood*, widow-*hood*

-ric: bishop-*ric*. (This denotes jurisdiction.)
-ledge, -lock know *ledge*, wed *lock*
-ing: learn *ing*, writ-*ing*, walk *ing* (Gerundial Suffix.)
ter laugh *ter*, slaugh *ter* (from *slay*)
-ness good *ness*, holi-*ness*, wit-*ness* (from *wis* or *wit*)
-red hat *red*, kind *red*
ship, -scape friend *ship*, lord-*ship*, wor *ship*, land *scape*
-th heal-*th*, steal *th*, bread *th*, dep *th*, wid-*th*, tru *th*, leng-*th*
-t, or -d heigh *t*, sigh *t*, dee *d* (from *do*), cu *d* (from *chew*)

457 Diminutives —

-en, on chick *en* (from *cock*), kitt *en* (from *cat*), maid-*en*, beac *on* (from *beck*), wag *on*

-ing faith-*ing*, tith *ing*, shill *ing*, whit *ing*, wild *ing*

ling duck-*ling*, gos *ling*, dar *ling*, strip *ling*, suck *ling*, seed-*ling*, under *ling*, hire *ling* (Endearment, or contempt)

-kin lamb *kin*, fir *kin*, Peter *kin* or Per-*kin*, nap *kin*

-ock hill *ock*, bull *ock*, padd *ock* (from *park*),

ie, y bird-*ie*, lass *ie*, bab *y*, dadd *y*, Will-*ie*, Ann *ie*, mann *i kin*, lamb *i kin* (Endearment) The last two are double diminutives

el, le sack, satch *el*, corn, kern *el*, scythe, sick *le*, nave, nav *el*, spark, spark *le*, speck, speck *le*, freak, freck *le*

Note —In the following words these suffixes denote the means or result of some action —shov *el*, gird *le*, spind *le* from spin, shutt *le* from shoot, hand *le*, thimb *le* from thumb, sadd *le* from sit, sett *le* from sit or set, bund *le* from bind

458 *Adjectives*

ed (*like, having*) wretch *ed*, letter *ed*, land *ed*, gift *ed*, ragg *ed*
en (*made of*) wood *en*, braz *en*, earth *en*, silk *en*, wax *en*
ful (*full of*) fear *ful*, play *ful*, hope *ful*, wil *ful*, truth *ful*
ish (*somewhat like*) girl-*ish*, whit *ish*, self *ish*, brut *ish*, snobb *ish*, wolf *ish*, pal *ish*, snapp *ish* (This suffix often implies contempt.)
ish (*nationality*) Engl *ish*, Span *ish*, Turk *ish*
ly (*like*) god *ly*, love *ly*, king *ly*, sick *ly*, kind *ly*, friend-*ly*
like god *like*, war-*like*, lady *like*, business *like*
-less (*without*) shame *less*, house *less*, hope *less*, cease-*less*, sleep *less*, cause *less*, resist-*less*, worth *less*
-y (*pertaining to, abounding in*) hill *y*, storm *y*, bush *y*, rock-*y*, wooll-*y*, smok *y*, wood *y*, trust *y*, feather *y*
-some (*full of, inclined to*) game *some*, win *some*, burden-*some*, trouble *some*, hand *some*, frolic *some*, quarrel *some*
-ward (*turning to*) fro *ward*, south *ward*, down *ward*, for-*ward*, way-*ward*, heaven *ward*, home *ward*
-teen, ty (*ten*) nine *teen*, twen *ty*, thir *teen*, etc
-th (*order*) six *th*, seven *th*, etc
-fold (*repeated*) two *fold*, mani *fold*, hundred *fold*
-ern (*direction to*) east-*ern*, north *ern*, etc.

459 *Adverbs*

ly (*like*) god-*ly*, miser *ly*, bad-*ly*, on *ly*
ling, -long (*wise, -ways*) head *long*, dark-*ling*, side *long*

meal (*division*) piece-*meal*, inch *meal*, limb *meal* (Shaks)
-ward, wards (*turning to*) for *ward*, up *wards*, down-*wards*
N B —The adv is usually formed by "*wards*", the adj by "*ward*"
-wise (*manner, mode*) other *wise*, no *wise*, like *wise*
-way, -ways al-*ways*, straight *way*, any *way*, no *way*
s, es need *s*, twi *ce*, beside *s*, el *se*, on *ce* (sign of Possessive)
n whe *n*, the *n*-ce, he-*n* ce (There are two suffixes in *thence, hence*)
-om seld *om*, whil *om* (This was once a case-ending)
re whe *re*, the *re*, he *re*
ther whi *ther*, thi *ther*, hi *ther*

Verbs

460 Frequentative (sometimes in diminutive sense) —

k tal *k* from tell, har *k* from hear, stal *k* from steal
le, l dibb *le*, spark *le*, start *le*, knee *l*, crack *le*, shuff *le*, cack *le*, wrigg *le*, pratt *le*, dazz-*le*, draw *l*, nibb *le*, sniv *el* (from sniff)
er ling *er* from long, flutt *er* from flit, falt *er* from fail, clamb *er* from climb, shimm *er* from shine glitt *er* from glint, sputt *er* from spit, hank *er* from hang, spatt *er* from spot
on, om, m bloss *om* from blow, glea *m* from glow, sea-*m* from sew, reck *on*, blaz *on*

461 Causative or **Factitive** —

en fatt *en*, short *en*, length *en*, gladd *en*, black *en*, thick *en*

§ 2 —English Prefixes

462 A (*on, in*) *a* bed, *a* shore, *a* sleep, *a* way, *a* stir
A- (*off, up, from*) *a* rise, *a* wake *a* maze, *a* light, *a* rouse, *a*-new
Intensive —*a* muse, *a* weary, *a* shamed, *a* cursed
Al (*all*) *al* one, *l* one, *al* most, *al* so, *al* ready, *al* together
At (*to*) *at* one, *at* onement
Be (*by*) (1) It forms Transitive verbs *be* calm, *be* dew, *be* friend, *be* fit, *be* dew, *be* moan, *be* numb, *be* guile, *be* fool, *be* night
(2) It gives an intensive force to verbs *be* daub, *be* smear, *be* seech, *be* get, *be* stir, *be* sprinkle, *be* stow *be* take *be* deck
(3) It forms a part of some nouns, adverbs, and prepositions *be*-half, *be* quest, *be* low, *be* neath, *be* sides, *b* ut, *be* fore, *be* tween (twain)
Note —In the word "*be* head" this "be" has a privative sense
By (*on the side*) *by* path, *by* word, *by* stander, *by* election
For (*through, thorough*) *for* swear, *for* get, *for*-bear, *for*-sake, *for* bid
Fore (*before*) *fore* cast, *fore* tell, *fore* see, *fore* head, *fore* lock, *fore* thought, *fore* runner, *fore* stall, *fore* man, *fore* ground, *fore* leg.
Forth *forth* coming, *for* ward, *forth* with
Gain (*against*) *gain* say (speak or say against)
In *in*-to, *in* sight, *in* land, *in* let, *in* mate
Mis (*wrongly*) *mis* deed, *mis* lead, *mis* take, *mis* judge, *mis* lay
N- (*negative*) *n* one, *n* either, *n* ever, *n* or
On *on* set, *on* slaught
Out *out* cast, *out* side, *out* landish, *out* look, *out* come, *out* let, *out*-break, *out* post, *out* house, *out* cry

It makes Intransitive verbs Transitive *out*-live (=live beyond), *out* run (=run ahead of), *out* shine (surpass in brightness), *out*-vote (=defeat by votes), *out* weigh

Over- (*above, beyond*) *over* eat, *over* flow, *over* hear, *over* coat, *over*-charge, *over* step, *over* awe, *over* look

To (*to, for*) *to* day, *to* night, *to*-gether, *to* ward, un-*to* ward, *to* morrow

Un (*not*) *un* truth, *un* real, *un* wise, *un* told, *un* ripe

Un (*back*) *un* bolt, *un*-tie, *un*-lock, *un* twine, *un* do

Note —In the word "*un* loose," the "*un*" is merely intensive

Under *under* go, *under* stand, *under* hand, *under* ling, *under*-neath, *under* mine, *under*-sell, *under* take

Up *up* right, *up* ward, *up* on, *up* lands, *up* hold, *up* shot

Well (*in good state*) *wel* fare, *wel*-come

With- (*against, back*) *with* draw, *with* hold, *with* stand

§ 3 —Latin and French Suffixes

Nouns

463 Agent —

ain, en, an capt *ain*, chieft *ain*, guardi *an*, citiz *en*, librari *an*

ary, ar, aire dignit *ary*, mission *ary*, secret *ary*, vic *ar*, schol *ar*, million *aire*, doctrin *aire*

-ee, y trust *ee*, devot *ee*, pay *ee*, deput *y*, jur *y*, lev *y*, attorn *ey*

Note —These words have a *Passive* signification Thus "trust *ee*" means one who is trusted "jur *y*" means one who is sworn But there is no Passive meaning in the words "absent *ee*" (one who is absent), "refug *ee*" (one who has taken refuge)

eer, ier engin *eer*, auction *eer*, volunt *eer*, sold *ier*, financ *ier*

-our, eur, or, er savi *our*, emper *or*, govern *or*, preach *er*, robb *er*, act *or*, doct *or*, monit *or*, cens *or*, ancest *or*, amat *eur*

trix (fem) execu *trix*, testa *trix*, prosecu *trix*

ess (fem.) song str *ess*, poet *ess*, tigr *ess*, lion *ess*

ive, iff capt *ive*, fugit *ive*, nat *ive*, plaint *iff*, cait *iff*

ant, ent merch *ant*, serv *ant*, stud *ent*, presid *ent*, pati *ent*

-ate, -ite, it candid *ate*, advoc *ate*, Israel *ite*, Jesu *it*

464 Abstract Nouns —

age bond *age*, coin *age*, hom *age*, marri *age*, pilgrim *age*

Cost of action post *age*, freight *age*, broker *age*, halt *age*

Result of action break *age*, leak *age*, mess *age*, pill *age*

ance, ence disturb *ance*, endur *ance*, repent *ance*, obedi *ence*, innoc *ence*, abs *ence*, pres *ence*, depend *ence*, dilig *ence*, pati *ence*

ancy, -ency const *ancy*, brilli *ancy*, ten *ancy*, excell-*ency*, reg *ency*, urg *ency*, frequ *ency*, insolv *ency*, emerg *ency*, innoc *ency*

ess, ice, ise serv *ice*, larg *ess*, rich *es*, prow *ess*, merchand *ise*, exerc *ise*, just *ice*, pract *ice*, coward *ice*, avar *ice*, not *ice*

tion, son, som benedic *tion*, beni *son*, por *tion*, poi *son*, redemp *tion*, ran-*som*, ora-*tion*, ori *son*, tradi-*tion*, trea *son*

sion conver-*sion*, cohe *sion*, occa *sion*, compul *sion*, proces *sion*, illu-*sion*, man *sion*, colli *sion*, confu *sion*, admis *sion*

lence . pesti-*lence*, vio *lence*, viru *lence*, turbu-*lence*, opu-*lence*
ment conceal-*ment*, enchant *ment*, nourish-*ment*, nutri-*ment*.
mony cere *mony*, acri *mony*, matri-*mony*, testi-*mony*
-our, -or fav *our*, hon *our*, err *or*, langu *or*, col *our*
-eur grand *eur*, liqu *eur* (The last is not an abstract noun.)
ry, ery chival *ry*, poet *ry* , slav *ery*, treach-*ery*, cook *ery*
tude longi *tude*, apti *tude*, alti *tude*, multi *tude*, servi-*tude*
-ure creat *ure*, verd-*ure*, meas-*ure*, vest-*ure*, seiz *ure*, agricult-*ure*
-y harmon *y*, stud *y*, victor *y*, miser *y*, industr *y*, env *y*
ity, ty fals *ity*, real *ity* , cruel *ty*, frail *ty*, boun *ty*, un *ity*
-al, als refus *al*, propos *al* tri *al*, nupti *als*, credent *ials*
acy priv *acy*, accur *acy*, intric *acy*, obstin *acy*, intim *acy*

465 Collectives , Nouns of Place —

ery, ry machin *ery*, caval *ry*, jewel *ry*, gent *ry*, tenant-*ry*, in fant *ry*, station *ery*, shrubb *ery*, bak *ery*, cemet *ery*, spic *ery*, rock-*ery*
ary, arium libr *ary*, gran *ary*, semin *ary*, sanctu *ary*, gloss-*ary*, diction *ary* , sanit *arium*, aqu *arium*
ory fact *ory*, dormit *ory*, arm *ory*, territ *ory*, observat *ory*
age assembl *age* plum *age*, foli *age*, vill *age*, hermit *age*, cott-*age*
-ade colonn *ade*, balustr *ade*, cavalc *ade*, brig *ade*, crus *ade*

466 Diminutives —

aster poet *aster*, oli *aster*
el, le d ims *el*, cast *le*, mod *el*, citad *el*, mors *el*, parc *el*
icle, cule art *icle*, part *icle*, animal *cule*, curr *icle*, curr *iculum*, cut *icle*, corpus *cle*, punna *cle*, cod *icil*, domi *cile*
ule glob *ule*, pill *ule*, nod *ule*, caps *ule*
et, let lock *et*, lanc *et*, pock *et* tick *et*, turr *et*, coron *et*, thick *et* , brace *let*, stream *let*, brook *let*, leaf *let*, rivu *let*, ring *let*, root-*let*
ot fagg *ot*, chari *ot*, parr *ot*, magg *ot*, ball *ot*, piv *ot*
ette etiqu *ette*, statu *ette*, cigar *ette*, waggon *ette*, brun *ette*

467 *Adjectives*

al loy-*al* leg *al*, roy *al*, reg *al*, equ *al*, mort *al*, vit *al*
an, ane, ain hum *an*, hum *ane* cert *ain* , pag *an*, Rom *an*
ar sol *ar*, lun *ar*, regul *ar*, singul *ar*, vulg *ar*, vernacul *ar*
-ant, ent vac-*ant*, indign *ant*, ramp *ant*, pati *ent*, innoc *ent*, curr *ent*, confid *ent*, tru *ant*, vagr *ant*
ary, arious, arian contr *ary*, ordin *ary*, necess *ary*, tempor-*ary*, solit *ary* , nef *arious*, greg *arious*, agr *arian*, humanit *arian*
ate fortun *ate*, separ *ate*, desol *ate*, priv *ate*, accur-*ate*
ble, able sta *ble*, fee *ble*, terri *ble*, mov *able*, laugh-*able*, eat-*able* (edi *ble*), service *able*, lov *able*, drink *able* (Generally in a *Passive* sense)
-ese Chin *ese*, Malt *ese*, Burm *ese*, Siam *ese*, Portugu *ese* Geno-*ese*.
-ile serv *ile*, frag *ile*, doc *ile*, puer *ile*, fac *ile*, juven *ile*
eel, il, le gent *eel*, gent *le*, civ *il*, fra *il*, cru *el*, subt *le*
-ine div *ine*, infant *ine*, leon *ine*, can-*ine*, clandest-*ine*
-ian Austral *ian*, Ind-*ian*, Christ *ian*
-ive act *ive*, capt *ive*, sport-*ive*, relat-*ive*, nat *ive*, posit *ive*.

-ose, -ous verb-*ose*, joc-*ose*, monstr-*ous*, danger-*ous*, glori-*ous*, ponder-*ous*, dexter-*ous*, courte-*ous*
-ory, -orious compuls-*ory*, transit-*ory*, curs-*ory*, dilat-*ory*, lab-*orious*, cens-*orious* (Generally in an *Active* sense)
-ble, -ple dou-*ble*, tre-*ble*, sim-*ple*, tri-*ple*
-ic, ique publ-*ic*, rust-*ic*, un-*ique*, obl-*ique*, ant-*ique*
-lent pesti-*lent*, vio-*lent*, turbu-*lent*, fraudu-*lent*, corpu-*lent*
-fic terri-*fic*, horri-*fic*, beati-*fic*, sopori-*fic*, honori-*fic* (Active sense)
-escent conval-*escent*, efferv-*escent*, incand-*escent*
-aneous simult-*aneous*, instant-*aneous*, contempor-*aneous*
-erious delet-*erious*
-id ac-*id*, pall-*id*, squal-*id*, rig-*id*, plac-*id*, morb-*id*
ite oppos-*ite*, favour-*ite*, Vishnu-*ite*, exquis-*ite*
ete, eet compl-*ete*, obsol-*ete*, discr-*ete*, discr-*eet*
-cund, bund, bond rubi-*cund*, mori-*bund*, vaga-*bond*

468 *Verbs*

ate agit-*ate*, captiv-*ate*, moder-*ate*, stimul-*ate*, cre-*ate*
ish fin-*ish*, nour-*ish*, pun-*ish*, publ-*ish*, van-*ish*
fy magni-*fy*, signi-*fy*, simpli-*fy*, modi-*fy*, terri-*fy* (*Transitive*)
ite, it exped-*ite*, cred-*it*, mer-*it*, inhab-*it*
-esce efferv-*esce*, coal-*esce* (Denotes growing or becoming)

§ 4 —GREEK SUFFIXES

Nouns

469 Agent —

-ot patri-*ot*, zeal-*ot*, idi-*ot* (big-*ot*, doubtful)
ist dent-*ist*, the-*ist*, egot-*ist*, alarm-*ist*, extrem-*ist*, optim-*ist*
ast enthusi-*ast*, iconocl-*ast*
ic heret-*ic*, scept-*ic*, crit-*ic*, cler-*ic* (=clerk)

470 Abstract Nouns —

-ic, ics log-*ic*, mag-*ic*, mus-*ic*, eth-*ics*, mathemat-*ics*, polit-*ics*
ism patriot-*ism*, barbar-*ism*, magnet-*ism*, the-*ism*, critic-*ism*
asm enthusi-*asm*, pleon-*asm*, sarc-*asm*, ch-*asm*
sis, sy, se drop-*sy*, pal-*sy*, paraly-*sis*, ba-*sis*, eclip-*se*, ellip-*se*
y monarch-*y*, philosoph-*y*, democrac-*y*, energ-*y*

471 Diminutives —

-isk, -esque aster-*isk*, obel-*isk*, statu-*esque*, burl-*esque*

472 *Adjectives*

ic dramat-*ic*, cosm-*ic*, com-*ic*, trag-*ic*, polit-*ic*
-esque arab-*esque*, grot-*esque*, pictur-*esque*

473 *Verbs*

-ise, -ize civil-*ise*, scrutin-*ise*, fertil-*ise*, real-*ize*, theor-*ize*

§ 5 —LATIN AND FRENCH PREFIXES

474 A-, ab , abs (*away from*) *ab*-hor, *ab*-use, *ab*-surd, *ab*-normal, *abs*-tract, *abs*-ent, *abs*-cond, *abs*-tain, *a*-vert, *a*-void.

Ad- (*to*) By assimilation *ac*, *af*, *ag*, *al*, *an-*, *ap-*, *ar-*, *as*, *at-*

ad-vice, *ad* join, *ad* monish, *ad* ore, *ad* here, *ad* opt

ac custom, *ac* cept, *ac* cede, *ac* cent, *ac* cuse, *ac* quire, *ac* knowledge

af-ford, *af* fix, *af* fiction, *af* filiate, *af* fair, *af*-firm

ag grieve, *ag* gravate, *ag* gregate, *ag* gressor, *ag*-grandise

al lege, *al* lot, *al* lure, *al* low, *al* lay, *al* leviate

an nounce, *an* nex, *an* noy, *an* nul, *an* nihilate

ap-proach, *ap* pear, *ap* peal, *ap* point, *ap* pease *ap* pal

ar rive, *ar* rears, *ar* rest, *ar* rogant *ar* ray, *ar* range

as sent, *as* sert, as sume, *as* certain, *as* sail, *as* sets

at-tend, *at* tain, *at* tract, *at* tach, *at* tempt, *at* tack

a spect, *a* scribe, *a* spire (here the *d* has been lost)

Ambi-, amb, am (*around*) *ambi* dexterous, *amb* ition, *am*-putate

Ante, anti (*before*) *ante* chamber, *ante* cedent, *anti* cipate

Bene (*well*) *bene* fit, *bene* volent, *bene* diction, hence *ben* ison

Bi, bis, bin *bi* ped, *bis* cuit, *bi* sect, *bi* ennial, *bin* ocular

Circum, circu (*around*), *circum* ference, *circu* it, *circum* stance

Com, con, co (*with*) by assimilation, *col*, *cor*, *coq*, etc

Com pete, *com* bat, *com* merce, *com* pact, *com* mand

Con tend, *con* trive, *con* flict, *con* cur, *con* fluence

Co alesce, *co* heir, *co* habit, *co* eternal, *co* exist

Col lapse, *col* lege *col* lect, *col* league, *col* lision

Cor rupt, *cor* rect, *cor* rode, *cor* respond, *cor* roborate

Coq nate, *coq* nizance, *coq* nition

Coun sel, *coun* cil, *coun* tenance

Contra, contro, counter (*against*) *contra* dict, *counter* act, *contra* st, *contro* versy, *counter* feit, *counter* part, *counter* sign

De (*down*) *de* part, *de* scend *de* form, *de* ter, *de* merit

,, (*reversal*) *de* bark, *de* camp, *de* throne *de* tach

Dis, di, dif (*asunder, not*) *dis* honour, *dis* please, *dis* sever, *dis* locate, *dis* like *di* verse, *di* minish, *di* gest, *dif* fer, *dif* ficult

Dis (*reversal*) *dis* close, *dis* mount, *dis* arm, *dis* appear, *dis* continue

Ex, e, ef (*out of from*) *ex* alt, *e* lect, *ex* pel, *ex* amine, *e* ducate, *ef* fort, *ef* fulgence, *ef* fervesce, *ex* king, dethroned king

Extra (*beyond*) *extra* ordinary, *extra* work, *stra* nger

In-, en, em (*in, into, on*) *in* vest, *in* vade, *im* pose, *im* press, *im* pute, *il* lusion, *ir* ruption, *ir* rigate, *en* tice, *em* ploy, *em* brace, *em* bark, *em* barrass *In* close or *en* close, *in* dorse or *en* dorse, *in* quire or *en* quire, *in* trust or *en* trust, *in* twine or *en* twine, *in* circle or *en* circle, *im* bitter or *em* bitter

Note —This prefix, placed before a noun or adjective, makes a Transitive verb —*en* dear, *en* rich, *en* large, *en* slave, *en* title, *em* body, *im* peril, *en* danger

In (*not*) *in* firm, *in* fant (*not speaking*), *ig* noble, *il* legal, *im* pious, *ir* regular, *ir*rational, *ig* nominy, *il* literate, *im* passive

Note —The Latin "in" and the English "un" are so much alike, that some words are spelt both ways —*in* frequent or *un* frequent, *in* cautious or *un* cautious, *in* stable or *un* stable

Inter, intro-, enter- (*within*) *inter*-course, *inter*-preter, *inter*-

rupt, *inter*-pose, *intro* duce, *intro* spection, *enter* tain, *enter*-prise, *intel* lect

Juxta- (*near*) *juxta*-position

Male-, mal (*ill, badly*) *male* factor, *mal* treat, *mal* ignant

Mis (from Lat *minus*, less) *mis* chief, *mis* fortune, *mis*-conduct, *mis*-named, *mis* use, *mis* calculate

Ne, neg *ne* farious, *neg* lect, *neg* ative

Non- (*not*) *non* sense, *non* existent, *non* age, *non*-compliance

Note —"Non" is much less emphatic than "in" or "un" Compare "*non*-christian" and "*un* christian", "*non* professional" and "*un* professional", etc

Ob (*in front of, against*) *ob* ject, *ob* stinate, *oc* cupy, *oc* casion, *of* fer, *of* fend, *op* pose, *op* press

Per-, pel- (*through*) *per* force, *per* spire, *per* form, *pel* lucid

Pene (*almost*) *pen* insula, *pen* ultimate

Post (*after*) *post* date, *post* script, *post* pone, *post* humous

Pre (*before*) *pre* dict, *pre* caution, *pre* pare, *pre* judice

Preter (*beyond*) *preter* natural, *preter* ite

Pro, por, pol, pur (*forth*) *pro* ject, *pro* pose, *pro* noun, *pro*-mise, *por*-tend, *pol* lute, *pur*-pose, *pur* sue, *pur* port, *pur*-loin

Re, red (*back, again*) *re* join, *re* act, *re* new, *red* eem, *red* ound, *red* undant

Note —The insertion of a hyphen alters the meaning Compare "recover" and "re cover", "rejoin" and "re join", "redress" and "re dress", "reform" and "re form" "recollect" and "re collect", "recount" and "re count" "return" and "re turn"

Retro- (*backward*) *retro* spect, *retro* grade, *retro* cession.

Se-, sed- (*apart*) *se* clude, *se* parate, *sed* ition, *se* cret, *se* cure

Semi, demi (*half*) *semi* circle, *demi* god, *demi* official

Sine (*without*) *sine* cure

Sub (*under*) *sub* ject, *suc* cour, *suc* cess, *suf* fer, *suf* fice, *sug* gest, *sub* committee, *sus* tain, *sus* pend, *sup* port, *sur* reptitious

Note —In words like "*sub* tropical" the "sub" means "rather" In words like "*sub* judge" the "sub" denotes an officer of lower rank

Super-, sur (*above, over, beyond*) *super* structure, *super* ficial, *sur* face, *sur* pass, *sur* vive

Subter (*beneath*) *subter* fuge

Trans-, tra (*across*) *trans* figure, *trans* gress, *trans* form, *trans* it, *trans* mit, *trans* late, *trans* parent, *tra* verse, *tra* dition, *tra* duce

Tri (*three*) *tri* angle, *tri* literal, *tri* nity

Ultra (*beyond*) *ultra* liberal, *ultra* marine

Vice, vis (*instead of*) *vice* regent, *vis* count, *vice*-roy

Quasi (*pretence*) a *quasi* judge (a sham or pretended judge)

Quondam (*formerly*) a *quondam* judge (a former judge)

475 *Disguised Prefixes* (*Latin or French*)

Ante- (*before*) *an* cestor for *ante* cessor

Bi (*twice*) *ba* lance

Con, co (*together*) *cus* tom, *cur* ry (verb), *co*-ver, *co*-venant, *co*-unt (verb and noun), *cou*-ch, *co* st

Dis, di (*apart*) *des* cant, *des*-patch (or *dis* patch), *de*-feat, *de*-luge

Ex-, e- (*out*) *a* mend (but *e* mendation), *a*-bash, *a*-fraid, *a*-ward, *as* tonish, *es* cape, *es*-cheat, *es*-say, *is* sue, *s* ample, *s*-carce, *s* corch.
Extra (*outside*) *stra* nge, *stra*-nger
Enter- (*within*) *entr*-ails
In (*not*) *en* emy (hence adj *in* imical)
Juxta- (*near*) joust
Non- (*not*) *um* pire (old French, *nom* per)
Per (*through*) *par* don, *par* amount, *par* son, *pil* grim
Post (*after*) *pu* ny
Pre (*before*) *pre* ach, *pro* vost
Re (*back*) *ren*-der, *r* ansom, *r* ally
Retro (*back*) *rear* guard
Sub (*under*) *so* journ, *sud* den, *s* ombre
Super (*above*) *sopr* ano, *sover* eign (older spelling, *sovr* an).
Trans (*across*) *tres* pass, *tre* ason, *tra* ffic
Ultra (*beyond*) *outr* age

§ 6 —Greek Prefixes

476 **Amphi** (*about, on both sides*) *amphi* theatre, *amphi*-bious
An, **am**, **a** (*not, without*, like English *un*) *an* archy, *a*-theism, *a* pathy, *am* brosial, *a* trophy, *an* omalous
Ana, **an** (*up to, again*) *ana* tomy, *ana* logy, *ana*-lysis, *an* eurism
Anti-, **ant** (*against*) *anti* podes, *anti* pathy, *ant* agonist
Apo-, **aph** (*from*) *apo* logy, *apo*-state, *apo* strophe, *aph* orism
Arch-, **archi-** (*chief, head*) *arch* heretic, *arch* enemy, *archi* tect
Auto, **auth** (*self*) *auto* graph *auto* biography, *auth* entic
Cata, **cath**, **cat** (*down*) *cata* ract, *cath* edral, *cata* strophe, *cat*-echism
Dia (*through*) *dia* meter, *dia* logue, *dia* dem, *dia* gonal
Di- (*in two*) *di*-ssyllable, *di*-phthong, *di* lemma
Dys (*ill*) *dys* peptic, *dys* entery
Ec, **ex** (*out, from*) *ex* odus, *ec* centric, *ec* lipse, *ec* logue
En (*in*) *en* thusiasm, *em* phasis, *el* lipsis, *en* comium
Eu, **ev** (*well*) *eu* phony, *eu* phemism, *ev* angelist
Epi, **eph**, **ep** (*upon*) *epi* gram, *ep* och, *epi* taph, *eph* emeral, *epi* stle
Endo (*within*) *endo* gamous, *endo* genous
Exo (*without*) *exo* gamous, *exo* tic
Hemi (*half*) *hemi* sphere
Hepta, **hept** (*seven*) *hepta* gon, *hept* archy
Hetero- (*different*) *hetero* dox, *hetero* geneous
Hexa (*six*) *hexa* meter
Homo, **hom** (*same*) *homo* geneous, *hom* onym
Hyper (*above*) *hyper*-bole, *hyper*-critical
Hypo, **hyph** (*under*) *hypo* crite, *hypo* thesis, *hyp* hen
Meta, **meth**, **met** (*after, substitution*) *meta* phor, *meth*-od, *met*-onymy
Mono, **mon-** (*single, alone*) *mono* graph, *mon*-archy, *mon*-astery, *mon* k
Pan, **panto-** (*all*) *pan* theist, *pan* oply, *pan*-orama, *panto* mime
Para, **par-** (*beside*) *para* phrase, *para* ble, *par* allel, *para* site

Penta- (*five*) *penta* meter, *penta* polis
Peri- (*around*) *peri*-meter, *peri*-phrasis, *peri*-od
Poly- (*many*) *poly* syllable, *poly*-theist, *poly* glot.
Pro- (*before*) *pro*-gramme, *pro*-logue, *pro*-phet, *pro* boscis
Pseudo-, pseud (*false*) *pseudo*-critic, *pseud* onym
Syn (*with*) *syn*-thesis, *syn* tax, *sym* pathy, *syl*-lable, *sys*-tem.
Tele (*afar*) *tele*-graph, *tele*-phone, *tele* gram
Tri (*thrice, or three*) *tri* pod, *tri*-syllable, *tri* sect

477 *Some General Results*

(*a*) List of Prefixes and Suffixes denoting the possession of some quality in a *moderate* degree —

ish, English suffix black *ish* (rather black), sweet *ish* (rather sweet)

ly, English suffix clean *ly* (disposed to be clean), sick *ly* (liable to be sick at times)

Sub, Latin prefix *sub* acid (rather acid), *sub* tropical (almost or slightly tropical)

(*b*) List of Prefixes signifying the reversal or undoing of something done —

Un, English prefix *un* bolt, *un* tie, *un* lock, *un* fold
Dis, or **di**, Latin prefix *dis* mount, *dis* appear, *dis* arm
De, Latin prefix *de* throne, *de* camp, *de* tach

(*c*) List of Prefixes and Suffixes denoting a negative —

Un, English prefix *un* happy, *un* safe, *un* ready
less, English suffix hap *less*, law *less*, hope *less*
N, English prefix *n* one, *n* ever, *n* either, *n* or
For, English prefix *for* bid
Dis, **di**, Latin prefix *dis* quiet (opposite to quiet), *dif* ficult (not easy), *dif* fident (not confident), *dis* honour
In, Latin prefix *in* human, *ir* regular, *im* mortal, *il* legible
Ne-, **neg**, **non**, Latin prefix *ne* farious, *neg* lect, *non* sense
A-, or **an**, Greek prefix *a* pathy, *an* archy, *am* brosial

(*d*) List of Suffixes indicating the Feminine gender —

ster, English suffix spin *ster*
en, English suffix vix *en*
ess, French suffix lion *ess*, temptr *ess*, tigr *ess*

(*e*) List of Prefixes indicating something bad —

Mis, English prefix (from *miss*) *mis* take, *mis* deed, *mis* hap
Male, **mal**, Latin prefix *male* factor, *mal* treat
Mis-, Latin prefix (from *minus*) *mis* use, *mis*-fortune
Dys, Greek prefix *dys* entery, *dys* pepsia

(*f*) List of Prefixes indicating something good —

Well, English prefix *wel* fare, *wel* come, *well* being
Bene-, Latin prefix *bene*-volent, *bene* fit, *bene*-diction
Eu-, Greek prefix *eu*-phemism, *ev* angelist, *eu* phony

(g) List of Prefixes and Suffixes by which Transitive verbs can be formed from an adjective or noun —

Be, English prefix *be* friend, *be* calm, *be* moan, *be* little
en, English suffix dark-*en*, length *en*, hast *en*, lik-*en*
In, **em**, Latin and French prefixes *im*-peril, *en* dear, *em*- or *im*-bitter
-fy, Latin suffix magni *fy*, modi *fy*, stupe *fy*
ise or **ize**, Greek suffix human *ise*, brutal-*ise*, galvan *ise*

478 *Latin and Greek equivalent Prefixes*

Latin	*Greek*	*Meaning*
Ambi, amb iguous	**Amphi**, amphi bious	On both sides
Ab, ab solute	**Apo**, apo logy	From
Ex, ex amine	**Ec**, ec stacy	Out of
In, in spection	**En**, **Em**, em phasis	Into
Semi, **demi**, demi god	**Hemi**, hemi sphere	Half
Super, super vise	**Hyper**, hyper bole	Above
Sub, sub stantive	**Hypo**, hypo thesis	Under
Pro, pro portion	**Pro**, pro phet	Before or for
Tri, tri angle	**Tri**, tri pod	Thrice

I *Show the difference of meaning in each of the following pairs of abstract words formed with different suffixes* —

(a) *English suffixes* —

Dearth, dearness Drought dryness Sloth, slowness Sleight, slyness. Truth, trueness Hardness, hardihood Witness, wisdom

(b) *Latin suffixes* —

(1) Impress ment, impress ion, (2) content ment, content ion, (3) degener at ion, degener ac y, (4) creat ure, creat ion, (5) post ure, position, (6) eject ment eject ion (7) stat ure, stat ion, (8) impost-ure, imposit ion, (9) fract ure, fract ion, frag ment, (10) serv-i tude, serv ice, (11) intim at ion, intim ac y, (12) acquitt ance, acquitt al, (13) depart ment, depart ure, (14) apparit ion, appear ance, (15) fixt ure, fix ity, (16) compos ure, composi tion, (17) admitt ance, admiss ion, (18) vac ancy, vacat ion, (19) expos ure, exposit ion, (20) dis pos al, disposit ion (21) observ ance, observat ion, (22) committ al, commiss ion, (23) benefact ion, benefic ence, (24) continu ance, continuat ion, (25) propos al, proposit ion, (26) signific ance, signific at-ion, (27) destin y, destinat ion

(c) *Latin and English suffixes* —

(1) Exact ness, exact ion (2) appropriate ness, appropriat ion, (3) apt ness, apt i tude, (4) lax ity, lax ness, (5) pall or, pale ness, (6) human ity, humane ness, (7) secure ness, secur ity, (8) remiss ness, remiss ion, (9) quiet-ude, quiet ness, (10) close-ness, clos-ure; (11) direct ion, direct ness, (12) just ness, just ice, (13) till age, til-th, (14) proced-ure, proceed ing, (15) complete ness, complet ion, (16) distinct ness, distinct-ion, (17) false hood, fals-ity

(*d*) *Greek and Latin suffixes* —

Fatal-ism, fatal-ity Barbar-ism, barbar-ity Vulgar-ism, vulgar-ity. Commun-ism, commun-ity Formal-ism, formal-ity

II *Give the difference of meaning, if any, in each of the following pairs of adjectives formed with different suffixes* —

(1) Temporal, temporary, (2) industrial, industrious, (3) virtual, virtuous, (4) official, officious, (5) sensual, sensuous, (6) continual, continuous, (7) popular, populous, (8) verbal, verbose, (9) momentary, momentous, (10) innocent, innocuous, (11) beneficial, beneficent, (12) notable, notorious, (13) ordinal, ordinary, (14) elemental, elementary, (15) sensitive, sensible, (16) illusive, illusory, (17) sanatory, sanitary, (18) imperial, imperious

III *Substitute a single word (an adjective) for the words printed below in italics* —

(*a*) This writing is *such as cannot be read*
(*b*) The plan you mention *cannot be put into practice*
(*c*) He is *one who cannot according to the rules be elected*
(*d*) That herb is *fit to be eaten*
(*e*) The colour is *beyond my perception*
(*f*) You are *liable to be called to account* for your actions.
(*g*) The plan you propose is *open to objections*
(*h*) That word is *no longer in use*
(*i*) This is a bird *of passage*
(*j*) Your office is *one for which no salary is paid*
(*k*) His motive was merely *to get some money*
(*l*) His position was *beyond all hope of improvement*
(*m*) His manners are *more like those of a woman than of a man*
(*n*) He is *one who takes no trouble* about his work
(*o*) His style is *too full of words*
(*p*) He is *inclined to find fault*
(*q*) A wolf is an animal *that cannot be tamed*
(*r*) That problem is *one which is never likely to be solved*
(*s*) His character *has an evil reputation*
(*t*) The use of opium is *likely to do much injury*

IV *To each of the verbs, nouns, or adjectives given below, add the appropriate abstract suffix or suffixes* —

Serve, coward, right, grand, err, miser, apt, victor, repent, acrid, just, merchant, trick, pass, seize, try, judge, compel, admit, regent, bankrupt, accurate, poor, rely, captive, fragile, facile, felon, sole, assist, scarce, secret, defy, pater (father), real.

V *Form Diminutive nouns out of the following by adding to each of them its appropriate Diminutive suffix* —

Animal, code, pouch, brook, poet, cigar, vase, lance, globe, mode, pill bill, car, cellar, statue, part, song, sign, table, home, wag, hump, park, maid, cut, lamb, hill, change, bird, lad, scythe, corn, freak

VI *Point out the six different senses of the suffix "age" as exemplified in the following words* —

Herbage, hermitage, courage, postage, breakage, personage

VII *Describe the four uses of the suffix "en" as exemplified in the following words* —

Maiden, flaxen, vixen, fatten

VIII *In the following sentences, the meaning of the word to which "re" has been prefixed depends upon whether a hyphen has or has not been placed between the prefix and the verbal root Substitute some other verb or phrase in each sentence* —

(1) I have never remarked this before
The box must be re marked

(2) My losses were soon recovered
The tents must be re covered

(3) He has rejoined his post
He has re joined the two planks

(4) Their wrongs were soon redressed
The doll must be re dressed

(5) His character was reformed
The classes were re formed

(6) I cannot recollect this
You must re collect all the coins that have been lost

(7) I will not recount my sorrows
You had better re count all these rupees

(8) You must return that book
Having turned the verse into prose, he re turned the prose into verse

(9) This has been reserved for future use
The summons, which he could not then receive, must be re served upon him

(10) A went out of office and was replaced by B
A has been re placed in his appointment

IX *Define and distinguish the three meanings of the prefix "sub" in the following words* —

(*a*) Sub terranean, sub montane, (*b*) sub acid, sub tropical, (*c*) sub-judge, sub deputy

X *Show the difference of meaning implied in the following words by the prefix "non" and the prefix "in" or "un"* —

(*a*) Non-active, inactive, (*b*) non effective, ineffective, (*c*) non Christian, unchristian, (*d*) non famous, infamous, (*e*) non-professional, unprofessional

XI *Form sentences showing the difference of meaning between* —

Confidant, confident, dependant, dependent.

CHAPTER XXVII.—HISTORICAL OUTLINE LATIN AND GREEK ROOTS

479 The English used at the present day throughout the British Empire is based upon the language that was spoken by the Angles, Saxons, and Jutes, who invaded and permanently occupied Britain from about 450 A D

This language has been called Anglo Saxon or Old English It was a branch of the Low German, as distinct from the High German spoken to this day in most parts of Germany

The German or Teutonic stock belongs to the great family of languages known as Aryan or Indo Germanic, to which Persian, Sanskrit, and many more also belong

480 Notwithstanding the introduction of a great many new words borrowed from many different sources—Keltic, Danish, Latin, French, Greek, etc —the grammatical framework of the language is still Teutonic or purely English, and not Latin

All the inflections of nouns and verbs are Teutonic, all the pronouns, all the numerals, almost all the prepositions, almost all the conjunctions, all adjectives of irregular comparison, the forms of the comparative and superlative degrees, the auxiliary verbs, all verbs of the strong conjugation, many verbs of the weak conjugation, many of the prefixes and suffixes, all the adverbial suffixes, and most of the words that are in commonest use

481 The stages of change through which the language has passed have been marked by the following periods —

I *Old English or Anglo-Saxon* A D 450-1066

In this period the foreign elements were very few, and the language was highly inflexional

II *Early English or semi-Saxon* A D 1066-1250

During this period, owing to the Norman Conquest, many words of French or neo Latin origin came into use, the spelling of many words was changed, and inflexions became fewer

III *Middle English* A D 1250-1485

During this period most of the Anglo Saxon inflexions that still remained finally disappeared, and many Strong verbs were replaced by Weak ones

IV. *Modern English from* A D 1485

This period is sometimes subdivided into two parts, the earlier of which is called Tudor English, extending from A D 1845 to 1600

482 Latin and French Words—The bulk of our borrowed words are of Latin or neo-Latin (that is, French) origin. These came into the language at different times and in different ways, as shown below —

(*a*) The first and smallest instalment came through the military occupation of Britain by the Romans, during the four centuries which preceded the invasion of Angles, Saxons, and Jutes

To this period we owe the names of places ending in *chester*, as Manchester (from Latin *castrum*, a fortified camp), the word *street* (from *stratum*, a paved road), the word *wall* (from *vallum*, a rampart), *colony* (from Latin *colonia*, a military settlement)

(*b*) The second instalment came with the conversion of the Anglo-Saxons to Christianity, of which Latin was the sacred language

To this period (A D 596 1066) we owe a great many ecclesiastical words, such as *alms*, *altar*, *apostle*, *epistle*, *bishop*, *chapter*, *candle*, *cloister*, *clerk*, *creed*, *cross*, *disciple*, *feast*, *monk*, *pagan*, *priest*, *saint*, and a great many more

We also owe the names of many articles of foreign production, the use or knowledge of which the Roman missionaries brought into England with them —*butter*, *cheese*, *pepper*, *cedar*, *chalk*, *crystal*, *elephant*, *elm*, *pig*, *laurel*, *lily*, *lion*, *marble*, *mule*, *oyster*, *palm*, *pearl*, and a great many more

(*c*) The third and greatest instalment came with the Norman conquest in A D 1066 The Norman invaders brought with them shoals of words of Latin or neo-Latin origin, and it was through the violent friction of Norman-French with the indigenous English that many of the English inflexions were rubbed off and lost by the year A D 1250

(*d*) The fourth instalment, from A D 1460, began with the revival of learning, by which a great many new words, relating to art, science, and classical literature generally, were introduced The influx is still going on.

483 Greek Words—These came in chiefly through the Latin for the Latin language itself was largely indebted to Greek during the most brilliant period of its history

Greek words, however, are still being borrowed, and this directly from the Greek language itself, whenever we

require a new technical word to express some new fact or notion in art or science

484 Hybrids—As a general rule English prefixes or suffixes are added to English roots, Latin or French to Latin or French, and Greek to Greek

But all these prefixes and suffixes have now become naturalised in English, and hence many Derivative words are of mixed origin Such words are called Hybrids or half-breeds

(*a*) In the following short list, which may serve as a specimen, the nouns, some of English and some of Latin origin, have been made adjectives by receiving the *English* or Saxon suffix "*ful*" and the *Latin* suffix "*ous*" —

Noun	*Adjective*	
Wonder (*English*)	wondrous,—used chiefly in poetry	(*Hybrid*)
	wonderful, — same meaning as "wondrous"	
Plenty (*Latin*)	plenteous,—used chiefly in poetry	
	plentiful,—same meaning as "plenteous"	(*Hybrid*)
Beauty (*neo Latin*)	beauteous, for persons, used in poetry	
	beautiful,—for persons and things alike	(*Hybrid*)
Bounty (*Latin*)	bounteous,—used chiefly in poetry	
	bountiful, — same meaning as "bounteous"	(*Hybrid.*)
Pity (*Latin*)	piteous,—exciting pity, as "a piteous moan"	
	pitiful,— exciting pity, as "a pitiful excuse"; feeling pity, "as a pitiful nature"	(*Hybrid*)
Grace (*Latin*)	gracious,—showing grace or favour, kind	
	graceful,—elegant in form	(*Hybrid*)

(*b*) English roots with Latin or French prefixes —

Em body, *en*-dear, *en* snare, *de*-bar, *de* file, *dis* band, *dis* burden, *per* haps, *demi* god, *re* call

(*c*) English roots with Latin or French suffixes —

Starv *ation*, stream *let*, godd *ess*, joy *ous*, scrimm-*age*, drink-*able*, treach-*ery*, block *ade*

(*d*) Latin roots with English prefixes —

Under-estimate, *over*-flow, *un*-deceive, *be*-siege, *a*-cross, *after* piece, *fore*-close

(*e*) **Latin roots with English suffixes** —

False *hood*, priest-*craft*, quarrel *some*, rapid *ly*, merci-*ful*

485 English and Latin words in pairs —Words sometimes go in pairs, one being of English, the other of Latin origin But there is generally a difference of meaning —

English	*Latin or French*	*English*	*Latin or French*
Abode,	domicile	Eat,	consume
Answer,	respond	East,	orient
Ask,	inquire	Edge,	margin
Bargain,	covenant	Embody,	incorporate
Begin,	commence	Empty,	vacant
Belief,	faith, trust, persuasion	End,	conclusion
		Enlighten,	illuminate
Bemoan,	deplore	Enough,	sufficient
Bent,	curved	Fall,	lapse
Blunder,	error	Fat,	corpulent
Boldness,	fortitude	Fearful,	timid
Bright,	radiant	Feather,	plume
Brow,	front	Feel,	experience
Build,	construct	Feeling,	consciousness
Building,	edifice	Fellow feeling,	sympathy
Burial,	funeral	Feud,	quarrel
Bury,	inter	Fewness,	paucity
Calling,	vocation	Fight,	conflict
Check,	restrain	Finger,	digit
Choice,	selection	Fire,	flame
Clasp,	embrace	Fit,	adapted
Clothes,	vesture	Fit,	convulsion
Cold,	frigid	Flag,	pennant
(Very) cold,	gelid	Flaw,	defect
Coming,	advent	Flood,	deluge
Corner,	angle	Flying,	fugitive
Cunning,	astute	Foe,	enemy
Dale or dell,	valley	Food,	victuals
Danger,	peril	Forerunner,	precursor
Dark,	obscure	Foresight,	prudence
Deadly,	mortal	Foreknowledge,	prescience
Death,	decease	Foretell,	predict
Deck,	adorn	Forgetful,	oblivious
Deed,	act	Freedom,	liberty
Deem,	judge	Full,	replete
Deep,	profound	Further,	ulterior
Die,	expire	Gainsay,	contradict
Doer,	agent	Gather,	collect
Dread,	terror	Get,	obtain
Drill,	discipline	Ghost,	spirit
Drink,	imbibe	Gift,	present
Drive,	impel	Gird,	encircle
Dwell,	reside	Go,	proceed

English	*Latin or French*
Green,	verdant
Grow,	increase
Guard,	defend
Guess,	conjecture
Guide,	direct
Guilt,	criminality
Handbook,	manual
Handle,	manipulate
Hang,	suspend
Hap,	chance
Happen,	eventuate
Harm,	injury
Haste,	celerity
Hate,	detest
Hateful,	odious
Heap,	mass
Help,	assistance
Hide,	conceal
High,	elevated
Hinder,	impede
Hopeless,	desperate
Horseman,	equestrian
Hostile,	inimical
Hurtful,	noxious
Husband or wife,	spouse
Illness,	disease
Ill will,	malice
Inward,	internal
Judgment	sentence
Keep,	maintain
Last,	ultimate
Lasting,	durable
Laughter,	derision
Lean,	meagre
Learned,	erudite
Learner,	disciple
Lessen,	diminish
Look,	appearance
Looker on,	spectator
Loth,	reluctant
Loving,	affectionate
Lowly,	humble
Luck,	chance
Mad,	insane
Maiden,	virgin
Mar,	damage
Mate,	companion
Meed,	recompense
Meet,	suitable
Mishap,	accident
Mistrust,	diffidence

English	*Latin or French.*
Naked,	nude
Nearness,	proximity
Need,	necessity
Needy,	indigent
Niggard,	miser
Old,	ancient
One,	unit
Outflowing,	efflux
Outlive,	survive
Outward,	external
Place,	locality
Plunge,	immerse
Quake,	tremble
Quench,	extinguish
Quick	rapid
Quiver,	tremble
Rich,	opulent
Ripe,	mature
Rise,	origin
Rooms,	apartments
Rot,	putrefy
Same,	identical
Scatter,	disperse
See,	perceive
Set free,	emancipate
Shake,	agitate
Shame	disgrace
Share,	portion
Short,	brief
Show,	evince, display
Shy	timid
Sight,	spectacle
Sin,	iniquity
Skill,	art
Skilful,	expert
Slanting,	oblique
Slaughter,	carnage
Slack,	remiss
Slip,	lapse
Slow,	tardy
Smell,	odour
Snake,	serpent
Speech,	oration
Spread,	extend
Spring,	fountain
Step,	grade
Stick,	adhere
Stiff,	rigid
Stir,	move
Storehouse,	depot
Stream,	current

English	*Latin or French*	*English*	*Latin or French*
Strengthen	confirm	Twist,	contort
Strife,	contention	Twofold,	double
Strive,	endeavour	Unearth,	disinter
Strong,	robust	Unfold,	disclose
Struggle,	effort	Unlikely,	improbable
Sweet,	fragrant	Wander,	stray
Swell,	dilate	Warlike,	martial
Swift,	rapid	Warm,	tepid
Swollen,	tumid	Warn,	admonish
Talk,	converse	Wary,	cautious
Teach,	instruct	Wash,	lave
Teachable,	docile	Wave,	undulate
Tell,	relate	Weakness,	debility
Thanks,	gratitude	Wedlock,	matrimony
Thick,	dense	Wet	humid
Think,	imagine	Whole,	total
Threat,	menace	Wink,	connive
Threefold,	triple	Wise,	judicious
Thrift,	frugality	Wish,	desire
Tired,	fatigued	Withstand,	resist
Tool,	implement	Womanish,	effeminate
Top,	summit	Womanly,	feminine
Trade,	commerce	Wonder,	astonishment
Trick,	artifice	Wonderful,	stupendous
Trust,	confidence	Work,	operate
Try,	attempt	Yield	submit

486 Latin adjectives to English nouns—Some examples of these (together with the Latin roots) are given below —

English Noun	*Latin Adjective*	*Latin Root*	*English Noun*	*Latin Adjective*	*Latin Root*
Cat	feline	*felis*	Moon	lunar	*luna*
Country	rural	*rus*	Mouth	oral	*os*
Cow	vaccine	*vacca*	Name	nominal	*nomen*
Dog	canine	*canis*	Nose	nasal	*nasus*
Ear	auricular	*auris*	Ox	bovine	*bos*
Egg	oval	*ovum*	Place	local	*locus*
Eye	ocular	*oculus*	Sea	marine	*mare*
Fox	vulpine	*vulpes*	Son	filial	*filius*
Gospel	evangelical	*evangelium*	Daughter	filial	*filia*
Husband	marital	*maritus*	Sun	solar	*sol*
Head	capital	*caput*	Sheep	ovine	*ovis*
Hearing	audible	*audio*	Side	lateral	*latus*
Horse	equine	*equus*	Sight	visible	*video*
Kind	generic	*genus*	Spring	vernal	*ver*
Knight	equestrian	*equester*	Stream	fluvial	*fluvius*
Light	lucid	*lux*	Tongue	lingual	*lingua*
Lip	labial	*labium*	Tooth	dental	*dens*
Mankind	human	*homo*	Tree	arboreal	*arbor*

English Noun.	*Latin Adjective*	*Latin Root*	*English Noun.*	*Latin Adjective*	*Latin Root*
Wife / Husband	conjugal	*conjux*	Wheel	rotatory	*rota*
			Womb	uterine	*uterus*

487 Two adjectives to the same noun —Some nouns of English origin have two sets of adjectives, one of English, the other of Latin origin But the meanings of the two adjectives have generally some shade of difference —

English Noun	*English Adjective*	*Latin Adjective*	*Latin Noun*
Air	airy	aerial	*aer*
Blood	bloody	sanguine, sanguinary	*sanguis*
Body	bodily	corporeal	*corpus*
Brother	brotherly	fraternal	*frater*
Burden	burdensome	onerous	*onus*
Child	childish	puerile	*puer*
Cloud	cloudy	nebular	*nebula*
Day	daily	diurnal	*dies*
Earth	earthly	terrestrial	*terra*
Father	fatherly	paternal	*pater*
Fear	fearful	timorous	*timor*
Fire	fiery	igneous	*ignis*
Flesh	fleshly	carnal	*caro*
Friend	friendly	amicable	*amicus*
Frost	frosty	glacial	*glacies*
God	godlike	divine	*deus*
Hand	handy	manual	*manus*
Heart	hearty	cordial	*cor*
Heaven	heavenly	celestial	*caelum*
Home	homely	domestic	*domus*
King	kingly	regal, royal	*rex*
Life	lively	vital	*vita*
Milk	milky	lacteal	*lac*
Mother	motherly	maternal	*mater*
Night	nightly	nocturnal	*nox*
Skin	skinny	cutaneous	*cutis*
War	warlike	bellicose	*bellum*
Water	watery	aqueous, aquatic	*aqua*
Will	wilful	voluntary	*voluntas*
Woman	womanly / womanish	feminine / effeminate	*femina*
World	worldly	mundane	*mundus*

488 Sometimes compound verbs go in pairs, one being of English, the other of Latin origin —

(*a*) In the following list the English verbs are compounded with English *Adverbs*. The Latin verb (which is

shown in brackets) is usually compounded with a Latin prefix. Whenever the verb is transitive, some noun is placed after it as object

Back up (support) one's claims
Bear out (substantiate) a charge
Beat off (repel) an attack
Block up (obstruct) a passage
Blot out (obliterate) a word
Blow up (explode)
,, out (extinguish) a candle
Break down (fail) in an exam
Break up (dissolve) a meeting
,, ,, (disperse, disappear)
Breathe out (exhale)
Bring under (reduce) the fever
,, forth (produce) fruit
,, out (elicit) facts
,, out (publish) a book
,, in (introduce) a new custom
,, to (resuscitate) a sick man
,, on (cause) a debate
,, up (educate or rear) a child
,, forward (produce) arguments
Buy back (redeem)
Call over (recite) the names
,, off (divert) one's attention
,, in (invite) a doctor
,, up (recollect) a matter
,, forth (evoke) applause
Carry on (conduct) a business
,, out (execute) an order
,, through (accomplish) a work
,, off (destroy) by sickness
Cast out (expel) from society
,, down (dejected) with grief
,, off (discarded) clothes
,, aside (reject) facts
Cheer up (encourage) any one
Clear up (explain) a problem
,, off (disperse) (*Intr.*)
Come back (return) home
,, round or to (recover)
,, in (enter)
,, about (occur)
,, down (descend)
,, off (escape)
,, on (advance)
Cry down (depreciate) any one
Cry up (extol) any one
,, out (exclaim)
Cut down (reduce) expenditure
,, off (destroy) the enemy
,, up (dissect) a body
,, out (surpass) a rival
Deal out (distribute) the loaves
Dig out (excavate) a tunnel
,, (disinter) a corpse
Done up (fatigued) with toil
Draw near (approach)
,, off (divert) attention
,, up (compile) a code
,, ,, (arrange) an army
,, back (recede)
,, in (contract or shorten)
,, out (extract) a tooth
,, ,, (prolong) a speech
,, forth (elicit) applause
Drive out (expel) the enemy
Eat up (consume) victuals
Egg on (instigate) any one
Eke out (supplement) an income
Fall off (deteriorate, decrease)
,, down (collapse)
,, away (revolt)
,, in (concur) with a man's opinion
,, back (retreat)
,, out (quarrel)
Fill up (complete) a list
Find out (discover) a reason
Get in (collect) rents
Get on (advance, make progress)
,, forward (proceed, advance)
,, back (recover) money
,, ,, (return) to a place
,, down (descend)
,, up (ascend)
,, ,, (master) a book
,, off (escape)
Give out (emit) a smell.
,, ,, (announce) a fact.
,, ,, (distribute) tickets.
,, away (present) prizes
,, over (transfer) charge
,, ,, (relinquish) an attempt

Give back (restore) anything
,, up (surrender) a point
,, in (submit, yield)
Go down (descend)
,, up (ascend)
,, on (continue) working
,, ,, (progress)
,, in (enter)
,, over (migrate) to a new place
,, by (observe) directions
,, away (depart) from a place
,, aside (deviate) from a course
,, forward (proceed)
,, back (deteriorate)
,, ,, (return) to a place
Hand down (transmit) a name
,, over (deliver) anything
Hang up (suspend) anything
Help on (promote) a cause
Hold in (restrain) a horse
,, on (continue, persevere)
,, out (endure)
,, ,, (extend) one's arm
,, up (sustain) anything
,, back (restrain) a person
,, forth (exhibit) anything
,, over (postpone) a case
Keep up (maintain) one's energy
,, on (continue)
,, under (suppress) a cough
,, back (reserve) a portion
,, off (repel) a suitor
Knock up (fatigue) a person
Lay down (resign) an office
,, ,, (surrender) one's arms
,, out (invest) money
,, up (deposit) money
Leave off (discontinue)
,, out (omit) a word
Let off (remit) a fine
,, ,, (release) a person
,, ,, (discharge) an arrow
,, in (admit) a person
,, out (liberate) a prisoner
,, ,, (divulge) a secret
Lie down (recline)
Lift up (exalt) a man
Light up (illuminate) a house
,, upon (discover) a thing
Make out (discover) one's meaning
,, up (concoct) a false charge
,, ,, (complete) an account

Make over (transfer) charge
Melt away (dissolve)
Mislead (seduce) a person
Ooze out (transpire)
Outlive (survive) a person
Pass on (proceed)
Pick out (select) the best man
Pine away (languish)
Put out (extinguish) a light
,, ,, (disconcert) a person
,, off (postpone) a journey
,, on (assume) haughty airs
,, down (suppress) a rebellion
,, up (propose) a candidate
,, in (introduce) a pretext
,, forth (exert) one's strength
,, back (retard) anything
,, away (divorce) a wife
Rake up (resuscitate) old quarrels
Run down (depreciate) a person
Send off (despatch) a messenger
,, up (submit) a petition
,, away (dismiss) a servant
Serve out (distribute, allot) food
Set forth (explain) one's views
,, apart (reserve) some money
,, aside (reject) a claim
,, off (embellish) a person or thing
,, down (record) in writing
,, up (suborn) false witnesses
,, off or out (depart)
,, on (incite) a dog
,, up (erect) a pillar
Show off (display) one's goods
,, up (expose) one's faults
Shut out (exclude) the rain
,, in (enclose) cows
,, up (confine) a prisoner
Spin out (prolong) a story
Stand out (resist)
,, ,, (project)
Stir up (excite) sedition
Strike off (remove) one's name
,, in (interpose)
Take in (admit) a person
,, ,, (deceive) a person
,, ,, (comprehend) one's meaning
,, up (occupy) one's time
,, ,, (commence) some work.
,, ,, (arrest) a person.

Take over (receive) charge
,, away (remove) anything
,, off (ridicule) a person
Talk over (convert) a man
Think out (devise) a plan
Throw out (reject) a bill
,, down (demolish) a wall
,, up (erect) a wall
,, ,, (resign) an appointment
,, off (discard) a friend
Trump up (concoct) a false charge
Turn away (avert) one's anger
,, out (eject) a tenant.
,, ,, (prove to be) clever
,, off (dismiss) a servant.
on (admit) steam
Ward off (remove) a danger
Withdraw (retreat) into a corner
,, (cancel) a claim
Work out (solve) a problem

(*b*) In the following examples the English verbs are followed by English *prepositions* The Latin verb is usually preceded by a Latin prefix A few of the Latin verbs are followed by the same preposition as the English ones

Ask for (request) a favour
Bear with (tolerate) a man's temper
Beg of (entreat) a man to, etc
Call for (demand) an explanation
,, on (visit) a man at his house
Come after (succeed) one's father
,, at (attain) something
,, by (acquire) something
,, into (enter) a house
,, upon (encounter) a person
,, near (approach) a person
Crow over (exult over) an enemy
Cry to (implore) heaven
Do away with (abolish) a rule
Dwell in (inhabit) a country
Fall upon (assail) the enemy
,, to (apply oneself to) work
Get at (obtain) the facts
,, over (surmount) a difficulty
,, through (accomplish) a work
Glance over (peruse cursorily) papers
Go after (pursue) the deer
,, against (resist, oppose) the enemy
,, along with (accompany) a person
,, beyond (exceed) a limit
,, over (examine) a place
,, up to (approach) a person
Hold to (adhere to) an opinion
Jeer at (deride) a person
Jump at (eagerly accept) an offer
Keep from (refrain from) evil
,, to (adhere to) a promise
Laugh at (deride) any one
Lay to (impute to) one's charge
Live in (inhabit) a country
Long for (desire) rest
Look at (behold) anything
,, down on (despise) any one
,, for (expect) anything
,, into (inspect) anything
,, on (regard) him as wise
,, over (examine) accounts
,, up to (respect) any one
Make away with (destroy) the princes
,, away with (purloin) money
,, for (conduce to) well being
,, up for (compensate for) a loss
,, up to (approach) a person
Meet with (encounter) any one
Pitch upon (select) a site
Pry into (scrutinize) a secret
Put up with (endure) hostility
See about (attend to) some business
into (discern) one's motives.
,, through (penetrate) one's motives
Set upon (assail) an enemy
Stand by (support) a friend
,, to (adhere to) one's word.
Take after (imitate) one's father
Talk over (discuss) a subject.
Think of (recollect) a point.
,, over (consider) a subject
Tide over (surmount) a difficulty
Wait on (attend) a person

469 **Doublets** are words which have the same derivation, but differ in form and almost always in meaning. The following are examples of doublets (*a*) of English origin, (*b*) of Latin and French origin, (*c*) of Greek origin:—

(a) Doublets of English origin

Ant, emmet	Gabble, jabber	Morrow, morn	Skirt, shirt
Bench, bank	Grove, groove	Naught, not	Sop, sup, soup
Block, plug	Guard, ward	Rover, robber	Stint, stunt
Car, cart, chariot	Guest, host	Scatter, shelter	Stove, stew
Deck, thatch	Guile, wile	Scratch, grate	Tight, taut
Dell, dale	Hale, whole	Screech, shriek	Tithe, tenth
Dole, deal	Lithesome, lissom	Skiff, ship	Treachery, trick
Drill, thrill		Skirmish, scrimmage	Troth, truth
Evil, ill	Load, lade		Wagon, wain

(b) Doublets of Latin and French origin

Latin	*Meaning*	*French*	*Meaning*
Abbreviate	shorten	Abridge	shorten
Aggravate	make worse	Aggrieve	give pain to
Assimilate	make like	Assemble	collect
Benediction	prayer for blessings	Benison	prayer for blessings
Cadence	falling	Chance	accident
Captive	prisoner	Caitiff	mean fellow
Calumny	false charge	Challenge	defiance
Chart	piece of paper	Card	piece of pasteboard
Capital	accumulated wealth	Chattels	movable property
		Cattle	cows
Cavalry	horse soldiers	Chivalry	knightly valour
Captain	head of a company or of a ship	Chieftain	head of a clan
Complacent	satisfied	Complaisant	desirous to please
Comprehend	understand	Comprise	include
Compute	reckon up	Count	reckon up
Conception	act of conceiving	Conceit	extravagant notion
Describe	depict in words	Descry	espy
Desiderate	feel the want of	Desire	feel the want of
Dissimulate	hide the facts	Dissemble	hide the facts
Diurnal	daily	Journal	diary
Debit, debt	what is owed	Due	what is owed
Extraneous	foreign, external	Strange	uncommon
Fact	reality	Feat	performance
Faction	political party	Fashion	custom
Fidelity	faithfulness	Fealty	service to a king

Latin	*Meaning*	*French*	*Meaning*
Fragile	physically weak	Frail	morally weak
Granary	storehouse for grain	Garner	to store up grain
Hospital	house for the sick	Hostel Hotel	lodging house house for travellers
Implicate	involve in	Employ	give work to
Invidious	hateful, unworthy	Envious	jealous
Indict (in dit)	prosecute for crime	Indite	put into writing
Legal	authorised by law	Loyal	faithful in service
Lection	reading	Lesson	the thing read
Major	military title	Mayor	municipal title
Malediction	curse	Malison	curse
Native	born in a place	Naive	ingenuous, frank
Obedience	obeying an order	Obeisance	doing homage
Oration	speech	Orison	prayer
Par	equal	Pair Peer	couple nobleman
Pauper	destitute	Poor	not rich
Penitence	regret, remorse	Penance	pain inflicted as a penalty for sin
Persecute	harass	Pursue	follow up
Piety	godliness	Pity	compassion
Plaintive	expressing sorrow	Plaintiff	one who brings a suit
Potion	something drunk	Poison	a deadly drink
Pungent	pricking to the taste	Poignant	pointed, keen, satirical
Portico	colonnade	Porch	covered entrance
Potent	powerful	Puissant	powerful
Predicate	affirm	Preach	deliver a sermon
Prolong	lengthen out	Purloin	filch
Provider	one who provides	Purveyor	one who provides
Propose	make an offer	Purpose	intention
Ratio	proportion	Reason	cause, explanation
Redemption	buying back	Ransom	the price paid
Regal	belonging to a king	Royal	king like
Regulate	direct	Rule	govern
Respect	regard	Respite	cessation, pause
Secure	safe	Sure	certain
Senior	elder	Sir, sire	title of respect
Separate	disjoin	Sever	disjoin
Servant	one who serves	Serjeant, or sergeant	military title
Strict	rigorous	Straight Strait	not crooked close, narrow
Superficies	term in Euclid	Surface	outer part

Latin.	*Meaning*	*French*	*Meaning*
Supplicant	one who entreats	Suppliant	one who entreats
Tempt	put to the test	Taunt	jeer at
Tract	division of land	Trait	distinguishing feature
Tradition	what is handed down orally	Treason	betrayal of confidence
Treble	threefold	Triple	threefold
Vocal	pertaining to the voice	Vowel	not a consonant

(*c*) *Doublets of Greek origin*

	Meaning		*Meaning*
Adamant	unbreakable stone	Diamond	valuable gem
Balsam	resin from a tree	Balm	anything that soothes
Canon	law of the church	Cannon	artillery
Canvas	strong cloth	Canvass	scrutinise
Chord	string or tone of music	Cord	rope
Crypt	underground vault	Grot, grotto	cave, recess
Disc, disk	a flat round plate	Dish Dais	for holding food raised platform
Eremite	anchorite	Hermit	anchoret
Fantasy	wild notion	Fancy	imagination
Jealous	envious	Zealous	ardent in a cause
Monastery	abode of monks	Minster	cathedral
Phantasm	mental image	Phantom	ghost
Scandal	what causes offence	Slander	false charge

490 LATIN ROOTS AND DERIVATIVES

Acer (*sharp*) acid acri mony, ac id

Ædes (*house*) edi fice, ed-ity

Æqu us (*level*) equ al equ ity, equ itable, in iqu ity, in iquit-ous, equi valent, equ ation

Æstim-o, **æstimat** um (*to value*) esteem, estim-ate, aim

Æv um (*age*) co eval prim eval

Ager (*field*) agri culture, agr-arian

Ag o, **act**-um (*to do, set in motion*) ag-ent, ag ile, ag ency, ag ility, amb ig uous, act, act-ive, ex-act, ag itate

Ali us (*other*) alibi, alien, alienate

Alter (*one or other of two*) alter cation, alter, alter nate, altr uism

Alt-us (*high*) alti tude, ex alt

Am o, **amat** um (*to love*), **amicus** (*friend*) am ity, amat-ory, am iable, amat-eur, en em y, in im ic-al, am ic able.

Ang-o (*to choke*) ang-uish, ang-er

Anim-a (*breath*), **anim**-us (*mind*) anim-al, anim ate, magn-anim-ous

Ann us (*the year*) ann als, ann ual, bi enn ial, anni versary per enn ial

Aper io, **apert** um (*to open*) Apr il, apert ure, overt, aperient

Appell-o, **appellat** um (*to call*) ap peal ap-pel lative

Apt us (*fit*) apt itude (hence atti tude) apt, in-ept, ad apt-ation

Aqu a (*water*) aque-ous, aqu-atic, aque duct

Arbor (*tree*) arbour arbor-eal

Arc us (*bow*) arc, arch

Ard eo, **ars** um (*to burn*) ard ent, ars on, ard-our

Ars (*skill*) art, art ifice, art ist.

Art us (*joint*) article, articulate

Asper (*rough*) asper ity, ex-asper ate

Aud io, **audit**-um (*to hear*) audit, aud ible, aud ience, audit-or, ob-ed ient, ob-ey, ob ei-sance

Aug-eo, **auct** um (*to increase*) aug ment, auct-ion, auth-or, auth-or-ity

2 C

Auxili um (*help*) auxili-ary

Avar us (*greedy*) avarice, avaricious.

Bell um (*war*) re-bel, belli gerent, bell icose

Bini (*two by two*) binary, com bine

Brev is (*short*) brief, brev ity, ab-brevi-ate, abridge

Caball us (*horse*) caval ry, chival ry, cavalc-ade.

Cad o, **cas** um (*to fall*) case, cas ual, oc-cas-ion, ac-cid-ent, cad ence (hence chance), co in cide

Caed o, **caes**-um (*to cut or make to fall*) sui-cide con cise pre cise, pre cis ion, homi-cide, ces ura, ce ment.

Camp us (*plain*) camp, en-camp, camp-aign

Cand-eo (*to be white or shine*), **cend** o **cens** um (*to burn*) cand le, cand id, cand our, in cense, in cend iary

Can o, **cant** um (*to sing*) **cant**-o, **cantat** um (*to sing*) chant, cant icle, re-cant, cant, ac-cent, en-chant ment

Cap-io, **capt** um (*to take*) cap able cap-acious, in cip ient, eman cip ate ac cept re ceipt, re ceive, re cept acle, muni-cip-al

Caput **capit**-is (*the head*) cape chap let, capit-al, cap tain chief, chief tain, chap ter pre-cipit ate, de capitate

Car-o **carn** is (*flesh*) carn al carn age, in carn ate carn ival, charn el house.

Car us (*dear*) cheer cher ish, car ess, char ity

Caus a (*reason*) cause, ex cuse, ac cuse

Cav us (*hollow*) cav ity, con cave cave, ex cav ate

Ced o, **cess** um (*to go or yield*) cede, con cede, con cess ion ac cess de cease ac-cede, pro ceed, in cess ant cease

Cent-um (*a hundred*) cent cent-ury

Cern o **cret** um (*to sift or judge*) dis cern, dis creet dis cret ion dis crete, se cret, de cree, con cern

Cert-us (*sure*) cert ain, cert-ain ty, as cert-ain

Charta (*paper*) chart, chart er, cart oon

Cing o **cinct**-um (*to surround*) pre cincts, suc-cinct, cinct ure

Civ is (*citizen*) civil civic, city

Claud-o, **claus** um (*to shut*) clause, close, clos ure, cloist-er clos et, ex clude, con clus ion, con clus ive

Cognosc o (*to examine*) re co-gnise, cognis-ant, cognit-ion

Col o, **cult**-um (*to till*) cult ure, col ony, cult-ivate, agri-cult-ure, cl own

Commod us (*convenient*) commodi ous ac-commod-ate, in commode

Cor, **cord** is (*the heart*) core, cord ial, ac-cord, con-cord, dis cord

Coron a crown, coron-ation

Corp-us, **corpor** is (*body*) corpse corse, cors et, corse let, corpus-cle, cor por eal, in corpor-ate, corpor ation, corp ulent.

Cred-o, **credit** um (*to believe*) creed, credit, credit-able, in cred ible, cred ence

Cresc-o (*to grow*) in-crease, de-crease, cresc ent, ac-cretion

Crux, **cruc**-is (*cross*) cross, cruci fy, cruc ial, crus ade, ex cruciate

Culp a (*fault*) culp-able, in culpate, ex culpate

Cur a (*care*) cure cur ious, se cure, in cur able, care, care ful

Curr o **curs** um (*to run*) course, curr ent, curr-ency, pre curs-or curr icle, oc cur, suc cour curr iculum, curs ory

Damn o **damnat** um damn, con demn d amnat ion, dam age

Deb eo, **debit** um (*to owe*) debt, debit due, debit able

Decem (*ten*) Decem ber, decim-al, decim ate

Dic o **dict** um (*to say*) dict-ation, contra dict, in dict dict ion pre dict.

Di es (*day*) **diurn** us (*daily*) di ary, dai ly diurn-al (hence journal), ad journ

Dign-us (*worthy*) deign, con dign, dign ity

Do **dat** um (*to give*) date ad d, dat ive, e dit ad dit ion, ren dit ion ren d er

Doc eo, **doct** um (*to teach*) doc ile, doct or

Dolor (*grief*) dole ful, dolor ous, con dole

Domin us (*master*) domin ion dom ain domin-ate

Dubi us (*doubtful*) dubious, doubt, in dubit able

Duc o **duct** um (*to lead*) duke, duct, con-duit, duct ile, re-duce, intro-duct-ion, e duc ate

Dur o **durat** um (*to last*) during, en dure durat ion, dur able

Ed o (*to eat*) edible esculent

Em o, **empt** um (*to buy*) ex empt, pro mpt, re d eem re dempt ion (hence ransom), per empt ory

Ens, **esse** (*to be*) **est** (*it is*) abs ent, ent-ity, essent ial, ess en ce, abs en ce inter est

E o, **it** um (*to go*), **iens** (*going*), **it** er, **itin** eris (*journey*) amb ient, amb it-ion, ex it, trans it, in it ial, per ish, itin erary, circu it

Equ us (*horse*) equ ine, equ estrian, equ erry

Err o **errat** um (*to wander*) err, error, errat ic, ab erration er roneous

Exempl um example, sample, exem plary

Experi or (*to try*) experience, experi ment, expert

Faci-es face, facial, sur face, super ficial

Facil is (*easy*) facul ty, dif-ficult, facil itate

Fac io, **fact** um (*to make*) fact, feat af fect, fact-or, per fect, fact-ory, of fice, bene fice, bene-fit, bene fact-or honori fic, magni fic-ent, magni fy, horri fy, counter feit

Fam-a (*report*) fame, in fam ous, de fam-ation

Femin a (*woman*) femin ine, ef femin ate

Fend-o **fens** um (*to strike*) fend-er, of fence, fence de fend, in de fens ible

Fer o, **lat** um (*to bear or bring*) re fer, fer tile con fer con fer ence auri fer-ous, dif fer-ence, di late, re late, trans late super lat ive

Ferr um (*iron*) ferric ferruginous

Ferv-eo (*to be hot*) ferv id, ferv ent, ef ferv esce

Fid es (*trust*) faith, faith ful ness, fid-elity (hence fealty), in fid el, con fide, per fid y, de-fy de fi-ance

Fig o, **fix** um (*to fix*) fix, fixt ure, pre fix, suf fix, fix ity

Fili us (*son*) filial, af filiate

Fing-o **fict** um (*to pretend*) fict ion, fict it ious feign figure

Fin is (*end*) finish finite, final, in finitive

Fisc-us (*treasury*) fisc al, con fisc ate

Flect o, **flex** um (*to bend*) re-flect, re flex, flex ible, in flex ion, re flect ion circum flex, re flex ive

Flos (*flower*) florid, flourish

Flu o, **flux** um (*to flow*) **fluct** us (*wave*) in flux, fluct uate, flux, flow, flu id

Fort is (*strong*) forti fy, fort ress forti tude

Frang o, **frag** **fract** um (*to break*) frag ment, frag ile (hence frail) fract ion, in fringe in fringe ment

Frons front, af front, con front, frontis piece

Fru or **fruit** um (*to enjoy*) **fruct** us (*fruit*) frug al, fruit ion, fruit, fruct ify

Fug io, **fugit** um (*to flee*) fugit ive, re fug ee, re fuge

Fund o, **fus** um (*to pour*) pro-fuse fus ible, re fund, con found, con fus ion, dif fuse, found ry

Fund us (*bottom*) found, found ation, pro found

Gen us, **gener** is (*kind*), **gens**, **gent**-**is** (*race*) gener al, gen ial, gener-ation, indi gen ous, gen tle, gent ile gent eel, in gen uous pro gen y, re gener-ate, gend-er, en gend er

Gero, **gest** um (*to bear*) gest-ure, sug-gest, belli gerent.

Glacies (*ice*) glacial, glass, glazier

Grad ior, **grass** us (*to step*) grad ual, de gree, grad ation, trans gress, pro gress

Grav is (*heavy*) grief, griev-ous, grave, gravit-ate, ag grav-ate

Grex, **greg** is (*a flock*) ag greg ate, e-greg ious, greg-arious, con-greg-ation

Hab-eo, **habit**-um (*to have*), **habit**-o, **habitat** um (*to dwell in*) have, habit, ex hibit, hab iliment, pro-hibit, in habit, habitat ion, habit-able

Hær eo, **hæsit** um (*to stick*) ad here, hesit ate

Hæres heir, in her it, hered itary

Hom o **homin** is (*man*) homi cide, hum an, hum-ane

Hosp-es, **hospit** is (*a guest or host*) hospit-al, hospit-able, host, host-el, hotel

Hum us (*ground*) ex hume, post hum ous, hum ble

Imper o, **imperat** um (*to command*) imper ial imper ious, empire, emper-or, imperat ive

Ingen ium (*talent*) engine ingenious

Insul a island, isle, insul ate (hence isolate) insul ar

Integer (*whole*) integr al, integr ity, entire

Ir-a (*anger*) ire, ir-ate, ir ascible

Jac eo (*to lie down*) ad jac-ent, gist

Jac io **jact** um, **jacul** or (*to throw*) e jacul-ate, ob ject, re ject, pro ject, pro ject ile ad ject ive de ject ed, con ject ure

Judex, **judic** is (*judge*) judge, judg ment jud c ial, judic ious pre judice

Jug um (*yoke*) con jug al, con jug ate, jug ular

Jung o, **junct** um (*to join*) junct ure, con junct ion, ad junct, joint, join, ad join

Jur o, **jurat** um (*to swear*) jur y, ab jure per jur y, con jure, ad jurat ion

Jus **jur** is (*equity*) just, justice, in jury ju ris diction

Lab or, **laps** us (*slide*) lapse, col lapse re lapse

Læd-o, **læs**-um (*to hurt*) les ion, e lide, collis ion

Lat us, **later** is (*a side*) later-al, equi later al, col later al

Leg o, **legat** um (*to depute*) legate leg acy, legat ee, legat ion, al lege, de legate

Leg-o, **lect** um (*to read or choose*) leg end di lig ent, e lect, col lect, neg lect, leg ible, intel lect, intel lig ible, sacri lege

Lev is (*light*) re lief, re lieve, lev ity, al lev iate

Lex, **leg** is (*law*) leg al, loy al, leg is late, law, law ful, out law

Liber (*free*) liber-al, liber ty, de liver

Liber (*a book*) libr ary, libel

Libr-a (*balance*) de liberate

Lig-o, **ligat**-um (*to bind*) ligat-ure, leag ue, lig-ament, ob ligat ion, ob-lige, re-lig ion

Lingu-a (*tongue*) linguist, language

Liter-a letter, liter-ate, liter ature, liter-al

Loc-us (*a place*), **loc-o, locat** um (*to place*) loc-al, loco-motion, loc-ality, loc-ate, locat-ion, col locat ion

Loqu-or, locut-us (*to speak*) o-locut-ion, e loqu-ence, loqu acious, col loquy

Lud-o, lus um (*to play*) e lude, lud icrous, al lus ion, col lus ion, de-lude, il lusory

Lun a (*moon*) lun-ar, lun atic

Lu o, lut-um (*to wash*) pol lute, di lute ab-lut ion, de lu ge, al luv ial

Machin-a machine, machin-ation mechan ic, mechan ism

Magister (*a master*) magistr ate magistr-acy, master, master ful, magis ter ial, master y

Magn us, (*great*) major, mayor, magn ate, magni fy, maj esty

Man eo, mans um (*to stay*) mans ion re main, per man ent, re mn-ant, im min-ent, e min ent

Man us (*the hand*) manu al man acle, manu script, main tain, e man cipate, manu facture, a manu ensis, man age, main tain

Mar-e (*the sea*) mar ine, sub mar ine, marin-er, mari time

Mater (*mother*) mater nal, mater nity, matr on, matri mony

Mens, ment-is (*the mind*) men tal, de ment-ed

Merg o, mers um (*to dip*) sub merge, e merg-ency im merse, im mers ion

Met ior, mens us (*to measure*) meas ure, im mense, mens uration, com mens urate

Merx, merc is (*goods for sale*) merch ant, com merce, merch-andise mark et

Min or (*less*) **minu o, minut** um (*to make less*) min or it, min or, minute di min ish, min imum

Misc-eo, mixt um (*to mix*) mixt ure misc ellaneous, mix, pro misc uous

Mitt o, miss um (*to send*) ad mit miss ion, miss ion-ary pro mise, pre mise, pro miss-ory miss ile

Mod us (*a measure*) mod erate, mod est, mod el, mod ify, mood, mode

Mol-a (*that which grinds*) mill, meal, mol-ar, im mol ate, e mol ument

Mon-eo, monit-um (*to advise*) monit or, ad mon ish, mon ument.

Mons mount, mount-ain, sur mount, pro mont ory

Mord eo, mors um (*to bite*) mors-el, re morse

Mors, mort is (*death*) mor tal, mort-ify, mort gage

Mos mor is (*custom*) mor-al, mor ality, de-mor alise

Mov eo, mot-um (*to move*) mot ion, re-mote, com mot-ion, re move, move ment, mo ment, mot ive.

Mus a (*goddess of poetry*) mus-ic, a-muse, mus-eum

Mun us, muner is (*a gift*) re-mun erate, mun ificent, com mune, com-mon

Nasc-or nat-us (*to be born*) nat-ive, nat-al, nasc ent, in nate, cog nate, nat-ure na-tion

Nav is (*a ship*) navi gate, naut-ical, nav y, nav vy, nav al

Neg o, negat um (*to deny*) negat-ive, negat-ion, re-negade

Noc-eo (*to hurt*) in noc ent, nox ious, nuis ance, per nic ious

Nos co not um (*to know*) **nomen** (*name*) noun, name, no-ble, ig nom iny, note, not ice

Nov us new, nov el, re nov-ate, in nov-ation, nov ice

Nox (*night*) noct urnal, equi nox.

Null us (*none*) null ity, an nul, null, null ity

Nutr io nutrit-um (*to nourish*) nutri ment, nour ish, nour ishment, nurse, nutrit ious

Ocul us (*eye*) ocul ar, ocul ist, in ocul ate

Offic ium (*duty*) office, offic ial, offic-ious, offic iate

Ole um oil ole aginous

Omen (*omen*) omin ous, ab-omin ate

Omni s (*all*) omni potent omni bus

On us (*burden*) oner ous, ex-oner ate

Orb is (*circle*) orb, orb-it, ex orbit ant

Ol-esco, olet um or **ult** um (*to grow*) red ol ent obs olete, ad ult.

Or o orat um (*to speak or pray*) ad ore ad orat ion, orat ion (hence oris on), orat or

Or ior ort us (*to arise*) or ient, or iental or igin, ab ort ive

Os or is (*the mouth*) or al, or ifice, os culate (hence os cillate).

Pand o pans um or **pass** um (*to spread*) ex pand, ex panse, ex pans ion, com pass tres pass pass pace

Pang o pact um (*to fasten*) im pinge, com pact

Par (*equal*) com pare com par ison, peer, com peer, dis par ity, pair, um-pire

Par io, part um (*to bring forth*) par ent, fissi par ous vivi par ous (hence vi per), part urition

Par o parat-um (*to get ready*) par ade, ap-parat us pre pare, pre parat ion

Pars, part is (*part or share*) part ial, im part ial, part part ner, a part-ment, parse, part icle, part icular

Pater (*father*) pater nal, patr on, patri mony, patr ician

Patri a (*native land*): patri ot, ex patri-ate

Pat ior, pass us (*to suffer*) pati-ent, pass ive, pass ion, com pat-ible

Pax, pac-is (*peace*) ap-pease, peace, paci fy, peace ful

Pell-o, puls-um (*to drive*) com pel, pulse, im pulse, ex puls ion, re puls-ive

Pend o or eo, **pens** um (*to pay or hang*) sus pend, sus pense, pend ent, de-pend, ex pend, dis pense, im pend ing, per-pend icular

Pes, ped is (*foot*) ped estrian, im pede, ped estal, bi ped, quadru ped, centi pede, ex ped ient, ex pedite.

Pet-o, petit-um (*to seek*) petit ion, com pete, com pet ent, ap petite, im pet-uous

Plac eo, **placit**-um (*to please*) plac id, com plac ent, complais ant, please

Ple-o, plet-um (*to fill*), **plen** us (*full*) plen ary, plen itude, sup ply, sup ple ment, com ply, com ple ment, complete replete, re plenish

Plic-o plicat um, or **plect** o **plex** um (*to fold*) com plex, com plicat ed, ap plic-ant, ex plic it, im plicate, im ply, sim ple, dou ble, du plex, tri ple or tre ble, quadru ple sim plic ity

Plus, plur is (*more*) plural, plus, sur plus

Pœna (*punishment*) pen al, pain, re pent, pen itence

Pon o, **posit** um (*to place*) sup pose, sup posit-ion post, de posit, de posit ion, de pon ent, op-pon-ent, ap posite, ap posit-ion, re pose, op posite, post pone, pre posit ion

Popul us (*people*) popul ace, popul ation, de popul ate, popul-ar people, publ ish

Poss um or **pot-is** sum (*to be able*) poss ible, poss ibility, pot ent, pot enti al, omni pot ent, pot ency

Pret ium (*price*) preci ous, de prec iate, price.

Prehend do, **prehens** um (*to take or grasp*) com prehend, com prehens ible re prehens-ible ap prehens ion, pris on, sur prise, prize

Prec-or, precat us (*to pray*) pray prayer, im precat ion

Prim us (*first*) prim itive, prime, prim-eval

Prob o, **probat** um (*to try or test*) probat-ion, prove, proof, prob-able, re prob-ate re proof, ap probat ion, ap prov-al, dis-ap prov al

Propr ius proper, proper ty, propri ety, ap propri-ate

Pugn o (*to fight*) im pugn, pugn acious, re pugn-ant

Pung-o, punct um (*to prick*) punct ual, punct ilious, point, pung-ent, ex punge, punct-uation

Put-o, putat um (*to cut or think*) am putate, dis pute, dis put-ant, dis putat ion, re pute, re-putat-ion, com pute (hence co-unt)

Quær-o, quæsit-um (*to seek*) query, ac quire, ac-quisit-ion, ex-quisite in quest, in-quir y, in-quisit ive, quest ion

Quati-o, quass-um (*to shake*), quash, dis cuss, per-cuss-ion

Quat-uor (*four*) **quadr-a** (*square*) quadru ped, quadr-ant, quart, squad ron, quadru-ple

Rad ius (*a streak of light*) ray, rad iant, rad iate, rad iance

Rado, ras um (*to scrape*) raz-or, e-rase, e ras ure

Rap io, **rapt**-um (*to seize*) rap-id, rapt ure, rapt, rap acious, sur rept-itious, rav-enous

Reg o **rect**-um (*to rule*) reg ular, reg ulation, rule, cor rect, rect-angular, right, right-angled di rect, in-di rect, reign reg al (hence roy-al).

Res (*thing*) re al, reality, really, re public

Riv us river, riv ulet, de rive, riv al

Rog o, **rogat** um (*to ask*) rogat-ion, inter rogate inter rogat ive pro rogue

Rota (*a wheel*) rot ation, ro und, roll

Rump o **rupt** um (*to break*) rupt ure, route rout, rote, ab rupt, bank rupt, bank rupt-cy

Rus, rur is (*country*) rur al, rus tic, rus ticate

Sacer sacred, sacer-dotal, sacri lege, sacri fice

Sal io **salt** um (*to leap*) sal ly, sal ient, as sault re sult, ex ult, as sail, sal mon, in sult

Sanct us (*sacred*) sanct ify, saint, saint ly sancti monious, sanct uary

Sangu is, **sanguin** is (*blood*) sangu ine, sanguin ary

Sap io, **sap-or** (*taste*) sa vour, sap ient in sip-id

Sat, satis (*enough*) satis fy, satis factory sat-iate

Sci-o (*to know*) sci ence, pre sci-ence, con science, omni science

Scrib o **script** um (*to write*) script, scribe, scrib ble, post-script, in script ion de scribe, scriv ener manu script

Sec o, **sect** um (*to cut*) seg ment, sect ion, bi sect, dis sect, sect, sect arian

Sed eo **sess** um (*to sit*) sedi ment, seat, set tle, sess ion re side, re sid ence, pre sid ent, super sede, sed-an, pos sess, as sid uous

Sent io, **sens** um (*to feel*) senti ment, sense, sens ation con-sent, con sens us, sent ence, re sent, re sent ment, dis sens ion, non sense, scent

Sequ-or, secut us (*to follow*) sequ ence, con sequ-ence ex ecute, pro secute, sequ-el, pur-sue, en-sue, pur su ance

Ser-o, ser um (*to set in a row*) ser mon, ser ies, ser ial, in sert, ex-ert, ex ert ion

Serv us (*a slave*), **serv** io, **servit**-um (*to be a slave*) serv-ice, serv-itude, serve, serf, de serve.

Serv-o, servat-um (*to keep*) pre serve, pre servat-ion, ob-serve, ob-serv ant, ob-servat-ory

Sign um (*a sign*) sign-al, sign ify, sign, as-sign, as sign ment, con sign ment, de sign, en sign

Simil is (*like*) simil-ar, re sem ble, as-simil-ate, simul-ate

Sist o (*to stop or stand*) as sist, de sist, re sist, con sist ent, per sist ent, re sist ance

Solv o, **solut** um (*to loosen*) solve, re solve, re solut-ion, dis solve, solu ble, ab solute, dis solute, re solute, ab solve

Sparg o **spars** um (*to scatter*) sparse, sparse ly, dis perse, dis pers ion, as pers ion

Spati um space, spac ious ex pati ate

Spec io, **spect** um (*to see*) spec ies, spect-acle, re spect, su-spic ion, spec ial, de spise, spect ator, spec imen, a spect

Spir-o, spirat um (*to breathe*) **spirit-us** (*breath*) spirit spirit-uous, spirit ual, con spire ex pire, in spire, con spirat-or, sprite

Spond eo, **spons** um (*to promise*) spons or, spouse e spouse de spond re sponse, cor re spond ence, re spons ible

Stern o, **strat** um (*to throw down*) strew, pro strate, stratum strat ify, con stern ation

St o, **stat** um (*to stand*) state stat us, stat ion, sta ble, sta bility, di stant sub stance, armi stice, in stit ute, sol stice

String o, **strict** um (*to bind*) strict strait, straight, string ent as trin gent, strict ure, re strict, con strain

Stru o, **struct** um (*to build*) struct ure, con struct ion, de stroy in stru ment, con strue

Summ us (*highest*) sum summ it, con summ ate

Sum o, **sumpt** um (*to take*) con sume as sume, as sumpt ion, pre sume, pre sumpt-uous

Super (*above*) super ior, supr eme, hence sover eign supr em acy

Surg o, **surrect** um (*to rise*) source re source, in surg ent, in surrect ion, re surrec tion

Tang o, **tact** um (*to touch*) tact, tang ible, con tact, con tig uous, tang ent, con tag ion

Teg-o, **tect** um (*to cover*) teg ument, pro tect, pro tect ion

Temper o, **temperat** um (*to control*) temper, temper ate, temper at ure

Temp us, **tempor** is (*time*) tense, tempor-al, con tempor ary, tempor ise, ex tempor ise.

Tend-o, **tens** um (*to stretch*) por tent, tent, por tend, tens ion, tend, at tend, at-tent ion, in tense

Ten eo, **tent**-um (*to hold*) ten ure, ten-ant, con tin-ent, con tin ual, con-tin uous, con tent, con tain, re tent-ive, ten able, ten acious obs tin-ate

Ter-o, **trit** um (*to rub*) trite, con trite, de tri ment

Terr a (*the earth*) in-ter, terr estrial, terr ier, terr ace

Terr eo (*to frighten*) terr-or, terri fy, de ter de terr ent

Test is (*a witness*), **test** or, **testat-us** (*to witness*) test ament at test, at testat ion, de test, in testate, test ify, con test test testi mony

Tex o, **text** um (*to weave*) text, text-ure, tex t-ile, con text, pre text

Torqu eo **tort** um (*to twist*) dis tort, tort tort ure, con tort ion, tor ment

Trah o, **tract** um (*to draw*) por tray, por trait, tract, tract-able, con tract, trait, treat abs tract

Tu eor **tuit** um (*to see*) tuit-ion, tut or tut elage

Ultra (*beyond*) outr-age ult imate, pen ult imate ultimatum, ult er ior

Umbr a (*shade*) umbr ella, umbr age

Un us (*one*) un ity, un ite, un iverse, un ion un ique

Und a (*wave*) und ulate, ab ound, red ound, red und ant ab und-ance, in und ate

Ungu o **unct** um (*to smear*) oint ment, an oint, unct ion, unct uous, ungu ent

Urbs (*city*) urb an, sub urb, urb ane, urb anity

Vacc a (*cow*) vacc ine, vacc ination

Vac o, **vacat** um (*to be unoccupied*) vac ant, vacate, vacat ion, vac uum, e vac uate

Vag-or (*to wander*) vag rant, vague, vag abond vag-ary extra vag ant

Val eo (*to be strong*) a vail pre vail, val id, vale dictory, equi val ent, con val escent val ue, val uable

Veh o **vect** um (*to carry*) veh ement, veh icle, con vey in vect ive

Vell o **vuls** um (*to pluck*) con vulse, re vuls ion

Vel um (*covering*) veil, re-veal, de vel op

Ven io, **vent** um (*to come*) vent ure, pre vent, ad vent ad vent ure, con ven ient, a ven ue, super vene, inter vent ion

Verb um verb, word, verb-al, pro verb, verb ose

Vert-o, vers um (*to turn*) ad vert, vert ex, con vert, con verse, re vert, re verse, di verse, di vorce, ad vert ise

Vi a (*a road or way*) de viate, voy age, tri vi al (hence trifle), pre vi-ous, en voy

Vid-eo, **vis**-um (*to see*) vis age, vis-ion vis ible, e vid ent, en vy, sur vey, pro vide pro vid-ent (hence prudent), pro vis ion

Vinc-o, **vict**-um (*to conquer*) vict-ory, con vict, con vince, in vinc ible, vanq uish

Vir (*a man*) vir ile, vir tue, trium vir, vir-ago

Viv-o, **vict**-um (*to live*) vict uals, viv acious, re vive sur vive

Voc-o, **vocat**-um (*to call*) vocat-ion, in voke, ad voc ate, voc-al, vow el, voice.

Vol-o (*to be willing*) volit ion, bene-vol-ent, vol untary

Volv-o, **volut**-um (*to roll*) re-volve, in volut ion, vol ume, re volut ion, in volve, volu ble

Vor-o (*to eat up*) de-vour, vor-acious, carni vor ous

Vov-eo, **vot**-um (*to vow*) vote, de vote, de vout, de vot ion, de vot ee, vot-ary, vow, a vow, a vow al

491. Greek Roots and Derivatives

Agon (*struggle*) agon y, ant agon ist

Akr os (*top*) acr obat, acr opolis

Angel os (*messenger*) angel, ev angel ist, angel ic

Anthrop-os (*man*) anthrop-ology, mis anthrope

Aster (*a star*) aster isk, dis-aster, astro nomy

Athl on (*contest*) athl ete, athl etic

Arch-e (*rule*) mon-arch, archi tect, hept arch y

Auto (*self*) auto-crat, auto graph, auto nomy

Ball o, **bol**-e (*throw*) sym bol, hyper bole, para ble pro blem, em blem

Basis (*treading, support*) basis, base, base ment

Bibli on (*book*) bible biblio graphy, biblio pole

Bi-os (*life*) amphi bi ous, bio logy, bio graphy

Chor-os (*band of singers*) choir, chor ister chorus

Chron-os (*time*) chrono meter, chrono logy chron icle ana chron ism

Dem os (*people*) dem agogue, demo cracy, demo graphy epi dem ic

Dox a, **dog** ma (*an opinion*) hetero dox, para dox dogma, dog matic

Dra o (*to act*) dras tic dra ma

Dunam is (*power*) dynam ics dy nas ty

Eidol-on (*an image*) idol, idol ize, idol atry

Eleemosyn-e (*pity*) alms, elee mosyn ary

Ethn os (*race*) heathen, ethn ic, ethno logy

Erg on (*work*) en erg y, lit urg y, cheir urg-eon (hence surg eon) metall urg y

Gam os (*marriage*) mono gamy, poly gamy, bi gamy

Ge (*the earth*) ge-ography, apo-gee, ge ology, ge-ometry

Gon ia (*an angle*) penta gon, hexa gon, dia-gon al

Graph o (*to write*), **gram** ma (*something written*) epi gram, mono gram, télé gram, tele graph, gram mar, bio graph y, geo-graph y, graph ic, auto-graph

Hod-os (*away*) meth od, peri od, ex od us, epis ode

Hol os (*entire*) cat hol ic, holo-caust.

Hudor (*water*) hydr-ant, hydro statics hydro meter, hydro gen, dropsy, hydro phobia

Idi-os (*peculiar*) idi ot, idi-om, idi osyncrasy

Is os (*equal*) is osceles, iso-thermal

Kentr-on (*point*) centre, centr-al, ec-centr ic, centri fugal

Klimax (*ladder*) climax, climac teric

Kosm os (*the world*) cosm etic cosmo polite cosmo graphy cosmo gony

Krat-os (*power*) demo crat, demo cra-cy, aristo crat

Krit es (*a judge*) **cris** is (*judgment*) hypo cris y, crisis, hypo crite, crit-ic, crit-icise

Krupt o, **kruph** (*to hide*) crypt, apo cryph-a

Kukl os (*a circle*) en cyclo pedia, cycle, bi cycle, by cycl ist

Leg o, **lect** (*speak*), **log** os (*word*) dia logue pro logue, dia lect, lex icon, log ic, antho log y, geo log y, ec lect ic, dia lect ic

Leip o **leips** (*to fail*) ec lipse, el lipse, el lipt-ical

Lith-os (*a stone*) mono lith, litho graph

Lus is (*a loosening*) ana lys is, ana lyse, para lys is, (hence pals y).

Metr on (*measure*) baro meter, geo metry, metre

Naus (*ship*) naus-ea naut ical

Ne os (*new*) neo phy te, neo logy, neo Latin

Neur on (*nerve*) neur-algia

Nom os (*law*) astro nom y, eco nom y, gastro nom y

Od e (*a song*) mon-od y, ep-ode, pros-od y par od y

Oik os (*a house*) eco-nomy, di-oc ese

Onom-a (*a name*) syn-onym, an-onym ous

Organ on (*an instrument*) organ, or gan ise, organ ic

Ops is (*sight*) **opt**-omai (*to see*) opt-ics, opt ical, syn opsis, syn optical

Orth os (*right*) ortho graphy

Path-os (*feeling*) sym path y, anti path y, path etic

Pais, paid os (*a boy*) ped agogue, ped ant, ped-antic

Phain-o, **phant** (*to appear*) phen omenon, phant-asm (hence phant-om), phant-asy (hence fan cy), phase

Phem i (*to speak*) pro phet, pro phes-y, blas-pheme, eu phem ism.

Phil-os (*friend*) philo sopher, Indo-philus (friend of India) Russo phile (friendly to Russians), phil anthropy

Phon-e (*voice*) phon etic, sym phon y

Phus is (*nature*) phys ic, phys ics, meta phys ics, phys ical neo phyte

Poi eo, **poiet** (*to make*) poet, poet ry, poes y, po em onomato-poei a

Pol eo (*to sell*) mono-pol y, mono pol ist, biblio-pole

Pol is (*a city or state*) pol ice, pol itics cosmo pol ite

Pous, **pod** os (*foot*) anti pod es, tri pod, poly pus

Prass-o, **prakt** (*to do*), **pragm** a (*a deed*) pract ise, pract ice, pragm atical

Prot os (*first*) proto type, proto martyr

Psuch e (*soul or life*) me tem psych osis, psych ical, psych ology

Scop eo (*to see*) scope tele scope, micro scope, epi scop al, bishop

Soph os (*wise*) soph ism, soph ist, philo-soph-er, philo soph y

Sphair-e (*a ball*) sphere, hemi-sphere, spher ical

Stas is (*standing*) ec stasy, apo-stasy, sy-stem.

Stell o (*to send*) apo-stle, epi-stle, epi stol ary, apo-stol ic

Stroph-e (*a turning*) apo-stroph-e, cata stroph e

Takt-o (*manage*) tact, tact-ics, syn-tax.

Techn e (*an art*) techn ical, pyro techn ics

Tele (*far off*) tele scope, tele gram

The-os (*God*) theo sophy theo logy, the ist, pan the ist, poly the ist, a the ist, mono the ist.

Thes is, **them**-a (*a placing*) syn the sis, the me hypo thesis, hy po-thet ical

Tom e (*a cutting*) a tom, tome, ana tom y

Ton os (*a note, a stretching*) ton ic, mono tone mono ton ous, tone

Top-os (*place*) top-ic topo graphy

Trop-e (*a turning*) trop ic, trop ics, helio trope.

Tup os (*stamp*) type, typ ical, typ-ify, anti type, stereo type

Zo on (*animal*) zo diac, zoo phyte, zoo logy

PART V.—FIGURES OF SPEECH, POETIC DICTION, PROSODY

CHAPTER XXVIII.—FIGURES OF SPEECH

492 A Figure of Speech (or of Rhetoric, as it is sometimes called) is a deviation from the ordinary use of words, with a view to increasing their effect.

Thus, we can say, "There are six *pillars* to the verandah of this house." Here the word *pillars* is used in its ordinary or literal sense.

Again, we can say, "That man is a *pillar* of the state."

Here *pillar* is used in a figurative or non-literal sense and signifies "support."

493 Simile.—A Simile consists in giving *formal* expression to the likeness between two different objects or events.

The formality peculiar to a Simile consists in using some word or words for drawing attention to the likeness. The words commonly used for this purpose are *as*, *as—so*, *like*.

Errors, *like* straws, upon the surface flow;
He that would search for pearls must dive below.—*Dryden.*
True ease in writing comes from art, not chance,
As those move easiest who have learnt to dance.—*Pope.*
And *as a hare*, whom hounds and horns pursue,
Pants to the place from whence at first she flew,
So I had hopes, my long vexations past,
Here to return, and die at home at last.—*Goldsmith.*

494 Metaphor.—An *informal* or implied Simile.

(*a*) *Nouns.*—

Our eldest son is the ***star*** (brightest member) of the family.
He is the ***vulture*** (plunderer) of the province.
He is now in the ***sunset*** (decline) of his days.
His rash policy let loose the ***hounds*** of war.
Hold fast to the ***anchor*** of faith, hope, and charity.
The news you bring is a ***dagger*** to my heart.
We must be guided by the ***light*** of Nature.
The wish is ***father*** to the thought.

A *ray* of hope, a *shade* of doubt, a *flash* of wit, an *outburst* of temper, the *fire* of passion, a *gleam* of delight, the *light* of knowledge, a *flight* of fancy, the *gloom* of despair, the *wreck* of his hopes, the *spur* of ambition, the *torments* of jealousy, the *reins* of office

(*b*) *Adjectives* —

A *golden* harvest, a *golden* opportunity, a *golden* sunset, *golden* silence, a *golden* rainfall

Iron courage, *iron* firmness, *brazen* impudence, a *stony* heart, a *rosy* complexion, a *lame* excuse, *snowy* locks

A *fiery* temper, *fiery* speech, *burning* passion an *angry* sore, a *piercing* wind, a *brilliant* piece of eloquence, a *stormy* discussion, a *dead* silence, a *crystal* stream, a *transparent* falsehood

(*c*) *Verbs* —

A new thought has suddenly *struck* me
The town was *stormed* after a long siege
He was fond of *blowing* his own *trumpet* (praising himself)
He *swam* bravely against the *stream* of popular applause
Canst thou not minister to a mind diseased,
Pluck from the memory a *rooted* sorrow ?—*Shakspeare*

495 *Personal Metaphors*—A metaphor is said to be personal, when it speaks of inanimate objects as if they were living persons

(1) Personal epithets applied to impersonal nouns —

A *treacherous* calm, a *sullen* sky, a *frowning* rock, *pitiless* cold, *cruel* heat, a *learned* age, the *thirsty* ground, a *virgin* soil

(2) Personal nouns in connection with impersonal ones —

The *childhood* of the world, the *anger* of the tempest, the *deceitfulness* of riches wine is a *mocker*

(3) Personal verbs used as predicates to impersonal subjects —

Everything *smiled* on him

Weary wave and *dying* blast
Sob and *moan* along the shore,
And all is peace at last

496 *Sustained Metaphors*—Sometimes a metaphor is sustained or prolonged through a series of images, all bearing upon some central point of resemblance —

Let us (since life can little else supply
But just to look about us and to die)
Expatiate free o'er all the scene of man,
A mighty *maze*, but not without a *plan*,
A *wild*, where *weeds and flowers* promiscuous *shoot*,
A *garden* tempting with forbidden *fruit*,

Together let us beat the ample *field*,
Try what the *open*, what the *covert* yield,
The *latent tracks*, the *giddy heights* explore
Of those who blindly creep or sightless soar —*Pope*

497 *Confused Metaphors*—Sometimes we find two or more metaphors coming close together in the same sentence This is a defect in composition

(1) I *bridle* in my struggling muse with pain,
That longs to *launch* into a bolder *strain* —*Addison*

Here, in the first line the poet compares his muse to a horse, and in the second line to a ship and to a musical instrument —three ideas confused together in a couple of lines

(2) There is not a single view of human nature, which is not sufficient to *extinguish* the *seeds* of pride —*Addison*

Here the writer confuses the idea of extinguishing a flame with that of picking seeds out of the ground

498 *Constant or Decayed Metaphors*—Some metaphors have become so well established in popular use, that their metaphorical character is no longer noticed

Thus we say - To *employ* means, to *contract* habits, to *carry* a matter to extremes, to *cast* one's eye upon a thing, to *prosecute* studies, to *pass over* in silence to *pocket* an insult, to *pick* a quarrel, to *curry* favour, to *harbour* malice, to *cultivate* an acquaintance, to *indulge* in hopes, to *strike* the tents, to *strike* a bargain, to *catch* a cold or fever, to *play* the fool, etc His efforts were *crowned* with success He *triumphed* over every difficulty He *stuck* to his point He was *overwhelmed* with grief He *plunged* into business

499 Fable, Parable, Allegory—These are the same at bottom An Allegory is a series of metaphors or symbols continued *throughout an entire story* so as to represent or describe one series of facts by another series that is analogous to it in its main features

In most cases the object of such a story is to exemplify and enforce some moral truth

Thus the Parable of the Good Samaritan (St Luke's Gospel, chapter x 30 37) was intended to give an answer to the question — "Who is my neighbour"?

The Parable of the Ewe Lamb, which Nathan the Prophet communicated to king David (Old Testament, II Sam xii) was intended to bring the king to a sense of his guilt by relating to him a parallel case

The Fables of classical literature, in which birds and beasts are made to think, speak, and act like men, all teach some moral The Fable of the Old Man, his Sons,

and the Ass (for example) shows the folly of attempting to please every one. The Fable of the Bundle of Sticks, which the young men could not break so long as they remained tied together, shows the power and value of union.

In English literature the *Pilgrim's Progress*, by Bunyan, is one prolonged allegory, representing by the story of a pilgrim the difficulties and struggles through which the Christian must pass before he can finally reach the land of promise

The following may be quoted as an example of a short allegory —

> The days of his youth rose up before him in a vision, and he recalled the solemn moment when his father had placed him at the entrance of two roads, one leading into a peaceful, sunny land, covered with a plentiful harvest, and resounding with soft, sweet songs, the other leading the wanderer into a deep dark cave, whence there was no issue, where poison flowed instead of water, and where serpents hissed and crawled —*Jean Paul Richter*

500 Personification —By this figure we ascribe intelligence and personality to inanimate things (see § 45) —

> But yonder comes the powerful *king* of day,
> *Rejoicing* in the east The lessening cloud,
> The kindling azure, and the mountain's brow
> Illumed with fluid gold, *his near approach*
> Betoken glad - *Thomson*

A lower and less marked kind of personification is seen in such phrases as the following -The *smiling* morn the *sullen* sky, the *frowning* rock, the *furious* wave, the *angry* ocean, the *prattling* brook, the *dimpling* waves, the *blushing* rose, the *laughing* harvest, the *raving* tempest, a *happy* period a *learned* age, the *thirsty* ground, a *melancholy* disaster, the *childhood* of the world, the *remorseless* heat, the *pitiless* cold, an *inexorable* law

Note 1 —Such expressions as the above are examples of the Personal Metaphor described in § 495 for a Personal Metaphor necessarily involves some kind of Personification

Note 2 —On the genders ascribed to personified things, see § 56

501 **Met'-on-ym'-y**, or the substitution of the thing named for the thing meant (The prefix "*meta*" means substitution, see page 368)

(*a*) *The sign for the thing signified* --

> He succeeded to the *crown* = the monarchy
> He is too fond of *red tape* = official routine

From the *cradle* to the *grave* = from childhood to death
Leather (= shoe-making) pays better than learning
Gray hairs (= old age or old men) should be respected

(*b*) *The instrument for the agent* —

The *crown* would not yield to the *mitre* (The king would not yield to the priest.)
Give every man thine *ear*, but few thy *voice* = Pay heed to what every man says, but say little yourself
The *pen* is stronger than the *sword* = Those who use the pen have more influence than those who use the sword

(*c*) *The container for the thing contained* —

He drank the *cup* = the contents of the cup
He is too fond of the *bottle* = the liquor contained in the bottle
The conquerors smote the *city* = the inhabitants of the city
The *kettle* (= the water in the kettle) boils

(*d*) *An effect for a cause* —

I have never read *Homer* = the works of Homer
May a favourable *speed* ruffle the mirrored mast of the ship. (Here *speed* is put for *wind*.)—*Tennyson*

502 Syn-ec'-do-che, or "the understanding of one thing by means of another" This figure usually consists in changing one noun for another of kindred meaning

(*a*) *A part or species substituted for a whole or genus* —

He manages to earn his *bread* = the necessaries of life
All *hands* at work, the royal work grows warm —*Dryden*
A fleet of fifty *sail* = fifty ships

(*b*) *A whole or genus substituted for a part or species* —

He is a poor *creature* (that is, man)
In the same way *vessel* is used for ship, a *measure* is used for a dance or for poetry, the smiling *year* for the smiling season or spring, the Christian *world* for the Christian Church as a whole

(*c*) *An individual substituted for a class* Here a Proper noun is used as a Common noun (see § 36) —

He is the *Nestor* (the oldest man) of his service
He is the *Newton* (the greatest astronomer) of this century
A *Daniel* (a very wise judge) come to judgment —*Shakspeare*

(*d*) *The Concrete substituted for the Abstract* Here a Common noun denoting a person is used in an Abstract sense (see § 357) —

There is a mixture of *the tiger* and *the ape* in the character of a Frenchman —*Voltaire*

I do the most that friendship can,
I hate *the Viceroy*, love *the man*.—*Swift*.

An English muse is touched with generous woe,
And in the unhappy man forgets *the foe* —*Addison*

(*e*) *The Abstract substituted for the Concrete* Here an Abstract noun is used as a Common noun (see § 43) —

All *the rank* and *fashion* came out to see the sight
The *authorities* put an end to the tumult
The people's *prayer*, the glad diviner's *theme*,
The young men's *vision*, and the old men's *dream* —*Dryden*.

The same figure appears in such phrases as — His Majesty for "king," her ladyship for "lady," his lordship for "lord," His Excellency for a governor or viceroy, His Holiness for "Pope," His Grace for an archbishop

(*f*) *The material substituted for the thing made* Here a Material noun is used as a Common noun (see § 41) —

A foeman worthy of his *steel* = his sword
The *marble* speaks, that is, the statue made of marble
He was buried under this *stone* = this tablet made of stone

503 Transferred epithets —The epithet or qualifying adjective is sometimes transferred from a person to a thing —

The ploughman homeward plods his *weary* way
He lay all night on his *sleepless* pillow
He closed his *busy* life at the age of seventy six
The prisoner was placed in the *condemned* cell
He was engaged in a *dishonest* calling

Such phrases are common - A *virtuous* indignation, a *happy* thought, an *unlucky* remark, a *foolish* observation, a *mortal* wound, a *learned* book

Note —This is the same figure of speech as the weaker form of Personification referred to in § 500

504 Eu-phem ism —By this figure we speak in gentle and favourable terms of some person, object, or event, which is ordinarily seen in a less pleasing light —

A partial historian, in speaking of Henry VIII, the second of the Tudors, who divorced two and beheaded two more of the six wives to whom he was married in succession, describes him as having been "*singularly unfortunate in all his relations with women*"

A sympathetic writer, alluding to the madness of Cowper, describes the event by a series of euphemistic metaphors —

Discord fell on the music of his soul the sweet sounds and wandering lights departed from him, yet he wore no less a loving face, although he was so broken hearted

505 Climax —This is a Greek word signifying a ladder By the figure so-called the sense rises by succes-

sive steps to what is more and more important and impressive —

It is an *outrage* to *bind* a Roman citizen, to *scourge* him is an *atrocious crime*, to *put him to death* is almost a *parricide*, but to *crucify* him, what shall I call it?

Anticlimax or **Bathos** —This is the opposite to Climax, and signifies a ludicrous descent from the higher to the lower —

Here, thou great Anna! whom three realms obey,
Dost sometimes counsel take—and sometimes *tea* —*Pope*

A man so various, that he seemed to be
Not one, but all mankind's epitome,
Who in the course of one revolving moon
Was lawyer, statesman, *fiddler*, and *buffoon*.—*Dryden*

506 Interrogation —This is a rhetorical mode of affirming or denying something more strongly and emphatically than could be done in ordinary language —

Can the Ethiopian change his skin, or the leopard his spots?—*Old Testament*

Oh! was there ever such a knight
In friendship, or in war,
As our sovereign Lord, King Henry,
The soldier of Navarre?—*Macaulay*

Who is here so base that would be a bondman? Who is here so rude that would not be a Roman? Who is here so vile that will not love his country?—*Shakspeare*

507 Hyper'-bo-le' or Exaggeration —By this figure things are represented as greater or less, better or worse, than they really are Such language (if appropriate at all) is more suited to poetry than to prose —

David in his lament for Saul and Jonathan says —"They were *swifter than eagles*, and *stronger than lions*"—*Old Testament*

The terror of a scout at the sudden appearance of the enemy is thus described in Ossian —"I saw their chief tall as *a rock of ice* his spear, *the blasted fir*, his shield, *the rising moon*, he sat on the shore *like a cloud of mist on the hill*"—*Ossian*

The sky *shrunk upward* with unusual dread,
And trembling Tiber *dived beneath his bed* —*Dryden*

508 Exclamation or the strong expression of feeling —

O what a fall was there my countrymen!
Then I and you and all of us fell down,
Whilst bloody treason flourished over us —*Shakspeare*

509 An-ti-the-sis, or "the setting of one thing against

another"—This figure consists in an *explicit* statement of an *implied* contrast —

A bird in the *hand* is worth two in the *bush*.—*Proverb*

He can *bribe*, but he cannot *seduce*, he can *buy*, but he cannot *gain*, he can *lie*, but he cannot *deceive*

A *friend* exaggerates a man's *virtues*, an *enemy* his *crimes*

Between fame and true honour there is much difference, the former is *a blind* and *noisy applause*, the latter is an *internal and more silent homage*

As Cæsar loved me, I weep for him, as he was fortunate, I rejoice at it, as he was valiant, I honour him, but as he was ambitious, I slew him There is tears for his love, joy for his fortune, honour for his valour, and death for his ambition —*Shakspeare*

> Though deep, yet clear though gentle, yet not dull,
> Strong without rage, without o erflowing full —*Denham*

510 Epigram —This figure is closely allied to Antithesis It couples words which *apparently* contradict each other The language of epigram is remarkable for its brevity

The *child* is *father* to the man —*Proverb*

By *merit* raised to that *bad* eminence —*Milton*

Language is the art of *concealing* thought —*Rochefoucauld*

Natural beauty, when *unadorned*, is *adorned* the most —*Thomson*

Conspicuous by its *absence* —*Disraeli*

In the midst of *life* we are in *death* —*Proverb*

He lived a life of *active idleness*

'Tis all thy *business*, *business* how to shun —*Pope*

Art lies in concealing *art* —*Latin Proverb*

Fame is the spur that the clear spirit doth raise
(That last *infirmity* of *noble* minds)
To scorn delights and live laborious days —*Milton*

Ambition first sprung from your blest abodes,
The *glorious fault* of angels and of gods —*Pope*

He who lives *without folly* is not so *wise* as he imagines —*Proverb*

Affected *simplicity* is refined *artfulness* —*Proverb*

Defend me from my *friends*

Silence is sometimes more *eloquent* than words

Owe no man anything but to love one another —*New Testament*

Murder, though it have no *tongue*, will yet *speak*

A rule more *honoured* in the *breach* than in the observance

Great wits will sometimes *gloriously offend*,
And *rise* to *faults* which critics dare not mend —*Pope*

The following phrases, all of common occurrence, can be classed under the heading of epigrammatic —*White* lie, *solemn* trifling, a *silent* rebuke, *masterly* inactivity, an *open* secret, a *tedious* amusement, a *pious* fraud, *noble* revenge, *expressive* silence, *shabby* genteel

511 Pun.—This consists in a play on the various meanings of a word, and is seldom used except for jest:—

> Can the Ethiopian change his skin, or the leopard its spots?
> Yes; the leopard changes its spots, whenever it goes from one spot to another.

512 Irony, or Sarcasm.—This figure consists in making damaging remarks about some person or thing, in words, which, if they were taken literally, would imply commendation. It is expected, however, that their intended meaning will be understood from the sneering accent or manner of the speaker, or from the well-known character of the person or thing referred to:—

> An argument to prove that the abolition of Christianity may, as things now stand, be attended with some inconveniences, and perhaps not produce the many good effects proposed thereby.—*Swift*.
>
> When that the poor have cried, Cæsar hath wept:
> Ambition should be made of sterner stuff;
> Yet Brutus says he was ambitious,
> And Brutus is an *honourable* man.—*Shakspeare*.

513 Litotes, or the using of a negative to indicate a strong affirmative:—

> He is *no dullard* (=decidedly clever).
> A citizen of *no mean* (= a distinguished) city.

Note.—By this figure such words as "infamous," "unprofessional," "unchristian," all of which have merely negative prefixes, are used in a strongly affirmative sense. (See § 474, under "non.")

514 Apostrophe.—By this figure the speaker *addresses* some inanimate thing or some abstract idea as if it were a living person, or some absent person as if he were present.

It therefore includes Personification, besides possessing the peculiar property of *address*:—

> Hast thou a charm to stay the morning star
> In his steep course? so long he seems to pause
> On thy bold awful head, O Sovran Blanc!—*Coleridge*.
>
> How are the mighty fallen in the midst of the battle! O Jonathan, thou wast slain in the high places. I am distressed for thee, my brother Jonathan! very pleasant hast thou been to me; thy love to me was wonderful.—*Old Testament*.
>
> O Luxury! thou curst by heaven's decree,
> How ill exchanged are joys like these to thee!—*Goldsmith*.

515 Pros-o′-po-pæ′-ia.—By this figure the writer or speaker, in relating something past, or in describing some

anticipated future, employs the *present* tense instead of the *past* or *future*, and thus makes it appear as if the event were actually passing before his eyes Hence this figure is sometimes called Vision

(*a*) *Some anticipated future* —

I seem to behold this great city, the ornament of the earth and the capital of all nations, suddenly involved in one conflagration I see before me the slaughtered heaps of citizens lying unburied in the midst of the ruined country The furious countenance of Cethegus rises to my view, while with a savage joy he is triumphing in your miseries —*Cicero*

(*b*) *Some past event* —This is called the Historic Present (see § 374, *e*) —

The sack and carnage of Delhi lasted from three o'clock in the morning until three in the afternoon The streets echo with the shouts of brutal soldiery, and with the cries and shrieks of the inhabitants The atmosphere reeks with blood Houses are set on fire, and hundreds perish in the flames Husbands kill their wives, and then destroy themselves Women throw themselves into the wells Children are slaughtered without mercy, and infants are cut to pieces at their mothers' breasts —*Wheeler's India*

516 Alliteration —This consists in the repetition of the same letter or syllable at the beginning of two or more words —

By *a*pt *A*lliteration s *a*rtful *a*id —*Pope*
*Ru*in seize thee, *ru*thless king !—*Gray*
A *st*rong man *st*ruggling with the *st*orms of fate —*Addison*.
His *h*eavy *sh*otted *h*ammock *sh*roud —*Tennyson*
*Gl*ittering through the *gl*oomy *gl*ades —*Pope*
A *l*oad of *l*earning *l*umbering in his head —*Pope*

517 On-om'-a-to-pœ-ia —This is the name given to that artifice of language, by which the sound of the words is made to suggest or echo the sense —

(1) *Rend* with tre*mendous* sound your ears a*sunder*
With *gun*, *drum*, *trumpet*, *blunderbuss*, and *thunder*

Here the vowel sounds in the second line suggest the idea of a loud and thundering noise

(2) A needless Alexandrine ends the song,
Which like a wounded snake *drags its slow length* along

An Alexandrine is a line of twelve syllables The tedious length of the line suggests the slowness of a needless Alexandrine or the slow crawling of a wounded snake

(3) The tallest pines,
Though rooted deep as high, and sturdiest oaks
Bowed their stiff necks, loaded with stormy blasts,
Or *torn up sheer* —*Milton*

The stiffness of the third line suggests the stiffness with which the trees resisted the storm, while the lightness of the fourth suggests the suddenness with which a tree is torn up by the roots.

(4) When Ajax *strives some rock's vast weight* to throw,
The line too labours, and the words move slow —*Pope*

The labour of reading the first of these two lines suggests the labour with which a rock is hurled

(5) Eternal wrath
Burnt after them *to the bottomless pit* —*Milton*

Here the sudden drop of the accentuation at the close of the second line, where an accent is indispensable to the metre, suggests the sudden and precipitate fall of the rebellious angels from heaven to hell

518 Periphrasis, or **Circumlocution** —This consists in expressing some fact or idea in a roundabout way, instead of stating it at once Euphemism (see § 504) often takes the form of Periphrasis

The viewless couriers of the air = the winds —*Shakspeare.*
That statement of his was purely *an effort of imagination* = a fiction or falsehood
He resembled the animal that browses on thistles = an ass
His prominent feature (= his nose) was like an eagle's beak

519 Tautology, or **Pleonasm** —This consists in repeating the same fact or idea in different words Such redundancy is almost always a fault in composition, but is lawful, when it adds force, clearness, or balance to a sentence

I *rejoiced* at the *happy* sight
It is the *privilege* and *birthright* of every citizen in a free commonwealth to be allowed to have a voice in public affairs

CHAPTER XXIX —POETRY, PROSODY, AND METRE

§ 1 The Different Kinds of Poetry

520 Pastoral —This kind of poetry deals with anything that concerns the life of shepherds, herdsmen, and husbandmen Such poems are usually in the form of a dialogue or a monologue

Spenser's *Shepherd's Calendar* (A.D. 1552-1599) Pope's *Pastorals* (1688-1744) Collins's *Eclogues* (1721 1759) Shenstone's *Pastorals* (1714-1763)

521 Descriptive —This kind of poetry describes the seasons of the year, scenes of historical interest, cities, places, countries, etc, and gives expression to the thoughts suggested by the various scenes and objects as they arise Descriptive poetry does not usually narrate events If narrative is sometimes introduced, this is done by way of episode or for the sake of variety

Sidney's *Arcadia* (1554 1588) Goldsmith s *Traveller* and *Deserted Village* (1728 1774) Parnell s *Hermit* (1679 1718) Crabbe's *The Village* and other poems (1754 1832) Rogers *Italy* (1763 1855) Byron's *Childe Harold* (1788 1824)

522 Narrative —In this (as the name implies) narrative is the chief aim, and description is merely subsidiary Poems of this character may be roughly classified under three headings —

(*a*) **Epic** or **Heroic**, dealing with one great, complex action, in a lofty style, and in fulness of detail —

Milton s *Paradise Lost* (1608 1674) Dryden s *Æneid*, translated from Virgil (1631 1700) Pope s *Iliad* and *Odyssey*, translated from Homer Southey's *Joan of Arc*, *Roderick*, and other poems (1774 1843) Keats's *Endymion* and *Hyperion* (1795 1821)

(*b*) **Romance, Legend**, or **Tale**, a lighter and shorter kind of narrative poetry than the Epic —

Pope s *Rape of the Lock* (a kind of mock Epic) Thomson's *Castle of Indolence* Scott s *Lady of the Lake*, *Marmion*, and other poems (1771 1832) Moore s *Lalla Rookh* (1779 1852) Byron's *Siege of Corinth* and other poems Campbell's *Gertrude of Wyoming* Tennyson s *Idylls of the King* Macaulay's *Lays of Ancient Rome* Coleridge s *Ancient Mariner* (1772 1834)

(*c*) **Ballads** —This is the lightest and shortest form of narrative poetry It deals with short anecdotes, local legends, etc, and tells them in the simplest language and in a light metre —

Sidney's *Chevy Chase* Cowper s *John Gilpin* Wordsworth's *Lyrical Ballads* (1770 1850) Southey s *Ballads of the Rhine* Scott's *Border Minstrelsy*

523 Reflective —Poems of this character may be roughly classified under two headings —

(*a*) Longer poems, as below —

Young's *Night Thoughts* (1684 1765) Akenside's *Pleasures of Imagination* (1721 1770) Cowper's *Task*, *Table-talk*, *Conversa*

tion, *Retirement*, etc Johnson's *Vanity of Human Wishes* Campbell's *Pleasures of Hope* (1777 1844) Tennyson's *In Memoriam* Wordsworth's *Excursion* (1770-1850)

(*b*) Elegiac poems, always of a serious, and frequently of a plaintive, character —

Milton's *Lycidas* Gray's *Elegy written in a Country Churchyard* (1716 1771) Cowper's *Wreck of the Royal George*, and *Lines on Receipt of his Mother's Picture* Shelley's *Adonais* (1792 1822) Wolfe's *Burial of Sir John Moore* (1791-1823) Southey's *Holly Tree*

524 **Dramatic**, or the poetry of the stage —

Shakspeare's Plays, subdivided into Tragedies, Comedies, and Histories (1564 1616) Ben Jonson's Plays Addison's *Cato* (1672 1719) Goldsmith's *She Stoops to Conquer* Byron's *Sardanapalus*, *Manfred*, and other dramas Tennyson's *Becket*, etc

Under the head of dramatic we must include poems which have been written in the form of a drama, but were not intended to be acted —

Milton's *Comus* and *Samson Agonistes* Taylor's *Philip Van Artevelde*, and other poems George Eliot's *Spanish Gypsy*

525 **Lyrical** —Short poems written in a rapid and irregular metre, fit to be sung or recited Such poems are often called odes They are of a much higher order than "ballads," and may be either descriptive or narrative

Milton's *L'Allegro* and *Il Penseroso* Dryden's *Ode on Alexander's Feast* Pope's *Ode on St Cecilia's Day* Thomson's *Rule Britannia* Gray's *The Bard*, *The Progress of Poesy*, *On the Prospect of Eton* Collins's *Ode to Evening*, *Ode on the Passions* Cowper's *Ode on Queen Boadicea* Campbell's *Hohenlinden*, *The Battle of the Baltic* *Ye Mariners of England* Moore's *Irish Melodies* Keats's *Ode to a Nightingale*, *Ode to Autumn*, *On a Grecian Urn*, etc Shelley's *The Cloud*, *Ode to a Skylark*, etc Tennyson's *Ode on the Duke of Wellington*

526 **Didactic** —Instruction given in verse —

Dryden's *Hind and Panther* and *Religio Laici* Pope's *Essay on Criticism*, *Essay on Man*, *Moral Essays* Armstrong's *Art of Preserving Health* Somerville's *Chace* (1692 1742)

527 **Satire** —Censures the faults of individuals or communities The style may be jocose or serious

Butler's *Hudibras* (1612-1680). Dryden's *Absalom and Achithophel* Pope's *Dunciad*

§ 2. Prosody or the Laws of Metre

528 Prosody is that part of grammar which treats of the laws of metre or versification.

529 Versification depends upon two main factors —

(*a*) The accentuation of syllables

(*b*) The number of accented syllables to a line

530 A specific combination of accented and unaccented syllables is called a *foot* The number of syllables to a foot may be either two or three, but it cannot be less than two or more than three

This gives rise to four different kinds of feet—Iambus, Trochee, Anapæst, and Dactyl —

(*a*) An **Iambus** consists of one unaccented syllable followed by an accented one, as,

Ap pear′, be sides′, at tack′, sup ply′

(*b*) A **Trochee** consists of one accented syllable followed by an unaccented one, as,

Ho′ ly, up′ per, grand′ eur, fail′ ing

(*c*) An **Anapæst** consists of two unaccented syllables followed by an accented one, as,

Col on nade′, re ap pear′ on a hill′

(*d*) A **Dactyl** consists of one accented syllable, followed by two unaccented ones, as,

Mes′ sen ger, mer′ ri ly, prop′ er ty, in′ fa mous

531 To **scan** a line is to divide it into its several feet, and say *what kind* of feet they are and *how many* of them there are in the line

Note —A line consisting of a fixed number of feet may have a rhyming syllable at the end of them, but this additional syllable does not count as a separate foot.

Shep′ herds | all′ and | maid′ ens | fair,
'Fold′ your | flocks′ up, | for′ the | air
'Gins to | thick′ en, | and′ the | sun
His′ great | course′ has | near′ ly | run

Here we have four trochaic lines, each of which consists of three feet with a rhyming syllable at the end

532. In scanning a line two short syllables coming together are often pronounced as if they were one for the sake of the metre

Wing'd with | red light'- | ning and | impet' | *uous* rage.
Hovering | and blaz'- | ing with' | delu'- | sive light.
The mul'- | titud' | *inous* sea' | incarn' | adine
Slides in'- | effect' | *ual* down' | the snow' | y vale.

Sometimes, in order to reduce two syllables to one, a consonant or even a whole syllable is omitted Thus we have *e'en* for *even*, *ta'en* for *taken*, *e'er* for *ever*, *'gan* for *began*, *'tis* for *it is*, *'twas* for *it was*, *we'll* for *we will*, *o'er* for *over*, *neath* for *beneath*, *'twixt* for *betwixt*, etc

When two vowel sounds belonging to different words come together, they are often slurred over and pronounced as one

Impressed' | the efful' | gence of' | his glo' | *ry a*bides
By her' | ald's voice | explained, | the hol' | *low a*byss
Abom' | ina' | bl*e, u*nut' | tera' | bl*e, a*nd worse'
T*o i*nsult' | the poor' | or beau' | ty in' | distress
May I | express' | th*ee u*nblamed, | since God' | is light ?

Iambic Metre

533 The Iambic metre is the prevailing measure or metre in English poetry, and is more extensively used than any other

The number of Iambic feet in an Iambic line may vary from two to seven

534 *Two feet*, or four syllables —

(1) With rav' | ished ears'
The mon' | arch hears,
As sumes' | the God',
Af fects' | to nod',
And seems' to shake' the spheres' —*Dryden*
(2) In woods' | a rang'er,
To joy' | a strang'er

535 *Three feet*, or the trimeter, six syllables —

(1) Thy way', | not mine', | O Lord',
Howev' | er dark' | it be',
Lead me' | by thine' | own hand',
Choose out' | the path' | for me'
(2) Alive' | to ev' | ery feel' ing,
The wounds' | of sor' | row heal' ing

536 *Four feet*, or the tetrameter, eight syllables —

The way' | was long', | the night' | was cold',
The min' | strel was' | infirm' | and old',
The harp', | his sole' | remain' | ing joy',
Was car' | ried by' | an or' | phan boy' —*Scott*

Note —An Iambic trimeter may alternate with an Iambic tetrameter —

Confu' | sion, shame', | remorse' | despair',
At once' | his bos' | om swell',

The damps' | of death' | bedewed' | his brow',
He shook', | he groaned', | he fell'

537 *Five feet*, or the pentameter, ten syllables. This is the most dignified measure in English verse, and is much used in Epic and Dramatic poetry.

It may be used either with rhyme or in blank (that is, unrhymed) verse.

(*a*) **With rhyme.**

The rhythmical form in which this metre has been most used is the celebrated Heroic couplet:—

There was' | a time', | when Æt' | na's si | lent fire'
Slept un' | perceived', | the moun' | tain yet' | entire',
When con' | scious of' | no dan | ger from' | below'
She topped' | a cloud' | capt pyr' | amid' | of snow'. —*Cowper.*

In Elegiac poetry the rhyming lines of the Iambic pentameter often occur alternately:—

The cur' | few tolls' | the knell' | of part' | ing day',
The low' | ing herd' | winds slow' | ly o'er | the lea',
The plough | man home' | ward plods' | his wear' | y way'
And leaves' | the world | to dark' | ness and' | to me'.
—*Gray's Elegy.*

(*b*) **In blank verse.**

Now stir' | the fire' | and close' | the shut' | ters fast
Let fall' | the cur' | tains, wheel' | the so' | fa round',
And while' | the bub' | bling and' | loud hiss' | ing urn'
Throws up | a steam' | y col | umn, and' | the cups'
That cheer' | but not | ine' | briate wait' | on each',
So let' | us wel' | come peace' | ful eve | ning in'. —*Cowper.*

Note.—The blank verse pentameter is the metre of Milton's *Paradise Lost* and of all the best dramatic poetry.

538 *Six feet*, or the hexameter, twelve syllables. This is never seen in the form of blank verse.

This kind of line is often seen as the last line of an Heroic triplet, or of a Spenserian stanza (for which see § 547). Such a line is called an "Alexandrine."

The sa' | cred lake' | of Triv' | ia from' | afar,
The Ve' | line foun' | tains and' | sulphur' | eous Nar',
Shake at' | the bale' | ful blast', | the sig' | nal of' | the war.

539 *Seven feet*, or the Heptameter, fourteen syllables:—

Attend' | all ye' | who wish' | to hear' | our no'- | ble Eng' | land's praise,
I sing' | of the' | thrice fa'- | mous deeds' | she wrought' | in an'- | cient days,

When that' | great fleet' | invin' | cible' | against' | her bore' | in vain
The rich' | est spoils' | of Mex' | ico', | the stout' | est hearts' | of Spain

This metre, however, can be and often is subdivided into stanzas like the following, in which an Iambic line of four feet is followed alternately by another of three feet. This is much used in Ballad poetry

Attend' | all ye' | who wish' | to hear'
Our no' | ble Eng' | land's praise,
I sing' | of the' | thrice fa' | mous deeds'
She wrought' | in an' | cient days,
When that' | great fleet' | invin' | cible'
Against' | her bore' | in vain
The rich' | est spoils' | of Mex' | ico',
The stout' | est hearts' | of Spain

540 The Iambic metre is not always perfectly carried out, that is, the alternation of an unaccented syllable with an accented one is not regularly observed

(*a*) The first foot is often a Trochee instead of an Iambus —

Daughter | of God' | and man', | accom' | plished Eve

(*b*) Sometimes two long or accented syllables come together instead of a short and long Such a foot is called a *Spondee*, but this is not one of the feet recognised in English poetry It is rather a deviation from the Iambus or Trochee

(*c*) Sometimes the first foot of an Iambic line consists of a monosyllable, in contravention of the rule stated in § 530, that a foot cannot have less than two syllables —

Stay', | the king' | hath thrown' | his war' | der down —*Shakspeare*

Weigh' | the ves' | sel up'
Once dread' | ed by' | our foes,
And min' | gle with' | our cup
The tear | that Eng' | land owes —*Cowper*

The Trochaic Metre

541 In a Trochaic line the *first*, *third*, and other *odd* syllables are accented The line (as in the Iambic metre) may be of various lengths

(*a*) *One foot*, followed by a rhyming syllable —

Dread' ful | gleams,
Dis' mal | screams,

Fires' that | glow,
Shrieks' of | woe,
Sul' len | moans,
Hol' low | groans —*Pope*

(*b*) *Two feet*, the last of which rhymes with the line following —

Rich' the | treas' ure,
Sweet' the | plea' sure —*Dryden*

(*c*) *Three feet* —This kind of Trochaic line is seen in two different forms Either there is a rhyming syllable that comes after the third foot or the third foot itself rhymes with the third Trochee in the line following

First form. This is the most common form of Trochaic verse —

When' the | Brit' ish | war' rior | queen,
Bleed' ing | from' the | Ro' man | rods,
Sought' with | an' xi | dig ni | men
Coun'sel | of' her | coun' try's | gods

Second form —

Now' they | stood' con | found' ed,
While' the | bat' tle | sound' ed

(*d*) *Four feet* —Four feet, the last of which rhymes with the line following This is uncommon

May', thou | month' of | ro'-sy | beau' ty,
Month' when | pleas' ure | is' a | du' ty,
Month' of | bees' and | month' of | flow ers,
Month' of | blos som | la den | bow' ers

A four-footed Trochaic line like the above can be alternated with a three footed Trochaic line ending in a rhyming syllable This kind of stanza is not at all uncommon

Tell' me | not' in | mourn ful | num' bers
Life' is | but' an | emp ty | dream,
For' the | soul is | dead' that | slum' bers,
And' things | are' not | what' they | seem —*Longfellow*

(*e*) *Five feet* —This is uncommon

All' that | walk' on | foot' or | ride' in | char' iots,
All' that | dwell' in | pal' a | ces' or | gar' rets

(*f*) *Six feet* —This too is uncommon

On' a | moun' tain | stretched' be | neath' a | hoar' y | wil' low
Lay' a | shep' herd | swain' and | viewed' the | rol' ling | bil' low

The Anapæstic Metre

542 In an Anapæstic line the accent falls on the third, sixth, and ninth syllables The first two syllables, and

those coming between the third and sixth or between the sixth and ninth are unaccented.

(*a*) *One foot*, three syllables Very uncommon.

'Tis in vain'
They complain'

(*b*) *Two feet*, six syllables Not common

(1) All our la' | bours must fail',
If the wick' | ed prevail
(2) In my rage' | shall be seen'
The revenge' | of a queen'
(3) In the cave' | of the moun' tain
By the side' | of the foun' tain

(*c*) *Three feet*, nine syllables This is the most common form of anapæstic verse

I am mon' | arch of all' | I survey',
My right' | there is none' | to dispute',
From the cen' | tre all round' | to the sea'
I am lord' | of the bird' | and the brute' —*Cowper*

Note —Observe that in the first foot of the second line an Iambus ("my right") has been given for an Anapæst This is very common in the anapæstic metre

In the following stanza an Iambus is substituted for an Anapæst in three lines out of four —

How fleet' | is the glance' | of the mind
Com pared' | with the speed' | of its flight' !
The tem' | pest itself' | lags be hind'
And the swift' | winged ar' | rows of light'

(*d*) *Four feet*, twelve syllables

The Assyr' | ian came down' | like a wolf' | on the fold',
And his co' | horts were gleam' | ing in pur' | ple and gold',
And the sheen' | of their spears' | was like stars' | on the sea',
When the blue' | wave rolls night' | ly on deep' | Galilee '

Note —In the four footed or tetrameter verse, an Iambic foot is often substituted for an Anapæst —

Not a drum' | was heard', | not a fu' | neral note',
As his corpse' | to the ram' | parts we hur 'ried ,
Not a sol' | dier discharged' | his fare' | well shot'
O'er the grave' | where our he' | ro we bur' ied

Here the second foot of the first line, and the third and fourth feet of the third line, are all Iambics

Observe, too, that in the above stanza a trimeter line alternates with a tetrameter

The Dactylic Metre

543 This is very uncommon. A Dactyl is the converse of an Anapæst, hence in a dactylic line the first and fourth syllables are accented

Mer′ rily | mer′ rily | shall′ I live | now
Un′-der the | blos′ som that | hangs′ on the | bough.
—*Shakespeare*

§ 3 *Special Metres*

544 The Heroic Couplet.—In this metre the lines rhyme together in pairs, and each line consists of five Iambic feet (see example, quoted in § 537, *a*)

This is called "Heroic" because it has been much used in translating Epic or Heroic poetry, as in Dryden's translation of Virgil, and Pope's translation of Homer

545 The Sonnet—Each line consists of five Iambic feet, and the number of lines to a sonnet is fourteen The last two lines are always a couplet, the other twelve rhyme alternately or in couplets The same rhyme may be repeated three or four times

The subject of a sonnet is usually either reflective or amatory

546 Ottava Rima—This is a stanza consisting of eight lines, and was borrowed from Italy It begins with six Heroic couplets which rhyme three and three alternately, and ends with a couplet

'Tis sweet to hear the watch dog's honest bark
  Bay deep mouthed welcome as we near our home,
'Tis sweet to know there is an eye will mark
  Our coming, and look brighter when we come,
'Tis sweet to be awakened by the lark,
  Or lulled by falling waters sweet the hum
Of bees, the voice of girls, the song of birds,
The lisp of children and their earliest words —*Byron*

547 The Spenserian Stanza—This is called Spenserian from its originator, the poet Spenser, who used it in composing his great allegorical poem *The Faery Queen* It has since come into very general use

Roll on′, | thou deep′ | and dark′ | blue O′ | cean, roll,
  Ten thou′- | sand fleets′ | sweep o′ | ver thee′ | in vain
Man marks′ | the earth′ | with ru′ | in, his′ | control
  Stops with′ | the shore′, | upon′ | the wa′ | tery main
  The wrecks′ | are all′ | thy deed, | nor doth′ | remain
A shad′- | ow of′ | man's rav′ | age save′ | his own,
  When for′ | a mo′ | ment like′ | a drop′ | of rain
  He sinks′ | into′ | thy depths′ | with bub′ | bling groan,
Without′ | a grave′, | unknelled′, | uncof′ | fined, and′ | unknown
—*Byron*

The student will see (*a*) that the first eight lines are all pentameters or lines in five Iambic feet, (*b*) that the first and third lines rhyme together, then the second, fourth, fifth, and seventh, then the sixth, eighth, and ninth, and (*c*) that the ninth line is an Alexandrine, or line consisting of six Iambic feet

CHAPTER XXX —POETIC DICTION

548 Poetry is distinguished from prose not only by metre, but by diction or the choice of words and constructions

549 Metre, without poetical diction, does not make poetry The following is a specimen of the most prosaic language put together in the most perfect form of metre and rhyme —

> Something had happened wrong about a bill,
> Which was not drawn with sound commercial skill,
> So, to amend it, I was told to go
> And seek the firm of Clutterbuck and Co —*Crabbe*

550 The chief peculiarities of poetic as distinct from prose diction are shown below —

I **The use of archaic or less common words** —This arises from the fact that poetry pays little or no attention to changes in the colloquial or spoken language, and hence it retains words, which were used by former poets, after they have gone out of common use

Nouns —Poetry generally uses *swine* for *pigs*, *swain* for *peasant* or *husbandman*, *billow* for *wave*, *main* for *sea* or *ocean*, *maid* or *damsel* for *girl*, *nuptials* for *marriage*, *vale* for *valley*, *steed* or *charger* for *horse*, *ire* for *anger*, *woe* for *sorrow* or *misery*, *thrall* for *distress*, *might* for *strength*, *marge* for *margin*, *spouse* for *wife*, *numbers* for *verse* or *metre*, *bower* for *summer house*, *quest* for *search*, *guile* for *deceit*, *bliss* for *happiness*, *bane* for *poison* or *mischief*, *ken* for *perception*, *troth* for *veracity* or *faithfulness*, *chanticleer* for *cock*, *combat* for *battle*, *goblet* for *cup*, *aught* for *anything*, *naught* for *nothing*, *eve* for *evening*, *meed* for *reward*, *morn* for *morning*, *mead* for *meadows*, *realm* for *kingdom*, *scribe* for *writer*, *victor* for *conqueror*, *foe* or *foeman* for *enemy*, *yoeman* for *peasant* or *husbandman*, *tilth* for *tillage* or *agriculture*, etc

Adjectives —Poetry often uses *lone* or *lonesome* for *lonely*, *drear* for *dreary*, *dread* for *dreadful*, *lovesome* for *lovely*, *intrepid* or *dauntless* for *brave*, *yon* for *yonder*, *rapt* for *delighted*, *hallowed* for *holy*, *baleful* for *pernicious*, *doleful* for *sorrowful*, *artless* for

innocent; *hapless* for *unlucky*, *lowly* for *low* or *humble*, *forlorn* for *distressed*, *sylvan* for *woody*, *sequestered* for *retired*, *joyless* for *unhappy*, *jocund* for *merry*, *aweary* for *weary*, *stilly* for *still*, *reckless* for *careless*, *bootless* for *unprofitable*, *ingrate* for *ungrateful*, *recreant* for *unfaithful*, *mute* for *silent*, *darksome* for *dark*, *quenchless* for *inextinguishable*, *fond* for *foolish*, *wrathful* for *angry*, *dire* for *dreadful*, etc.

Adverbs.—Poetry often uses *scarce* for *scarcely*, *haply* for *perhaps*, *sore* for *sorely*, *oft* for *often*, *erst* or *whilom* for *formerly*, *of yore* or *of old* for *in ancient times*, *scantly* for *scantily*, *anon* for *at once*, *amain* for *violently* or *suddenly*, *hard by* for *close* or *very near*, *full* for *very*, as in "full many a gem," etc., *right* for *very*, or *precisely*, as in "right against the eastern gate."

Verbs.—Poetry often uses *quit* for *leave*, *wax* for *grow*, *quoth* for *said*, *list* for *listen*, *sojourn* for *lodge* or *dwell*, *trow* for *believe*, *tarry* for *remain* or *stay*, *hearken* for *hear* or *attend*, *obscure* for *darken*, *fare* for *walk*, *vanquish* for *conquer*, *quaff* for *drink luxuriously*, *cleave* for *stick*, *hie* or *speed* for *hasten*, *smite* for *hit* or *strike*. *Est* and *eth* are still commonly used for the second and third persons respectively. The older or Strong forms of past tenses are used in preference to the modern or Weak ones, as *wrought* for *worked*, *bade* for *bid*, *begat* for *begot*, *clove* for *cleft*, *crew* for *crowed*, *drave* for *drove*, *throve* for *thrived*, *clomb* for *climbed*, *stove* for *staved*, *clad* for *clothed*. Chap. v., § 12.

Conjunctions.—Poetry often uses *what though* or *albeit* for *although*, *ere* or *or ere* for *before*, *natheless* for *nevertheless*, *an if* for *if*.

II. **Omission of various Parts of Speech.**—In the examples given below the omitted word is shown in brackets; such omissions are made chiefly for the sake of metre.

The brink of (the) haunted stream.	*Article.*
Creeping like (a) snail unwillingly to school.	
(He) who steals my purse steals trash.	*Noun or Pronoun.*
Lives there (the man) who loves his pain?	
For is there aught in sleep (that) can charm the wise?	*Relative as Subject to a Verb.*
'Tis distance (that) lends enchantment to the view.	
Mean though I am, (I am) not wholly so.	*Finite Verb.*
Happy (is) the man, whose wish and care, etc.	
To whom thus Adam (spoke).	
Soldier rest, thy warfare (being) o'er, etc.	*Participle.*
My ramble (being) ended, I returned.	
He knew himself (how) to sing.	*Conjunction.*
Permit (that) I marshal thee the way.	
He mourned (for) no recreant friend.	*Preposition.*
Through the dear might of Him that walked (on) the waves.	
Despair and anguish fled (from) the struggling soul.	

In poetry a verb is often used alone, where in prose it would have an auxiliary verb attached to it

> Long *die* thy happy days before thy death !
> (*May* thy happy days die, etc)
> This day *be* bread and peace my lot !
> (May peace and bread be, etc)
> *Gives* not the hawthorn bush as sweet a shade ?
> (*Does* it not *give*, etc)
> *Tell* me not in mournful numbers
> (*Do* not tell me, etc)
> He goes to do what I *had done*, if, etc
> (What I *should have* done, if, etc)

III The use of uncommon constructions

(*a*) An Adjective substituted for an adverb to qualify a verb (see above, p 276) —

> First they praised him *soft* and *low* —*Tennyson*
> The green trees whispered *low* and *mild* —*Longfellow*

Note —Sometimes an Adjective is coupled with an Adverb —

> Trip it *deft* and *merrily* —*Scott*

(*b*) The use of the Imperative in the first or third person. In older English this was not so uncommon, in modern it is seldom seen except in poetry (see § 180, *note*) —

> Thither our path lies , wind *we* up the height —*Browning*
> "Now rest *we* here," Matilda said —*Scott*

(*c*) The formation of Comparative adverbs by changing "ly" into "lier" This is never done in prose, and rarely even in poetry

> You have taken it *wiselier* than I meant you should —*Shakspeare*
> Destroyers *rightlier* called the plagues of men —*Milton*.
> Strange friend, past, present, and to be ,
> Loved deep*lier*, dark*lier* understood —*Tennyson*

Note —This form of the Comparative adverb occurs, however, in the familiar word "earlier," which can be either an adverb or an adjective

(*d*) The employment of a pronoun as well as a noun for the same verb This is rather common in poetry

> My banks—*they* are furnished with bees.—*Shenstone*
> *They* tremble—the sustaining crags —*Tennyson*
> *The smith* a mighty man is *he* —*Longfellow*
> Tired nature's sweet restorer, balmy sleep,
> *He*, like the world, his ready visit pays,
> Where fortune smiles —*Young*

(*e*) The substitution of an epithet (adjective) for the noun or thing qualified by it —

Below the chestnuts, when their buds
Were glistening to the breezy *blue* (=sky) —*Tennyson.*
The dread *vast* (=expanse) of night —*Milton*
The palpable *obscure* (=darkness)—*Milton*
The kindling *azure* (=sky) —*Thomson*
From *grave* to *gay*, from *lively* to *severe* —*Pope*

(*f*) The formation of new compound words —

Hast thou not heard
That haughty Spain's *pope consecrated* fleet
Advances to our shores —*Sheridan*
The *always wind obeying* deep —*Shakspeare*
With rocks *unscaleable*, and roaring waters —*Shakspeare*
Or in the *violet embroidered* vale —*Milton*

(*g*) A freer use of impersonal verbs for personal ones, as *methinks* for I *think*, *melists* for *it seems to me*, *meseems* for *it seems to me*

(*h*) A freer use of Personal or Reflexive pronouns after Intransitive verbs (see § 155 and § 340, *Note* 2) —

Then Satan first knew pain,
And *writhed him* to and fro —*Milton*
The shepherd *hied him* home

(*i*) The use of the Superlative degree as a substitute for the Positive degree preceded by "very" —

Or where the gorgeous east with *richest* hand
Showers on her kings barbaric pearl and gold —*Milton*

(*j*) The substitution of a Possessive noun for an adjective —

Pity and *woman's* (=womanly) compassion—*Longfellow*
The *mother's* (=motherly) nature of Althea —*Lowell*

(*k*) The use of a Personal pronoun, where in prose a Reflexive would be used —

I thought *me* (=myself) richer than the Persian king
—*Ben Johnson*
How close she veils *her* (=herself) round —*Keble*

(*l*) The use of "and" in an Interrogative sentence, to express a passionate sense of grief —

And art thou cold and lowly laid —*Scott*
And wilt thou weep, when I am low?—*Byron*

IV **A change in the regular order of words.**

(*a*) By placing the adjective after its noun —

> Or where the gorgeous East with richest hand
> Showers on her kings *barbaric* pearl and gold —*Milton.*

Here *barbaric* is intended to qualify "kings," and not "pearl."

(*b*) By placing the verb before its subject —

> *Roar* the mountains, *thunders* all the ground
> Again *returned* the scenes of youth
> As *shines* the moon in clouded skies

(*c*) By placing the object before its verb and the subject after it —

> A transient *calm* the happy *scenes* bestow
> No *hive* hast *thou* of hoarded sweets

(*d*) By placing a qualifying phrase before, instead of after, the noun that it qualifies —

> Thou sun, *of this great world* both eye and soul —*Milton*

(*e*) By placing the preposition after its noun, instead of before it —

> They dashed that rapid torrent *through*
> Where Echo walks steep hills *among*
> Like children bathing on the shores
> Buried a wave *beneath*

(*f*) By placing the Infinitive before the verb on which it depends —

> When first thy sire *to send* on earth
> Virtue, his darling child, designed —*Gray*

(*g*) By placing the complement before its verb, instead of after it, in sentences where the complement is not emphatic —

> *Grieved* though thou art, forbear the rash design
> *Fresh* blows the wind, a western wind

(*h*) By placing an adverb before an Intransitive verb instead of after it (see § 312) —

> *Merrily, merrily* goes the bark ,
> *Full lowly* did the herdsman fall —*Scott*

(*i*) By placing an adverb before, instead of after, the verb with which it is compounded —

> *Up* springs from yonder tangled thorn
> A stag more white than mountain snow —*Scott*
> *Out* spake the victor then —*Campbell*

(*j*) By using *or—or* for *either—or*, and *nor—nor* for *neither—nor* :—

> Remote, unfriended, solitary, slow,
> *Or* by the lazy Scheldt, or wandering Po —*Goldsmith*
> *Nor* grief nor pain shall break my rest.

V The use of adjectives or participles instead of clauses This is done for the sake of terseness

(1) He can't combine each well *proportioned* part.

That is, he cannot make the different parts proportionate to each other and then combine them into a symmetrical whole

(2) See that your *polished* arms be primed with care

That is, see that your arms (or weapons) are well polished and primed with care

(3) Forth goes the woodman, leaving unconcerned
The *cheerful* haunts of men

Here "cheerful" means "*however cheerful they may be*"

(4) From his *slack* hand the garland wreathed for me
Down dropped, and all the faded roses shed

Here "slack" stands for "which had become slack"

(5) But he who hurts a *harmless* neighbour's peace,
Insults *fallen* worth or beauty in distress

Here "harmless" stands for "though he is harmless," and "fallen" for "*when* it is fallen"

(6) From *loveless* youth to *unrespected* age
No passion gratified except her rage

Her youth was devoid of love, the peculiar grace of youth, and her old age was devoid of respect, the peculiar privilege of age, she gratified no passion except her evil temper

(7) The jay, the rook, the daw,
And each harsh pipe, discordant *heard alone*,
Aid the full concert

Here *heard alone* means "when it is heard alone

Note —In paraphrasing poetry into prose one of the first things to be done is to convert such adjectives or participles as those quoted above into verbs, adding such Relatives or Conjunctions as may be necessary

VI The use of epithets for the sake of ornament This peculiarity is in keeping with the chief aim of poetry, which is to please rather than to instruct An epithet is *ornamental*, when it is in no respect essential to the sense

> The breezy call of *incense breathing* morn,
> The swallow twittering from its *straw-built* shed,
> The cock's shrill clarion, and the echoing horn,
> No more shall rouse them from their lowly bed —*Gray*

Here the epithets "breezy," "twittering," "shrill," and "echoing" are all conducive to the sense, but *incense-breathing* and *straw-built* serve no purpose other than that of ornament

Ornamental epithets are italicised in the following lines —

(1) Oh mother Ida, *many fountain'd* Ida,
Dear mother Ida, hearken ere I die
(2) Then answer made the *bold* Sir Bedivere

In the following lines the italicised epithets are essential —

As shines the moon in *clouded* skies,
She in her *poor* attire was seen

The *golden* harvest, the *swift* stag, the *tawny* lion, the *briny* deep, the *mighty* deep, etc, are all stock phrases common in poetry The epithets are merely ornamental

Note —In paraphrasing poetry into prose the student should take care to give greater prominence to the essential than to the ornamental epithets

VII **The use of graphic or picturesque language** This peculiarity, too, arises from the desire to please Language is graphic or picturesque, when it calls up some image to the mind by dwelling on the particular rather than on the general or abstract

Arise, my love, my fair, and come away, for, lo! the winter is past, the rain is over and gone, the flowers appear on the earth, the time of the singing of birds is come, and the voice of the turtle is heard in our land, the fig tree putteth forth her green figs, and the vines with the tender grapes perfume the air Arise, my love, my fair, and come away —*The Song of Solomon*

VIII **A freer use of Figurative language than in Prose** The different figures of speech have been described in Chapter xxviii, and need not now be recapitulated

APPENDIX A

Certain Grammatical Terms

Aph-ĕr′-e-sis the removal of a letter or syllable from the beginning of a word, as *'tween* for *between*, *'gan* for *began*

Ap-oc′-o-pe′ the removal of a letter or syllable from the end of a word, as *th'* for *the*

Di′-a-lect′ a provincial or local form of any language

El-lip′-sis the idiomatic omission of a word or words, as,

I told you (that) you would succeed

Eu′-pho-ny the use of words or syllables that have a pleasing sound

Hom′-o-nym′ a word that is spelt and pronounced in the same way as another, but has an entirely distinct meaning, and is in fact a distinct word, as *bear* (the animal), *bear* (to produce or endure)

Impropriety the use of a word in a sense that does not properly belong to it, as, "to *perpetrate* a virtuous act" (This verb is used only for bad actions)

Par′-o-nym′ a word, not spelt the same as another, but pronounced exactly alike, as *hair*, *hare*

Parenthesis literally "an insertion by the way", that is, a clause or phrase wedged into a sentence, in passing

Purity the use of words sanctioned by the best modern writers This rule excludes barbarisms of all kinds, such as the needless use of foreign words (as *a propos* for *in reference to*), or of classical words (as *de novo* for *anew*), or of obsolete words (as *erst* for *formerly*)

Solecism a violation of Syntax,—a grammatical blunder, as, "*whom* do men say that I am?" (Here *whom* should be *who*) Or, a violation of idiom, as, "Die *with* fever" (Here *with* should be changed to *of*)

Syn′-co-pe′ the removal of a letter from the middle of a word, as *ta'en* for *taken*

Syn′-o-nym′ a word having the same or nearly the same meaning as another, as *improbable*, *unlikely*

Tautology an unnecessary repetition, as,

The day declines, the sun is going down.

APPENDIX B

In the following pairs of words, the *noun* or *adjective* takes the accent on the *first* syllable, the *verb* on the *second*

Ab' sent, not present
Ab-sent' (oneself), to go away
Ab'-stract, an abridged statement.
Ab-stract', to take from, or pilfer
Ac'-cent, stress laid on a syllable
Ac-cent', to lay stress on a syllable
Af' fix, an appended particle
Af-fix', to append something
At' tribute, an ascribed quality
Attrib' ute, to ascribe a quality
Aug' ment, an increase
Aug ment', to make larger
Com' mune, the Commons
Com mune', to meditate
Com' pound, a mixture
Com pound', to mix
Con' cert, a musical entertainment
Con-cert', to arrange a plan
Con' duct, behaviour
Con-duct', to lead or direct
Con' fine, a border or boundary
Con fine', to limit or shut off
Con' flict, a struggle or contest
Con-flict', to strive with or oppose
Con'-sort, wife or husband
Con sort', to associate with
Con'-test, a struggle or dispute
Con test', to dispute
Con' tract, an agreement.
Con tract', to draw together
Con' trast, dissimilarity
Con trast', to compare dissimilar things
Con' verse, the opposite to
Con verse', to talk with
Con' vert, a man converted
Con vert', to bring round to an opinion
Con' vict, a man convicted
Con vict', to declare guilty
Con' voy, an escort
Con voy', to escort for protection
De'-crease, a diminution
De-crease', to become less
Des'-ert, a barren tract
De sert', to abandon
De' tail, a particular item
De tail', to relate the particulars
Di' gest, an analysis.
Di gest', to assimilate food
Dis'-count, a reduction from an amount
Dis-count', to make a reduction
Es'-cort, a guard in travelling
Es-cort', to guard in travelling
Es'-say, a composition
Es-say', to try or attempt
Ex' ile, one who is banished
Ex ile', to banish a man
Ex' port, a thing exported
Ex port', to send out for sale
Ex' tract, a thing extracted
Ex-tract', to draw a thing out
Fer'-ment, a state of heat
Fer ment', to be changed by heat
Fore'-cast, a prediction
Fore-cast', to foresee or predict.
Fre'-quent, occurring often.
Fre-quent', to visit often
Im' port, a thing imported
Im port', to bring in for sale
Im' press, a stamp or impression.
Im press', to make an impression
In'-cense, a perfume.
In-cense', to arouse to anger
In'-crease, an augmentation
In crease', to be augmented
In' sult, an effusive remark
In sult', to offend by a remark
Ob' ject, anything seen, etc
Ob ject', to oppose
Per' fume, an odour or scent
Per fume', to give a sweet scent
Per' mit, a written permission.
Per mit', to allow
Per' vert, one perverted
Per vert', to bring to a wrong opinion
Pre' fix, a particle placed before
Pre-fix', to place anything before
Prem' ise (*s*), a proposition
Pre mise' (*z*), to make a proposition
Pres'-age, an indication of the future
Pre sage', to predict the future
Pres' ent, a gift.
Pre sent', to give
Pro'-ceeds, profits from an investment.
Pro-ceed', to go forward
Pro' duce, the thing produced
Pro duce', to bring into existence
Pro' gress, advance
Pro gress', to make an advance.
Pro' ject, an undertaking
Pro ject', to stand out.
Pro' test, a remonstrance
Pro test', to remonstrate
Reb'-el, one who rebels
Re-bel', to resist authority
Rec' ord, a written statement
Re cord', to state in writing
Re' fuse (*s*), rejected matter
Re fuse' (*z*), to reject or decline
Re' tail, sale in small quantities
Re tail', to sell in small quantities
Sub' ject, one under authority
Sub ject', to place under authority
Suf' fix, a particle placed after
Suf fix', to fix or place after
Sur' vey, a general view
Sur vey', to take a general view
Sus' pect, a man suspected
Sus pect', to hold under suspicion.
Tor' ment, excessive pain
Tor ment', to inflict excessive pain
Trans' fer, the act of transferring
Trans fer', to send across
Trans' port, a state of ecstasy
Trans-port', to send or carry across
Un'-dress, a light kind of dress
Un dress', to take off one's clothes
Up'-set, the state of being overthrown
Up-set', to throw anything over

In the following pairs of words, the *noun* takes the accent on the *first* syllable (as before), and the *adjective* on the *second*.

Au'-gust, name of month	**In' stinct**, untaught ability
Au gust', venerable.	**In-stinct'**, animated
Com' pact, agreement.	**In' va lid'**, a sick person
Com pact', tight and close	**In val'-id**, not binding.
Ex' pert, a skilful person	**Min' ute**, sixty seconds
Ex pert', skilful	**Mi nute'**, very small

Note —"An a' ged man" means "a very old man." "He has aged (ajd) much" means "He looks much older than he did"

APPENDIX C —ABBREVIATIONS.

A or *Ans*	Answer	*Con*	Against, opposed
Abp	Archbishop	*C S I*	Companion of the Order of the Star of India
A D	Anno Domini, in the year of our Lord		
A D C	Aide de-camp	*Cwt*	A hundredweight
Æt	Ætatis, of his age, aged	*D C L*	Doctor of Civil Law
		D D	Doctor of Divinity
A M	Ante Meridiem, before noon	*Dec*	December
		D M	Doctor of Music
Anon	Anonymous	*Do*	Ditto, the same
App	Appendix	*D V*	Deo Volente, if God wills
Augt	August		
B A	Bachelor of Arts	*Dwt*	Pennyweight
Bart	Baronet	*Ed*	Edition, Editor
B C	Before Christ	*e g*	Exempli gratia, for the sake of example
B C L	Bachelor of Civil Law		
B D	Bachelor of Divinity	*E L*	East Latitude
B L	Bachelor of Law	*Esq*	Esquire
Bp	Bishop	*Etc* or *&c*	Etcetera, and the rest, and so on
Bros	Brothers		
B Sc.	Bachelor of Science	*Feb*	February
Cantab	Of Cambridge	*F R A S*	Fellow of the Royal Astronomical Society
Capt	Captain		
C B	Companion of the Bath		
		F R C S	Fellow of the Royal College of Surgeons
C E	Civil Engineer		
Cent	Centum, a hundred	*F R S*	Fellow of the Royal Society
Cf	Confer, compare		
Ch or *Chap*	Chapter	*Gall*	Gallon
C I E	Companion of the Order of the Indian Empire	*H M*	Honorary Magistrate
		Hon, *Honble*	Honourable
		Ib or *Ibid*	Ibidem, in the same place or author
Cir	Circum, about		
C M G	Companion of the Order of St Michael and St George	*Id*	Idem, the same
		I e	Id est, that is
		Incog	Incognitus, unknown
Co.	Company	*In loc*	In loco, in the place
Col	Colonel	*Inst*	In the current month

I O U	I owe you, an acknowledgment of a debt
Jan.	January
J.P	Justice of the Peace
Jr or Jun	Junior, younger
K B	Knight of the Bath
K C B	Knight Commander of the Bath
K C I E	Knight Commander of the Order of the Indian Empire
K C S I	Knight Commander of the Order of the Star of India
K G	Knight of the Garter
K G C	Knight of the Grand Cross
K R G	Knight of the Red Cross
Lb	A pound in weight
L or l or £	A pound in money
Lieut or Lt	Lieutenant
Lieut Col	Lieutenant Colonel
Lieut Gen	Lieutenant General
Lieut -Gov	Lieutenant Governor
LL B	Bachelor of Laws
LL D	Doctor of Laws
Long	Longitude
Lat	Latitude
M A	Master of Arts
Maj	Major
Maj Gen	Major General
M B	Bachelor of Medicine
M D	Doctor of Medicine
M P	Member of Parliament
M R A S	Member of the Royal Asiatic Society
M R C S	Member of the Royal College of Surgeons
MS	Manuscript
Mt	Mount, mountain
N B	Nota bene, note well
Nem. con	Nemine contradicente, unanimously
N Lat	North Latitude
No	Number
Nov	November
N T	New Testament
Oct	October
O T	Old Testament
Oxon	Of Oxford
Oz	Ounce
Per	By, as per annum
Per cent	Per centum, by the hundred
P M	Post Meridiem, afternoon
P P C	Pour prendre congé, to take leave
P W D	Public Works Department
Pro	For, in favour of
Pro tem	Pro tempore, for the time being
Prox	In the coming month
P S	Postscriptum, postscript
Qu or Q	Query, or question
Q C	Queen's Council
Q E D	Quod erat demonstrandum, which was to be demonstrated
Qr	Quarter
Q V	Quod Vide, which see
R A	Royal Academy, or Royal Artillery
R E	Royal Engineer
Rev	Reverend
R H A	Royal Horse Artillery
R N	Royal Navy
Rt Rev	Right Reverend
Rt Hon	Right Honourable
Sept	September
S L	South Latitude
Sq Ft	Square foot
St	Stet, let it stand
St	Saint, as St Paul
Supt	Superintendent
S W	South West
S E	South East
T O	Turn over
Ult	Ultimo, last month
U S A	United States of America
Ven	Venerable
Viz.	Videlicet, namely
W.L	West Latitude
Xmas	Christmas

I. INDEX OF SUBJECTS

The references are to pages

II INDEX OF WORDS AND PHRASES

The references are to pages

THE END

Printed by R. & R. Clark, Limited, *Edinburgh*

MESSRS. MACMILLAN AND CO.'S

TEXT-BOOKS FOR INDIAN SCHOOLS.

READING.

The Anglo-Oriental Series of English Readers. By J C. NESFIELD, M.A.

PRIMER, in Diglott form, English Urdu, 40 pp			Price 8 annas
PRIMER, in Diglott form, English Hindi, 40 pp			Price 8 annas
FIRST READER.	Illustrated	64 pp	Price 5d net
SECOND READER.	,,	80 pp	,, 6d ,,
THIRD READER.	,,	96 pp	,, 8d ,,
FOURTH READER.	,,	112 pp	,, 10d ,,
FIFTH READER.	,,	128 pp	,, 1s ,,

Approved by the Provincial Text Book Committee of North Western Provinces and Oudh, and prescribed by the Director of Public Instruction for use in Anglo-Vernacular schools in North Western Provinces and Oudh

Adopted for use in Anglo Vernacular Schools in Central India states

Glossaries, to each of the Primers and Readers of the Anglo-Oriental Series, giving the Urdu and Hindi renderings of the more difficult English words and phrases These glossaries will be found of the greatest help to the student

Middle English Readers, with copious notes and explanations Adapted to the standard of the Middle Scholarship Examinations in Indian Schools.

PART I, PART II, PART III 1s net each part

Approved by the Provincial Text Book Committee of the North Western Provinces and Oudh, and prescribed by the Director of Public Instruction for the Middle Scholarship Examination in North Western Provinces and Oudh

Macmillan's New Literary Readers Illustrated

PRIMER I (32 pp)	4d	READER III (176 pp)	1s.
PRIMER II (48 pp)	4d	READER IV (208 pp)	1s. 3d
INFANT READER (72 pp)	6d	READER V (240 pp)	1s 6d
READER I (112 pp)	8d	READER VI (256 pp.)	1s 6d
READER II (128 pp)	10d		

BOARD TEACHER—"Ably edited, these Readers supply a distinct want. Their special feature is indicated in their title The matter is copyright, and of a high, yet attractive and suitable literary character We heartily recommend them

EDUCATIONAL NEWS—"The extracts are skilfully varied, and in some instances judiciously condensed The illustrations are artistic There are sixty lessons in each, and each lesson bears the mark of high talent or notable genius The binding is bright, the type clear, the paper good, and in every way the books do credit to compiler and publishers The teacher who chooses them will bring within his pupils reach specimens of cultured thought and graceful style."

GRAMMAR.

SERIES OF ENGLISH GRAMMARS By J C NESFIELD, M A

Book I The Parts of Speech with numerous Examples, and Questions and Answers on the text For the use of elementary classes in European and other English teaching schools 5d net

The same in DIGLOTT form (Urdu English or Hindi English), for the use of elementary classes in Anglo Vernacular schools

Book II Easy Parsing and Analysis, with numerous Examples and Parsing Models. For the use of Upper Primary and Lower Middle Classes in European and other English teaching schools 8d net.

The same in DIGLOTT form (Urdu English or Hindi English), for the use of the corresponding classes in Anglo-Vernacular schools

Book III. (a) Idiom and Grammar for Middle Schools, with numerous Examples. and Parsing Charts For the use of Upper Middle Classes preparing for the Middle Scholarship Examinations in Indian provinces 1s. net.

(b) Key to the above, consisting of—Part I. Salient Rules and Definitions Part II. Questions and Answers on Parsing. Part III. Solution of Examples in the text. Part IV Questions from Middle Examinations with their Answers 1s. net.

Book IV (*a*) **Idiom, Grammar, and Synthesis** a manual of practical and theoretical English for High School and University Students, in five parts. Part I Accidence, Analysis, Syntax, and Punctuation. Part II Idiom in Words, Phrases, and Constructions. Part III The Transformation and Synthesis of Sentences Part IV Word building and Derivation Part V Figures of Speech, Poetic Diction, and Prosody 3s net.

(*b*) **Key** to the above, Part I Salient Rules and Definitions. Part II Questions and Answers in Parsing. Part III Solution of Examples in the text. 1s net.

The English Grammars have been approved by the Director of Public Instruction, North Western Provinces and Oudh, for use in Anglo Vernacular and European schools

The English Grammars have also been approved by the Punjab Text Book Committee and recommended by the Director of Public Instruction for use of schools in the Punjab

*** *The above Grammar Series has already run into several editions, and has received the approval of Head Masters and Managers throughout Upper India.*

HISTORY

The History of India. By SIR ROPER LETHBRIDGE, K C I E With chapters on the Physical Geography, the ancient and modern political divisions and places of interest, and 'India in 1893,' its people, their condition, resources, institutions, and forms of Imperial, Provincial, and Municipal Government. New edition, 1893 With maps, cloth 2s , sewed 1s 6d

Approved by the Provincial Text-Book Committee North Western Provinces and Oudh, and prescribed by the Director of Public Instruction for use in schools

Prescribed by the University of Allahabad for the Entrance Examination

THE TIMES OF INDIA —"Messrs Macmillan and Co have ready a new edition, with maps, of Sir Roper Lethbridge s popular *History of India.* The first edition was printed by this firm in 1875, it was twice reprinted in 1876, thrice in 1877 and 1878, twice in 1879 and 1880 twice in 1881 and 1882, and twice in 1883, 1887, 1889, and 1893—a record which sufficiently attests its adaptability to the requirements of the entrance or Matriculation examination of the Universities

BOMBAY EDUCATIONAL RECORD —" The whole book forms perhaps the best and most comprehensive School History of India available '

INDIAN JOURNAL OF EDUCATION —" Instead of the dull, dreary compilation of bare facts which an experience of Indian histories in general had made us to dread, we were pleased to find that this work supplied a long felt want, and combines agreeable reading with a really valuable and comprehensive sketch of Indian history treated in a spirit of philosophic continuity In fact we should feel inclined to recommend a student who aspires to a general knowledge of the history of India to confine himself to this work

College History of India Asiatic and European By J TALBOYS WHEELER. Cloth, 3s , sewed, 2s 6d

BOMBAY EDUCATIONAL RECORD —"This book has two of the qualities of a good text-book, viz. accuracy and lucidity It opens with an ingenious 'Plan of India,' and the student is guided with confidence through the maze of names and events which usually make the history of India so bewildering to the learner The book besides is extremely interesting owing to the fact that the writer largely draws from the original sources The student is to be congratulated who sets out with such a competent and satisfactory guide

A Primer of Indian History Asiatic and European By J TALBOYS WHEELER, late Assistant Secretary to the Government of India, Foreign Department, and late Secretary to the Government of British Burma 1s.

The College History of India and Primer of Indian History have been approved by the Calcutta and Madras Text Book Committees

BOMBAY EDUCATIONAL RECORD —" A good illustration of the fact that it requires a master of a subject to write a good primer of Indian History "

History of England for Beginners By ARABELLA B BUCKLEY With Coloured Maps and Chronological and Genealogical Tables 3s

Prescribed by the University of Calcutta for the Entrance Examination.

EXTRACT FROM PREFACE—" In the small space allowed me in this little book I have tried to set before young readers a connected history of the rise and development of England While giving as far as possible the chief facts required by students, I have been especially anxious to present a vivid picture of the life, the difficulties, and the achievements of our ancestors, showing how our laws, our constitution, our trade, and our colonies have arisen "

THE SCHOOL GUARDIAN says:—"One of the best school histories that we have met with, and it is certain to become popular with young students. It is not, as are too many text-books on this subject, a collection of cut-and-dried isolated statements of facts, but a continuous and intelligible whole."

A Primer of English History By ARABELLA B. BUCKLEY Very popular 1s.

BOMBAY EDUCATIONAL RECORD—"The very latest of Macmillan's remarkable Primers. Though the History is compressed into 150 pages, the perspective of events is marvellously maintained and the writer's clear and interesting style stands her in good stead."

INDIAN JOURNAL OF EDUCATION—"A handy compendium of English History from the pen of a pleasing and well-known writer It will be found useful for school boys and old students who wish to recall rapidly the salient points of our history The maps trace the growth of the Empire. A chronological table closes this handsome little book"

History of England. By EDITH THOMPSON Historical Course for Schools. With Coloured Maps. 2s. 6d

ATHENÆUM—"This manual is the best sketch of English History for the use of young people we have yet met with"

GEOGRAPHY

The Elementary School Atlas By J BARTHOLOMEW 24 Maps 4to 1s.

MADRAS JOURNAL OF EDUCATION—"This handy little atlas with its strong limp covers containing forty maps we can strongly recommend for use in schools The maps are beautifully executed, each name standing out clear and distinct Maps showing the well-defined physical features accompany most of the political maps The atlas has two special features which should recommend it, viz. an excellent Index, and a series of as many as seven full sized maps allotted to India showing the political divisions"

Geography Primer By SIR GEORGE GROVE. Pott 8vo 1s

Class Book of Geography By C B CLARKE, F R S Maps, cloth, 2s. 6d, sewed, 2s Without Maps, sewed, 1s 6d

Prescribed by the University of Calcutta for the Entrance Examination

A Geographic Reader By C B CLARKE, F R S With Nine Coloured Maps. Cloth, 2s 6d Contents Part I—General Geography Part II—Astronomic Geography Part III—Chartography Part IV—Physical Geography

Recommended by the Director of Public Instruction, North Western Provinces and Oudh for use in schools

Prescribed by the University of Allahabad for the Entrance Examination

INDIAN JOURNAL OF EDUCATION—"It is well printed, the maps are very clear, and the matter in it is very well arranged The book, which contains 149 pages, gives the Physical and Political Geography of the World, and there are special chapters devoted to Astronomical and Physical Geography and Chartography

Reader in General Geography By C B CLARKE, F R S Cloth 1s Very popular

The Teaching of Geography A Practical Handbook for the use of Teachers By Sir ARCHIBALD GEIKIE, F R S Cloth, 2s

BOMBAY EDUCATIONAL RECORD—"A valuable treatise on principles and methods for the use of teachers"

Elementary General Geography By HUGH ROBERT MILL, D Sc Illustrated Cloth, 3s 6d

BOMBAY EDUCATIONAL RECORD—"A good General Geography, with thirty capital illustrations"

Geography of India, Burmah, and Ceylon By H F BLANFORD, F R.S Cloth, 1s 9d

BOMBAY EDUCATIONAL RECORD—"Mr Blanford has been specially successful in his introductory chapter on the geographical position of India and in his account of plants, animals, populations, and matters bearing on commerce The book has twenty-seven illustrations, including the Bhore Ghaut and a group of Maratha Pundits."

ARITHMETIC.

Arithmetic for Indian Schools By Rev J B LOCK Edited and arranged for use in India, by Prof T C LEWIS, M.A., late Fellow of Trinity College, Cambridge, late Principal, Government College, Lahore, Director of Public Instruction, North Western Provinces and Oudh. 3s

*** *Every school in India, Burma, and Ceylon, should use this Popular Arithmetic for Indian Schools*

Approved by the Provincial Text-Book Committee, North Western Provinces and Oudh.